

ANABASIS

CLARK

INTERLINEAR
TRANSLATION

GG 224
P.O. # 5043

Hamilton, Locke and Clark Series.

THE
ANABASIS OF XENOPHON;

WITH AN

INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE
LEARNERS,

ON THE

HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM,

AS IMPROVED BY

THOMAS CLARK,

Editor of the Latin and Greek Interlinear Classics.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, INC.

NEW YORK

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by
CHARLES DE SILVER,
in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern
District of Pennsylvania.

Copyright,
CHARLES DE SILVER & SONS.
1887.

Printed in the United States of America

PREFACE.

THIS interlinear edition of the *Anabasis* of Xenophon has been carefully translated by the editor of the Latin and Greek series of interlinear classics. His plan is somewhat peculiar, being intermediate between the systems of Hamilton and Locke. The uncouth and frequently unintelligible sentences of Hamilton are avoided, while on the other hand the verbal and grammatical meanings are given with an accuracy fully equal to his, if not surpassing it. By this plan the sense of the text is also conveyed more precisely than is done either by the plan of Hamilton or that of Locke—every idiomatic and grammatical difficulty being completely overcome.

The work will be found of great service to the student of the Greek language, as it removes many of the difficulties so perplexing in its study.

The use of a few signs and characters, explained on another page, has, in a measure, enabled the author to accomplish what he has above set forth.

THOMAS CLARK.

EXPLANATIONS

THE union of two or more words by hyphens denotes, that they together express the meaning of one Greek word; as,

γίγονται.

are-born.

When two or more words, employed to express a Greek word, are separated by one or more words placed between them, such interposition is denoted by a figure ' prefixed to the word next preceding that interposed, and another figure ' placed before the next succeeding word; as,

οὕτω διατιθεῖς πάντα.

'having so 'disposed all.

An English word or sentence included within parentheses () is an indication that such word or sentence is not expressed in Greek; as

ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν *παρὰ βασιλέως.*
used-to-come to him of-the (persons sent) from (the) king.

When a word placed in parentheses is italicized, it shows that the word above it is either superfluous or not to be expressed in English; as,

ἐβούλετο τὸ ἀμφοτέρω *παιδε.*

he-desired (*the*) both (*his*) sons.

A dash directs the word above it to be omitted in the translation; as,

ὁ *Κῦρος.*

— Cyrus.

Where an italicized word or sentence within parentheses is followed by another word or sentence, also in parentheses, but not in italics, the latter forms the proper reading; as,

ἐτύγχανε *παρὼν.*

happened (*being-present*) (to-be-present).

When a word or sentence is put in brackets [] it serves as an explanation, in the nature of a note; but when the reading thus enclosed is to be used instead of the literal translation, a vertical line (|) is placed at the beginning of the reading that is to be changed; as,

ἔχουεν.

| might-have (themselves) [might be].

TESTIMONIALS

AS TO

THE MERITS OF

The Interlinear Translation of the Classics.

Testimony of celebrated men in favour of the interlineary system of translations, as being best adapted for learning a language.

MILTON. — We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together as much Latin and Greek as might be learned easily and delightfully in one year.

If, after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the *praxis* thereof in some chosen short book *lessoned thoroughly to them*, [that is, read and translated to them], which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most natural and most profitable way of learning languages.

[Children] should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation, as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. Next, to make them expert in the usefulest points of grammar, some easy and delightful book should be read to them.

[By this, Milton means that the teacher should read some easy Latin book to his pupils, and translate and explain it repeatedly, until they understand such Latin book, and can themselves translate it.]

JOHN LOCKE, author of the "Essay on the Human Understanding." — When I consider what ado is made about a little Latin and Greek, how many years are spent in it, and what a noise and business it makes to no purpose, I can hardly forbear thinking that the parents of children still live in fear of the schoolmaster's rod, which they look on as the only instrument of education; as a language or two to be his whole business. How else is it possible that a child should be chained to the oar, seven, eight, or ten of the best years of his life, to get a language or two, which, I think, might be had at a great deal cheaper rate of pains and time, and be learned almost in playing.

[The first project of Locke] is to trouble the child with no grammar at all, but to have Latin as English has been, without the perplexity of rules, talked into him, for, if you will consider it, Latin is no more unknown to a child, when he comes into the world, than English; and yet he learns English without a master, rule, or grammar; and so might he Latin, too, as Tully did, if he had somebody always to talk to him in this language. And when we so often see a French woman teach an English girl to speak and read French perfectly in a year or two, without any rule of grammar, or anything else but prattling to her. I cannot but wonder how gentlemen have overseen this way for their sons. If, therefore, a man could be got, who, himself speaking good Latin, would always be about your son, talk constantly to him, and suffer him to speak and read nothing else, this would be the true and genuine way, and that which I would propose, not only as the easiest and best, wherein a child might, without pains or chiding, get a language which others are wont to be whipt for at school six or seven years together; but also as that wherein, at the same time, he might have his mind and manners formed, and be instructed in all other parts of knowledge of things that fall under the senses, and require little more than memory. But if such a man cannot be got who speaks good Latin, the next best thing is to have him taught as near this way as may be, which is by taking some easy and pleasant book, such as *Æsop's Fables*, and writing the English translation (made as literal as can be) in one line, and the Latin words which answer each of them, just over it in another. These let him read every day over and over again, till he perfectly understands the Latin; and then go on to another Fable.

all he is also perfect in that, not omitting what he is already perfect in, but sometimes reviewing that to keep it in his memory.

The formation of the verb first, and afterwards the declensions of the nouns and pronouns, perfectly learned by heart, facilitate his acquaintance with the genius and manner of the Latin tongue, which varies the signification of verbs and nouns not as the modern languages do, by particles prefixed, but by changing the last syllable. More than this of grammar, I think, we need not have, till he can read himself Sanctii Minerva.

As he advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, *pari pasu*, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin, or Eutropius; and, to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection, that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. For languages are only to be learned by rote; and a man who does not speak English and Latin perfectly by rote, so that having thought of the thing he would speak of, his tongue, of course without thought of rule or grammar, falls into the proper expression and idiom of that language, does not speak it well, nor is master of it. Languages were made, not by rules of art, but by accident, and the common use of the people; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that, nor anything to trust to but his memory, and the habit of speaking after the fashion learned from those that are allowed to speak properly, which, in other words, is only to speak by rote.

SYDNEY SMITH. — The Hamiltonian system, on the other hand, 1st. Teaches an unknown tongue by the closest interlinear translations, instead of leaving a boy to explore his way by the lexicon or dictionary. 2d. It postpones the study of grammar till a considerable progress has been made in the language, and a great degree of practical grammar has been acquired. 3d. It substitutes the cheerfulness and competition of the Lancasterian

system for the dull solitude of the dictionary. By these means a boy finds he is making a progress, and learning something from the very beginning. He is not overwhelmed with the first appearance of insuperable difficulties; he receives some little pay from the first moment of his apprenticeship, and is not compelled to wait for remuneration till he is out of his time. The student, having acquired the great art of understanding the sense of what is written in another tongue, may go into the study of the language as deeply and as extensively as he pleases. The old system aims at beginning with a depth and accuracy which many men never will want, which disgusts many from arriving even at moderate attainments, and is a less easy, and not more certain road to a profound skill in a language, than if attention to grammar had been deferred to a later period.

In fine, we are strongly persuaded that, the time being given, this system will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed. If there is any truth in this, it will make Mr. Hamilton one of the most useful men of his age; for, if there is anything which fills reflecting men with melancholy and regret, it is the waste of mortal time, parental money, and puerile happiness, in the present method of pursuing Latin and Greek.

ANABASIS OF XENOPHON

BOOK I.

CHAPTER I.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίνονται δύο παῖδες
OF DARIUS and Parysatis are-born two sons.

πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, δὲ νεώτερος
(the) elder (indeed) Artaxerxes, (but) (the) younger

Κῦρος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἡσδένει καὶ ὑπώπτει
Cyrus. After — Darius was-sick, and suspected (the)

τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τῷ ἀμφοτέρῳ
end (of-the) (his) life, he-desired (the) both (his)

παῖδε παρεῖναι. Ὁ πρεσβύτερος μὲν
sons to-be-present (with him). The elder indeed

οὖν ἐτίγχανε παρῶν. δὲ μεταπέμ-
(therefore) happened | (being-present) (to be present); but he-sends

πεται Κῦρον ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς ἐποίησε
for Cyrus from the government, of-which 'he (had) 'made

αὐτὸν σατραπὴν καὶ ἀπέδειξε αὐτὸν δὲ
him satrap, and 'he (had) 'appointed him also

στρατηγὸν πάντων, ὅσοι ἀδροίζονται εἰς
commander of-all (the forces), as-many-as muster in

πεδῖον Καστωλοῦ. Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν ἀναβαίνει
(the) plain of-Castolus. — Cyrus therefore goes-up

λαβὼν Τισσαφέρην ὡς φίλον,
(to his father) having-taken (with him) Tissaphernes as (a) friend.

καὶ ἀνέβη ἔχων δὲ τριακοσίους ὅπλιτας,
and he-went-up having also (with him) three-hundred heavy-armed-men
τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν
of-the Greeks, (and) (the) commander also of-them Xenias

Παρρῶσιον.

(the) Parrhasian.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης
After — Darius died, and Artaxerxes

κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, Τισσαφέρνης δια-
was-established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes ca-

βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὥς
lumniates — Cyrus to (the) (his) brother, as-how-that

ἐπιβουλεύει αὐτῷ. Ὁ δὲ πείδεται
he-might-be-plotting against-him. — (Artaxerxes) indeed believes

τε καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὥς ἀποκτενῶν.
(this) and also he-arrests Cyrus | as-if about-killing ;

δε ἢ μήτηρ
[with the intention of putting him to death ;] but (the) (his) mother

ἔξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν, ἀποπέμπει
having-entreated-for-her-own-sake (pardon for) him sends

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. Ὁ δ' ὥς ἀπῆλθε,
(him) back to — (his) government. — But when he-departed,

κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθεὶς, βουλευέται
(after) having-been-in-danger and disgraced, he-deliberates

ὅπως μήποτε ἔσται ἔτι ἐπὶ τῷ
how 'he-shall never 'be hereafter (dependent) on — (his)

ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ' ἢν δύνηται βασιλεύσει αὐτ'
brother, but if he-could he-would-reign instead

ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μητηρ ὑπῆρχη τῇ
of-him. Parysatis indeed — the mother went-for —

Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα
Cyrus, loving him more than the reigning

Ἀρταξέρξη. Ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτοὺς
Artaxerxes. Whoever indeed used-to-come to him

τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως, οὕτω διατιδεῖ
&-the (persons sent) from (the) king, | 'having so 'disposes

πάντα, ὥστε ἀπεπέμ-
 all, [having so disposed all towards himself,] that he-used-to-
 πετο εἶναι φίλους αὐτῷ
 'send (them) 'away-from-him (inclined) to-be friends to-himself
 καλλον ἢ βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δε ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν
 more than 'to (the) 'king. And also he-took-care of-the
 βαρβάρων παρ' ἐαυτῷ, ὥς τε εἴησαν ἱκανοὶ
 barbarians with him, in-order-that not-only they-might-be fit
 πολεμεῖν καὶ ἔχοιεν εὐνοϊκῶς
 to-wage-war but-also | might-have (themselves) [might be] well-disposed
 αὐτῷ. Δὲ ἤθροίζε τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν
 to-him. But he-collected the Greek force
 ἐπικρυπτόμενος ὥς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, ὅπως ὅτι
 concealing (this) as most he-could, in-order that
 λάβοι βασιλέα ἀπαρασκευότατον. Ὡς οὖν
 he-might-take the-king the-most-unprepared. Thus therefore
 ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογὴν. Ὅποσας φυλακὰς
 did-he-make the collection (of troops). As 'many garrisons 'as
 εἶχε ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἑκάστοις
 he-had in the cities, he-sent-instructions — to-each
 φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίους ἀνδρας ὅτι
 commander-of-them to-take Peloponnesian men as
 πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὥς
 many-as (they could) and (the) best (soldiers), inasmuch-as
 Τισσαφέρνους ἐπιβουλεύοντος ταῖς πόλεσι. Καὶ
 Tissaphernes is-plotting-against the cities. —
 γὰρ αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις ἦσαν τὸ ἀρχαῖον
 For the Ionian cities were — formerly (under the
 Τισσαφέρνους, δεδομένοι ἐκ
 government) of-Tissaphernes, (they) having-been-given (to him) by
 βασιλέως, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν πρὸς Κύρον
 (the) king, afterwards they-had-revolted to Cyrus
 πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου. Δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισ-
 all (of them) except Miletus. But Tissaphernes having-be-
 δόμενος ἐν Μιλήτῳ βουλευομέ-
 beforehand-perceived (that certain persons) in Miletus are-plan

νοὺς ἰὰ αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἀποστῆναι πρὸς
ning — these very-same (things) | to-have-revolted [to revolt] to

Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ'
Cyrus, | the indeed [some indeed] of-them he-killed, | the but

ἐξέβαλεν. Ὅ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς
[but others] he-banished. — But Cyrus having-received | (the

φεύγοντας συλλέξας στρατεύμα
fleeing) (the exiles) (and) having-collected (an) army

ἐπολιόρχει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
he-besieged Miletus both by land and by

θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπε-
sea, and he-endeavoured to-bring-back | (the having-

τωκότας. Καὶ αὖ ἦν αὕτη ἄλλη
(been)-driven-out) (the exiles). And again there-was this other

πρόφασις αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀδροῖζειν στρατεύμα.
pretext for-him | (of-the to-collect) (for assembling) (an) army.

Δὲ πέμπων πρὸς βασιλέα ἡξίου ὦν
For sending to (the) king he-requested (that) being (a)

ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ταύτας τὰς πόλεις δοδῆναι
brother of-him, those — cities (ought) to-have-been-given

οἱ μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρην ἀρχειν
to-himself rather than (that) Tissaphernes (should) rule

αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ
them, and — (his) mother supported him (in)

ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς οὐκ μὲν ᾔσδάνετο
this; therefore (the) king 'did not indeed 'perceive

τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, δὲ ἐνόμιζε αὐτὸν
the plot against himself, but he-thought he (Cyrus)

πολεμοῦντα Τισσαφέρνει δαπανᾶν ἀμφὶ
fighting with-Tissaphernes spends (his means) upon

τὰ στρατεύματα· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἤχθετο
| (the) (his) armies; | therefore 'it-was not 'hated

αὐτῶν πολεμοῦντων.
of-them fighting [therefore he was not displeased with their

Καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε βασιλεῖ
being at war]. For — Cyrus remitted 'to (the) 'king

τοὺς δασμοὺς γιγνομένους ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὧν
 the tributes arising from the cities, which

Τισσαφέρης ἐτίγχανεν ἔχων.

Tissaphernes | happened having [had].

Δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα συνελέγετο αὐτῷ ἐν
 But another army was-collected for-him in

Χερρόνησῳ τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβίδου, τόνδε
 Chersonesus (in the) right-over-against Abydos, this (was)

τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν
 the manner (thereof.) Clearchus (a) Lacedæmonian was (an)

φυγὰς· ὁ Κῦρος συγγενόμενος τούτῳ
 exile; — Cyrus having-become-acquainted with-this (man,

τε ἡγάσθη αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
 not-only was struck-with-admiration (for) him, but-also gives him

μυρίους δαρεικούς. Ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον
 ten-thousand darics. — But having-taken the gold

συνέλεξε στράτευμα ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων,
 he-collected (an) army | from these — things

καὶ ὀρμώμενος ἐκ Χερρόνησου
 [by means thereof], and making-irruptions from (the) Chersonesus

ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, τοῖς οἰκοῦσι ὑπὲρ
 he-waged-war against (the) Thracians, — (who) dwell above (the)

Ἑλλήσποντον, καὶ ὠφέλει τοῖς Ἕλληνας· καὶ
 Hellespont, and he-was-of-service to-the Greeks; and

ὥστε αἱ Ἑλλεσποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἐκούσαι συνεβάλ-
 so-that the Hellespontian towns willingly contri-

λοντο χρήματα αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφήν τῶν
 buted (the necessary) things to-him for the nourishment of-the

στρατιωτῶν. Τοῦτο δ' αὖ αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα
 soldiers. | This indeed again (was) thus — (an) army

τρεφόμενον ἐλάμβανεν αὐτῷ.
 being-maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was so

ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς
 aristippos — the Thessalian

ὧν ἐτίγχανεν αὐτῷ ξένος,
 | being happened to-him (a) guest-friend [happened to be his

καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν
 guest bound by the ties of hospitality], and being-pressed by the
 ἀντιστασιωτῶν οἶκοι ἐρχεται πρὸς τον Κῦρον, καὶ
 opposite-faction at-home he-goes to — Cyrus, and
 αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ μισθῶν
 requests (of) him — two-thousand mercenaries, and pay
 τριῶν μηνῶν, ὥς οὕτω ἂν περιγε-
 (for them for) three months, as thus | 'he might 'have-been
 νόμνος τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.
 superior [so that he might be superior to] the opposite-faction.
 Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρα-
 — But Cyrus gives him to (the number of) four-
 κισχιλίους καὶ μισθόν ἐξ μηνῶν, καὶ δεῖται
 thousand and pay (for) six months, and he-requests
 αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς
 of-him he-'would not first 'terminate (the strife) against
 τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν συμβουλευέσθῃται
 the opposite-faction before (that) — he-should-consult
 αὐτῷ. Οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ στράτευμα τρε-
 with-him [Cyrus]. | Thus — again — (an) army being-
 φόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ
 maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was secretly
 ἐν Θετταλίᾳ. Ἐκέλευσε Πρόξενον
 maintained for him] in Thessaly. He-ordered Proxenus
 δε τὸν Βοιωτὸν ὄντα ξένον αὐτῷ
 — the Boeotian | being (a) guest (of) him [who was in the ties
 λαβόντα πλείστους
 of hospitality with him] (that) | having-taken [having collected] as-many
 ἀνδρας ὅτι παραγενέσθαι, ὥς βουλούμενος
 men as-possible to-come-to (him), as-if he-were-wishing
 στρατεύεσθαι εἰς Πισίδας, ὥς, τῶν
 to-lead-an-army against (the) Pisidians, in-as-much-as, the
 Πισιδῶν παρεχόντων πράγματα τῇ χώρᾳ ἑαυτοῦ.
 Pisidians being-pretending thing in-the province of-himself
 Ἐκέλευσε δὲ Σοφαινετοὺς
 [for the Pisidians infested his territories]. He-ordered also Sophænetae

τον Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, τούτους
 the Stympheſian and Socrates the Achaian, these
 καὶ ὄντας ξένους, λαβόντας
 also being (his) guest-friends, (that) | having-taken [having collected]
 πλείστους ἄνδρας ὅτι ἐλθεῖν, ὥς
 as many men as-possible | to-have-come [to come to him], as
 πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι
 re-was-about-waging-war against-Tissaphernes with the exiles
 τῶν Μιλησίων. Καὶ οὕτοι ἐποιοῦν οὕτως.
 of-the Milesians. And they did so.

CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι
 AFTER indeed it-seemed to-him already (time) | to-go
 ἄνω, μὲν ἐποιεῖτο
 up, [to march into the interior against his brother], — he-made
 τὴν πρόφασιν ὥς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν
 (the) (this) pretext, that (he-wishing) (he was desirous) to-expel
 Πισίδας παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀδροίζει
 (the) Pisidians entirely from the territory; and he-collects
 ἐνταῦθα ὥς ἐπὶ τοίτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν
 there, as-if against these (Pisidians), the — barbarian
 καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα, καὶ παραγγέλλει τε
 and the Grecian army, and he-sends-word not-only
 τῷ Κλείρχῳ ἥκειν λαβόντι ὅσον στράτευμα
 — to-Clearchus to-come (to him) | taking whatever army
 ἦν αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ Ἀρισ-
 there-was to-him [bringing all the forces he had] but-also — Aris-
 ιππῶ, συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς
 ipi is, (that) having-been-reconciled with — (those opposed
 οἱκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
 to him) at-home | (to-have-sent) (to send) to himself (the
 στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε· καὶ παραγγέλλει Ξενία τῷ
 army which he-had: and he-sent-word to-Xenias the

Ἀρκάδι, ὃς προεστήκει τοῦ ξενικοῦ ἐν ταῖς
 Arcadian, who had-been-commander-over the mercenaries in the
 πόλεσι αὐτῷ, ἦκειν λαβόντα τοὺς ἰσθρας,
 towns for-him, to-come | taking [bringing] (all) the men,
 πλὴν ὅποσοι ἦσαν ἱκανοὶ φυλάττειν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις
 except as-many-as were sufficient to-guard the citadels
 Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας Μίλητον
 He-called-for — also — (those) besieging Miletus
 καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς φυγάδας στρατεῦσθαι σὺν αὐτῷ,
 and he-exhorted the exiles to-serve-as-soldiers with him,
 ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν,
 having-promised to-them, if 'he-should successfully 'accomplish
 ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι
 (the objects) for which he-took-the-field, || not (first) to-cease
 πρὶν καταγάγοι αὐτοὺς οἴκαδε.
 before he-might-have-led them home [he would not cease before
 Οἱ δὲ ἠδέως ἐπείδοντο· γὰρ
 he led them home]. — — 'They cheerfully 'obeyed (him); for
 ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα
 they-believed him; and having-taken — (their) arms
 παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ
 | were-present at [joined him at] Sardis. Xenias also —
 παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις λαβὼν τοὺς
 came to Sardis having-taken (with him) the (soldiers)
 ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὀπλίτας εἰς τετρα-
 from the towns, (being) heavy-armed-men to-the-number-of four-
 κισχιλίους· Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὀπλί-
 thousand; Proxenus — | was-present [came] having heavy-
 τας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους,
 armed-men — to-the-number-of five-hundred and a-thousand,
 δὲ πεντακοσίους γυμνήτας· Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ
 also five-hundred light-armed; Sophænetus likewise, the
 Στυμφάλιος ἔχων χιλίους ὀπλίτας· Σωκράτης
 Stymphalian having a-thousand heavy-armed-men; Socrates
 δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιοὺς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ὀπλίτας
 also the Achaean having about five-hundred heavy-armed-men

Πασιῶν ὁ Μεγαρεὺς δὲ παρεγένετο ἔχων μὲν
Pasion the Megarean also came having —

εἰς τριακοσίους ὀπλίτας, δὲ τριακοσίους
to-the-number-of three-hundred heavy-armed-men, and three-hundred

πελταστὰς· καὶ δὲ οὗτος ἦν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης
peltastæ, both he was and (also) — Socrates

τῶν στρατευομένων ἀμφὶ Μίλητον.
(among) — (those) serving-in-the-army at Miletus

Οὗτοι μὲν ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ εἰς Σάρδεις.
These indeed | arrived-at to-him [joined him] at Sardis.

Τισσαφέρνης δὲ κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ ἡγησάμενος
Tissaphernes - having-observed these-things, and having-considered

τὴν παρασκευὴν εἶναι μείζονα ἢ ὥς ἐπὶ
the preparation to-be greater than as-if against (the)

Πισίδας, πορεύεται ὥς βασιλέα τάχιστα ἢ
Pisidians, he-set-out to (the) king as-speedily as

ἐδύνατο, ἔχων ὥς πεντακοσίους ἵππείας. Καὶ
he-could, having about five-hundred cavalry. And (the)

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρα Τισσαφέρνους
king — therefore, after he-heard from Tissaphernes

τὸν στόλον Κύρου ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.
(of) the military-expedition of-Cyrus began-to-prepare-himself-against-it.

Κῦρος δὲ, ἔχων οὓς εἶρηκα ὥρμα·
Cyrus —, | having which I-have-said [as I said] put-himself-in-

το ἀπὸ Σάδων· καὶ ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας
motion from Sardis; (and) he-advances through — Lydia

τρεῖς σταδμοὺς, εἰκοσι
| three stations [three days' march], (being a distance of) twenty

καὶ δύο παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Μαίανδρον.
and two parasangs, to the river Mæander.

Τὸ εὖρος τούτου δύο πλέθρα·
The breadth of-this (river was) two plethra; [about 200 feet]; (a,

γέφυρα δὲ ἐπὶν ἐξευγμένη ἑπτὰ πλοίοις.
bridge — was-over (it) connected-together by-seven boats.

Διαβάς τούτου ἐξελαίνει διὰ Φρυγίας
Having-crossed-over this river) he-advances through Phrygia

ἓνα σταδμόν ὅκτ' παρασάγγας, εἰς
one station [one day's march] (being) eight parasangs, to

Κολοσσάς οἰκουμένην πόλιν, εὐδαίμονα καὶ
Colossa, (an) inhabited town, wealthy and

μεγάλην. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας· καὶ
large. Here he-remained seven days; and

Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦκε ἔχων χιλίους
Men^o the Thessalian came (to him) having (a) thousand

ὀπλίτας καὶ πεντακοσίους πελταστας,
heavy-armed-men and five-hundred peltastæ [targetiers],

Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.
(they being) Dolopians and Ænians and Olynthians.

Ἔντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει τρεῖς σταδμούς
Hence he-advances three stations [three days' march]

εἰκοσιν παρασάγγας εἰς Κελαινάς οἰκουμένην
(making) twenty parasangs to Celænæ (an) inhabited

πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα.
town of-the Phrygians, large and wealthy.

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν βασιλεία Κίρω
| Here there-was (a) palace for-Cyrus, [here Cyrus had a pa-

καὶ μέγας παράδεισος, πλήρης ἀγρίων θηρίων,
lace] and (a) large park, full of-wild beasts,

ᾧ ἐκεῖνος ἐδήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε
which he used-to-hunt | from horse, [on horseback], | when

βούλοιτο γυμνάσαι ἑαυτόν
he-might-wish to-have-exercised [when he wished to exercise] himself

τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. Ὁ ποταμὸς Μαίανδρος ρεῖ
— and the horses. The river Mæander flows

διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου· δὲ αἱ πηγαὶ
through (the) middle — of-the park; | and the springs

αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων.
of-it are from the palace; [and its springs issue from

δὲ καὶ ρεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως Κελαινῶν.
the palace]; and also it flows through the city of-Celænæ.

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἐρμυνὰ βασιλεία μεγάλου
There-is also — (a) fortified palace 'of (the) 'great

βασιλεως ἐν Κελαιναῖς, ἐπὶ ταῖς
 king [the king of Persia] in Celænæ, (situated) at the
 πηγαῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Μαρσίου, ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει
 sources of-the river Marsyas, under the citadel;
 οὗτος δὲ καὶ ῥεῖ δια τῆς πόλεως, καὶ
 this (river) also — flows through the city, and
 ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τὸ δὲ εὖρος τοῦ
 empties into the Mæander; the — breadth of-the
 Μαρσίου ἐστὶν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.
 Marsyas is twenty and five | of-feet [feet]
 Ἐνταῦθα Ἀπόλλων λέγεται ἐκδεῖρα Μαρσίαν.
 Here Apollo is-said to-have-flayed Marsyas
 νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ
 having-conquered (him) | contending — (they contending) about
 σοφίας, καὶ κρεμάσαι τὸ δέρμα ἐν τῷ ἀντρώ
 music, and to-have-hung-up the skin in the cave
 ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ τοῦτο δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς
 whence the springs (rise); from this indeed the river
 καλεῖται Μαρσύας. Ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἀπεχώρει
 is-called Marsyas. Here Xerxes, when he-departed
 ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ, λέγεται
 from — Greece having-been-defeated in-the battle, is-said
 οἰκοδομῆσαι τε ταῦτά τα βασιλεία καὶ τὴν
 to-have-built also this — palace and the
 ἀκρόπολιν Κελαινῶν. Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἔμεινε
 citadel of-Celænæ. Here Cyrus remained
 τριάκοντα ἡμέρας καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος
 thirty days and Clearchus the Lacedæmonian
 φυγὰς ἦκε, ἔχων χιλίους ὀπλίτας, καὶ
 exile came (to him), having a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and
 ὀκτακοσίους Θρᾶκας | πελταστὰς, καὶ διακοσίους
 eight-hundred Thracian | targetiers, and two-hundred
 Κρήτας τοξότας. Δε καὶ ἅμα Σωκράτης ὁ
 Crætan archers. And also at-the-same-time Socrates the
 Συρακόσιος παρὴν ἔχων τριακοσίους
 Syracusian | was-present [arrived] having three-hundred

ὀπλίτας, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκᾶς, ἔχων χιλίους
heavy-armed-men, and Sophænetus the Arcadian, having a-thousand

ὀπλίτας. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐποίησεν
heavy-armed-men. And here Cyrus made (an)

ἀριθμὸν καὶ ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήων ἐν τῷ
enumeration and (had a) review of-the Greeks in the

παρδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγενοντὸ οἱ σύμπαντες, μὲν
park, and they-were — all-together, (indeed)

μῦριοι καὶ χίλιοι ὀπλίται, δε ἀμφὶ τοῖς
ten-thousand and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, but about —

δισχιλίους πελτασταί.

two-thousand peltastæ [light-armed men and targetiers].

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς,

Hence he-advances two stations [two days' march],

δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Πέλτας, οἰκουμένην
(making) ten parasangs to Peltæ, (a) peopled

πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν αἷς
city. Here he-remained three days; in which (days)

Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκᾶς ἐδύσε τὰ Λύκαια καὶ ἐθήκε
Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycæan-rites, and instituted (a)

ἀγῶνα· τὰ δὲ ἀδλα ἦσαν χρυσαῖ
contest; [public games]; the — prizes were golden

στλεγγίδες· καὶ δὲ Κῦρος ἐδεῶρει τὸν ἀγῶνα.
strigils; and also Cyrus viewed the public-games.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς, δώδεκα
Hence he-marches-forth two stations, (making) twelve

παρασάγγας εἰς ἀγοράν Κεραμῶν,
parasangs to (the) market-place 'of (the) 'Ceramians, (an)

οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἐσχάτην
inhabited city, (the) last (on the road to Mysia) (and)

πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει τρεῖς
next-to the Mysian territory. Hence he-advances three

σταδμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας,
stations, [days' march], (making) thirty parasangs,

εἰς πεδῖον Καῦστρου, οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ'
to (the) plain of-Caÿstrus, (an) inhabited city. Here

ἔμεινε πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ μισδός ὤφειλετο τοῖς
 ne-remained five days; and pay was-due to-the

στρατιώταις πλεον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ ἰόντες
 soldiers (for) more than three months, and going

πολλάκις ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπῆλθον.
 often | to the gates [to his quarters] they-demanded (it)

Δὲ ὁ λεγων ἐλπίδας διῆγε.
 But — Cyrus | saying hopes [giving hopes] | passed-the-time [put

καὶ ἦν δῆλος ἀνιώμενος· γὰρ ἦν οἱ
 them off], and he-was manifestly distressed; for it-was not

πρὸς τρόπου τοῦ Κίρου μὴ ἀποδιδόναι
 of the-nature — of-Cyrus not to-pay

ἔχοντα.
 ne-having (wherewith so to do).

Ἐνταῦθα Ἐπίαξα ἡ γυνή Συεννέσιος τοῦ
 Here Epyaxa the wife of-Syennesis the

βασιλέως Κιλικῶν ἀφικνεῖται, παρὰ
 king 'of (the) 'Cilicians arrives, (on a visit) to

Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο δοῦναι Κίρῳ πολλά χρήματα.
 Cyrus; and she-was-said to-have-given Cyrus much money.

Κῦρος δ' οὖν τότε ἀπέδωκε τῇ στρατιᾷ μισδὸν
 Cyrus — therefore then paid the army (their) wages

τεττάρων μηνῶν. Ἡ Κίλισσα δὲ καὶ εἶχε
 for-four months. The Cilician (queen) also — had (a)

φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ Ἀσπεν-
 guard with her (composed of) Cilicians and Aspen-

δίους· καὶ δὲ ἐλέγετο Κῦρον συγγενέσθαι τῇ
 dians; and also it-was-said (that) Cyrus had-connexion with-the

Κιλίσσῃ. Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς,
 Cilician (queen). Hence — he-marches-forth two stations,

δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Θύμβριον, οἰκουμένην
 (making) ten parasangs to Thymbrium, (a) peopled

πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη
 town. Here there-was, by the road (side) (a) fountain

ἡ καλουμένη Μίδου τοῦ βασιλέως
 which was-called (the fountain of) Midas, the king

Φρυγῶν, ἐφ' ἣ Μίδας λεγεται θηρεῦσαι τῶν
of-Phrygia, at which, Midas is-said to-have-captured the

Σάτυρον, κεράσας αὐτὴν οἶνω. Ἐντεῦδε
Satyr, having-mixed it [the fountain] with-wine. Hence

ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς δέκα παρασάγγας,
he-marches-forth two stations (making) ten parasangs.

εἰς Τυριαῖον οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε
to Tyriæum (an) inhabited town. Here he-remained

τρεις ἡμέρας, καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα λεγεται δεηθῆναι
three days, and the Cilician (queen) is-said to-have-requested

Κίρου ἐπιδείξαι τὸ στρατεύμα αὐτῇ.
of-Cyrus | to-have-shown [to show] | (the) (his) army to-her.

Οὖν βουλόμενος ἐπιδείξαι, ποιεῖται
He therefore 'willing | to-have-shown [to show it], makes (a)

ἐξέτασιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν
review in the plains of-the Greeks and of-the

βαρβάρων. Ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὕτω
barbarians. He-orders — the Greeks | so

ταχθῆναι ὥς νόμος αὐτοῖς
to-have-been-arranged [so to be marshalled] as (was the) custom for-them

εἰς μάχην καὶ στῆναι, δὲ ἕκαστον
in battle, and to-stand (in such order), but (that) each

συντάξαι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.
(commander) was-to-arrange | the of-himself [his own men]. | 'They-

Οὖν ἐτάχθησαν ἐπὶ τεττάρων.
were therefore 'arranged in fours; [they were drawn up

Μένων μὲν δὲ, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἶχε
four deep]; Menon indeed — and | (the) (those) with him had

τὸ δεξιὸν, δὲ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου
the right, but Clearchus | and the of-him [and his men]

τὸ εὐώνυμον, οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ δὲ τὸ μέσον.
the left, the other commanders — the centre.

Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν μὲν πρῶτον ἐδεῶρει τοὺς βαρβάρους
— Cyrus therefore — first reviewed the barbarians

ἢ δὲ παρήλαυνον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἵλας καὶ
— and they-marched-fast-him drawn-up in troops and

κατὰ τάξεις, δὲ εἶτα τοῖς Ἕλληνας
in companies, and afterwards (he reviewed) the Greeks

παρελαίνων ἐφ' ἅρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ'
riding-by-them in (his) chariot, and the Cilician (queen) in

ἅρμαμάξης. Πάντες δὲ εἶχον χαλκὰ κράνη, καὶ
(a) covered-carriage. All — had brazen helmets, and

φοινικοῦς χιτῶνας, καὶ κνημίδας, καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας
scarlet tunics, and greaves, and the shields

ἐκκεκαδαρμενας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ παρήλασε πάντας.
burnished. After — he-had-ridden-past all,

στήσας τὸ ἄρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος,
having-stopped — (his) chariot in-front-of the phalanx, (and)

πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνεα παρὰ τοῖς στρατη-
having-sent Pigres the interpreter to the comman-

γούς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκελευσε προβαλεσθαι
ders of-the Greeks he-commanded (them) to-thrust-forward

τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι τὴν
— (their) arms, and | to-have-moved-forward [to move forward] the

ὅλην φάλαγγα. Οἱ δὲ προεῖπον ταῦτα
entire phalanx. • The (commanders) — announced these

τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλ-
(things) to-the soldiers; and after it-was-sounded-with-the

πιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τὰ ὅπλα, ἐπίεσαν.
trumpet, putting-forward — (their) arms, they-advanced.

Δὲ ἐκ τοῦτου προϋόντων δᾶσσον σὺν κραυγῇ
And from this going-on more-quickly with (a) shout, | (a)

δρόμος ἐγενετο τοῖς στρατιώταις
running happened to-the soldiers [the soldiers commenced ran-

ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. Καὶ δὲ
sing] of — their-own-accord to the tents. And also

πολὺς φόβος ἄλλοις τῶν βαρβάρων, καὶ
(there was) (a) great fear to-others of-the barbarians, and

τε ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφυγεν ἐκ τῆς ἅρμαμάξης, καὶ
— the Cilician (queen) fled from the Persian-carriage, and

οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἐφυγον καταλιπόντες τὰ
(those) in the markets fled having-left-behind the

ἄνια· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰς
things exposed-to-sale; but the Greeks went to the

σκηνας συν γέλῳτι. Δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα
tents with laughter. (But) the Cilician (queen) having-seen

τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος
the splendour and the discipline of-the army

ἔδαίμασε. Δὲ Κῦρος ἥσθη ἰδὼν τὸν
was-struck-with-admiration. (But) Cyrus was-delighted seeing the

φόβον ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους.
fear (inspired) by the Greeks into the barbarians.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι
Hence he-marches-forth three stations, (making) twenty

παρασάγγας, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς
parasangs, to Iconium, (the) last town —

Φρυγίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.
of-Phrygia. Here he-remained three days.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας πέντε
Hence he-marches-forth through — Lycania five

σταδμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας. Ἐπέτρεψε
stations, (making) thirty parasangs: He-permitted

τοῖς Ἕλλησι διαρπάσαι τὴν ταύτην
the Greeks | (to-have-plundered) (to plunder) — this

χώραν, ὡς οὖσαν πολεμίαν. Ἄ Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος
country, as being hostile. Hence Cyrus

ἀποπεμπεῖ τὴν Κίλισσαν τὴν ταχίστην
sends-away the Cilician (queen) by-the | quickest [shortest]

ὁδὸν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· καὶ συμέπεμψεν αὐτῇ
road into — Cilicia; and he-sent-with her (the)

στρατιώτας, οὓς Μένων εἶχε, καὶ αὐτόν.
soldiers, that Menon had, and (Menon) himself.

Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει δια Καπ-
Cyrus indeed with the others marches-forth through Cap-

παδοκίας τέτταρας σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε
padocia four stations, (making) twenty and five

παρασίγγας, πρὸς Δάναν οἰκουμένην πόλιν,
parasangs, to Dana (a) peopled town

μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς
large and wealthy. Here they-remained three

ἡμέρας· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινε Πέρσῃν
days; during which (time) Cyrus put-to-death (a) Persian

ἄνδρα Μεγαφερίην, βασίλειον φοινικιστήν,
(man) Megaphernes (by name), (a) royal purple-wearer

καὶ τινὰ ἕτερόν δυνάστην τῶν ὑπάρχων
(and) a-certain other powerful-person of-the officers-high-in-command

αἰτίαςάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.
having-accused (him) | to-conspire to-him [of conspiring against

ἑντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν
him]. Hence they-endeavoured to-throw-themselves into —

Κιλικίαν· δε ἡ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς
Cilicia; but the entrance was (a) road (only broad enough for a

ἁμαξιτός, ἰσχυρῶς ὄρδια, καὶ ἀμήχανος
single) wagon-way, very steep, and impracticable 'for (an)

στρατεύματι εἰσελθεῖν, εἴ τις ἐκώλυε. Καὶ δε
'army to-enter, if any-one opposed. And also

Συεννεσις ἐλέγετο εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, φυλάττων
Syennesis was-said to-be on the heights, guarding

τὴν εἰσβολήν· δι' ὃ ἔμεινεν ἡμέραν ἐν
the entrance; for which (reason) he-remained (a) day on

τῷ πεδίῳ. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγγελος ἦκε λέγων
the plain. But on-the next-day (a) messenger came saying

ὅτι Συεννεσις εἶη λελοιπῶς τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ
that Syennesis | might-be having-left [had left] the heights, after

ᾗσδετο ὅτι τὸ στρατεύμα Μένωνος ἦν ἤδη ἐν
he-perceived that the army of-Menon was already in

Κιλικίᾳ, εἰσω τῶν ὄρέων, καὶ ὅτι ἤκουε
Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he-heard (that)

Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τριήρεις τὰς Λακε-
Tamos having galleys (namely) — (those) 'of (the) 'Lace-

δαίμονίων καὶ Κύρου αὐτοῦ, περιπλε-
dæmonians and of-Cyrus himself, (and that) 'he (Tamos) 'was-sail-

ούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν. Κῦρος δ' οὖν
ing-round from Ionia into Cilicia. Cyrus — therefore

ἀνέβη ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλίωντος, καὶ εἶδε
ascended (on) the mountains, no-one opposing, and he-saw

τὰς σκηνάς, οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφίλαττον. Ἐντεῦθεν
the tents, where the Cilicians kept-guard. Hence

δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς μέγα καὶ καλὸν πεδίον,
— he-descended into (a) large and beautiful plain,

ἐπιρρύτον, καὶ ἔμπλεων παντοδαπῶν δένδρων καὶ
well-watered, and (being)-full of-all-kinds of-trees and

ἀμπελων· καὶ δὲ φέρει πολὺ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην,
vines; and also it-bears much sesamum, and panicle,

καὶ κεγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθάς. Ὅρος δ'
and millet, and wheat, and barley. (A) mountain(chain)—

ὄχυρόν καὶ ὑψηλὸν περιέχει αὐτὸ
strong (by nature and art) and high surrounds it

πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.
on-all-sides from sea to sea.

Καταβάς δὲ διὰ τοῦτου τοῦ πεδίου ἦλассε
Descending — through this — plain he-proceeds

τετταρας σταδιοὺς, πέντε καὶ εἰκοσι παρα-
four days' march, (making) five and twenty para-

σάγγας, εἰς Ταρσοὺς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα πόλιν
sangs, to Tarsus (a) large and wealthy city

τῆς Κιλικίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασιλεία
— of-Cilicia. Here were the palaces

Συεννέσιος τοῦ βασιλέως Κιλικίων· δὲ δια
of-Syennesis the king 'of (the) 'Cilicians; and through (the)

μέσῃ τῆς πόλεως ρεῖ ποταμός ὄνομα
middle of-the city runs (a) river (the) name (of which is)

Κύδνος, εὖρος δὶο πλέθρον. Οἱ
Cydnus, (the) breadth (of which is) two plethra. — (Those)

ἐνοικοῦντες τὴν ταύτην πόλιν ἐξέλιπον μετὰ
inhabiting — this city deserted (it) together-with

Συεννεσιος εἰς ὄχυρόν χωρίον ἐπὶ τα ὄρη, πλὴν
Syennesis for (a) fortified place on the mountains, except

οἱ ἔχοντες τὰ καπηλεῖα· καὶ δὲ οἱ οἰκοῦντες
— (those) having — shops; and also — (those) dwelling

ἤλκε την θάλατταν ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.
 near the sea at Soli and at Issua,

Ἐπίαξα δέ, ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος ἀφίκετο εἰς Ταρσοὺς
 Epyaxa also, the wife of-Syennesis arrived at Tarsus

πέντε ἡμέρας προτερα Κίρου· δε ἐν τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
 five days before Cyrus; but in the crossing-over

τῶν ὄρων, τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίον,
 of-the mountains, — (namely, those which descend) to the plain,

δύο λόχοι στρατεύματος τοῦ Μένωνος
 two companies 'of (the) 'army — of-Menon

ἀπώλοντο. Οἱ μὲν ἐφασαν ἀρπάζοντάς
 perished. — (Some) indeed said | (that while) plundering

τι κατακοπῆναι
 something to-have-been-cut-to-pieces [that they had been cut to pieces

ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλικίων· δε οἱ
 while plundering] by the Cilicians; but — (others) (that)

υπολειφθέντας, καὶ οὐ δυναμέουσ εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο
 being-left-behind, and not being-able to-find the rest (of the)

στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδοὺς εἴτα πλανωμένους
 army nor the roads after wandering-about

ἀπολέσθαι· οὗτοι δὲ οὖν ἦσαν ἑκατὸν ὀπλίται.
 to-have-perished; these — therefore were a-hundred heavy-armed-men.

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, ὀργιζόμενοι
 But the rest (of Menon's command) after they-arrived, enraged

διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν διήρπασαν
 at the destruction — (of their) fellow-soldiers plundered

τὴν τε πόλιν τοῖς Ταρσοῖς, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν
 the — city — Tarsus, and the palaces — in

αὐτῇ. Κύρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,
 it. Cyrus indeed after he-entered into the city,

μετεπεμπετο τον Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ
 sent-for — Syennesis (to come) to him; —

δ' ἔφη οὔτε πω πρότερον ἔλθειν εἰς χεῖρας
 but he-said | never yet before-this to-have-come into hands

οὐδενί

[that never yet before this had he put himself in the power of] any-person

κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ, οὔτε ἥδελε τότε ἰέναι
superior-in-power (to) himself, neither would-he then | (to-go) (go)

Κύρῳ, πρὶν ἢ γυνὴ ἔπεισε αὐτόν, καὶ ἔλαβε
to-Cyrus, before — (his) wife 'brought him 'to-it, and he-received

πίστεις. Μετα δε ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο
assurances (of safety). After — these-things, when they-met

ἀλλήλοις, Σύννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ πολλὰ χρήματα
one-another, Syennesis (indeed) gave Cyrus many things

εἰς τὴν στρατιάν, δε Κύρος ἐκείνῳ δῶρα, ἃ
for — (his) army, and Cyrus (gave) to-him gifts, which

νομίζεται τίμια παρὰ βασιλεῖ
are-accustomed-to-be-held as-valuable by (a) king (namely) (a)

ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον, καὶ χρυσοῦν στρεπτόν, καὶ
horse having-a-golden-bridle, and a-golden twisted-collar, and

ψέλλια, καὶ χρυσοῦν ἀκινάκην, καὶ Περσικὴν στολὴν,
bracelets, and a-golden scimitar, and a-Persian robe,

καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι ἀφαρπάζεσθαι.
and (he agreed that) the country (was) not-hereafter to-be-plundered;

δὲ ἀπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα,
and (that they were) to-receive-back the captured slaves,

ἢν που ἐντυγχάνωσι.
if any-where they-meet-with-them.

CHAPTER III

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατία ἔμεινε εἴκοσιν
HERE Cyrus and the army remained twenty

ἡμέρας· γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφασαν οὐκ ἰέναι τοῦ
days; | for the soldiers said not to-go —

πρόσω. Γὰρ ἤδη
farther [for the soldiers refused to go any farther]. For already

ἐπώπτευν ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
they-suspected | to-go against (the) king; [that they were going

δὲ ἔφασαν οὐ
against the king of Persia]; and they-said (that they) 'were not

μισθωθῆναι ἐπὶ τοιῷτω. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρῶτος
hired for this (purpose, Clearchus — first

ἐβιάζετο τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτοῦ
endeavoured-to-compel | the soldiers of-him [his soldiers]

ἵεναι· οἱ δὲ τε ἐβαλλον αὐτόν
to-go; — but — (his men) began-to-pelt him (with stones)

καὶ τὰ ἵποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου,
and (also) the beasts-of-burden | the of-him, [belonging to him],

ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προΐεναι. Κλεαρχος δὲ μὲν τότε
after he-began to-advance. Clearchus indeed — then

μικρὸν ἐξεφυγε μὴ τὸ καταπετρωθῆναι.
narrowly escaped | lest the to-have-been-stoned; [stoning to death];

ἵστερον δ', ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται
at-length —, after he-knew that he-'would not 'be-able

βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν στρατιωτῶν
to-use-force, he-brought-together (a) meeting | of-the soldiers

αὐτοῦ. Καὶ μὲν πρῶτον ἐστῶς
of-him [of his soldiers]. And — at-first standing (before them)

ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον· δὲ οἱ ὁρῶντες
he-shed-tears (for a) long time; but — (they) seeing-this

ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε
wondered and were-silent; afterwards — he-spoke-to-them

τοιάδε.
thus.

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλε-
Men soldiers, 'do not 'wonder that 'I griev-

πῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασι. Γάρ
ously 'bear the present (state of) things. | For

Κῦρος ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοὶ
Cyrus became (a) guest-friend to-me [for Cyrus bound himself to

καὶ ἐτίμησε με, φεύγοντα
me by the ties of hospitality] and he-honoured me, (an) exile

ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, τε τὰ ἄλλα,
from — (my) country, | and the others, [and also in other

καὶ ἔδωκε μυρίους δαρεικούς
things], and (in particular) he-gave (me) ten-thousand darics

οὐς ἐγὼ λαβὼν, οὐ κατεδέμην ἑμοὶ εἰς τὸ
which I having-taken, 'did not 'put-by for-myself for — (my.

ἰδίων, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καδηδυπάδησα, ἀλλ' ἔδαπάνων
own-private (use), — neither did-I-spend-it-in-luxury, but I-spent-it

εἰς ὑμᾶς. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς τοὺς
for you. For first — I-would-war against the

Θρᾷκας, καὶ μεθ' ὑμῶν ἐτιμωροῦμην ὑπὲρ
Thracians, and together-with you I-took-vengeance (on them) for

τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἐξελαίνων αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς Χερρόνησου,
— Greece, expelling them from the Chersonesus,

βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοῖς
(they) desiring to-take-away the land (of) the

Ἕλληνας ἐνοικοῦντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει
Greeks dwelling-there. After — Cyrus called-me

ἐπορευόμεν, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς, ἵνα εἰ τι
I-went, taking you (with me), in-order-that if —

δεοίτο ὠφελοῖν αὐτὸν ἀνδ' ἢ
he-might-need (my assistance) I-might-help him | for (those things)

ὧν ἐπαδὼν εὔ ὑπ' ἐκείνου.
of-which I-was-affected beneficially by him [in return for the bene-

fits I have received from him]. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὑμεῖς βοίλεσθε οὐ
Since however you wish not

συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκη δὴ μοι
to-accompany (him), | the-necessity — (is) to-me [I am constrained]

ἢ προδόντα ὑμᾶς χρῆσθαι τῇ φιλίᾳ Κύρου,
either (by) deserting you | to-use the friendship of-Cyrus,

ἢ ψευσάμενον
[to preserve the friendship of Cyrus], or having-deceived (him by being

πρὸς ἐκείνον ἵέναι μεθ' ὑμῶν. Εἰ μὲν δὴ
false) towards him to-go with you. | If indeed —

ποιήσω δίκαια οἶδα οὐκ
I-shall-make just-things I-know not [whether indeed I shall act cor-

αἰρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς, καὶ συν
rectly, I know not] I-shall-hold — therefore (to) you, and with

ὑμῖν πείσομαι ὃ τι ἂν δεῖ. Καὶ οὐδεὶς
you will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. | And no-one

οὔποτε ἔρει, ὥς ἐγώ
 shall never 'have-said, [and no one shall ever say], that I
 ἀγαγὼν Ἕλληνας εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς
 having-led Greeks among the barbarians, deserting
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἰλόμεν τὴν φιλίαν τῶν βαρ-
 the Greeks took-in-preference the friendship of-the bar-
 βάρων. Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς οὐ θέλετε πείδεσθαι
 barians. But since you 'do not 'desire to-obey
 ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ ἐπείθεσθαι, ἐγὼ ἐψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ
 me nor to-follow (me), I will-follow (with) you, and
 πείσομαι ὃ τι ἂν δέη. Γὰρ νομίζω
 will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. For I-consider
 ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐμοὶ καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ
 you to-be to-me (and) (my) country, and (my) friends and (my)
 συμμάχους, καὶ ἂν μὲν οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν
 fellow-soldiers, and 'I may indeed 'think (that) with you (I am)
 εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ᾧ, δὲ ὧν ἔρημος ὑμῶν,
 to-be honoured wherever 'I may 'be, but being destitute of-you,
 ἂν οἶμαι οἷόν ἐστιν ἵκανός οἱτ' ἂν ὠφελῆσαι
 I may 'think (myself) not to-be competent either — to-help
 φίλον, οἷόν ἐστιν ἵκανός οἱτ' ἂν ὠφελῆσαι. Ὡς οὖν
 (a) friend, or — — repel (an) enemy. That therefore
 ἐμοῦ ἰόντος, ὅπου καὶ ὑμεῖς ἂν, οὕτω ἔχετε
 I am-going, where also you may (be going), then hold-to
 τὴν γνώμην. Ταῦτα
 — (this) opinion (that I am determined to go with you). | These-things
 εἶπε· δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται, οἳ τε
 he-said [thus did he speak]; and the soldiers, | — as-well
 ἐκείνου αὐτοῦ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,
 of-those of-himself, [as well those of his own command], as the others,
 ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ὅτι φαίη οὐ
 hearing these-things, that he-should-say (that he was) not
 πορεύεσθαι παρα βασιλέα, ἐπῆνεσαν· πλείους ἢ
 to-march-forth against (the) king, they-applauded; more than
 δισχίλιοι παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος,
 two-thousand (soldiers) from — Xenias and Pasion.

λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἔστρα-
taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage en-

τοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κύρος δὲ ἀπορῶν
camped with Clearchus. Cyrus — being-perplexed

τε καὶ λυποῖμενος τούτοις, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέ-
and also distressed at-these-things, sent-for — Cle-

αρχον· ὁ δὲ ἤθελε οὐ μὲν ἰέναι, λάδρα δὲ
archus; who however would not — go, unknown however (to)

τῶν στρατῶτῶν πέμπων ἄγγελον αὐτῷ ἔλεγε
the soldiers, sending (a) messenger to-him, he-told (him)

θαρρεῖν, ὥς τούτων καταστησομένων εἰς τὸ
to-be-of-good-courage | as these-things being-arranged in the

δεῖν· δὲ
required-manner; [as those affairs would be satisfactorily arranged]; also

μεταπέμπεσθαι ἐκέλευεν αὐτὸν·
(he requested Cyrus) to-send (and again) request him

δ' αὐτὸς ἔφη
(to come to him); but he (after being sent for again) said (that he

οὐκ ἰέναι. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς
would) not go. After — this assembling | the

δὲ στρατιώτας ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ τοὺς
— soldiers of-himself, [his soldiers] and — (those)

προσελθόντας αὐτῷ, καὶ τὸν βουλόμενον τῶν
having-joined him, and the desirous of-the

ἱέλων, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
| er (soldiers to be present), he-spoke thus (to them.)

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὲν δὴ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ
Men soldiers, (it is) indeed — evident that | the (affairs)

Κύρου ἔχει οὕτως πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὥσπερ τὰ
of-Cyrus hold (themselves) so to us, as —

ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον·
our (affairs do) to him; [the affairs of Cyrus are in the

γὰρ οὔτε ἡμεῖς ἐτι
same relation to us, that ours are to him]; for neither (are) we now

στρατιῶται ἐκείνου γε ἐπεὶ οὐ
! (the) soldiers of-him [his soldiers] at-least after we-do not

συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὔτε ἐκεῖνος ἐτι μισθοδότης
 'follow him, nor (is) he now paymaster
 ἡμῖν. Ὅτι μὲντοι νομίζει ἀδικοῦσθαι ὑφ'
 us. That however he-thinks (himself) injured by
 ἡμῶν οἶδα· καὶ ὥστε αὐτοῦ μεταπεμπομένου
 us I-know; and so-that he sending-for (me)
 ἔδελω οὐκ ἔλθειν, μὲν τὸ μέγιστον,
 I-will not have-gone, [go], indeed (what is) the greatest,
 αἰσχυρόμενος, ὅτι σὶνοιδα ἑμαντῷ
 being-ashamed, because I-am-conscious to-myself (of)
 ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν πάντα, καὶ δὲ ἐπειτα
 having-deceived him in-all (this), and indeed then-also
 δεδιως, μή, λαβὼν με ἐπιδῆ
 having-feared, lest, having-seized me | he-may-have-inflicted [he may
 δίχην, ὧν νομίζει
 inflict] punishment, (for the things) | of-which [in which] he-thinks (him-
 ἡδικοῦσθαι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. Οὖν δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ
 self) to-have-been-injured by me. Therefore (this) seems to-me
 εἶναι οὐχ ὥρα ἡμῖν καθεύδειν, οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν
 to-be no time for-us to-sleep, nor to-neglect our
 αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ βουλευέσθαι ὃ, τι χρὴ ποιεῖν
 selves but to-deliberate — what is-necessary to-do
 ἐκ τούτων. Καὶ ἔως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ,
 [from these [next]. And as (long) indeed (as) we-remain here,
 δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι σκεπτέον, ὅπως μενοῦμεν
 it-seems to-me to-be necessary-to-be-considered, how 'we (may) 'remain
 ἀσφαλέστατα, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως
 the-most-securely, if also (it) now seems (best) to-depart, how
 ἀπιμεν ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ ὅπως ἔξομεν τὰ
 we-may-depart the-most-safely, and how we-shall-have the
 ἐπιτήδεια· γὰρ ἀνευ τούτων οὐδέν
 necessities-of-life; for without these (necessaries) | (there is) no
 ὄφελος οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε
 advantage | neither [either] (to the) commander | nor [or] (to the)
 ἰδιώτου.
 private-soldier [the commander and private soldier are alike inefficient].

Δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ μεν φίλος ἄξιος πολλοῦ
But the man (is) indeed (a) friend worthy of-much (estimation)

ᾧ ἂν ᾗ φίλος, δὲ χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς,
to-whom 'he may 'be (a) friend, but (a) most-bitter enemy,

ᾧ ἂν ᾗ πολέμος· ἔχει δὲ καὶ δύναμιν
to-whom 'he may 'be (an) enemy; he-has — also (a) force

καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἵππικὴν καὶ ναυτικὴν, ἣν
both foot and cavalry, also (a) naval (one), which 'we

πάντες ὁμῶς ὁρῶμεν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ
all alike 'see and also know; and (this is

γὰρ δοκοῦμέν μοι καθῆσθαι οὐδὲ
not strange) for we-seem to-me | to-sit [to be encamped] not-indeed

πόρρο αὐτοῦ· ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὃ τι τις
far-from him; wherefore (it is) time to-say what — any-one

γινώσκει εἶναι ἄριστον. / Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐπαύσατο.
knows to-be better. / Saying this he-finished.

Ἐκ τούτο δ' ἀνίσταντο, οἱ μὲν ἐκ
Upon this then (several) rose (to speak), — (some) indeed —

τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέγοντες ἃ ἐγίγ-
— of-their-own-accord, | (about)-saying [intending to say] what they-

νωσκον, καὶ οἱ δὲ ἐγκέλευστοι ὑπ'
thought (of affairs) and — (others) indeed ordered by

ἐκείνου ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία
him [Clearchus] pointing-out what might-be the difficulty

ἄνευ τῆς γνώμης Κύρου καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι.
without the consent of-Cyrus both to-remain and to-go.

Δὲ εἷς δὴ προσποιοῦμενος σπεύδειν
And one namely (of those instructed) pretending earnestly-to-desire

πορεύεσθαι ὥς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
to-proceed as speedily-as-possible to — Greece,

εἶπε, ἄλλους στρατηγούς μὲν ἐλέσθαι
said, (that) other commanders — | to-have-been-chosen

ὥς τάχιστα, εἰ Κλέαρχος μὴ
[were to be chosen] as speedily-as-possible, if Clearchus 'is not

βούλεται ἀπάγειν· δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
'willing to-lead-them-back; (that) also the necessities-of-life

ἀγοράζεσθαι, δ' ἦν ἡ ἀγορά ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ
are-to-be-bought, for there-was — (a) market in the barbarian

στρατεύματι, καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι. δ'
army, and-also (the) baggage-is-to-be-packed-up; and

ἐλθόντας Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὥς
(that they), going to-Cyrus, to-ask-for ships, in-order-that

ἀποπλέοιεν· εἰάν δὲ μὴ δίδῳ ταῦτα, αἰτεῖν
they-may-set-sail; if however he-'do not 'give these, to-ask

Κῦρον ἡγεμόνα, ὅσπιν ἀπάξει διὰ τῆς φιλίας
Cyrus (for a) leader, who will-lead (them) through the friendly

χώρας. Ἐάν δὲ μηδὲ δίδῳ ἡγεμόνα
countries. If however he-'does not-even give (a) leader (they are)

συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, καὶ
to-form-themselves-in-order-of-battle — as-speedily-as-possible, and

δὲ πεμψαὶ προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα,
also | to-have-sent hereafter preoccupying the heights, [and also

ὅπως μῆτε
to send men to take possession of the heights in advance], so-that neither

Κῦρος νήτε οἱ Κίλικες μὴ καταλαβόντες
Cyrus nor the Cilicians | 'may not having-seized-upon

φθάσωσι
'have-occupied, [may not have anticipated us, in taking possession of these

ὧν ἔχομεν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ
heights], of-whom [the Cilicians] we-have many-men and much

χρήματα ἀνηρπακότες Οὗτος μὲν δὴ
property having-taken-them-away-from-them. Thus indeed — (in)

τοιαῦτα εἶπε· δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος
this (manner) he-spoke; but after this Clearchus

εἶπε τοσοῦτον.
spoke just-so-much.

Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὥς μὲν ἐμὲ στρατη-
Let no-one of-you 'say that — | I (am) about-lead-

γῶντα ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν.
ing-the-army (in) this the command (thereof); [that I

γὰρ ἐνορῶ πολλὰ,
will accept the office of commander]; for I-perceive many-things,

δι' ἃ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον ἐμοί· δ'
on-account-of which this 'must not 'be-done by-me; but (let him

ὥς πείσομαι ἢ μάλιστα δυνατόν, τῷ ἀνδρὶ
say) that I-shall-obey in-as much-as possible, the man,

ᾧ ἂν ἐλῃσθε, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἐπίσταμαι
whom 'you may 'choose, that you-may-see, that also I-know-how

ἄρχεσθαι καὶ ὥς τις μάλιστα ἄλλος
to-be-commanded, | and even-thus — as-much-as (any) other

ἀνδρώπων. Μετὰ τοῦτων ἄλλος
of-men [as well as any other man]. After this another

ἀνέστη ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τῇ ἐνύδειαν τοῦ
arose (to speak) pointing-out — the simplicity — (of him)

κελεύοντος αἰτεῖν τὰ πλοῖα, ὥσπερ Κίρου
advising to-ask — (for) ships, as-if Cyrus 'would

μὴ ποιουμένου τὸν στόλον πάλιν,
not 'hereafter | be-making the fleet return, [order the fleet to re-

δ' ἐπιδεικνὺς ὥς εἴηδες εἴη αἰτεῖν
turn], also showing how foolish (a thing) it-would-be to-ask-for (a)

ἡγεμόνα παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα
leader from this (very person) whom we-are-frustrating

τὴν πράξιν. Καὶ δὲ εἰ πιστεύσομεν τῷ
(in) — (his) undertaking. And also if we-shall-confide in-the

ἡγεμόνι ᾧ Κῦρος ἂν δίδῃ, τί κωλύει Κῦρον
leader, whom Cyrus may give, what hinders (that) Cyrus 'may

καὶ κελεύειν τὰ ἄκρα προκαταλαμβάνειν ἡμῖν;
also 'order the heights | to-preoccupy for-us?

Γὰρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὀκνοίην ἂν
[to be preoccupied for us]? For I indeed shall-be-reluctant —

ἐμβαίνειν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, ἃ δοίη ἡμῖν,
to-embark on (board) the vessels, which he-might-give us,

μὴ καταδίῃσθαι ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι·
lest he-should-submerge us (together) with-'these — galleys

ἀν δὲ φοβοίμην ἔπεσθαι τῷ ἡγεμόνι
themselves; 'I should indeed 'be-afraid to-follow the guide

ᾧ δοίη, μὴ ἀγάγῃ ἡμᾶς ὅθεν
whom he-may-give, lest he-might-lead us (to a place) whence it-'will'

οὐχ ἔσται οἷόν τε ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν
not 'be possible — to-escape; [I-would-wish — —

ἀπιων. Κίρου ἀκοντος, ἀπελθὼν λαθεῖν
departing, Cyrus (being) unwilling, depart to-have-concealed

αὐτον·

him [I would rather, if departing against the will of Cyrus, depart

ὁ ἔστιν οὐ δυνατόν. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ

without his knowledge]; which is not possible. But I

φημι ταῦτα μεν εἶναι φλυαρίας. δὲ μοι
say (that) these (things) indeed are absurdities; but to-me

δοκεῖ ἀνδρας, οἵτινες ἐπιτῆδειοι, ἐλθόντας
'it-seems (that) men, who (are) fit, having-gone

προς Κύρον σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωταν ἐκεῖνον τι
to Cyrus with Clearchus to-ask him (for) what

βοίλεται χρῆσθαι ἡμῖν· καὶ εἰ μὲν ἡ
(purpose) he-wished to-use us; and if indeed the

πραξις ἢ παραπλησία οἷαπερ καὶ
undertaking be similar (to that) in-which-kind 'he also

πρόσθεν ἐχρήτο τοῖς ξένοις, καὶ ἡμᾶς
before 'employed — foreign-troops, and (that) we (should)

ἔπεςθαι, καὶ μὴ εἶναι κακίους
follow (him), and (that we might) not be worse (than)

τῶν πρόσθεν συναναβάντων τοῦτῳ·
— (those) | before going-up with-him; [who before

εἰ μὲν δὲ ἡ πράξις φαίνεται μείζων
went up with him]; but if the undertaking may-seem greater (than)

τῆς πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπιπονώτερα, καὶ ἐπικινδυνότερα,
the former, and more-difficult, and more-dangerous,

ἂξιον ἢ πείσαντα ἄγειν
(then that we) request either (that) having-persuaded (us) to-lead

ἡμᾶς, ἢ πεισθέντα
us (with him), or having-been-persuaded (by us) (he would allow us

ἀφιέναι πρὸς φιλίαν· γὰρ οὕτω καὶ
to-depart to (a) friendly (country); for thus also

ἐπόμενοι αὐτῷ φίλοι, καὶ ἂν ἐποίμεθα
accompanying him 'as) friends, 'we also may 'accompany (him)

πρόθυμοι καὶ ἀπιόντες ἂν ἀπίοιμεν
zealous (in his cause), and leaving (him) 'we may 'leave-him

ἰσφαλῶς· δεῦρο ἀναγγεῖλαι δ
safely; (that) here | they-have-announced [they report] —

τι δ' ἂν λέγῃ πρὸς ταῦτα· δ' ἡμᾶς
what (he) — may say to these (things); and we

ἀκούσαντας βουλευέσθαι πρὸς ταῦτα.
having-heard (it) to-deliberate upon these (things),

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα,
[It-seemed-good (respecting) these-things, [these propositions were ap-

καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἄνδρας πέμπουσιν σὺν Κλε-
proved], and having-chosen men they-send (them) with Cle-

άρχῳ, οἱ ἡρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα
archus, who asked Cyrus | (respecting) the (things) were-seeming

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Ὁ
(good) to-the army [the questions agreed on by the army]. Who

δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόμαν ἄνδρα
— answered, that he-hears (that) Abrocomas (a) mar

ἐχθρὸν εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ,
inimical (to him) is on the river Euphrates,

ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταδμούς· ἔφη οὖν βού-
being-distant twelve days'-march; he-said (that) therefore he-

λεσθαι ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τοῦτον· καὶ μὲν ἢ
desires to-go against this (Abrocomas); and-if — he-were

ἐκεῖ ἔφη χρεῖν ἐπιθεῖναι τὴν δίκην
there he-said (that) he-longed to-have-inflicted — punishment

αὐτῷ δ' ἢ φεύγει, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ βουλευσόμεθα πρὸς
on-him but if he-retreat, we there will-deliberate about

ταῦτα. Οἱ αἵρετοὶ ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα
these-things. The deputies having-heard — these-things,

ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· δὲ τοῖς
announce (them) to-the soldiers; but — (to them)

μὲν ἦν ὑποψία ὅτι ἄγει πρὸς
indeed there-was suspicion that he-is-leading (them) against (the)

βασιλέα, δὲ ὁμῶς ἐδόκει ἕπεσθαι.
king, but however it-seemed (to them best) to-accompany (him).

Προραιτοῦσι δε μισθον· ὁ δε Κῦρος ὑπισχνείται
They-ask-for-more — wages; — — Cyrus promised

δώσειν πᾶσι ἡμιόλιον οὗ ἔφερον
to-give-hereafter to-all the-half-more (than that) which they-had-received

πρότερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρεϊκα
before, (that is) in-place-of (a) daric three half-darics

τοῦ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· δε ὅτι ἄγχι
the month — to (each) soldier; but that he-might-be-leading

ἐπὶ βασιλεα, οὐδεὶς ἤκουσεν οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα
(them) against (the) king, no-one heard, not-even there,

γε ἐν τῷ φανερώ.
(at least) indeed in — public.

CHAPTER IV.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς δέκα
HENCE (Cyrus) proceeds two days'-march (making) ten

παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Ψάρον, τὸ εὖρος
parasangs, to the river Psarus, the breadth

οὗ ἦν τρία πλεδρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει ἓνα
of-which was three plethra. Thence he-proceeds one

σταδμὸν πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
days'-march (making) five parasangs to the river

Πύραμον, τὸ εὖρος οὗ στάδιον. Ἐνταῦθεν
Pyramus, the breadth of-which (is a) stadium. Thence

ἐξελαίνει δύο σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρα-
he-proceeds two days'-march (making) fifteen para-

σάγγας εἰς Ἴσσοὺς ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Κιλικίας,
sangs to Issus, the-last town — in-Cilicia,

ἐπὶ τῇ θαλάττῃ, οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην κα
(situated) on the sea (coast), peopled, large and

εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ
wealthy. Here they-remained three days; and

αἱ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆες ἐκ Πελοποννήσοι
the thirty and five ships from Peloponnesus

παρῆσαν Κύρῳ, και ναύ
 | were-present (for) Cyrus, [arrived at Cyrus's camp], and (the) ad-
 αρχος ἐπ' αὐταῖς Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος.
 miral over them (was) Pythagoras (the) Lacedæmonian
 Δέ Ταμῶς Αἰγύπτιος ἤγειτο αὐτῶν ἐξ Ἐφέσου
 But Tamos (an) Egyptian conducted them from Ephesus
 χων πέντε και εἴκοσιν ἑτέρας ναῖς
 naving (with him) five and twenty other ships (belonging to)
 Κίρου, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε ἦν φίλη
 Cyrus, with-which he-(had)-besieged Miletus when it-was friendly
 Τισσαφέρνει, και συνεπολεμεῖ Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτον.
 to-Tissaphernes, and he-fought-with Cyrus against him.
 Καὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος παρῆν ἐπὶ
 And also Cheirisophos the Lacedæmonian was-present on (board)
 τῶν νεῶν, μετὰπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κίρου, ἔχων ἑπτακοσίους
 the ships, having-been-sent-for by Cyrus, he-having seven-hundred
 ὀπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κίρῳ
 heavy-armed (soldiers), of-whom he-was-commander for Cyrus
 Αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν κατὰ τὴν σκηνὴν Κίρου.
 The — ships moored opposite the tent of-Cyrus.
 Ἐνταῦθα και οἱ Ἕλληνες μισθοφόροι παρ'
 Here also the Greek mercenaries, (who were) with
 Ἀβροκόμα ἀποστάντες ἦλδον παρὰ Κῦρον,
 Abrocomas, deserting-him went to Cyrus, (in number)
 τετρακόσιοι ὀπλῖται, και συνεστρατεύοντο
 four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and accompanied-the-expedition
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα. \ Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἓνα σταδ
 against (the) king. Hence he-proceeds one days'
 μόν, πεντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ πύλας
 march, (making) five parasangs to (the) gates [passes]
 τῆς Κιλικίας και τῆς Συρίας. Ταῦτα δ' ἦσαν
 — of-Cilicia and — of-Syria. These — were
 δύο τείχη, και τὸ μὲν ἔσωθεν τὸ πρὸ
 two walls, and (of) the — internal (one) — (that) before
 τῆς Κιλικίας Σύννεσις και φυλακή Κιλικίων
 Cilicia, Syennesis and (a) guard of-Cilicians

εἶχε· δὲ τὸ ἐξω, το πρὸ τῆς Συρίας,
had (charge); but the external (one), — (that) before — Syria,

ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ βασιλέως φυλάττειν.
it-was-said (that a) guard 'of (the) 'king's (soldiers) guarded-it.

Διὰ μέσου δε τοῦτων ποταμός
[Through (the) middle — of-these [between these two walls] (a) river

Κάρσος ὄνομα ῥεῖ, εὖρος πλέθρου.
Carsus (by) name flows, (the) breadth (being a) plethrum.

Δὲ ἅπαν τὸ μεσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν
But the-whole — middle (space between) the walls were

τρεις στάδιοι· καὶ παρελθεῖν βίᾳ ἦν οὐ·
three stadia; and to-have-passed by-force was not (possible)

γὰρ ἡ πάροδος ἦν στενὴ καὶ τὰ τεῖχη καδύκοντα
for the passage was narrow, and the walls reaching

εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ὑπερδεν δ' ἦσαν ἡλίβατοι
to the sea, above also were impassable

πέτραι· δὲ πύλαι ἐφειστήκεσαν ἐπὶ ἀμφοτεροῖς
rocks; and (the) passes (had) stood-by (at) each

τοῖς τείχεσιν. Ἕνεκα ταύτης τῆς
(of) the walls. (It was) on-account-of this —

παρόδου Κύρος μετεπέμψατο τὰς ναῦς, ὅπως
passage (that) Cyrus sent-for the fleet, so-that

ἀποβιβάσειεν ὀπλίτας εἰσω καὶ ἐξω τῶν πυλῶν,
he-might-land heavy-armed-men within and without the passes,

καὶ βιασάμενοι παρελθοῖεν τοὺς πολε-
and (who) having-forced (a passage) might-pass-through the ene-

μίους, εἰ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις
my, if they-'might (yet) 'guard — the Syrian

πύλαις ὅπερ ὁ Κύρος ᾤετο ποιήσῃν, τὸν Ἀβρο-
passes which — Cyrus thought would-be-done, — Abro-

κόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Δ' Ἀβροκόμας
comas having (a) great army. But Abrocomas

οὐκ ἐποίησε τοῦτ', ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κύρον
'did not 'do this, but after he-heard (of) Cyrus

ὄντα ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἀναστρέφας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπῆλαινε
being in Cilicia having-retired from Phœnicia ne-departed

παρὰ βασιλέα ἔχων ὥς ἐλέγετο τριάκοντα
to (the) king having as it-was-said | thirty

μυριάδας στρατιᾶς.
ten-thousands [three hundred thousand] military.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας ἓνα σταδ.
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds through Syria one days'.

μὲν πέντε παρασάγγας, εἰς Μυριάνδρον,
march, (making) five parasangs, to Myriandrus, (a)

πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλλάττῃ οἰκουμένην ὑπὸ
town on the sea (west) peopled by

Φοινίκων. Ἡ δ' ἐμπόριον τὸ χωρίον,
Phoenicians. It-was also (a) mart (for that district of) the country,

καὶ πολλάι ὀλκάδες ὤρμουν αὐτόδι. Ἐνταῦθ'
and many ships-of-burden arrived there. Here

ἔμειναν ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας· καὶ Ξενίας, ὁ Ἀρκᾶς
he-remained seven days; and (here) Xenias, the Arcadian

στρατηγός, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς, ἐμβάντες
commander, and Pasion the Megarian, having-embarked

εἰς πλοῖον, καὶ ἐνδεμενοὶ τὰ ἄξια
in (a) vessel, and having-placed-on-board — (their) effects

πλείστου, ἀπέπλευσαν, ὥς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις
of-the-greatest (value), they-sailed-away, as indeed to-the most

ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες
they-thought having-been-made-jealous-of-their-honour [the most thought,

ὅτι Κῦρος εἶα τὸν
that they were influenced by jealousy] because Cyrus allowed —

Κλεάρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν,
Clearchus to-have | the soldiers of-them, [their soldiers],

τοὺς ἀπελδόντας παρὰ Κλεάρχον, ὥς
(namely) — (those) deserting to Clearchus, | as

ἀπιόντας πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
departing back to — Greece [when they intended to

καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα. Ἐπεὶ
return to Greece] and not (march) against (the) king. | After

δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς λόγος
— they-were invisible [after their disappearance] (a) rumour

διήλθε ὅτι Κύρος διώκοι αὐτοῖς
 went-through (the army) that Cyrus might-follow them 'with (the)
 τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν εὐχοντο αὐτοῖς
 'galleys; and — (some) indeed prayed (that) they (might)
 ληφθῆναι ὡς ὄντας δολίους, οἱ δ'
 'be-taken as being perfidious (men), — (others) indeed
 ᾔφτειρον εἰ ἁλώσονται. Δὲ Κύρος
 pitied (them) if they-should-be-captured. But Cyrus
 συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε· Ξενίας καὶ
 having-called-together the commanders said; Xenias and
 Πασίῳ ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς· ἀλλὰ γε
 Pasion have-left us; but 'let-them at-least 'be
 εὖ μέντοι ἐπιστάσθωσαν, ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδε-
 well indeed 'assured, that they-'have neither 'fled.
 δράκασιν, γὰρ οἶδα ὅπῃ οἰχονται, οὔτε
 away (clandestinely), for I-know where they-are-going, nor
 ἀποπεφεύγασιν, γὰρ ἔχω τριήρεις ὥστε ἐλεῖν
 have-they-escaped, for I-have galleys | in-order-to have-seized
 τὸ πλοῖον ἐκείνων. Ἀλλά, μα
 the ship of-them [to capture their ship]. But, by
 τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε διώξω αὐτοὺς· οὐδ'
 the gods not even-I will-follow them; nor (shall)
 οὐδεὶς ἐρεῖ, ὡς ἐγὼ ἕως μὲν τις ἂν παρῇ
 any-one say, that I, as-long-as indeed any-one might stay-with
 χρῶμαι, δ' ἐπειδὰν βούληται ἀπι-
 (me), make-use (of their services), but after he-may-wish to-
 εἶναι συλλαβὼν αὐτοὺς καὶ κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ
 leave (me) having-seized them 'I both ill 'treat (them) and
 ἀποσυλῶ τὰ χρήματα. Ἀλλὰ ἰόντων,
 despoil (them of their) — goods. But let-them-go,
 εἰδότες ὅτι εἰςὶ κακίους
 [they-having-known [they being conscious] that they-are worse
 περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. Καίτοι γε
 towards us than we towards them. Although 'I indeed
 ἔχω καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας αὐτῶν φρουρούμενα
 'have both (the) children and wives of-them guarded

ἐν Τράλλεσι· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ στερήσονται
at Tralles; but they-'shall not-even 'be-deprived

τούτων, ἀλλ' ἀπολήφοντα ἕνεκα τῆς
of-these, but they-shall-receive (them) on-account-of — (their)

ἀρετῆς περὶ ἔμε πρόσθεν. Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶπε
good-conduct towards me formerly. And — | 'he indeed 'said

ταῦτα· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἰ τις καὶ
these; [thus did he speak]; and the Greeks, if any (one) in-fine

ἦν ἀδυμότερος πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἀκούοντες
was disinclined towards the ascent [expedition] hearing

τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου, συνεπορεύοντο ἡδίων
the noble-conduct of-Cyrus, accompanied (him) with-great-pleasure

καὶ προδυμότερον.
and with-greater-alacrity-of-mind.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαίνει τέτταρας
After these (things) Cyrus proceeds four

σταδμοὺς εἰκοσιν παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν
days'-march (making) twenty parasangs to the

ποταμόν Χάλον, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέδρου,
river Chalus, (it) being the breadth 'of (a) 'plethrum,

δὲ πλήρη μεγάλων καὶ τραέων ἰχθύων, οὓς οἱ
and full of-large and tame ush, which the

Σύροι ἐνόμιζον θεοὺς, καὶ οὐκ εἶον
Syrians considered (to be) gods, and 'did not 'permit (any one)

ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. Αἱ δὲ
to-injure (neither them) nor the pigeons. The —

κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν ἧσαν Παρυσάτιδος
villages in which they-encamped | were of-Parysatis [belonged

δεδομέναι εἰς ζώνην.
to Parysatis] having-been-given (her) | for (her) girdle [for pin-money]

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει πέντε σταδμοὺς τριάκοντα
Thence he-proceeds five days'-march, (making) thirty

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
parasangs to | the springs [sources] of-the river

Δάρδητος τὸ εὖρος οὗ πλέδρου.
Dardes the breadth (is that) 'of (a) plethrum

Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασιλεια Βελέσιος τοῦ
Here were the palaces of-Belesys | the

ἄρξαντος Συρίας, καὶ παράδεισος, πάνυ
having-ruled-over [the ruler] of-Syria, and (a) park, vary

μεγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὦρα.
large and beautiful, having all, how-much-so-ever (tho) seasons

φιοῦσι. Δε Κύρος αὐτὸν ἐξεκονψε καὶ κατέκαυσε
produce. But Cyrus 'cut it 'down and burned

τὰ βασιλεια.
the palaces.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαυνει τρεῖς σταδμοῖς πεντε-
Thence he-proceeds three days'-march (making) fif.

καιδεκα παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην
teen parasangs, to the river Euphrates

ὄντα το εἶρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ
(it) being (there) the breadth of-four stadia; and (there

πόλις αὐτόδι Θάψακος ὀνόματι ὥκειτο
was a) city there Thapsacus by-name (which) was-inhabited,

μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων. Ἐνταῦθα
(and which was) large and wealthy. There

ἔμειναν πεντε ἡμερας· καὶ Κύρος μεταπεμφάμενος
they-remained five days; and Cyrus having-sent-for

τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ
the commanders of-the Greeks, said that the

ὁδὸς ἐσοιτο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα πρὸς μέγαν
road might-hereafter-be to . Babylon against (the) great

βασιλεα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
king; and he-requests them to-tell these (things)

τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἑπεσδαι.
to-the soldiers, and to-persuade (them) to-follow (him);

Δ' οἱ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαι
And who | having-made [having called] (an) assembly (of the soldiers)

ἀπήγγελλοι ταῦτα. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται
communicated these (things to them). But the soldiers

ἐχαλεπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοῖς
were-angry with-the commanders, and told them

πάλαι εἰδόντας ταῦτα
(that) 'having already-before known these-things, (that they)

κρύτειν· καὶ ἔφασαν
conceal (them from the soldiers); and they-said (that they would)

οὐκ ἰέναι, εἰὰν μή τις διδῶ χρήματα αὐτοῖς
not go, unless some-one should-give money to-them

ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προτέροις ἀνα-
| as also (had been given) to-the former (soldiers) having-

βᾶσι μετὰ Κύρου
gone-up with Cyrus, [in like manner as had been given to the soldiers,

παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ
who had formerly accompanied Cyrus] to the father —

Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἰόντων ἐπὶ μάχην, ἀλλὰ
of-Cyrus, and this not going to battle, but

τοῦ πατρὸς καλοῦντος Κῦρον. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
the father (merely) sending-for Cyrus. The commanders

ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα Κύρῳ· δ' ὁ ὑπέσχετο
reported these (things) to-Cyrus; and who promised

δώσειν πέντε μνᾶς ἀργυρίου ἐκάστῳ ἀνδρὶ, ἐπὰν
to-give five minæ of-silver to-each man, when

ἦκωσι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ τὸν ἐντελῇ μισθὸν
they-arrived at Babylon, and — (their) entire pay

μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πάλιν
until 'he should 'place the Greeks back-again

εἰς Ἰωνίαν. Τὸ πολὺ μὲν δὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
in Ionia. The most indeed — of-the Greek

οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
(force) 'was thus 'persuaded (to accompany him). /

Δὲ Μένων, πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον τί οἱ ἄλλοι
But Menon, before | to-be [it is] evident what the other

στρατιῶται ποιήσουσι, πότερον ἔψονται Κύρῳ
soldiers will-do, whether they-will-follow Cyrus

ἢ οὐ, συνέλλαξε τὸ στράτευμα αὐτοῦ χωρὶς
or not, assembled | the army of-himself [his army] apart

τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. Ἄνδρες
from-the others, and spoke | these (things) [thus]. Men

ἐάν πεισθῇτε μοι, προτιμήσεσθε ὑπὸ Κύρου
if you-might-be-persuaded by-me, you-will-be-honoured by Cyrus

πλέον τῶν ἄλλων στρατιῶτων οὔτε
more (than) the other soldiers (and this) 'having neither

κινδυνεύσαντες, οὔτε πονήσαντες. Τί οὖν
'incurred-danger, nor having-laboured. What therefore

κελεύω ποιῆσαι: Κύρος νῦν δεῖται
do-I-request (of you) | to-have-done? [to do]? Cyrus now wants

τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἕπεσθαι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·
the Greeks to-accompany (him) against (the) king;

ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι
I therefore say | (that) you to-behave [that it behoves you]

διαβῆναι τον ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, πρὶν εἶναι
to-have-crossed the river Euphrates, before | to-be [it is]

δῆλον ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται
manifest — what the other Greeks will-answer

Κύρῳ. Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι,
Cyrus. For if indeed they-should-determine-by-ballot to-follow,

ὑμεῖς δόξετε εἶναι αἰτιοί, ἄρξαντες τοῦ
(then) you will-appear to-be (the) cause, | having-begun of-the

διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὑμῖν
crossing-over, [as having first crossed over the river], and to-you

ὥς οἷσι προθυμοτάτοις Κύρος εἴσεται
as being most-prompt, Cyrus perceive (and acknowledge

χάριν, καὶ ἀποδώσει· δ' ἐπίσταται
the) favour, and will-repay (it); | but he-knows (how to do this)

εἰ καὶ τις ἄλλος·
if even-also any other (does); [but he knows how to reward a favour,

δ' ἢν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποψηφίσωνται,
as well as any other man]; but if the others should-ballot-against-it,

ἅπαντες μὲν ἀπμεν εἰς τοῖμπαλιν·
(we) all-together indeed | depart to the-contrary; [return back

δὲ ὑμῖν, ὥς μόνοις πειδομένοις πιστο-
again]; but you, as alone being-persuaded (and as being) most-

τάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ
faithful he-will-use (and employ) both in garrisons and

εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι Κύροι
for captaincies, and-also I-know that as friends of-Cyrus

τεύξεσθε οὐτινος ἄλλου ἂν δεησθε.
you-will-obtain whatever else 'you may 'require. (The soldiers)

Ἀκουσαντες ταῦτα, ἐπείδοντο, καὶ διέβησαι
'having-heard these (things), were-persuaded, and crossed-over

πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
before (that) the others answered. | But when

Κῦρος ᾗσδετο διαβεβηκότας, τε
Cyrus perceived (them) having-crossed-over (the river), 'he not-only

ᾗσθη, καὶ πέμψας Γλοῦν τῷ στρατεύματι
was-pleased, but-also having-sent Glus to-the army

εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μὲν ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἐπαινῶ
of Menon) said, I indeed O men, now praise

ὑμᾶς· δὲ μελήσει ἐμοὶ ὅπως καὶ ὑμεῖς
you: | but it-shall-be-a-care to-me how also you

ἐπαινέσητε ἐμέ,
might-praise me, [but I will take care, that you also shall praise me],

ἢ μηκέτι νομίζετε με Κῦρον. Οἱ στρατιῶται
or no-longer think me Cyrus. The soldiers

ὄντες δὴ μὲν ἐν μεγάλαις ἐλπίσι εἶχοντο αὐτόν
being now indeed in great hopes | wished him

εὐτυχῆσαι δὲ καὶ ἐλέγετο
to-have-been-fortunate; [prayed for his success]; and also he-was-said

πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς δῶρα Μενωνι. Δὲ,
re-have-sent in-a-magnificent-manner presents to-Menon. And,

ποιήσας ταῦτα, διέβαινε· δὲ καὶ
having-done these (things), he-crossed-over (the river); and also

ἵπαν τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα συνείπετο αὐτῷ. Καὶ
all the other army followed him. And

οὐδεὶς τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν
no-one — (of those) crossing the river

ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῖ
was-wetted. higher (than) the breasts by the

ποταμοῦ. Δὲ οἱ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον, ὅτι οὗτος
river. But the Thapsaceni said, that this

ὁ ποταμὸς οὐ πώποτε γενοίτο διαβατος πεζῇ
 (the) river never at-any-time might-be passable on-foot
 εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις· ἃ Ἀβρο-
 [if not [except] then, but (always) in-boats; which Abro-
 κόμας προΐων τότε κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κῦρος
 comas going-before 'had then 'burnt, that Cyrus
 μὴ διαβῇ. Δὴ ἐδόκει εἶναι
 'might not 'cross-over (the river). (This) then seemed to-be (a)
 θεῖον, καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν σαφῶς ὑπο-
 divine (interposition), and (that) the river manifestly re-
 χωρῆσαι Κύρῳ ὥς βασιλεύουσιν. Ἐντεῦθεν
 ceded for-Cyrus as about-reigning. Hence
 ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἑννέα σταδμοὺς,
 ae-advances through — Syria nine days'-march, (making)
 πεντήκοντα παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς
 fifty parasangs, and they-came to
 τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀράξην. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν πολλαὶ
 'he river Araxes. Here there-were many
 κῶμαι μεστὰι σίτου καὶ οἴνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
 villages full of-corn and wine. Here they-remained
 τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
 three days, and provisioned (the army).

CHAPTER V.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχων
 THENCE he-marches through — Arabia, having
 τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, πέντε
 the river Euphrates on (the) right, (making) five
 ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς,
 desert stations, [five days' march through the desert], (and,
 τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ
 thirty and five parasangs. But in this
 τῷ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν μὲν πεδῖον, ἅπαν
 — district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely

ἕμαλὸν ὥσπερ θάλαττα, δὲ πλήρες ἄψινδίου,
level as (the) sea, and full of-wormwood,

εἰ δὲ καὶ τι ἄλλο ὑλῆς ἢ καλάμων
if indeed also any other (kind) of-underwood or of-reed

ἐνῆν, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα·
was-on-it, all were (as) odoriferous as perfumes;

δ' οὐδὲν δένδρον ἐνῆν. Δὲ παντοῖα
but no tree was-thereon. But (here there were) various

θηρία, πλείστοι μὲν ἄγριοι ὄνοι, δὲ
wild-animals, the-most (numerous) indeed (were) wild asses, also

πολλοὶ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες
many | sparrows the large [ostriches]; and also bustard

καὶ δορκάδες ἐνῆσαν· δὲ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἐνίστε
and antelopes were-thereon; and the horsemen sometimes

ἐδίωκον ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ὄνοι
pursued these — wild-animals. And indeed the wild-asses

ἔπει τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες
when any-one might-pursue (them), having-run-before (some distance)

ἔστασαν· γὰρ ἔτρεχον πολὺ θᾶττον τῶν
stood-still; for they-ran much (more) quickly (than) the

ἵππων· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεὶ οἱ ἵπποι πλησιάζοιεν
horses; and again when the horses might-approach

ἐποίουν ταὐτὸν· καὶ ἦν οὐ λαβεῖν
they-did the-same (thing); and it-was not (possible) to-take

εἰ μὴ οἱ ἵππεῖς διαστάντες
(them) | if not [unless] the horsemen stationed-at-intervals

θηρῶεν διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς
should-hunt (them), (also) succeeding (one another) 'with (fresh) —

ἵπποις. Δὲ τὰ κρέα τῶν ἀλίσκομένων ἦν
'horses. And the flesh 'of — (those) 'caught was

παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, δὲ ἀπαλώτερα.
like the stags' (flesh), but more-tender

Δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβε Στρουθόν· δὲ οἱ τῶν
But no-one took (an) ostrich; | and — (those) of-the

ἱππέων διώξαντες ταχὺ
horsemen having-pursued [and those horsemen that pursued them] quickly

ἐπαύοντο· γὰρ ἀπεςπᾶτο πολὺ

desisted; | for it-withdrew-itself much [for it outstripped the horse-

Φεύγουσα, δρόμῳ μὲν τοῖς
men] fleeing (away from them), in-running (using) — — (its)

ποσὶ, δὲ ταῖς πτέρυξιν αἶρουσα, ὥσπερ
feet, and — (its) wings raising (these), as

χρωμένη ἰστίῳ. Δεῖ ἔστι λαμβάνειν τὰς
using (a) sail. But it-is (possible) to-take the

ὠτίδας, ἂν τις ἀνιστῇ ταχὺ· γὰρ
bustards, if any-one should-'start (them) 'up quickly; for

πέτονται βραχὺ ὥσπερ πέρδικες, καὶ
they-fly (a) short (distance) like-as partridges, and

ταχὺ ἀπαγορεύουσι. Δεῖ τὰ κρέα αὐτῶν ἦν
speedily tire. But the flesh of-them was

ἡδιστα.

very-delicious.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἀφί
Marching — through this — country they

κοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Μάσκαν, τὸ εὖρος
come to the river Mascas, the breadth

πλεθριαῖον. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη
(of which is a) plethrum. Here there-was (a) large

ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' ὄνομα αὐτῇ Κερσωτή·
deserted city, but (the) name (to-it) (of it was) Corsote;

δ' αὕτη περιεῖρετο ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα
| and this (city) was-flowed-round by the Mascas 'in (a)

κύκλῳ. Ἐνταῦδ'
'circle [the river Mascas flowed round about this city]. Here

ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
they-remained three days and provisioned (the army).

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς καὶ δέκα
Thence 'he (Cyrus) 'proceeds | three and ten [thirteen

ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς ἐνενήκοντα
desert stations (or days' march) (making) ninety

παρασάγγας, ἔχων τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν
parasangs, having the river Euphrates on (the)

δεξιᾷ, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. Ἐν τούτοις
 right, and he-arrives at (the) Gates. In these
 τοῖς σταδμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο
 — stations many of-the beasts-of-burden perished
 ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· γὰρ ἦν οὐ χόρτος οὐδὲ οὐδέν
 of hunger; for there-was no grass nor any
 ἕλλο δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἀπασα χώρα ἦν
 (other) (kind of) tree, but the entire country was
 ψιλὴ· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες
 bare (being destitute of vegetation); | the — inhabiting [the
 ὀρύττοντες καὶ τοιοῦντες
 inhabitants of this desert district] — quarrying and fashioning
 ἀλέτας ὄνους παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν, ἦγον
 grinding upper-stones [millstones] near the river, carried
 εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ ἐπώλουν, καὶ ἀντα-
 (them) to Babylon and sold (them), and buying-
 γοράζοντες σίτον ἔζων. Ὁ δὲ σίτος ἐπέλιπε
 in-return corn lived (thereon). — Also corn failed
 τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἦν οὐ πρίασθαι
 the army, and it-was not (possible) to-buy (any)
 εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδία ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ βαρ-
 | if not [unless] in the Lydian market among the bar-
 βαρικῷ Κίρου, τὴν καπίδην ἀλείρων ἢ
 barian (forces) of-Cyrus, the capithe of-wheat-flour or
 ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. Ὁ δὲ σίγλος
 barley-meal (being sold for) four sigli. The — siglus
 δύνανται ἑπτὰ Ἀττικούς ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιόβολιον·
 is-worth seven Attic oboli and (a) half-obolus;
 δὲ ἡ καπίδη ἐχῶρει δύο Ἀττικὰς χοίνικας.
 and the capithe contained two Attic choeniceas.
 Οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο ἐσθίοντες κρέα
 | Therefore the soldiers continued eating flesh
 Ἦν δὲ
 [therefore the soldiers lived entirely on flesh]. There-were also (some)
 τουτων τῶν σταδμῶν, οὓς ἤλαινε
 of-these — days'-marches, which he-urged-on (so as to make them)

παν μακροῖς, ὅποτε βούλοτο διατελέσαι
very long, whenever he-might-wish | to-finish-the-road [to ar-

rive] either πρὸς ὕδωρ, ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. Καὶ δὴ
at water, or at forage. And indeed

ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος δυσπο-
once-when | narrow-place and mud having-appeared difficult-

ρεύτου ταῖς ἀμάξαις,
of-passage for-the wagons, [a narrow and muddy road appeared,

ὃ Κῦρος ἐπέστη
which was of difficult passage for wagons], — Cyrus stood

συν τοῖς ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις περὶ
with the most-distinguished and most-wealthy about

αὐτὸν, καὶ ἐταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα,
him, and ordered Glus and Pigres, (that)

λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ, συνεκ-
having-taken (a part) of-the barbarian army, to-extri-

βιάζειν τὰς ἀμάξας. / Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ
cate the wagons. But when they-seemed to-him

ποιεῖν σχολαίως, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοῖς
to-do (this) tardily, as-if in-anger he-ordered the

κρατίστους Πέρσας περὶ αὐτὸν συνεπισ-
most-distinguished Persians about him | together-to-have-acce-

πεῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξας. Ἐνθα δὴ ἦν θεάσασ-
elerated [to hasten] the wagons. There then was to-be-

δαι τι μέρος τῆς εὐταξίας. Γὰρ
seen some portion (of) — good-order (and discipline). For

ρίψαντες τοὺς πορφυροῦς κἀνδύς, ὅπου ἕκαστος
having-thrown-off — (their) purple cloaks, where each

ἔτυχεν ἑστηκώς ἰέν-
|| happened having-been-standing [happened to have stood] | they-sent-

το, ὥσπερ τις ἂν δράμοι
themselves, [they rushed], as-if | any-one might run [on a race]

περὶ νίκης, καὶ κατὰ μάλα πρानοῦς γηλόφου,
for victory, and down (a) very steep hill,

ἔχοντες τε τούτους τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας,
having also (on) those — rich tunics,

καὶ ταῖς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, δὲ καὶ ἔνιοι
and — variegated trousers, and also some (having)

στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις, καὶ ψέλλια
chains about — (their) necks, and bracelets

περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ εἰσπηδήσαντες
about — (their) | hands; [wrists]; directly also having-leaped

σὺν τούτοις εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐξεκόμισαι
with these (ornaments) into the mud they-brought-out

τάς ἀμάξας μετεώρους θάττον ἢ ὥς τις
the wagons lifted-up quicker than (even-thus) any-one

ἂν ᾤετο. Δὲ τὸ σύμπαν Κῦρος ἦν δῆλος
might have-thought. And (on) the whole | Cyrus was evident

σπεύδων πᾶσαν τὴν ὁδὸν
hastening all the road, [Cyrus was evidently hastening

καὶ οὐ διατρίβων, μὴ ὅπου ἐκαδέζετο
the march], and not delaying, unless where he-halted

ἐνεκα ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἢ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου,
on-account-of provisions or of-some other necessary

νομίζων ὅσω μὲν θάττον ἔλδοι
(thing), thinking (that) by-how-much — the-more-speedily he-might-go

τοσοῦτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ μαχεῖσθαι
by-so-much the-more-unprepared (he might come) to-fight

βασιλεῖ, δὲ ὅσω σχολαιότερον
(the) king, and by-how-much the-more-tardily (he might march)

τοσοῦτῳ πλέον στρατεύμα συναγείρεσθαι
by-so-much the-more (numerous) army is-to-be-collected

βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δ' ἦν συνιδεῖν τῷ προσέ-
'for (the) 'king. | And also it-was to-perceive to-the direct-

χοντι τὸν νοῦν
ing the mind [and it might readily be perceived by any one

ἢ ἀρχὴν βασιλέως οὔσα
directing his attention to it] | the empire 'of (the) 'king (as) being

ἰσχυρὰ μὲν
strong indeed [that the empire of the king was indeed strong] 'from

πλήθει χώρας καὶ ἀνδράπων,
(the) 'multitude (and extent of) territory and (the number) of-men

δὲ ἀσθενὴς τοῖς μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῇ
but weak by-the lengths of-the roads and | in-the

διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις, εἴ τις
to-have-separated [in the dispersion] (of) — (its) forces, if any-one

ἔποιεῖτο τὸν πόλεμον διὰ ταχέων.
made — war (against it) by quick (movements).

Δὲ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Εὐφράτου, κατὰ
But beyond the river Euphrates, through (the opposite)

τοὺς ἐρήμους σταδμούς ἦν
— | desert stations [marches through the desert] there-was

εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη πόλις, δὲ ὄνομα
(an) opulent and large city, and (its) name (was)

Χαρμάνδη. Ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἡγόραζον
Charmande. From this (city) the soldiers brought

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια διαβαίνοντες σχεδίας ὥδε·
the necessaries-of-life crossing-over on-temporary-rafts (made) thus;

ἐπίμπλασαν κοῖφου χόρτου διφδέρας ἃς
they-filled with | light grass [hay] (the) skins, which

εἶχον στεγάσματα, εἶτα συνῆγον
they-had (as) covering (for their tents), then they-united-together

καὶ συνέσπων ὥς τὸ
(the edges) and | 'drew (them) 'together [sewed them] so-that the

ὕδωρ μὴ ἄπτεσθαι τῆς κάρφης· ἐπὶ τούτων
water (could) not (to)-touch the hay; on these

διέβαινον, καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τέ
they-crossed-over, and procured the necessaries, not-only

οἶνον πεποιημένον ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς ὑπὸ
wine made of the fruit — from

τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν
the palm-tree, but-also corn of-pannic; for this was

πλεῖστον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
most-plentiful in — (this) country.

Δὲ ἐνταῦθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε τοῦ Μένανος
And here the soldiers not-only — of-Menon

καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων
but-also — (those) of-Clearchus having-been-disputing-about

τι, ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας τὸν τοῦ
something, — Clearchus | having-judged [judging] the (soldier) —

Μένωνος ἀδικεῖν ἐνέβαλε πληγὰς.
of-Menon | to-do-wrong [to be in the wrong] inflicted blows (on him);

δὲ ὁ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ στρατεύμα ἑαυτοῦ
but who having-gone | to the army of-himself [to the

ἐλεγε· δ' οἱ
army, to which he belonged] told [what had befallen him]; but the

στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ἰσχυρῶς ἐχαλε-
soldiers having-heard (this) 'were vehemently 'irri-

παινον, καὶ ὠργίζοντο τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. Δε τι-
tated, and enraged — (at) Clearchus. And the

αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν
same day Clearchus, having-gone to the crossing

τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγοράν,
of-the river, and here having-inspected the market

ἀφιππεύει ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ
he-rides-away | to the tent of-himself [to his own tent]

διὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος Μένωνος, σὺν ὀλίγοις
through the army of-Menon, | with (a) few

τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· δὲ Κῦρος
followers, namely (the) (those) about him; but Cyrus 'had

οὔτω ἦκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλυνε· δὲ τις
not-yet 'come, but still proceeded (on his march); but some-one

τῶν στρατιωτῶν Μένωνος σχίζων ξύλα, ὥς
of-the soldiers of-Menon (who was) splitting wood, as

εἶδε τὸν Κλέαρχον διελαίνοντα, ἱησι
he-saw — Clearchus riding-through (the camp), throws (at him)

τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ αὗτος μὲν ἤμαρτεν
'with — (his) 'axe; and this (soldier) indeed missed

αὐτοῦ· δ' ἄλλος λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος,
him, but another (throws) 'with (a) 'stone and-also another,

εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομένης.
then many, (a) shout (at the same time) having-occurred.

Δε ὁ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ στρατεύμα ἑαυτοῦ,
But — (Clearchus) takes-refuge | in the army of-himself,

και εὐδὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς
 [in his own camp], and immediately calls [his men] to
 τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς μεν ὀπλίτας
 — arms; and he-ordered | the — heavy-armed-men
 οὗτου μείναι δέν-
 of-him [his heavy-armed men] | to-have-remained [to remain] having-
 τας τας ἀστίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα· δὲ αὐτὸς
 placed — (their) shields against — (their) knees; but he
 λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾶκας καὶ τοὺς ἵππείας,
 ·having-taken [taking] the Thracians and the horsemen,
 οἱ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ
 that were with-him in the army more than
 τετταράκοντα, δε οἱ πλεῖστοι τούτων
 forty (in number), but the most of-these (were)
 Θρᾶκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ'
 Thracians, proceeded-out against the (troops) of-Menon, so (that)
 ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλήχθαι καὶ Μένωνα
 they were-struck (with astonishment, as was) also Menon
 αὐτὸν, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Δέ
 himself, and (so that they) run to — arms. But
 καὶ οἱ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγ-
 also — (some) stood hesitating (about) the af-
 ματι.
 fair (not knowing what to make of it).

Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος, γὰρ ἔτυχε προσίων ὕστερος,
 — But Proxenus, | for he-happened approaching last
 και τάξις τῶν ὀπλι-
 (in order), [who brought up the rear], and (a) division of-the heavy
 τῶν ἐπομένη αὐτῷ, ἄγων οὖν
 armed-men following him, leading therefore (his soldiers)
 εὐδὺς εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτερον
 immediately | into the middle of-both [into the space be-
 ἔδετο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλε-
 tween both] stood (under) — arms, and required of — Cle-
 ἀρχον μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δέ ὁ
 archus not to-do these (things). But — (Clearchus

ἐχαλέπαινεν, ὅτι αὐτοῦ δεήσαντος ὀλίγου κατα-
was-irritated, because he having-wanted little to-have-

λευσθῆναι, πρῶως λέγοι τὸ πάθος
been-stoned, (that he, Proxenus,) 'should mildly 'mention | the suffering

αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευέ τε αὐτὸν ἐξίστασθαι
of-him [his ill treatment] he-ordered — him (then) to-stand-out

ἐκ τοῦ μέσου. Δὲ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἐπῆει,
from the middle. But Cyrus also at this came-up,

καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· δ' εὐδὺς ἐλάβε
and inquired-into the affair; — (then) 'he immediately 'took

τὰ παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, καὶ σὺν τοῖς
— javelins in — (his) hands, and with — (those)

παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ
present of — (his) faithful-attendants, came hastening to the

μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ
midst (of them), and speaks thus. O-Clearchus and

Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες οἱ παρόντες,
Proxenus, and (you) the other Greeks who are-present,

ἴστε οὐκ ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. Γὰρ εἰ συνάψετε
you-know not what you-are-doing. For if you-shall-join-in

τινα μάχην ἀλλήλοις, νομίζετε ἐμέ
any battle with-one-another, | think [be assured] (that) I

τε κατακεκόψεσθαι ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ
not-only will-instantly-be-cut-off in this (the) (very) day, but-also

ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ὕστερον ἐμοῦ· γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων
you not long after me; | for — our-affairs

ἐχόντων κακῶς πάντες οὗτοι
having badly [for if our affairs go ill] all these

βάρβαροι, οὓς ὁρᾶτε ἔσονται πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν
barbarians, that you-see will-be more-hostile to-us

τῶν ὄντων παρὰ βασιλεῖ
(than) — (those barbarians) | being [who are] with (the) king.

Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἐν
— Clearchus hearing these (things) | became in

ἑαυτῷ· καὶ ἀμφότεροι παυσά-
himself; [recovered self-possession]; and both (parties) having-

μενοι ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα κατὰ
ceased (from strife) placed — (their) arms in (their appropriate)
χώραν.
place.

CHAPTER VI.

Προϊόντων ἐντεῦθεν ἵχνια καὶ κόπρος ἵππων
PROCEEDING thence (the) footsteps and dung of-horses
ἐφαίνετο· ὁ στίβος δ' εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὥς
appeared; the track indeed was-conjectured to-be about (that)
δισχιλίων ἵππων. Οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ
of-two-thousand horses. These going-before burned both (the)
χίλον καὶ τι ἄλλο εἰ ἦν χρήσιμον. Ὀρόντης
fodder and any-thing else, if (it) was useful. Orontes
δὲ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ τε προσήκων γένει
indeed, (a) Persian man not-only being-related by-birth 'to (the),
βασιλεῖ, καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος
'king, but-also (as respects) — warlike-affairs being-considered
ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν, ἐπιβουλεύει
among the most-distinguished 'of (the) 'Persians, plots-against
Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολένησας
Cyrus, and (with whom) he-'had formerly 'been-at-war,
δὲ καταλλαγείς. Οὗτος εἶπε Κύρῳ εἰ
but had-become-reconciled. This (person) said to-Cyrus, if
δοίη αὐτῷ χιλίους ἵππείας, ὅτι ἐνεδρεύσας
he-would-give him a-thousand horsemen, that having-lain-in-ambush
ἂν ἢ κατακάνοι τοὺς ἵππείας προκατα-
'he would either 'destroy the horsemen burning-down-every-
καίοντας ἢ ἔλοι πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ζῶντας, καὶ
thing-before-them, or might-take many of-them alive, | and
κωλύσειε ἐπιόντας τοῦ καίειν,
would-hinder (them) going-against of-the to-burn, [and would hinder
καὶ ποιήσειεν,
them from going and burning everything], | and would-make, [and would

ὥστε αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ σπράτευμα Κύρου
cause], that they having-seen the army of-Cyrus

μῆποτε δύνασθαι διαγγεῖλαι
would never 'be-able | to-have-told [to tell] (it) 'to (the,

βασιλεῖ. Δὲ τῷ Κίρῳ ἀκοίσαντι ταῦτα
'king. | But to — Cyrus hearing these (things,

ἐδόκει εἶναι ὠφέλιμα,
it-seemed to-be advantageous, [but Cyrus hearing these propositions

καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν
approved of them as being advantageous], and he-ordered him

λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἐκάστου τῶν ἡγε-
to-take (a) part (of the troops) from each of-the com-

μόνων. \ Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντης, νομίσας τοῖς ἰππέας
manders. — But Orontes, having-thought the horsemen

εἶναι ἐτοιμοὺς αὐτῷ, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ
to-be ready for-him, writes (a) letter to (the)

βασιλέα, ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων πλείστους ἰππέας
king, that he-would-come having the-most horsemen

ὥς ἂν δύνηται.
that 'he might 'be-able (to obtain); [that he would come to him with

ἀλλὰ ἐκέλευε
the greatest number of horsemen he could obtain]; but he-requested

φράσαι τοῖς ἰππεῦσιν ἑαυτοῦ
(him) | to-have-told the horsemen of-him [to tell his horsemen]

ὑποδέχεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς φίλιον. Καὶ ἐνῆν
to-receive him as (a) friend. And there | was [were]

ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ δὲ ὑπομνήματα πρόσθεν φιλίας
in the letter not-only reminiscences of-former friendships

καὶ πιστεως. Δίδωσι ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν
but-also of-fidelity (to him). He-gave this the letter

πιστῷ ἀνδρὶ, ὥς ᾤετο. δὲ ὁ λαβὼν
to (a) 'faithful man, as he-thought; but — (he) taking (the letter)

δίδωσι Κίρῳ. Δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἀναγνοὺς αὐτὴν
gave (it) to-Cyrus. But — Cyrus having-read it

συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντην, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν
arrests Orontes, and he-convokes | in the

σκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς ἑπτὰ ἀριστοὺς
tent of-himself [in his own tent] the seven most-distinguished

Περσῶν τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν· καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς
'of (the) 'Persians — about him; and he-ordered the

στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀγαγεῖν ὀπλίτας,
commanders of-the Greeks to-bring-up heavy-armed-men,

δὲ θέσθαι τούτους τὰ ὄπλα περὶ
and | to-have-placed [to place] these — (in) arms around

τὴν σκηνὴν αὐτοῦ. Δὲ οἱ ἐποίησαν
| the tent of-him [his tent]. And — (they) did

ταῦτα ἀγαγόντες ὥς τρισχιλίους ὀπλίτας.
these (things) bringing about three-thousand heavy-armed-men.

Δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσε εἰσὼ Κλέαρχον σύμβουλον,
And also he-called within Clearchus (as) counsellor,

ὃς γε ἐδόκει καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
who at-least seemed both to-himself and the others 'to-be

μάλιστα προτιμηθῆναι τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δ' ἐπεὶ
the-most 'honoured of-the Greeks. But after

ἐξῆλθεν ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ
he-came-out he-related to — (his) friends the trial —

Ορόντου, ὥς ἐγενετο· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ
of-Orontes, how it-was (conducted); for there-was no

ἀπορρήτον. Ἐφη δὲ Κῦρον ἀρχεῖν
secrecy (enjoined), He-said — (that) Cyrus began

ιοῦ λόγου ὧδε·
the subject thus;

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως βου-
I-have-invited you (O-men) (my) friends, that de-

λευόμενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξω περὶ τουτοῦ Ὀρόντου
liberating with you I-will-do respecting this Orontes

τοῦτο ὃ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν
| that whatever just is [that which is just] both before gods

καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς
and before men. For first indeed — my

πατὴρ ἔδωκε τοῦτον εἶναι ὑπήκοον ἐμοί. Δ
father gave this (man) to-be obedient to-me But

ἐπεὶ ταχθεὶς, ὡς αὐτὸς ἔφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἔμου
when having-been-ordered, as 'he himself 'said, by (the) my

ἀδελφοῦ, οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων
brother, this (Orontes) made-war-against me (he) having

τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν Σάρδεσι καὶ ἐγὼ προσπολεμῶν
the citadel in Sardis, and I making-war-against

αὐτὸν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι
him | made (it so) [carried it on so] that (it) seemed (best)

τούτῳ παύσασθαι τοῦ πολέμου πρὸς
to-this (person) to-have-put-an-end (to) the war against

ἐμέ, καὶ ἔλαβον δεξιὰν καὶ ἔδωκα.
me, and I-took (his) right-hand and gave (him mine in

friendship). Μετὰ ταῦτα ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα ἔστιν
After these he-said, O Orontes is-there

ὃ τι ἠδίκησα σε; Ἀπεκρίνατο
[what any [any thing in which] I-have-wronged you? He-answered

ὅτι οὐ. Δὲ ὁ Κύρος πάλιν ἠρώτα·
that (there-is) not. But — Cyrus again inquired; (did you)

οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὥς σὺ αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, ἀποστάς
not-then afterwards, as you yourself confess, having-gone-over

εἰς Μυσούς ἀδικούμενος οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ
to (the) Mysians, being-injured (in) no (manner) by me,

ἐποίεις κακῶς τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, ὃ τι
act ill (against) — my territory, | what any-thing

ἐδύνω; Ὁ Ὀρόντης ἔφη.
[in whatever] you-could? — Orontes said (that he did).

Οὐκοῦν ἔφη ὁ Κύρος ὅποτ' αὖ ἐγνων
(Did you) not-then said — Cyrus | when again you-knew

τὴν δύναμιν σεαυτοῦ
the strength of-yourself, [when you were aware of the little strength

ἔλδων ἐπὶ τὸν βωμόν τῆς
you possessed against me], coming to the altar —

Ἀρτέμιδος, ἐφησθα τε μεταμέλειν σοι,
of-Diana, you-said (that it) not-only repented you

καὶ, πείσας ἐμέ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι
but-also, having-persuaded me, 'you again 'gave me

πιστὰ, καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; Καὶ
pledges (of good faith), and received (the same) from me? And

ὁ Ὀρόντης ὁμολογεῖ ταῦτα Τί οὖν, ἔφη
— Orontes confessed these (things). (In) what then, said

ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ,
— Cyrus, [having-been-injured by me, [hast thou been injured by

νῦν τὸ τρίτον γεγονας φανερός
me]. (that) now (for) the third (time) you-have-been manifestly

ἐπιβουλεύει μοι; Δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντου εἰπόντος ὅτι
plotting-against me? But — Orontes saying, that

ἀδικηθεὶς οὐδέν. Ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτησεν
having-been-injured (in) nothing (he did so). — Cyrus asked

αὐτόν· ὁμολογεῖς οὖν γεγενῆσθαι ἀδικος περὶ
him; You-confess therefore to-have-been unjust towards

ἐμε; Γὰρ ἢ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ
me? (I confess it) for certainly (there is a) necessity, said —

Ὀρόντης. Ἐκ τοῦτο ὁ Κῦρος πάλιν ἠρώτησεν·
Orontes. After this — Cyrus again asked;

Ἄν ἐτι οὖν γένοιο πολέμιος τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ,
Would 'you yet then 'become hostile — to-my brother,

δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ἐμοί; Ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο
but friendly and faithful to-me? — And he-answered,

ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, ἂν ἐτι
that neither if I-should-become (so), O Cyrus, would-it yet-ever

δόξαιμι, σοὶ γε ποτε. Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος
seem-so, to-you at-least never. On this Cyrus

εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν. Ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν
said — (to those) present. — (This) man indeed 'has

μὲν πεποίηκε τοιαῦτα δε λέγει τοιαῦτα. Δὲ
certainly 'done such-things and he-acknowledges the-same. And

ἐμῶν σὺ ὦ Κλέαρχε πρῶτος ἀπόφηνα
of-you (present) 'do you O Clearchus first 'declar

γνώμην, ὃ τι δοκεῖ σοι. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
(your) opinion, whatever seems (right) to-you. And Clearchus

εἶπε τάδε· Ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω τον τοῦτον ἄνδρα
spoke thus: I advise (that) — this man

ποιεῖσθαι ἐκποδὼν ὥς τάχιστα, ὥς
 oe-put out-of-the-way as quickly (as possible), that 'it-may

μηκετι δεη φυλάττεσθαι τοῦτον,
 no-longer 'be-necessary to-guard-against this (person),

ἀλλὰ ἢ σχολὴ ἡμῖν, κατὰ τὸ εἶναι
 but (that) there-may-be leisure to-us, | concerning the to-be

τοῦτον ποιεῖν εὖ τοίτους
 this-one [so far as relates to this man] to-do good (to) those

τοὺς ἐδελοντάς φίλους. Δέ ἐφη ταίτῃ
 — willing (to be) friends. And he-said (that) in-this

τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσδέσθαι. Μετὰ
 — opinion also the others concurred. After

ταῦτα, Κύρου κελεύοντος, ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ
 these (things), Cyrus ordering (it), all even the

συγγενεῖς ἀναστάντες ἔλαβον τὸν Ὀρόντην
 relations (of Orontes) rising-up took — Orontes

τῆς ζώνης ἐπὶ θανάτῳ.
 (by) the girdle | as-to death; [in token of his being condemned

δὲ εἴτα οἷς προσετάχθη ἐξῆγον
 to death]; but then (those) to-whom it-was-commanded, led

αὐτὸν. Δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἱ περ πρόσθεν
 him (out). But when (those) saw him who formerly

προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκίνησαν,
 used-to-bow-down (before him), and then (also) they-bowed-down

καί περ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἀγοιτο ἐπὶ θάνατον.
 (before him) although knowing, that he-might-be-led to death.

Δέ ἐπεὶ εἰσηνεχθὴ τὴν σκηνὴν Ἀρταπάτου, τοῦ
 And then he-was-led to-the tent of-Artapatas, the

πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηπτοῦχων Κύρου,
 most-faithful (and trusted) of-the | sceptre-bearers [ushers] of-Cyrus,

μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς πώποτε εἶδε Ὀρόντην οὐτὶ
 after this no-one ever saw Orontes, neither

ζῶντα οὔτε τεθνηκότα, οὐδέ οὐδεὶς εἰδὼς
 living nor having-died, | nor any-one having-known

ἔλεγεν ὅπως ἀπέθανε.
 was-said [nor . . . ould any one of his own knowledge say] how he died

δ' ἄλλοι εἰκαζον ἄλλως.

[and others conjectured otherwise [some conjectured this, and

others that]. Δὲ οὐδεὶς τάφος αὐτοῦ τῷποτε
But no tomb of-him 'was ever

ἑφάνη.

'seen.

CHAPTER VII.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαίνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας

HENCE he-proceeds through the Babylonian (province)

τρεῖς σταδμοὺς δώδεκα παρασάγγας. Δ' ἐν
three days'-march (making) twelve parasangs. And on

τῷ τρίτῳ σταδμῷ Κῦρος ποιεῖται, περὶ μέσας
the third day's march Cyrus makes, about (the) middle

νύκτας, ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν Βαρβάρων,
of-night, a-review of-the Greeks and of-the Barbarians,

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ γὰρ ἐδόκει βασιλέα ἥξειν
on the plain; for he-thought (that the) king would-arrive

εἰς τὴν ἑω ἐπιούσαν σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
on the morning coming with the army (and)

μαχοῦμενον· καὶ μὲν ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθαι.
offering-battle; and — he-ordered Clearchus to-take-command

τοῦ δεξιῶν κέρως, δὲ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ
of-the right wing, and Menon the Thessalian of-the

εὐωνύμου δὲ αὐτὸς διέταξε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.
left; but he-himself drew-up-in-order-of-battle [the of-himself

Δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα
[his own troops]. But after the review | at-the-same-time

τῇ ἐποίῳσῃ ἡμέρᾳ, αὐτόμολοι ἦκοντες
with-the coming day, [at dawn of day], deserters coming

παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως | ἀπήγγελλον Κῦρα
from (the) great king | informed Cyrus

περὶ τῆς στρατιᾶς βασιλέως. Δὲ Κῦρος,
about (the state) of-the army 'of (the) 'king. — Cyrus,

πιγκαλεσας τους στρατηγους καὶ λοχαγους τῶν
having-assembled the generals and captains of-the

Ελλήνων, συνεβουλείετο τε, πῶς ἂν
Greeks, consulted (with them) not-only, how 'he migh

ποιοιτο τὴν μάχην, καὶ αὐτὸς
| 'wake the battle, [conduct the engagement], but-also h^e

θαῤῥύνων τοιᾶδε παρήνει. \ Ὁ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες,
encouraging thus exhorted (them). \ O Grecian men.

οὐκ ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων ἀνδρώπων
(it is) not (for) being-in-want of-barbarian men (that;

ἄγω ὑμᾶς συμμαχους, ἀλλὰ νομίζων
I-lead you (with me as) auxiliaries, but thinking

ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν
you to-be more-efficient and better (than) many

βαρβάρων, διὰ τοῦτο
(or a great multitude of) barbarians, 'I for this (reason alone)

προσέλαβον. Οἶν ὅπως ἐσεσδε ἄνδρες
'take-you-with (me). (See) then that you-will-be men

ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ὑπὲρ
worthy of-the liberty which you-have-acquired and for

ἧς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ εὖ ἴστε,
which I 'esteem you 'fortunate. For 'you well 'know,

ὅτι ἂν ἐλοίμην τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἀντὶ πάντων
that 'I would 'prefer — liberty before all

ᾧ ἔχω καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων.
(that) which I-have, and other (things) numerous

Δὲ καὶ ὅπως εἰδῆτε εἰς
(and greater). But also in-order-that 'you (may) 'know to

οἷον ἀγῶνα ἔρχεσθε, ἐγὼ εἶδως
what (kind of) contest you-come, | I having-known [I knowing

διδάξω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος μὲν πολὺ
well] will-inform you. For the multitude (is) indeed large,

καὶ ἐπίασι πολλῇ κραυγῇ· δ' ἂν ἀνάσ-
and they-come-on 'with (a) 'great shout; but should you.

χησθε ταῦτα, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα
have-sustained this, and (as respects) the other (things)

δοκῶ μοι αἰσχύνεσθαι γνώσεσθε οἷους τοὺς
I-seem to-myself to-be-ashamed (that) you-will-know what the

ἀνδρώτους ὄντας ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμῖν.
men | being [born] in — (this) country (are of use) to-us

Δε ὑμῶν ὄντων ἀνδρῶν, και
(as soldiers). But you being men (of courage), and

γενομένων εἰτόλμων,
having-become bold (and spirited), (so as to conquer in the ap-

εἰγῶ μὲν ποιήσω τὸν ὑμῶν
proaching engagement), I indeed will-make (the) (those) of-you

βουλομενον ἀπιεναὶ οἰκαδε ἀπελθεῖν ζῆλωτον
desiring to-go home | to-have-departed [to-return] envied

τοῖς οἰκοῖ· δε οἶμαι ποιήσειν πολλοὺς
— (by those) at-home; but I-think to-'make many 'hereafter

ἐλσεσθαι τὰ
| to-have-taken-for-yourselves [to prefer] the (things to be obtained)

παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀντὶ τῶν οἰκοῖ.
with me before — (those that may be obtained) at-home.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης Σάμιος φυγὰς, δέ
Then Gaulites (a) Samian exile, but (a)

πιστος Κύρῳ παρών εἶπε· καὶ μὲν ὦ
faithful (adherent of) Cyrus being-present said; and yet, O

Κῦρε τινες λέγουσι, ὅτι νῦν ὑπισχνῇ πολλὰ
Cyrus, some say, that now you-promise many (things)

διὰ τὸ εἶνα ἐν τοιούτῳ τοῦ προ-
on-account-of | the to-be [being] in such (a state) of — ap-

σιώντος κινδύνου· δὲ ἂν τι γένηται εὖ,
proaching danger; but should any-thing happen well, [but

φασὶ σε οὐ μεμ-
should success attend you], they-say | (that) you 'would not 'have-

νῆσθαι·
remembered; [that you would not hereafter remember your promises]

δ' ἐνιοὶ οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῶό τε καὶ βούλοιο
— some (also say that) neither if you-remember and also may-wish

δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῇ. Ὁ Κῦρος
will-you-be-able — to-give what you-promise. — Cyrus

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἔλεξεν· Ἀλλ' ἐστὶ ἡμῖν ὧ ἀνδρες
hearing this said; But there-is to-us, O men,

ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα,
[the empire the paternal, [the empire, that belonged to my father],

μεν μέχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὗ
(which) indeed (extends) so-far to (the) south where

ἄνθρωποι οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν διὰ καῦμα,
men 'are not 'able to-dwell by-reason-of heat,

δὲ μέχρι πρὸς ἄρκτον οἷ διὰ
and so-far to (the) north where (they cannot live) for

χειμῶνα· δὲ οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-
cold; but the friends of — my brother govern-as-

πεύουσιν πάντα τα ἐν μεσῷ τούτων.
satraps all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these

Δὲ ἦν νικήσωμεν δεῖ ἡνᾶς
(northern and southern limits). But if we-conquer it-becomes us

ποιῆσαι τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους ἐγκρατεῖς τούτων.
to-make — our friends masters of-those

Ὡστε οὐ δέδοικα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω
(countries). So-that I-'have not 'feared this, lest I-have

οὐκ τι ὃ δῶ ἐκάστω τῶν φίλων,
not any-thing which I-might-give to-each — 'of (my) friends,

ἀν γένηται εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω
[should it-happen well, [should we be successful], but lest I-have

οὐκ ἱκανοῖς, οἷς δῶ. Δὲ
not (friends) enough, to-whom I-might-give. But 'I-will

καὶ δώσω ἐκάστω ὑμῶν Ἑλλήνων χρυσοῦν
also 'give to-each of-you Greeks (a) golden

στέφανον. Δὲ οἱ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
crown. But the (Greeks present) hearing these (things),

αὐτοὶ ἦσαν τε πολὺ προθυμότεροι,
they were not-only much 'more (encouraged and) 'prompt-for-action,

καὶ ἐξήγγελλον τοῖς ἄλλοις.
but-also they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the

Δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τινὲς
Greeks). And not-only the commanders about in but-also some

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσήεσαν ἀξιῶντες
of-the other Greeks entered (his tent) desiring

εἰδέναι τι ἔσται σφίσιν, ἐὰν κρατήσωσι.
to-know what (reward) shall-be to-them, if they-should-conquer.

Δὲ ὁ ἐμπιπλὰς τὴν γνώμην ἀπάντων,
But — (he) having-satisfied the minds of-all,

ἀπέπεμπε· Δὲ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο
'sent (them) 'away. And all whoever conversed

παρεκελεύοντο αὐτῷ, μὴ μάχεσθαι,
(with him) exhorted him, not to-fight (personally),

ἀλλ' τάττεσθαι ὀπισθεν ἐαυτῶν.
but to-place-himself behind (the line of battle) of-themselves.

Ἐν δὲ τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τὸν Κῦρον
At — — this time Clearchus inquired-of — Cyrus

πῶς ὧδε· Οἶει γὰρ σοι ὧ Κῦρε τὸν
some-how thus; Do-you-think then (to-you), O Cyrus, (that) — (your

ἀδελφόν μαχεῖσθαι; Νῆ Δί ἐφη ὁ Κῦρος
brother will-fight? Yes, by-Jupiter, said — Cyrus

εἶπερ γε ἐστί παῖς Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος,
if indeed he-is (the) son of-Darius and Parysatis,

δὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ἐγὼ οὐ λήψομαι
and my brother, I 'shall not 'take (possession of)

ταῦτ' ἁμαχεί.
these (dominions) without-a-fight.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ
There indeed (of those) (is) — under-arms (the,

ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων μυρία καὶ
number was of-the — Greeks ten-thousand and

τετρακοσία ἄσπις, δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πέντα
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and two-thousand and five-

κόσιοι πελτασται, δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων
hundred targetiers, and (the number) of-the barbarians

μετὰ Κῦρου δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ
with Cyrus (was) | ten ten-thousands, [one hundred thousand], and

ἄμφι τα εἴκοσι δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα. Δὲ
about — twenty scythe-bearing chariots. And (the number)

τῶν πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατοὶ καὶ εἴκοσι.
of-the enemy was-said to-be | a-hundred and twenty

μυριάδες, καὶ διακόσια δρεπανηφόρα
ten-thousands, [1,200,000], and two-hundred scythe-bearing

ἄρματα. Δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἄλλοι ἵππεις,
chariots. And there-were six-thousand other horsemen,

ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἤρχεν· οὗτοι ἦσαν
of-whom Artagerses had-the-command; these (horsemen) were

τεταγμένοι πρὸ βασιλεως αὐτοῦ. Δε
drawn-up before (the) king himself. But 'of (the)

στρατεύματος τοῦ βασιλεως ἦσαν τέτταρες
'army of-the king there-were four (being)

ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες, ἕκαστος
commanders and generals and leaders, each

triákonta μυριάδων
(having under his command) | thirty ten-thousands, [300,000],

Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφερνης, Γωβρίας,
(their names were) Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobruas,

Ἀρβάκης. Δὲ τούτων παρεγενοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
Arbaces. But of-these there-were-present in the battle

ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ
| nine-hundred ten-thousands, [900,000], and a-hundred and

πεντήκοντα δρεπανηφόρα ἄρματα· γὰρ Ἀβροκόμας
fifty scythe-bearing chariots; for Abrocomas

ἐλαύνων ἐκ Φοινίκης ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης πέντε
marching from Phoenicia arrived-after the battle five

ἡμέρας. Δὲ οἱ αὐτομόλησαντες ἐκ τῶι
days. And — (those) having-deserted from the

πολεμίων παρὰ μέγαλον βασιλέως
enemy (that were) with (the) great king

ἠγγελλον ταῦτα πρὸς Κύρον πρὸ τῆς μάχης·
announced these (things) to Cyrus before the battle;

καὶ, μετὰ τὴν μάχην, οἱ ὕστεροι
and, after the battle, — (those that) thereafter

ἐλήφθησαν ἠγγελλον ταῦτα.
were-taken-prisoners reported the-same (things).

Δε ἐντεῦθεν Κύρος ἐξελαίνει ἓνα σταδμον
 And thence Cyrus proceeds one days'-march,
 τρεῖς παρασάγγας παντί τῷ στρατεύματι,
 (making) three parasangs, with-all the army,
 καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ συντε-
 both the Greek and the barbarian, drawn-up-in-
 ταγμένῳ· γὰρ ᾧετο βασιλεα μαχεῖσθαι
 order-of-battle; for he-thought (that the) king would-offer-battle
 ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· γὰρ κατὰ μεσον τοῖ
 (on) that — (same) day; for about (the) middle (of) the
 σταδμόν ἦν τάφρος ὀρυκτὴ βαθεῖα, τὸ
 days'-march there-was (found) a-ditch dug deep, the
 εὔρος μὲν πεντε ὀργυιαί, δὲ τὸ βάθος τρεῖς
 breadth indeed (was) five fathoms, and the depth three
 ὀργυιαί. Δὲ ἡ τάφρος παρετέτατο ἄνω διὰ τοῦ
 fathoms. And the ditch was-extended up through the
 πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι τείχους
 plain to twelve parasangs, just-to (the) walls
 τοῦ Μηδίας. Ἐνθα δὴ εἰσιν αἱ διώρυχες ῥέουσai
 — of-Media. Here — are the canals flowing
 ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ εἰσὶ τέτταρες,
 from the river Tigris; and there-are four (of them),
 τὸ μὲν εὔρος πλεδριαῖαι, δὲ ἰσχυρῶς
 the — breadth (of each is) of-the-size-of-a-plethrum, and very
 βαθεῖαι, καὶ σιταγωγὰ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς·
 deep, and corn-carrying vessels sail on them;
 δὲ εἰσβάλλουσι εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, δὲ δια-
 and they-discharge-their-water into the Euphrates, and they-
 λείπouσι ἐκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ'
 leave (between) each a-parasang, bridges also
 ἐπέουσιν. Ἦν δὲ στενὴ πάροδος
 'are (thrown) 'over (them). There-was — (a) narrow passage
 παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην, μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ
 along the Euphrates, between the river and
 τῆς τάφρου ὥς τὸ εὔρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. Ταύτην
 the trench about the breadth of-twenty feet. This

δε τὴν τάφρον μέγας βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντι
— — trench (the) great king makes for (a')

ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνδάνεται Κῦρον προσελαίνοντα.
defence, after he-heard-of Cyrus marching-against

Ταύτην τὴν πάροδον δὴ τε Κῦρός καὶ
(him). This — passage indeed not-only Cyrus but-also

ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε, καὶ ἐγένοντο εἰσω τῆς
the army went-through, and (so) became within the

τάφρου. Βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ οὖν ἐμαχέσατο
trench. (The) king indeed 'did not therefore 'offer-battle

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἀλλὰ πολλὰ ἵχνη καὶ ἵππων
on-that — day, but many tracks both of-horses

καὶ ἀνδρώπων ὑποχωρούντων ἦσαν φανερά.
and of-men retreating were visible.

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρα-
There Cyrus having-called Silanus the Ambra-

κίωτην μάντιν, ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τρισχιλίους δαρεικοὺς,
cian soothsayer, gave him three-thousand darics,

ὅτι πρότερον τῇ ἐνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς
because previously on-the eleventh (day) from that —

ἡμέρας θνόμενος, εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς
day (while) sacrificing, he-said to-him that (the) king

οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν· Κῦρος δ'
'would not 'fight (for) ten days; Cyrus then

εἶπεν, οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ οὐ
said, he-'will not then thereafter 'fight, if he-'will not

μαχεῖται ἐν ταύταις ταῖς ἡμεραῖς· δ' ἐὰν ἀλη-
'fight in these — days; but if you-speak-

θεύσης, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. Τοῦτο
the-truth, I-promise you ten talents. This

τὸ χρυσίον τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ αἱ δέκα ἡμέρα
— gold 'he then 'paid, when the ten days

παρῆλθον. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ, βασιλεὺς
elapsed. After indeed, at the trench, (the) king

ἐκώλυε τὸ στράτευμα Κῦρου διαβαίνειν,
'prevent the army of-Cyrus to-go-through (it),

ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωχέναι
 ne-seemed both to-Cyrus and to-the others to-have-given-up
 τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος
 the (design) to-fight; so-that on-the following (day) Cyrus
 ἐπορεύετο μᾶλλον ἡμελημένως. Δὲ
 proceeded (on his march) more negligently. But
 τῇ τρίτῃ ἐποιεῖτο τὴν πορείαν τε καθήμενος
 on-the third (day) he-made the march not-only being-seated
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος, καὶ ἔχων πρὸ αὐτοῦ
 in — (his) chariot, but-also having before him
 ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει· δὲ τὸ πολὺ
 few (men, drawn up) in order; but the greater (part of
 αὐτῷ ἐπορεύετο ἀνατεταραγμένον,
 the army) for-him proceeded-on | having-been-put-in-disorder, [without
 καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρα-
 observing any order], and many of-the arms for-the sol-
 τῶταις ἤγοντο ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν καὶ ὑποξυγίων.
 diers were-carried on wagons and beasts-of-burden.

CHAPTER VIII.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε ἀμφὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν,
 And it-was now not-only about full market (time),
 καὶ ὁ σταδμὸς ἦν πλησίον ἔνθα ἔμελλε κατα-
 out-also the station was near where he-was-about to-ter-
 λύνειν ἡνίκα Παταγύας Πέρσης ἀνὴρ,
 .ainate (the day's march) when Pataguas (a) Persian man,
 τῶν πιστῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον προφαίνεται.
 of-the faithful (adherents) about Cyrus appears
 ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος τῷ ἵπῳ ἰδρῶντι·
 riding at full-speed — (with his) horse sweating,
 καὶ εὐθὺς ἐβόα πᾶσιν, οἷς ἐνετύγχανε,
 and immediately he-called-out to-all, whom he-met,
 καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς, ὅτι
 both | in-barbarian [in Persian] and in-Greek, that (the)

βασιλεὺς προσέρχεται σὺν πολλῷ στρατεύματι,
king approaches with (a) large army,

παρεσκευασμένος ὥς εἰς μάχην. Ἐνθα δὴ ἐγένετο
prepared as for battle. Then indeed there-

νετο πολὺς ταραχος· γὰρ οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ δὲ
was great confusion; for the Greeks and also

πάντες ἐδόκουν αἰτίκα ἐπιπε-
all thought (that) 'he (the king) 'would suddenly 'fall

σεῖσθαι σφίσιν ἀτάκτοις· Κῦρός τε, καταπηδήσας
on them in-disorder; Cyrus not-only, having-leaped-down

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος, ἐνέδν τὸν θώρακα, καὶ
from the chariot, put-on — (his) breast-plate, but-also

ἀναβάς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαβε τὰ παλτά
mounting on — (his) horse he-took — (his) javelins

εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, τε παρήγγελλε πᾶσι τοῖς
in — (his) hands, (and) not-only did-he-order all the

ἄλλοις ἐξοπλίζεσθαι, καὶ ἕκαστον καδίστασθαι
rest to-arm-themselves, but-also each-one | to-place-himself

εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἑαυτοῦ.
in the rank of-himself [to station himself in his own rank].

Ἐνθα δὴ καδίσταντο σὺν
There indeed (in their proper stations) they-placed-themselves with

πολλῇ σπουδῇ, Κλέαρχος μὲν ἔχων τὰ δεξιὰ
great haste, Clearchus indeed having the right

τοῦ κέρατος πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ, δὲ
of-the (right) wing near the river Euphrates, but

Πρόξενος ἔχόμενος δ' οἱ ἄλλοι
Proxenus having (his station next to him) and the others

μετὰ τοῦτον. Δὲ Μένων καὶ τὸ
after this (in order). But Menon and — (his)

στράτευμα ἔσχε τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ.
army had the left wing of-the - Greek

Δὲ τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ ἵππεις μὲν Παφλα-
(army,. But of-the barbarian (force) horsemen namely (the) Paphla-

γόνες εἰς χιλίους ἵστησαν παρὰ Κλέαρχον
gonians about a thousand stood with Clearchus

καὶ το Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικόν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ.
and the Greek peltastic (force) on the right,

δὲ ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τε Ἀριαῖος ὁ ὑπαρχος
but on the left (was) not-only Ariæus the lieutenant

Κύροι, καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν. Κῦρος δὲ
of-Cyrus, but-also the other barbarian (force); Cyrus also

καὶ ἵππεῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι,
and (the) horsemen with him about six-hundred (were in the

αὐτοὶ μὲν ὤπλισμένοι θώραξι καὶ
centre), they indeed having-been-armed with-breastplates and

παραμυριδίοις, καὶ πάντες κράνεσι πλὴν Κύρου.
armour-for-the-thighs, and all with-helmets, except Cyrus;

Κῦρος δὲ καδίστατο εἰς τὴν μάχην ἔχων
Cyrus indeed stationed-himself in the battle having

τὴν κεφαλὴν ψιλὴν. δὲ καὶ λέγεται
— (his) head bare; and (it is) also said (that)

τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας διακινδυνεύειν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ
the other Persians expose-themselves in — battle

ταῖς ψιλαῖς κεφαλαῖς. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἵπποι,
— with-bare heads. Also all the horses, (namely)

οἱ μετὰ Κύρου, εἶχον καὶ προμετω-
— (those) with Cyrus, had both defensive-armour-on-their-

πίδια καὶ προστερνίδια. δὲ οἱ ἵππεῖς καὶ
foreheads and defensive-armour-for-the-breast; and the horsemen also

εἶχον Ἑλληνικάς μαχαίρας.
had Grecian swords.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε μέσον ἡμέρας,
And it-was now not-only (the) middle 'of (the) 'day,

καὶ οὐπω ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοι καταφανεῖς. δὲ
but-also not-yet were the enemy visible; but

ἥνικα ἐγίγνετο δείλη κονιορτός ἐφάνη, ὥσπερ
when it-was early-afternoon a-dust appeared, like-as

λευκὴ νεφέλε, δὲ οὐ συχνῶ χρόνῳ ὕστερον
(a) white cloud, but 'in no 'much time after,

τις ὥσπερ μελανία ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ
something like blackness (appeared) on the plain on

πολί. Δὲ ὅτε ἐγίγνοντο ἐγγύτερον,
 much [much extended]. But when they-became nearer,
 καὶ δὴ τάχα τις χαλκός ἤστραπτε, καὶ
 and — thereupon something (like) brass gleamed-forth, and
 αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις ἐγίγνοντο καταφανεῖς.
 the spears and the ranks became visible.
 Καὶ ἦσαν ἵππεις μὲν λευκοδόρακες ἐπὶ
 And there-were horsemen — (having) white-corselets on
 τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων, Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο
 the left of-the enemy, Tissaphernes was-said
 ἄρχειν τούτων· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τούτων
 to-command these; next then (to) these (were the)
 γερρόφοροι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὀπλίται
 wicker-shield-bearers; next also (to these were) heavy-armed-men
 σὺν ξυλίταις ἀσπίσι ποδήρεσι· δ' οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο
 with wooden shields reaching-to-the-feet; and these were-said
 εἶναι Αἰγύπτιοι· δ' ἄλλοι ἵππεις
 to-be Egyptians; and (next followed) other horsemen (next)
 ἄλλοι τοξόται. Πάντες δ' οὗτοι
 other bowmen. All — these (marched together)
 κατὰ ἔθνη, ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο
 according-to (their) nation, each — nation marched-on
 ἐν πλασίῳ πλήρει ἀνδράπων. Δε
 [in (an) oblong full of-men [in solid column]]. And
 πρὸ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν
 before them (were) chariots leaving (a) considerable (space)
 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, τὰ δὲ καλούμενα δρεπανη-
 between one-another, — (these) indeed were-called scythe
 φόρα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἀποτεταμένα ἐκ
 chariots; they-had — the scythes extended from
 τῶν ἁξόνων εἰς πλάγιον, καὶ ὑπὸ
 the axles in (an) oblique (direction), and (others) under
 τοῖς δίφροις βλέποντα εἰς γῆν ὥς
 the seats-of-the-drivers looking towards (the) ground so-as
 διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. Δὲ ἡ γνώμη
 to-cut-through whatever they-might-meet. And the | design

ἦν ὥς ἐλόντων καὶ διακοφόντων εἰς
 (of them) was that hereafter-driving-into, and cutting-through into
 τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
 the ranks of-the Greeks. [The design of these chariots

ὁ Κῦρος
 was to drive into, and cut through the ranks of the Greeks.] What Cyrus
 μέντοι εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο
 however said when having-called (the men) he-exhorted

τοῖς Ἑλλήσι ἀνέχεσθαι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρ-
 the Greeks to-sustain the shout of-the bar-
 βάρων, τοῦτο ἐψεύσθη· γὰρ προσήεσαν οὐ
 barians, in-this he-was-deceived; for they-approached not 'with (a)

κραυγῇ, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ, ὥς ἀνυστόν,
 'shout, but 'in (as much) 'silence, as (it was) possible,

καὶ ἡσυχῇ, ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως. Καὶ ἐν
 and quietly, in (an) even (step) and slowly. And at

τούτῳ Κῦρος, παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι.
 this (time) Cyrus, riding-by himself with Pigres,

τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ, καὶ τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι ἄλλοις, ἐβόα
 the interpreter, and three or four others, he-called-out

τῷ Κλέαρχῳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ τὸ
 — to-Clearchus to-lead — (his) army against the

μέσον τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι βασιλεὺς εἶη ἐκεῖ·
 centre of-the enemy, that (the) king might-be there;

καὶ εἰπεὶ νικῶμεν τοῦτο πάντα πεποιήται
 and-if, said-he, we-conquer (in) this (quarter) all has-been-done

ἡμῖν. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ὄρων τὸ μέσον στίφος,
 for-us. But — Clearchus seeing — (that) middle dense-body

καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου βασιλέα ὄντα
 (of soldiers), and hearing from-Cyrus (of the) king being

ἐξω τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εἰωνύμου, γὰρ βασιλεὺς
 beyond the Grecian left, for (the) king

περιῆν τοσοῦτον πλήθει, ὥστε ἔχων τὸ μέσον
 excelled so-much in-multitude, | so-that having the middle

ἑαυτοῦ ἦν
 of-himself [so that, stationed in the centre of his army,] he-was (even)

οὐκ ᾔδελεν ἀποσπάσαι τὸ δεξιὸν κέρασ ἀπο
 did not 'wish to-draw-off the right wing from
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωδεῖν ἑκατέ-
 the river, fearing lest he-might-be-surrounded on-both-
 ρωθεν. δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι μελοι
 sides, but — to-Cyrus he-replied, | that it-would-be-a-care
 αὐτῷ ὅπως ἔχοι καλῶς.
 to him that it-may-have (itself) well [that he would take care,

that everything should terminate well].

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν
 And during this — time the — barbarian
 στράτευμα προῆει ὁμαλῶς, δὲ τὸ Ἑλλη-
 army advanced steadily (and equally), and the Gre-
 νικὸν ἔτι μένον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, συνε-
 cian (army) still remaining in the same (place), was-formed-
 τάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. Καὶ ἔ-
 in-order-of-battle from — (those) still coming-up. And —
 Κύρος παρελαύνων οὐ πᾶν πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ
 Cyrus riding-past not very near to-this (his) —
 στρατεῖματι, κατεδεᾶτο ἀποβλέπων ἑκατέρωσε,
 army, surveyed (the armies) looking-at each-side,
 τε εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς
 not-only towards the enemy but-also (towards) — (his
 φίλους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος ἰδὼν αὐτοὶ
 friends. But Xenophon (an) Athenian seeing him
 ἀπο τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ, ὑπελάσας ὥς συναν
 from the Grecian (line), having-riden-up as-if to-have
 τῆσαι, ἤρετο εἰ τι παραγγέλλοι
 met (him), asked if he-may-'have any-thing 'to-order
 ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε, καὶ ἐκέλευε
 who — having-stopped (his horse) said, and-also ordered (him)
 λέγειν πᾶσιν, ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια
 to-tell all that both the sacrifices and the victims (were:

καλα. Λέγων δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε θορύβου ἰόντος
favourable. Saying — this he-heard (a) noise going
διὰ τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος
through the ranks, and he-inquired what the noise
εἶη. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν, ὅτι τὸ σύνδημα
might-be. — And Xenophon said, that the watch-word 'is
ἤδη παρερχεται δεύτερον. Καὶ
now 'passing (through the ranks) for-the-second-time. And
ὁς ἐθαύμασε τίς παρ'αγγέλλει, καὶ
(who) (Cyrus) wondered what-person gives-out (the word), and
ἤρετο ὅ τι τὸ σύνδημα εἶη. Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
he-asked what the watch-word might-be. — And he-replied,
ὅτι Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. Ὁ δὲ Κύρος
that (it was) Jupiter (the) preserver and victory. — And Cyrus
ἀκούσας, ἔφη. ἀλλὰ τε δέχομαι καὶ ἔστω
having-heard (it), said, but 'I not-only 'receive (it) but-also let-it-be
τοῦτο. Δὲ εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἀπήλαυσε εἰς τὴν
so. And having-said this he-rode-away to | to-the
χώραν ἑαυτοῦ· καὶ τὸ φάλ-
place of-himself; [to his own station in the line;] and the-two ar-
λαγγε διειχέτην ἀπ' ἀλλήλων οὐκέτι τρία ἢ
mies were-apart from one-another not-more-than three or
τέτταρα στάδια, ἥνίκα οἱ Ἕλληνες τε ἐπαιάνιζον,
four stadia, when the Greeks not-only sang-the-pæan,
καὶ ἤρχοντο ἰέναι ἀντίοι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Δὲ
but-also began to-go against the enemy. But
ὥς πορευομένων τι τῆς φάλαγγος ἔξεχύ-
as (they) were-proceeding some (part) of-the phalanx fluctu-
μαινε τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο
ated (from the rest) the (part) left-behind began
θεῖν δρόμῳ· καὶ πάντες ἅμα ἐφδέγγαντο
to-run with-speed; and (they) all together made-a-noise
ἰόνπερ ἐλελίζουσι τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ, καὶ δὲ πάντες
like-as they-shout to — Mars, and also all
ἔδεον. Δὲ τινες λέγουσι, ὥς καὶ ἐδούπησαν
an. And some say, that 'they also 'sounded

ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα, ποιοῦντες
— 'with (their) 'shields against the spears, causing

φόβον τοῖς ἵπποις. Δὲ πρὶν τόξευμα
fear to-the horses. But before (that) (an) arrow

ἐξικνεῖσθαι, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκκλίνουσι, καὶ
reaches (them), the barbarians give-way, and

φεύγουσι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
flee. And also there indeed the Greeks

ἐδίωκον κατὰ κράτος, δὲ ἐβόων ἀλλήλοις
followed with (all their) might, and calling-out to-one-another

μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλὰ ἔπεςθαι ἐν τάξει. Δὲ
not to-run with-speed, but to-follow in order. But

τὰ ἄρματα, κενὰ ἡνιόχων, ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν
the chariots, void of-drivers, were-born — (some) indeed

διὰ τῶν πολεμίων αὐτῶν, δὲ τὰ
through (the ranks) of-the enemy themselves, but — (others)

καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δὲ οἱ,
also through (the ranks) of-the Greeks. But — (they),

ἐπεὶ προῖδοιεν, δίستانτο.
when they-could-see (them coming) | they-stood-apart [they opened their

δ' ἔστι ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη,
ranks]; but there-was some-one-person (who) also was-caught,

ὥσπερ ἐν ἵπποδρόμῳ, ἐκπλαγεῖς· καὶ
as in (a) race-course, he-having-been-struck-with-fear; and

ἔφασαν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν οὐδέν·
they-said however (that) neither 'did this-person 'suffer | nothing;

οὐδ' οὐδεὶς ἄλλος δὲ
[in any thing]; | neither 'did no-one other indeed [nor did any one

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐπαθεν οὐδέν ἐν
else] of-the Greeks | suffer nothing [suffer any thing' in

ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τις
this — battle, except on the left, some-one

ἐλέγετο τοξευθῆναι.
was said to-have-been-shot-with-an-arrow.

Δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντα, καὶ
But Cyrus seeing the Greeks conquering and

διώκοντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς, ἡδόμενος
pursuing the (part of the army) opposed-to them, being-pleased.

καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν
and being-saluted now as king by — (those)

ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὥς ἐξήχθη διώκειν,
about him, nor (yet) was-'he thus 'led-away to-pursue (the enemy),

ἀλλὰ ἔχων συνεσπειραμένην τὴν τάξιν τῶν
but keeping drawn-up-in-close-order the band of-the

ἑξακοσίων ἰππέων σὺν ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅτι
six-hundred horsemen with himself, he-carefully-watched what

βασιλεὺς ποιήσει· γὰρ καὶ ᾔδει αὐτόν
(the) king would-do; for 'he well 'knew (him),

ὅτι ἔχοι μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.
that he-kept the-centre of-the Persian army.

Καὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν βαρβάρων
And also all the commanders of-the barbarians

ἔχοντες τὸ μέσον αὐτῶν ἡγοῦντο,
occupying the centre of-their (command) led (them thus

νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ
into action) thinking thus also to-be — the-most-secure

ἢ ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ἢ ἑκατέρωθεν,
if | the strength of-them [their strength] should-be on-either-side,

καὶ εἰ χρήζοιεν παραγγεῖλαι τι, τὸ
and, if they-should-want to-order any-thing, (that) the

στράτευμα ἂν αἰσδάνεσθαι ἡμίσει χρόνῳ. Καὶ
army may perceive in-half (the) time. And

δὴ βασιλεὺς ἔχων τότε μέσον τῆς
even-indeed (the) king having then (the) centre of-the

στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο ὁμως ἔξω
[army of-him [of his army] was nevertheless beyond (the)

εὐωνύμου κέρατος τοῦ Κύρου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς
left wing — of-Cyrus. When indeed no-on

ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ οὐδὲ
fought from the opposite (part) (either) against-himself (nor) (or)

τοῖς τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ,
- (those of his own troops) drawn-up before him,

ἐπέκαμπτεν ὥς εἰς κυκλῶσιν.
he-commenced-wheeling-round as for-the-purpose-of surrounding

Ἐνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ γενόμενος ὀπισθεν
Then indeed Cyrus, fearing lest having-got in-the-rear

κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος.
he-might-cut-to-pieces the Grecian (forces), moves-on against

καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις
[him]; and having-charged with the six-hundred (horsemen with

him), conquers — (those) drawn-up before (the) king,

καὶ ἔτρεψε εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους,
and turns into flight the six-thousand (horsemen

καὶ αὐτὸς λέγεται ἀποκτεῖναι
guarding the king), and he (Cyrus) is-said to-have-killed

τῇ χειρὶ ἑαυτοῦ Ἄρταγέρσῃ
[with-the hand of-himself [with his own hand] Artagersea

τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. Δὲ ὥς ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο,
the commander of-them. But as the rout occurred,

καὶ οἱ ἑξακόσιοι Κύρου, διασπείρονται
also the six-hundred (horsemen) of-Cyrus, are-dispersed

ὁρμήσαντες εἰς τὸ διώκειν· πλὴν πάνυ
having-rushed-on | to the pursuing; [in pursuit]; except (a) very

ὀλίγοι κατελείφθησαν ἀμφ' αὐτόν,
few, (that) were-left about him, (and who were)

σχεδὸν οἱ καλούμενοι ὁμοτράπεζοι. Ὦν
nearly-all — (those who) are-called table-companions. Being

δὲ σὺν τούτοις, καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ το
therefore with these, he-sees (the) king and the

στίφος ἀμφ' ἐκείνον, καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ
dense-body-guard around him, and immediately he-'did not

ἡνέσχετο ἀλλ' εἰπὼν, ὁρῶ τὸν ἄνδρα, ἵετο ἐπ'
'restrain-himself, but saying, I-see the man, he-rushed on

αὐτόν· καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, καὶ
him; and strikes at — (his) breast, and

τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὥς Κτησίας ὁ
wounds (him) through the breast-plate. as Ctesias the

ἰατρός φησί, καὶ αὐτὸς φησί ἰᾶσθαι
 physician says, and (moreover) he-himself says (that) he-healed

τὸ τραῦμα. Δὲ τις παίοντα
 the wound. But some-one, (while he was) striking (at the king)

ἄκοντίζει αὐτὸν βιαίως παλτῶ ὑπὸ τὸν
 hits him violently 'with (a) 'javelin under the

ὀφθαλμὸν· καὶ ἐνταῦθα καὶ βασιλεὺς
 eye; and there (then were) both (the) king

καὶ Κῦρος μαχόμενοι, καὶ οἱ ἄμφ'
 and Cyrus fighting, and — (those likewise) about

αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου·
 them (were fighting), for each (of their own chiefs);

ὅποσοι μὲν τῶν ἄμφι βασιλέα ἀπέδνησκον
 how-many indeed — (of those) about (the) king died

Κτησίας λέγει· γὰρ ἦν παρ' ἐκείνῳ·
 (in battle) Ctesias tells (us); | for he-was about him;

δὲ τε Κῦρος αὐτός
 [for he attended the king's person]; and not-only Cyrus himself

ἀπέδανε, καὶ ὀκτώ, οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν
 died, but-also eight, the most-distinguished (persons) —

περὶ αὐτὸν, ἔκειντο ἐπ' αὐτῷ. Δὲ
 (of those) about him, lay (dead) on him. But

Ἀρταπάτης, ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπ
 Artapates, the most-faithful to-him — (of his) sceptre-

τούχων θεράπων, λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ εἶδε Κῦρον
 bearing servants, is-said, after he-saw Cyrus

πεπτωκότα, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου
 fallen, (that) having-leaped from — (his) horse

περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ μὲν φασὶ
 to-have-thrown (himself) on-him. And — (some) indeed say (that)

βασιλέα κελεῦσαι τινα ἐπισφάζαι
 (the) king ordered some one | to-have-killed [to kill]

αὐτὸν Κῦρῳ, οἱ δὲ σπασάμενον
 him (lying) on-Cyrus, — but (others say, that) having-drawn

τὸν ἀκινάκην, ἐπισφάξασθαι ἑαυτὸν· γὰρ
 — (his) scimitar, he-killed himself; for

εἶχε χρυσοῦν· δὲ καὶ ἐφόρει στρεπτόν, καὶ
 he-had (a) golden-one; and also he-wore (a) chain, and
 ψέλλια, καὶ τᾶλλα, ὥσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι
 bracelets, and (such) other (ornaments), as the most-distinguished
 Περσῶν· γὰρ ἐτετίμητο
 'of (the) 'Persians (are accustomed to wear); for he-had-been-honoured
 ὑπὸ Κύρου τε δι' εὐνοίαν καὶ
 by Cyrus not-only for (his) good-will-and-affection, but-also (for his)
 πιστότητα.
 very-great-fidelity.

CHAPTER IX.

Οὕτως οὖν μὲν ἐτελευτήσῃ Κῦρος, ἀνὴρ ὢν
 Thus now indeed died Cyrus, (a) man being
 τε τῶν Περσῶν γενομένων μετὰ Κῦρον
 not-only 'of (all) 'the Persians existing since Cyrus
 τὸν ἀρχαῖον, βασιλικώτατος, καὶ ἀξιώτατος
 the elder, princely, but-also the-most-worthy
 ἄρχειν, ὡς ὁμολογεῖται παρὰ πάντων τῶν
 to-reign, as is-agreed-to by all — | (those
 δοκούντων γενέσθαι ἐν πείρᾳ Κύρου.
 appearing to-have-been in (the) experience of-Cyrus [those inti-
 Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον, ὢν ἔτι
 mately acquainted with Cyrus]. For indeed first, being yet (a)
 παῖς, ὅτε ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ
 boy, when he-was-educated both with — (his) brother
 καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισὶ, ἐνομίζετο κράτιστος
 and with the other boys, he-was-thought (to be) the-best
 πάντων πάντα. Γὰρ πάντες οἱ παῖδες
 of-all in-all-things. For all the sons
 Περσῶν τῶν ἀρίστων παιδεύονται ἐπὶ ταῖς
 of-Persians — eminent-in-rank, are-educated | at the
 θύραις βασιλέως· ἐνθα τις ἂν
 gates 'of (the) 'king; [in the royal palace]; there one may

καταμάδοι μὲν πολλήν σωφροσύ-
learn indeed much (of the) wisdom-of-temperance-and-
νην, δ' ἔστι οὐτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὐτ' ἰδεῖν
modesty, but it-is (possible) neither to-hear nor to-see
οὐδὲν αἰσχρόν. Δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ θεῶνται τοὺς
any-thing base. But the boys both see — (those)
τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι,
honoured by (the) king and hear (thereof),
καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθύς
and (in like manner of) others being-disgraced; so-that straightway
ὄντες παῖδες μανθάνουσι τε ἄρχειν καὶ
being (yet) boys they-learn not-only to-govern but-also
ἄρχεσθαι. Ἐνθα Κύρος μὲν ἐδόκει πρῶτον
to-be-governed. There Cyrus indeed seemed first (of all)
εἶναι αἰδημονέστατος τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν, τε
to-be the-most-modest — (of his) equals-in-age, (and) not-only
πείδεσθαι τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις καὶ μᾶλλον
to-obey the elders but-also much-more (readily than)
τῶν ὑποδεεστέρον ἑαυτοῦ· δ' ἔπειτα
— (those) more-inferior (to) him (in rank); and next-then
φιλιππότατος, καὶ χρῆσθαι τοῖς
he-was-most-fond-of-horses, and (was able) to-use (or manage) the
ἵπποις ἀριστα. Δ' ἔκρινον αὐτὸν
horses (in the) best (manner). And they-discerned him
εἶναι καὶ φιλομαδέστατον καὶ μελετηρότα-
to-be also the-most-desirous-in-learning, and most-diligent and-indefa-
τον τῶν ἔργων εἰς τὸν πόλεμον,
tigable | (in) the operations for — war, [in warlike exercises],
τε τοξικῆς καὶ ἀκοντίσεως. Ἐπεὶ
not-only (those) of-archery but-also (those) of-throwing-the-dart. When
δὲ ἔπρεπε τῇ ἡλικίᾳ, ἣν καὶ φιλοδηρότατος,
indeed it-became — (his) age, he-was both most fond-of-hunting,
καὶ μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος πρὸς
and even most-fond-of-danger-and-adventure (in encounters) against
τὰ θηρία. Καὶ ποτὲ οὐκ ἔτρεσεν ἄρκτοι
— wild-hearts And once he-'did not 'fear (a) she-bear

ἐπιφερομένην, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν
 (when) attacking (him), | but falling-together [but in the at-
 tack and conflict] he-was-dragged from — (his) horse,
 καὶ μὲν ἔπαδε τὰ καὶ, τὰς
 [and indeed he-suffered the [he received some wounds] and, the
 ὠτειλὰς ὧν εἶχε φανεράς, δὲ τέλος
 scars of-which he-had visible (on his body), but at-last
 κατέκανε, καὶ μέντοι ἐποίησε τὸν πρῶτον
 he-killed (the bear), and indeed he-made the (person) first
 βοηθήσαντα μακαριστὸν πολλοῖς.
 coming-to-assist (him) to-be-considered-very-happy by-many.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
 When indeed he-was-sent-down by — (his) father (as
 σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας
 satrap of-Lydia and also of-the Great Phrygia
 καὶ Καππαδοκίας, δὲ καὶ ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγὸς
 and Cappadocia, and likewise appointed commander
 πάντων, οἷς καθήκει ἀδροῖζεσθαι εἰς πεδῖον
 of-all, to-whom it-appertains to-be-assembled in (the) plain
 Καστωλοῦ, πρῶτων μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὐτὸν ὅτι
 of-Castolus, first indeed he-showed himself | that
 ποιοῖτο περὶ πλείστου,
 he-'made (it) for 'himself very-much, [that he held it of the great
 εἰ σπείσαιο τῷ καὶ
 est importance to himself], if he-made-a-treaty — (with any one), and
 εἰ σύνδοιτο τῷ καὶ εἰ τῷ
 if he-made-an-agreement — (with any one), and if — (to any one)
 ὑπόσχοιτό τι ψεύδεσθαι μηδὲν. Καὶ γὰρ —
 he-promised any-thing, to-deceive (in) nothing. And —
 νῦν μὲν αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι αὐτῷ ἐπίστευον
 therefore indeed the cities entrusting-themselves to-him, confided
 δ' οἱ ἄνδρες ἐπίστευον.
 in 'him) as-also (in like manner did private) — men confide
 καὶ εἰ τις ἐγένετο πολέμιος, Κύροι
 (in, him); and if any-one became hostile, Zyrus

σπεισάμενου ἐπίστευε ἂν
 having-made-a-treaty (with him) he-was-confident (that) 'he would (have to)
 παθεῖν μηδὲν παρὰ τὰς σπονδὰς. Τοιγαροῦν ἐπει
 suffer nothing contrary to-the treaty. Therefore when
 ἔπολέμησε Τισσαφέρνει, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις
 he-waged-war (against) Tissaphernes, all the towns
 ἔκουσαι εἶλοντο Κύρον ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν
 voluntarily chose Cyrus before Tissaphernes except (the)
 Μιλησίων· δὲ οὗτοι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν ὅτι οὐκ
 Milesians; but they feared him, because he-'did not
 ἠδελε προέσδαι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Γὰρ
 'wish to-abandon | — (those) fleeing [the exiles]. For
 καὶ ἐπεδείκνυντο ἔργῳ, καὶ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι
 he also 'showed 'by (his) 'deeds, and said, that
 ἂν οὐ ποτε προοῖτο ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ ἐγένετο
 'he would not ever 'desert (them), when once he-became (a)
 φίλος αὐτοῖς, οἷδ' εἰ μὲν γένοιντο ἔτι μείους
 friend to-them, nor if indeed they-should-become yet less
 δὲ πράξειαν ἔτι κάκιον.
 (in number), and should-suffer (a) yet worse (condition than they
 Καὶ εἴ τις ποιήσειεν αὐτόν τι ἀγαθόν
 were in). And if any-one should-do him any-thing good
 ἢ κακόν, ἦν δὲ φανερός πειρώμενος
 or bad, it-was indeed evident (that he was) striving
 νικᾶν· καὶ δὲ τινες ἐξέφερον
 to-conquer (in these respects); and also some used-to-mention (a)
 εὐχὴν αὐτοῦ, ὥς εὐχοίτο ζῆν τοσοῦτον χρόνον,
 wish of-him, that he-desired to-live so-long (a) time,
 ἔσται ἀλεξόμενος, νικῶν καὶ τοὺς
 until 'he, requiting (them), 'might-excel both — (those)
 ποιοῦντας εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς.
 acting well and — (those acting) ill to him)
 Καὶ γὰρ οὖν δὴ πλείστοι ἐπεθύμησαν
 And — therefore truly the-most (of men) desired
 τροέσδαι αὐτῷ ἐνὶ ἀνδρὶ γε τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν
 to-commit to-him (the) one (only) man at-least — in our (time)

καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ σώματα
— (their) property, — (their) towns, | and the bodies
ἐαυτῶν.

of-them [and their persons].

Οὐ μὲν δὴ ἂν τις εἴποι οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ὥς εἶα τοὺς
Nor indeed — can any-one say — this, that he-let the

κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους καταγελαῖν, ἀλλ'
evildoers and unjust deride (his authority), but

ἀφειδέστατα πάντων εἰτιμωρεῖτο. Δ'
most-unsparingly of-all (men) he-punished (transgressors). | And

ἦν πολλάκις ἰδεῖν, παρά
it-was often to-see, [and there were often to be seen], | on

τὰς στειβομένας ὁδοὺς, ἀνδρώπους
the trodden roads [on the frequented roads] men

στερομένους καὶ ποδῶν, καὶ χειρῶν καὶ
deprived — of-feet, — (or) of-hands, — (or)

ὀφθαλμῶν· ὥστε ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ Κύρου ἐγένετο
of-eyes; so-that in the dominion of-Cyrus it-was

καὶ Ἑλληνι καὶ βαρβαρῷ, μηδὲν
(possible) 'for both Greek and barbarian, 'doing nothing

ἀδικοῦντι, πορεύεσθαι ἀδεῶς, ὅποι τις ἤθελεν,
'wrong, to-travel fearlessly, withersoever one wished,

ἔχοντι ὃ τι προχωροίη.
(and) having (with him) whatever he-might-proceed-with (that suited

ᾧ μολόγητο γε μέντοι
his convenience). It-has-been-acknowledged — indeed (that)

τιμᾶν διαφερόντως τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον.
he-honoured very-much | — (those) good for war

Καὶ
[those having a disposition for, and skilled in, military affairs]. And

μὲν πόλεμος ἦν αὐτῷ πρῶτον
indeed | (a) war was to-him first [his first war was]

πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· καὶ οὖν αὐτὸς
against (the) Pisidians and Mysians; and therefore himself

στρατευόμενος εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς
marching-an-army into these — places, (those) whom

ἑώρα ἐδελοντας κινδυμεύειν τούτους
 he-saw willing to-encounter-danger (in his service) the-same

καὶ ἐποίει ἄρχοντας χώρας ἧς κατεστρέφετο,
 (also) he-made rulers 'of (the) 'places which he-subjugated,

δε ἔπειτα καὶ ἐτίμα δώροις ἄλλῃ.
 and moreover 'he also 'honoured (them) with-rewards in-another (man

⁹Ωστε μὲν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς φαίνεσθαι
 ner). So (that) indeed | the good [brave men] appear

εὐδαιμονεστάτους, δὲ τοὺς κακοὺς
 (to be) the-most-fortunate, but (that) the bad [cowards]

ἀξιοῦσθαι εἶναι δούλους τούτων.
 were-considered-worthy (only) to-be (the) slaves of-these (brave

Τοιγαροῦν ἦν πολλὴ ἀφθονία αὐτῷ
 men). Therefore there-was (a) great abundance to-him

τῶν θελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις
 [Cyrus] of-those willing to-encounter-danger, when any-one

οἶοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθῆσθαι.
 might-think (that) Cyrus would-perceive (him).

Μὲν γε εἰς δικαιοσύνην, εἴ τις γένοιτο
 In-truth — as-regards justice, if any-one might-become

φανερὸς αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἐπιδείκνυσθαι,
 apparent to-him (as) desiring to-show (this vir-

περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο ποιεῖν τούτους
 tue in himself), above all, he-caused to-make such

πλουσιωτέρους τῶν φιλοκερδούντων
 (persons) richer (than) — (those) seeking-gain

ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου. Καὶ γὰρ οὐν τε πολλὰ ἄλλα
 by — injustice. And therefore — not-only many other

διεχειρίζετο δικαίως αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐχρήσατο
 (things) were-administered justly for-him, but-also he-had the-use-of

ἀληθινῷ στρατεύματι. Γὰρ
 (a) real army, (and one worthy of the name). For

καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἐπλευσαν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
 also generals and captains | sailed to him,

οὐ ἕνεκα χρημάτων,
 [came to him from other countries] not on-account of-money,

ἀλλ' ἐπει ἔγνωσαν εἶναι κερδαλεώτερον πειδαρχεῖν
but after they-knew (it) to-be more-profitable to obey

Κύρῳ καλῶς, ἢ τὸ κέρδος κατὰ μῆνα.
(and serve) Cyrus well, | than the gain for (a) month

Ἀλλὰ μὲν εἰ τίς γέ, αὐτῷ
[than their monthly wages]. But indeed if any-one at-least, he

προστάξαντι τι, ὑπηρετήσσειν καλῶς
having-commanded any-thing, should-have-assisted-to-do (it) well

οὐδενὶ πώποτε εἶασε τὴν προθυμίαν
to-no-one (acting thus) did-'he ever 'permit — (his) alacrity

ἀχάριστον. Τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρε-
(to go) unrewarded. Therefore truly | the-best servants-and-

ται παντὸς ἔργου ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι
officers of-every work (or undertaking) were-said to-be

Κύρῳ.

to-Cyrus [the best talents for all affairs were at the command of Cyrus].

Εἰ δὲ ὀρώη τινα ὄντα δεινὸν οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ
If also he-saw any-one (being) (a) skilful manager | from —

δικαίου, καὶ κατασκευάζοντά, τε
justice, [consistent with justice], and improving-the-land, not-only

χώρας, ἧς ἄρχοι, καὶ ποιούντα προσ-
'of (the) 'country, which he-governed, but-also making (an) increased-

όδους ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο οὐδένα
produce (therefrom) 'he would never 'take-away any-thing (from

ἀλλ' αἰεὶ προσεδίδου πλείω· ὥστε
such a person), but always (rather) he-added more; so-that

καὶ ἐπόνουν ἡδέως, καὶ ἐκτῶντο θαρράλως,
— (men) laboured cheerfully, and acquired (property) confidently,

καὶ αὖ ὁ τις ἐπέπατο ἥκιστα ἔκρυπτε
and moreover what any-one had-acquired the-least did-he-conceal (it);

Κῦρον· γὰρ ἐφαίνετο οὐ φθονῶν
from-Cyrus; | for he-was-manifestly not envying [for he manifestly

τοῖς φανερώς πλουτοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ
did not envy] — (those who) openly acquire-riches, but

πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς χρήμασι
was-endeavouring to-use (or put into circulation) the wealth

τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων. Ὅσους φίλους γε μὴν
of-those concealing (it). As-'many friends 'as — indeed

ποιήσαιτο. καὶ γνοίη ὄντας εὖνους,
ae-might-make, and knew (them as) being well-disposed (to him-

καὶ κρίνει εἶναι ἱκανοὺς συνεργοὺς,
self), and might-judge (them) to-be fit co-operators,

ὅτι βουλούμενος τυγχάνοι κατεργάζεσθαι,
[in whatever wishing he-might-happen to-accomplish, [in

ὁμολογεῖται
whatever he might happen to wish to accomplish], he-is-acknowledged

πρὸς πάντων γενέσθαι δὴ κράτιστος
by all to-have-been certainly the-best (and most skilful)

ἑραπέειν. Ἐὰρ
co-cherish such friends, and attach them to himself). For

καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἔνεκα οὐπὲρ αὐτὸς
also (for) this same (reason) on-account of-which he-himself

ᾤετο δεῖσθαι φίλων ὥς ἔχοι συνερ-
thought (that) he-needed friends (namely) that he-might-have co-ope-

ροῦς, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειράτο εἶναι κράτιστος συνεργός
rators, and he-himself endeavoured to-be the-best assistant.

τοῖς φίλοις οὗτου τούτου αἰσθάνοιτο
'to — (his) 'friends (in) whatever that he-might-perceive

ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα.
each-one (was) desiring (to effect).

Δὲ μὲν οἶμαι γε ὧν εἷς ἀνὴρ
And indeed I-think | (that) 'he at-least being one man [that he

ἐλάμβανε πλεῖστα δῶρα
of any one man at least] 'received the-most presents, (and this)

διὰ πολλά· δὲ ταῦτα διεδίδου τοῖς
for many (reasons); but these (presents) he-distributed 'to —

φίλοις μάλιστα δὴ
(his, 'friends very-much (excelling) certainly (in this respect)

πάντων, σκοπῶν πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου,
all (men), looking to the manners of-each,

καὶ οὗτου ὁρῶν ἕκαστον μάλιστα δεόμενον
and (to that) of-which he-saw each-one the-most needed

Καὶ ὅσα τις πέμποι κόσμον
And whatever (present) any-one might-send (him as a:) ornament

τῷ σώματι αὐτοῦ, ἢ ὥς εἰς
[for-the body of-him, [for his person], either as-if for (use in

πόλεμον, ἢ ὥς εἰς καλλώπισμόν, καὶ
war, or as-if for (use in personal) ornament, and

περὶ τούτων ἔφασαν λέγειν, ὅτι μὲν
about these (presents) they-affirmed (that) he-said, | that indeed

τὸ σῶμα ἑαυτοῦ ἂν οὐ δύναίτο κοσμηθῆναι
the body of-himself could not be-able to-have-been-adorned

πασι τούτοις,

[that his own person could not be adorned] with-all these (presents).

δὲ νομίζοι φίλους καλῶς κεκοσμημένους
but he-might-think (that) friends (having-'been) handsomely 'adorned

μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ. Καὶ μὲν τὸ
(to be) the-greatest ornament 'to (a) 'man. | And indeed the

νικᾶν τὰ μεγάλα
to-surpass [the surpassing] the great [greatly] [and indeed that

τοὺς φίλους ποιοῦντα εὖ
he should greatly surpass] — (his) friends (in) doing good (is)

οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδὴ γε ἦν καὶ δυνατώτερος·
nothing wonderful, since at-least he-was also the-most-able;

δὲ τὸ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων
[but the to-be-superior [but that he should excel] — (his) friends

τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ, καὶ τῷ προθυμεῖσθαι
— in-kind-attention, and | the to-be-eager [his eagerness]

χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ εἶναι
to-gratify (and oblige), these, to-me-at-least, seem to-be

μᾶλλον ἀγαστά. Γὰρ Κῦρος πολλάκις ἔπεμπε
more admirable. For Cyrus often sent

ἡμιδεεῖς βίκους οἴνου, ὅποτε λάβοι πάνυ
half-empty jars of-wine, whenever he-might-receive (a)ly very

ἡδὺν, λέγων, ὅτι οὐπω δὴ πολλοῦ
sweet (and fine-flavoured), saying, that never-yet truly 'for (a) 'long

χρόνου ἐπιτύχοι ἡδιον οἶνω τούτου·
time aid-he meet with-finer-flavoured wine (than) this

οὖν ἔπεμψε τοῦτον σοί, καὶ δεῖταιί σου εκπιεῖν
therefore he-sent this to-you, and he-requests of-you to-drink

τοῦτον τήμερον σὺν οἷς φιλεῖς μάλιστα.
this to-day with those-whom you-love most

Πολλάκις δὲ ἤπεμπε ἡμιβρώτους χῆνας,
Often indeed he-sent | half-eaten geese [parts of geese],

καὶ ἡμίσεα ἄρτων, καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, κελεύων
and halves of-loaves, and other such (things), ordering

τὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν· Κῦρος
the bearer to-say (when he presented them); Cyrus

ἡσδῆ τούτοις. οὖν βούλεται καὶ σὲ γεύσασθαι
was-delighted with-these; therefore he-wishes also you to-taste

τούτων. Ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς εἴη πάνν σπάνιος,
of-these (same). Whenever indeed fodder was very scarce,

δ' αὐτὸς ἐδύνατο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ ἔχειν
and he was-able to-procure-it | through the to-have

πολλοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐτιμέλειαν,
[by having] many servants and through — (his) care,

διαπέμπων τοὺς φίλους ἐκέλευε
sending-it-about (among) — (his) friends he-ordered (them)

ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλόν τοῖς ἵπποις ἄγουσ
to-throw this — fodder to-the horses | carrying

τὰ σώματα ἑαυτῶν ὥς
the bodies of-them [carrying their persons], so-that (the horses)

μὴ ἄγωσι τοὺς φίλους ἑαυτοῦ πεινῶντες. Εἰ
'may not 'carry the friends of-himself hungering. If

δὲ δὴ ποτε πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλείστοι
— indeed at-any-time he-might-proceed (anywhere), and many

μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους
might-be-about to-see (him), calling-to — (his) friends

ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὥς δηλοῖν οὓς
he-held-earnest-conversation-with-them, that he-might-show (those) whom

τιμᾶ. Ὡστε ἔγωγε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω κρίνω
he-honoured. So-that I-at-least from (that) which I-hear judge

οὐδένα οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων
(that) no-one either 'of (the) 'Greeks or 'of (the) 'barbarians

πεφιλησθαι ὑπὸ πλειόνων. Δὲ καὶ τόδε
 to-have-been-loved by more (persons). And also this
 τεκμήριον τούτου, οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπήει
 (is a) proof of-this-same (thing), no-one indeed deserted
 πρὸς βασιλεα παρὰ Κύρου, ὄντος
 to (the) king from Cyrus, he-being (as a subject no
 δούλου· πλὴν Ὀρόντας
 better than a) slave (of the king); except Orontes (who)
 ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ δὴ οὗτος ταχὺ εὔρε' αὐτὸν
 attempted (it); and truly this (Orontes) speedily found him,
 ὃν ὥετο εἶναι πιστόν οἱ φιλαίτερον Κύρῳ
 whom he-thought to-be faithful to-himself, more-friendlier to-Cyrus
 ἢ ἑαυτῷ· δὲ πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον παρὰ βασιλέως
 than to-himself; but many deserted from (the) king
 πρὸς Κύρον, ἐπειδὴ ἐγένοντο πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις,
 to Cyrus, after they-became hostile to-one-another,
 καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ἀγαπώμενοι
 and these indeed — (persons) the-most beloved
 ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, νομίζοντες ὄντες ἀγαδοὶ
 by him (the king), thinking (that) being brave (men)
 παρὰ Κύρῳ, ἃν τυγχάνειν ἀξιοτέρας τιμῆς
 under Cyrus, — to-obtain more-worthy honour (and reward)
 ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. Δὲ καὶ τὸ γεγόμενον
 than from (the) king. And also — (that) happening
 αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου μέγα
 to-him at the end — 'of (his) 'life (is a) great
 τεκμήριον. ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθός, καὶ ἐδύνατο
 proof, that — he was brave, and could
 ὀρθῶς κρίνειν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους
 rightly judge — (those) faithful (to him), and well-disposed,
 καὶ βεβαίους. Γὰρ αὐτοῦ ἀποδνήσκοντος, πάντες
 and steadfast. For he dying, all
 οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι παρ' αὐτὸν ἀπέθανον
 — (his) friends and table-companions with him died
 μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου, πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος
 fighting over Cyrus. except Ariæus: this (person)

δε τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπι
 indeed | stationed happened [happened to be stationed] on
 τῷ εὐωνύμῳ, ἄρχων τοῦ ἱππικοῦ· δ' ὥς ᾗσδετο
 the left, commanding the cavalry; but when he-learned
 Κῦρον πεπτωκότα ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ
 (of) Cyrus having-fallen he-fled having also (with him)
 τὸ πᾶν στρατεύμα οὗ ἡγεῖτο.
 the entire army which he-commanded.

CHAPTER X.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἡ κεφαλὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται
 There indeed the head of-Cyrus — is-cut-off,
 καὶ ἡ δεξιὰ χεὶρ. Δὲ βασιλεὺς, καὶ οἱ
 and-also the right hand. But (the) king, and — (those)
 σὺν αὐτῷ, διώκων εἰσπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κυρεῖον
 with him, pursuing falls | on the Cyrean
 στρατόπεδον· καὶ μὲν οἱ
 camp; [on the camp of Cyrus]; and indeed — (those soldiers)
 μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἴστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι
 with Ariæus no-longer stand but flee
 διὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν
 through | the camp of-them [their camp] to the
 σταδμόν, ἔνθεν ὤρμηντο· δ' ἐλέγοντο εἶναι
 station, whence they-had-started (last); | and there-were-said to-be
 τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ.
 four parasangs of-the road [and which was said to be
 Δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν
 four parasangs distant]. But (the) king and — (those) with
 αὐτῷ τε διαρπάζουσι τὰ ἄλλα
 aim not-only plunder — other (things, which were)
 πολλὰ, καὶ λαμβάνει τὴν Φωκαίδα τὴν
 many, but-also he-takes the Phocæan (woman), the
 παλλακίδα Κύρου καὶ λεγομένην εἶναι, τὴν
 concubine of-Cyrus, and (who) was-said to-be, —

σοφὴν καὶ καλὴν. Δὲ ἡ νεωτέρα ἡ Μιλησία,
 wise and beautiful. But the younger (concubine) the Milesian

ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα
 (woman), having-been-taken by — (those) about (the) king

ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν
 escapes | naked [in her under garments] to (those of) the

Ἑλλήνων, οἱ ἔχοντες ὅπλα ἔτυχον ἐν
 Greeks, who having arms happened (to be stationed) among

τοῖς σκευοφόροις· καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες
 the baggage-train; and having-been-drawn-up-against (the Persians)

ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἀρπαζόντων, δὲ
 they-killed many indeed of — (those) plundering, but

οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέδανον· γε μὴν
 — (some) also of-themselves died; at-least indeed they-'did

οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔσωσαν ταύτην, καὶ
 not 'flee, but also saved this (woman), and

ἄλλα, ὅποσα ἐγένοντο ἐντὸς αὐτῶν
 other (things), whatever were within (the lines) of-them,

καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι, πάντα ἔσωσαν.
 both property and men, all were-saved.

Ἐνταῦθα τε βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 There not-only (the) king, but-also the Greeks

διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὥς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ
 were-distant from-one-another about thirty stadia, the

μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὐτοὺς,
 (Greeks) indeed pursuing — (those opposed) against themselves,

ὥς νικῶντες πάντας, δ' οἱ ἀρπάζοντες, ὥς
 as conquering all, but the (Persians) plundering, as

ἤδη νικῶντες πάντες. Δ' ἐπεὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 now conquering all. But when indeed the Greeks

ᾗσδοιτο, ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
 perceived, that (the) king with — (his) army

εἶη ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις, δὲ βασιλεὺς
 might-be among — (their) baggage-train, and (the) king

αὐτὸς ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους, ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες
 on-the-other-hand heard from Tissaphernes. that the Greeks

νικῶεν τὰ κατ' αὐτοὺς, καὶ διώκοντες
might-be-conquering the (army) opposed to-them, and pursuing,

οἰχονται εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
they-advance to — (a distance) forward, there truly (they

βασιλεὺς μὲν τε ἀδροίζει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ,
the) king indeed not-only | collects — (those) of-himself,

καὶ συντάττεται· δὲ ὁ
[collects together his forces], but-also draws-them-up-in-line; but —

Κλέαρχος καλέσας Πρώξενον, γὰρ ἦν πλησιαίτατος,
Clearchus having-called Proxenus, for he-was the-nearest,

ἐβουλευέτο, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας, ἢ
consulted (with him), if they-should-send some (of the troops), or

πάντες ἴοιεν ἀρῆζοντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
all should-go | about-helping [to relieve] (to) the camp.

Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἦν πάλιν
During this (time) also (the) king was again

δῆλος προσιών, ὥς ἐδόκει ὀπισθεν. Καὶ μὲν οἱ
evidently approaching, as it-seemed from-behind. And indeed the

Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὥς
Greeks having-faced-about prepared-themselves, as-if (the king

προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι ταύτῃ· δὲ ο
were-advancing and-also receiving (him) in-that (direction); but the

βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ ἤγε ταύτῃ,
king indeed 'did not lead (his troops) in-that (direction),

δὲ ἢ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου
but (by the way) in-which he-had-passed beyond — (their) left

κέρατος, ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἵνα λαβὼν
wing, by-the-same (way) also he-led-back (his forces), taking-with

καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ αὐτομολήσαντας
(him) both — (those) in the battle, having-deserted

κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ Τισσαφέρην, καὶ τοὺς
to the Greeks, and Tissaphernes, and —

σὺν αὐτῷ. Γὰρ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὐκ
(those) with him. For — Tissaphernes 'did not

ἔφυγεν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ, ἀλλὰ διήλασε κατὰ
'flee in the first encounter. but charged against

τους Ἕλληνας πελταστάς παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν·
the Greek targetiers along the river.

δὲ διελαύνων μεν κατέκαινε οὐδένα.
but charging-through (the ranks) 'he indeed 'killed no-one

δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες διαστάντες ἔπαιον
but the Greeks standing-apart (and making a passage) struck

καὶ ῥκόντιζον αὐτούς·
(them with their swords) and threw (their javelins) at-them;

Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἤρχε τῶν πελ-
Episthenes — (the) Amphipolite commanded the tar-

ταστῶν, καὶ ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι φρόνιμος.
getiers, and was-said to-be (a) prudent (and able com-

ἄνδρ). Δ' ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὖν, ὥς ἔχων μείον,
mander). But — Tissaphernes therefore, as having | less

ἀπηλλάγη, μεν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει
[the worst], was-forced-to-depart. indeed he-'does not 'return

πάλιν, δὲ ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ τῷ
again, but having-arrived at the camp — of-the

Ἑλλήνων, ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ δὴ
Greeks, there he-meets-with (the) king, and —

συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ὁμοῦ πάλιν.
(then) having-drawn-up-their-forces they-marched together back (again

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τῷ
But when they-were opposite the left wing of-the

Ἑλλήνων, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδεισαν, μὴ προσάγοιεν
Greeks, the Greeks feared, | lest they-might-lead

πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ
against — (that) wing [lest they would attack that wing] and

περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν κατακόψειαν
surrounding (them) on-both-sides they-might-'cut

αὐτούς· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ
them 'off; and it-seemed (best) to-them to-fold-back the

κέρας, καὶ ποιήσασθαι τὸν ποταμόν ὀπισθεν.
wing and, to-place the river in-the-rear.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο,
In (the time) in-which indeed (that) they-were-planning (this manoeuvre)

καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμεψάμενος
and now-indeed (the) king having-changed (his line)

εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν
into the same form (that) he-placed (it) fronting the

φάλαγγα, ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον συνήει μαχοῦ-
phalanx, | just-as — (at) first he-might-have-come fight-

μενος. Δὲ ὥς οἱ
ing [just as he came at first to offer battle]. But as the

Ἕλληνες εἶδον ὄντας τε ἐγγύς καὶ παρα-
Greeks saw (them) being not-only near and-also drawn-

τεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες ἐπήεσαν ἔτι
up-in-order-of-battle, again singing-the-pæan they-advanced yet

πολὺ προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. Δ'
much more-eagerly (and spirited) than — before. But

αὖ οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ'
again the barbarians 'did not 'receive (their attack), but

ἔφειγον ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ
they-fled from a-greater (distance from them) | than (they did) —

πρόσθεν· δ' οἱ ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι τινός
before; but — (the Greeks) pursued (them) to a-certain

κώμης· δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν. Γὰρ
village; but there the Greeks halted. For

ἦν γήλοφος ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης, ἐφ' οὗ οἱ
there-was (a) hill above the village, upon which — (those)

ἀμφὶ βασιλεά, ἀνεστράφησαν, μὲν
about (the) king, stood-faced-about, (there-were) indeed

οὐκέτι πεζοὶ, δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη
no-longer (any) foot-soldiers (there), but the hill was-filled

τῶν ἰππέων, ὥστε μὴ γινώσκειν τὸ
with-the cavalry, | so-that they-'did not 'know the (thing)

ποιούμενον.

(that) was-doing [so that they knew not what the infantry might

Καὶ ἔφασαν ὁρᾶν τὸ βασίλειον
be doing]. And they-said (that) they-saw the rove

σημεῖον τινα χρυσοῦν ἀετόν ἀνατεταμένον ἐπὶ
 standard a-certain golden eagle elevated on

πέλτης.

(a) shield.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐχώρουν ἐνταῦθα,
 When indeed also the Greeks proceeded thither,

οἱ ἵππεῖς δὲ καὶ λείπουν τὸν λόφον, οὐ μὲν ἔτι
 the horsemen indeed also leave the hill, not however as

ἄδρουσι, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν,
 collected-in-a-body, | but others in-other-direction, [but dispersed in

δ' ὁ λόφος ἐψιλοῦτο τῶν
 different directions], and the hill 'was (gradually) 'thinned of-the

ἵππεων. δὲ τέλος καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. Ὁ
 horsemen; but at-last also all departed. —

Κλέαρχος οὖν οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν
 Clearchus therefore 'did not 'march on (to) the

λόφον, ἀλλ' στήσας ὑπὸ αὐτὸν πέμπει
 hill, but having-halted | under [at the foot of] it he-sends

Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,
 Lycius the Syracusian and another on the hill,

καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ
 and he-orders (them) having-viewed the (things) on the

λόφου ἀπαγγεῖλαι τί ἐστι. Καὶ ὁ Λύκιος
 hill to-report what is (there). And — Lycius

ἦλασε τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγ-
 rode-on — (to the hill) and seeing (the state of affairs) brings

γέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. Δέ
 word that they-flee to the-utmost-of-their-ability. And

σχεδὸν ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν ἥλιος καὶ
 nearly when these (things) | were [happened] (the) sun also

ἰδύετο. Δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν, καὶ
 met. And there the Greeks halted, and

θεμενοὶ τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα
 placing — (their) arms rested; and at-the-same-time

μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοῦ φαίνοιτο
 indeed they-were-surprised that Cyrus no-where appeared

οὐδ' ἄλλος οἶδεῖς παρείη αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ
 nor 'did (any) other one 'come from-him. For

ἤδεσαν οὐ αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἰκαζον
 they-knew not (that) he was-dead, but they-supposed (him)

ἢ οἴχεσθαι διώκοντα ἢ προεληλακένα.
 either to-go-away pursuing (the enemy) or to-have-pushed-on-before

καταληψόμενον τι. Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο
 about-to-seize some (post). And they deliberated

εἰ μείναντες αὐτοῦ ἄγουντο ἐνταῦθα τὰ σκευο-
 if remaining there they-should-bring thither the baggage

φώρα, ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἔδοξεν
 train, or return to the camp; it-seemed

αὐτοῖς οὖν ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ
 to-them therefore (best) to-return; and they-arrived at

τὰς σκηνάς ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον. Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ
 the tents about supper-time. Such was the

τέλος μὲν ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας. Δὲ καταλαμβά-
 end indeed of-this — day. But they

νοῦσι τε τὰ πλεῖστα τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων
 find not-only the most of — (their) other things

διηρπασμένα, καὶ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν
 plundered (or destroyed), but-also whatever food or drink

εἶ ἦν· καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ
 there may-be; and the wagons full-of wheat-flour and

οἶνου, ὃς Κῦρος παρεσκευάσατο, ἵνα εἰ ποτε
 wine, which Cyrus provided, that if ever

σφοδρὰ ἐνδεια λάβοι τὸ στράτευμα, διαδοίη
 vehement want should-seize the camp, he-might-distribute

τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν, αὗται ἅμαξαι δ' ἦσαν
 (them) to-the Greeks, these wagons — were

τετρακόσiai ὥς ἐλέγοντο, καὶ ταύτας τότε
 four-hundred as they-said, and these then

οἱ σὺν βασιλεὶ διήρπασαν. Ὡστε οἱ πλεῖστοι
 — (those) with (the) king plundered. So-that the most

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἦσαν ἄδειπνοι· δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
 of-the Greeks were supperless; but also they-were

ἀνάριστοι· γὰρ δὴ πρὶν τὸ στράτευμα
without-dinner; for indeed before the army

καταλῦσαι πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη.
halted for dinner (the) king appeared.

Οὕτως οὖν μὲν διεγένοντο ταύτην τὴν
Thus therefore indeed did-they-pass that

νύκτα
night.

BOOK II.

CHAPTER I.

Ως μὲν οὖν τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἡδροίσθη
 How — therefore the Grecian (force) was-collected
 Κύρῳ, ὅτε ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν
 for-Cyrus, when he-led-an-army against — (his) brother
 Ἀρταξέρξην, καὶ ὅσα ἐπάχθη ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ,
 Artaxerxes, and what was-done in the upward-march,
 καὶ ὥς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὥς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε,
 and how — (a) battle took-place, and how Cyrus died,
 καὶ ὥς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐλθόντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον
 and how the Greeks having-come to the camp
 ἐκοιμήθησαν, οἰόμενοι νικᾶν τὰ πάντα.
 went-to-rest, | thinking to-conquer — all, [believing that
 καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν,
 they were completely victorious], and (that) Cyrus lived, (all this)
 δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Δέ
 has-been-indicated in the preceding discourse (or book). But
 ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοί
 [at-the-same-time with-the day [at dawn of day] the generals
 συνελθόντες ἐθαύμαζον, ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε πέμποι
 having-come-together were-surprised, that Cyrus 'had neither 'sent
 ἄλλον σημανοῦτα ὅτι χρὴ ποιεῖν, οὔτε
 any-one-else signifying what is-necessary to-do, nor
 αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. Ἐδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς
 did-'he himself 'appear. It-seemed therefore (best) to-them
 τυσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον, καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις,
 having-packed-up what they-had, and having-armed-themselves,
 προΐεναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως συμμίξειαν
 to-march in the forward [to advance] until they-formed-a-junction

Κύρω. Δὲ ἤδη ὄντων ὁρμῇ, ἅμα ἀνίσ-
 with-Cyrus. But now being in-motion, at-the-same-time with-the-
 χοντι ἡλίῳ ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ ἄρχων Τευδρανίας
 rising sun, came Procles the governor-of Teuthrania
 γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δημαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ
 having-descended from Damaratus the Lacedæmonial, and
 Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. Οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος
 Glus the (son of) Tamos. These informed (them) that Cyrus
 μὲν τέθνηκε, δὲ Ἀριαῖος πεφευγὼς εἶη μετὰ
 indeed was-dead, and (that) Ariæus having-fled was, with
 τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ σταδμῷ ὅθεν
 the other barbarians, at the station whence
 ὤρμωnton τῇ προτεραίᾳ, καὶ λέγοι, ὅτι ἂν μὲν
 they-started on-the day-before, and he-said, that 'he might indeed
 περιμένειεν αὐτοὺς ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, εἰ μέλ-
 'wait-for them that-same — day, if they-
 λοιεν ἥκειν, δὲ φαίη ἀπιέναι τῇ
 might-intend to-come, — (for) he-said (he was about) to-depart on the
 ἄλλῃ ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε.
 next (day) for Ionia, whence he-had-come.

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ οἱ
 The generals hearing these (things), and the
 ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι
 other Greeks hearing (them from the generals)
 ἔφερον βαρέως. Δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε τάδε· Ὡφελε
 bore-it grievously. But Clearchus spoke thus: Would
 ἀλλὰ μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· δὲ ἐπεὶ τετελεύτηκεν,
 then indeed (that) Cyrus lived; but since he-has-died,
 ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ, ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε
 announce to-Ariæus, that we are-victorious not-only (over
 βασιλέα, καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι μάχεται
 the) king, and as you-see, no-one any-longer 'offers
 ἡμῖν, καὶ εἰ μὴ ἦλθετε ὑμεῖς, ἂν
 us 'battle, but-also if you-'had not 'come to-us, 'we would
 ἐπορνούμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ
 have-marched against (the) king. We-promise also

Ἀριαίῳ, εἰὰν ἔλθῃ ἐνθάδε, καδίσειν
 Ariæus, if he-come here, (that we are ready) to-place
 αὐτόν εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασιλείον. γὰρ
 him on the throne, the royal (throne); for
 τῶν νικῶντων μάχῃ καὶ ἐστὶ τὸ ἄρχειν.
 — (those) conquering in-battle also (to them) | is the to-rule
 Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἀποστέλλει τοὺς
 [it belongs to rule]. Saying these (things) he-sends-away the
 ἄγγέλους, καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκωνα
 messengers, and with them Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian
 καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· γὰρ καὶ Μένων
 and Menon the Thessalian; for indeed Menon
 αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο· γὰρ ἦν φίλος καὶ ξένος
 himself desired (to go); for he-was (a) friend and guest
 Ἀριαίου. Οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο,
 of-Ariæus (bound by the ties of hospitality). — (These) then departed,
 δὲ Κλέαρχος περιέμενε. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
 but Clearchus waited (for them). But the army
 ἐπορίζετο σῖτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν
 supplied-itself with-food as-well-as they-were-able from — (their)
 ὑποζυγίων, κόπτοντες τοὺς βούς καὶ ὄνους·
 beasts-of-burden, slaughtering — (their) oxen and asses;
 δὲ προΐόντες μικρὸν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗ
 and advancing (a) little from the army, (to) where
 ἡ μάχῃ ἐγένετο ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις, τε τοῖς
 the battle took-place they-got wood (for fuel), not-only from-the
 οἰστοῖς, οὓσιν πολλοῖς, οὓς οἱ Ἕλληνες
 arrows, being many (in number), which the Greeks,
 ἠνάγκαζον τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως
 compelled — (those) deserting from (the) king
 ἐκβάλλειν, καὶ τοῖς γέρβοις, καὶ ταῖς
 to-throw-away, and the wicker-shields (of the Persians), and the
 ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίναις ταις Αἰγυπτίαις. Δὲ καὶ
 shields the wooden-ones the Egyptian. And also
 πολλὰί πέλται καὶ ἄμαξαι ἔρημοι ἦσαν
 many targets and wagons emptied (of their contents) were

φέρεισθαι. χρώμενοι πᾶσι οἷς, ἔψοντες κρέα
 'o-be-carried-off; using all which, (for) cooking meat

ἥσδιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.
 they-eat (enough for) that — day.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε περὶ πλήθουσιν ἀγορὰν,
 And it-was now not-only | about full market,

καὶ ἔρχονται παρὰ
 [about the middle of the forenoon], but-also there-arrived from (the)

βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι
 king and Tissaphernes heralds, | the — others

βάρβαροι δὲ ἦν εἰς αὐτῶν Ἕλλην
 barbarian [being barbarian] but there-was one of-them (a) Greek

Φαλῖνος, ὃς ἐτύγχανε ὦν παρὰ
 Phalinus (by name), who | happened being [happened to be] with

Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ ἔχων ἐντίμως·
 Tissaphernes, | and (who) holding (him) honourably; [and was

καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο εἶναι
 highly esteemed by him]; — for he-pretended to-be

ἐπιστήμων τῶν τε ἀμφρὶ τάξεις καὶ
 skilled (in) the (things) not-only relative-to tactics but-also

ὀπλομαχίαν. Δὲ οὗτοι
 (in those relative to) fighting-with-heavy-arms. But these (heralds)

προσελδόντες, καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας
 approaching, and calling-to the generals

τῶν Ἑλλήνων, λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει
 of-the Greeks, said, that (the) king commanded

τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει,
 the Greeks, | since conquering he-happens, [since he had

καὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον, παραδόντας
 gained the victory], and had-slain Cyrus, (that) having-delivered-up

τὰ ὅπλα, ἰόντας ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας
 — (their) arms, (and) going | to the gates 'of (the)

βασιλέως, εὕρισκεσθαι ἂν
 'king, [to the palace of the king], to-obtain-for-themselves if

δύνωνται τι ἀγαθόν. Ταῦτα μὲν οἱ
 they-can any-thing good (or favourable). Thus — 'did the

κήρυκες βασιλέως εἶπον· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν
 heralds 'of (the, 'king 'speak; but the Greeks indeed
 ἤκουσαν βαρέως, δὲ Κλέαρχος ὁμῶς
 heard (them) heavily (with concern), but Clearchus only
 εἶπε τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη οὐ τῶν νικῶντων
 spoke so-much, that it-was not (the part) of — (those) conquering
 παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα· ἀλλ', μὲν ἔφη ὑμεῖς
 to-give-up — (their) arms; but, indeed said-he, 'do you
 ὧ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί ἀποκρίνασθε τοῦτοις
 O men generals 'reply to-these (men)
 τε ὅτι ἔχετε κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον·
 not-only what you-hold (to be) most-proper but-also the-best;
 δὲ ἐγὼ ἥξω αἰτίκα. Γὰρ τις τῶν ὑπηρετῶν
 and I will-come directly. For some-one of-the attendants
 ἐκάλεσε αὐτόν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερά
 called him, that he-might-see the (entrails of a) victim
 ἐξηρημένα· γὰρ ἔτυχε θυόμενος.
 (that just) had-been-taken-out; for he-happened (to be) sacrificing.
 Ἐνθα δὴ Κλέανωρ μὲν ὁ Ἀρκάς, ὢν πρεσβύτατος,
 Then indeed Cleanor — the Arcadian, being the-oldest,
 ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἂν πρόσθεν ἀποδάνοιεν ἢ
 answered that 'they would sooner 'die than (that)
 παραδοίησαν τὰ ὅπλα· δὲ Πρόξενος ὁ Θηβαῖος
 they-would-deliver-up — (their) arms; but Proxenus the Theban
 ἔφη, Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ ὧ Φαλῖνε θαυμάζω. πότερα
 said, But I, O Phalinus, wonder, whether (the)
 βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὅπλα ὥς κρατῶν ἢ
 king asks (for) — (our) arms as conquering or
 ὥς δῶρα διὰ φιλίαν. Γὰρ εἰ μὲν ὥς κρατῶν,
 as gifts through friendship. For if indeed as conquering,
 τί δεῖ αὐτόν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐλθόντα
 why does-it-become him to-ask (for them) and not coming
 λαβεῖν; δὲ εἰ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν,
 take (them)? but if having-persuaded (us) he-desires to-take
 λεγέτω, τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,
 them), let-him-say, what will-be (left) to-the soldiers,

ἐὰν χαρίσωνται αὐτῷ ταῦτα. Πρὸς ταῦτα
if they-should-gratify him (in) this. To this

Φαλίνος εἶπε, βασιλεὺς ἡγείται νι-
Phalinius said, (The) king considers (himself) to-be-the-con-

κᾶν, ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον· γὰρ τίς ἔστιν αὐτῷ,
queror, since he-has-slain Cyrus; for who is-there against-him,

ὅστις ἀντιποιεῖται τῆς ἀρχῆς; δὲ καὶ
who disputes the government (with him)? | and also

νομίζει ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἑαυτοῦ
considers you to-be to-himself [he moreover considers you as

ἔχων ἐν τῇ μέσῃ χώρᾳ
belonging to him as captives] | having (you) in the middle country

ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ἐντὸς
of-himself, [having you in the interior of his kingdom], and within

ἀδιαβάτων ποταμῶν, καὶ δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐφ'
impassable rivers, and being-able to-lead against

ὑμᾶς πλῆθος ἀνδρώπων ὅσον εἰ
you (such a) multitude of-men (and) so-great (that) if

παρέχοι ὑμῖν οὐδὲ ἂν δύναισθε ἀποκτεῖναι
he-should-allow-it to-you neither would you-be-able to-kill (them).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν
After this-one Theopompus (the) Athenian spoke,

ὦ Φάλινε, νῦν, ὥς σὺ ὁρᾷς, ἔστιν οὐδὲν ἄλλο
O Phalinius, now, as you see, there-is nothing else

ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν, εἰ μὴ ὅπλα
good (or of value) to-us, | if not [unless] (our) arms

καὶ ἀρετή. Οὖν μὲν ἔχοντες ὅπλα,
and courage. Therefore indeed having (our) arms,

οἴομεθα ἂν καὶ χρῆσθαι τῇ
we-are-of-the-opinion (that) 'we could also 'make-use — (of our)

ἀρετῇ, δὲ παραδόντες ἂν ταῦτα, στερηθῆναι
courage, but giving-up — these, (would be) to-deprive

καὶ τῶν σωμάτων. Οὖν μὴ οἶον
(us) also — (of our) bodies. Therefore 'do not 'suppose

παραδώσειν ὑμῖν τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ
'that' we-will-give-up to-you the sole (advantageous) good

ὄντα ἡμῖν· ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ
existing for-us; but with these (in our hands) 'we also

μαχοῦμεθα περὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἑμετέρων. Δὲ ὁ
'may-fight for the good-things of-yourselves. But —

Φαλῖνος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐγέλασε, καὶ εἶπεν·
Phalinus hearing these (things) smiled, and said.

Ἄλλὰ μὲν, ὦ νεανίσκε, ἔοικας φιλοσόφῳ,
But indeed, O young-man, you-seem (to be like to a) philosopher,

καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ὦν
and you-speak not without-grace; | know however (you) being

ἀνόητος, εἰ
out-of-your-senses, [be assured that you are out of your senses], if

οἶει τὴν ἑμετέραν ἀρετὴν ἂν περιγενέσθαι
'u-suppose (that) — your valour — is-to-be-superior

τῆς δυνάμεως βασιλέως. Δὲ ἔφασαν
(to) the power 'of (the) 'king. But they-reported (that)

τινας ἄλλους ὑπομαλακίζο-
some others (of the generals) having-become-somewhat-timid-and-

μένους λέγειν, ὥς καὶ ἐγένοντο πιστοὶ Κύρῳ,
apprehensive said, as also they-had-been faithful to-Cyrus,

καὶ ἂν γένοιτο ἄξιοι πολλοῦ βασιλεῖ
so 'they might 'become | worthy of-much 'to (the) king

εἰ βούλοιο γενέσθαι
[of great service to the king] if he-desired to-become (their)

φίλους· καὶ εἴτε θέλοι χρῆσθαι τι
friend; and afterwards he-might-wish to-employ (them) for-any

ἄλλο, εἴτε στρατεύειν ἐπ'
other (purpose), (or if) afterwards (he were) to-march against

Αἴγυπτον, ἂν συγκαταστρέψαιτο αὐτῷ. Ἐν
Egypt, 'they would 'assist-in-reducing-it for-him. During

τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἦκε, καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη
this (time) Clearchus came, and inquired if now

ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Δὲ Φαλῖνος ὑπολαβὼν
they-had-retained-an-answer. But Phalinus having-taken-up (the dis-

εἶπεν· ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὗτοι λέγει ἄλλος
ourses) said O Clearchus, these say (one thing), others

ἀλλὰ· δὲ σὺ εἰπέ ἡμῖν, τί λέγεις.
(say) other (things); but 'do you 'tell us, what you-say.

Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος
But — 'he [Clearchus] 'said: I, O Phalinus, am-glad

έώρακα σε, δὲ καὶ οἶμαι πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι·
I-have-seen you, and also I-think all the others (are so),

γὰρ τε εἰ σύ Ἕλλην, καὶ ἡμεῖς,
for not-only are you (a) Greek, but-also we (ourselves are),

ὄντες τοσοῦτοι, ὅσους σὺ ὁρᾷς· ὄντες δὲ
being so-many (in number), as you see; being then

ἐν τοιούτοις πράγμασι, συμβουλευόμεδά σοι,
in such circumstances, 'we (would) 'consult with-you,

τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις.
(about) what it-is-proper to-do concerning (that) which you-announce

Οὖν, πρὸς θεῶν, σὺ συμβού-
(from the king). Therefore, by (the) gods, | 'do you 'con-

λευσον ἡμῖν ὃ τι δοκεῖ σοι εἶναι
sult with-us [give us your advice] what seems to-you to-be

κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον, καὶ ὃ σοι οἴσει
the-most-honourable and the-best, and which to-you will-bring

τιμὴν εἰς τὸν χρόνον ἔπειτα ἀναλεγόμενον
honour in the time to-come, (when) it-is-related,

ὅτι Φαλῖνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως,
that Phalinus when, having-been-sent from (the) king

κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα.
commanding the Greeks to give-up — (their) arms,

ξυμβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς ξυμβουλευομένοις τὰδε
counselled them consulting (with him) so-and-so

Οἶσδα δὲ, ὅτι ἂν συμβουλεύσης
(For) you-know —, that what 'you may 'have-advised (of a)

ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος
necessity is-to-be-reported in — Greece. — — Clearchus

ὑπήγετο ταῦτα, καὶ βουλόμενος αὐτόν,
craftily-urged these (things), also desiring (that) he

τοὺν πρεσβεῖοντα παρὰ βασιλέως, συμβουλευῆσαι
— coming-as-envy from (the) king, should-counsel

μη παραδῶναι τὰ ὅπλα, ὅπως οἱ Ἕλληνες
 them) not to-give-up — (their) arms, that the (Greeks
 εἶεν μᾶλλον εἰέλπιδες. Δὲ Φαλῖνος ἵποστρέψας
 might-be more full-of-good-hopes. But Phalinus | having-turned

παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ
 [having evaded this appeal] contrary to-the opinion of-him [Clearchus]

εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων ἐστὶ
 said: I, if indeed of — ten-thousand hopes there-is

τις μία ὑμῖν σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας
 any one (remaining) to-you to-save (yourselves) fighting-against

βασίλει, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ
 (the) king, counsel (you) not to-give-up —

ὅπλα· εἰ δὲ τοι ἐστὶν μηδεμία ἐλπίς
 (your) arms; if indeed — there-is not-one hope (for you)

σωτηρίας ἄκοντος βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν
 of-safety opposing (the) king, I-advice you

σώζεσθαι ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Δὲ
 to-save-yourself | in-what-way possible [in the only way you can]. But

Κλέαρχος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν
 Clearchus to these (things) said: But indeed

δὴ σὺ λέγεις ταῦτα· δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν
 really 'do you 'say these (things); but for our (part)

ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἴομεθα, εἰ μὲν
 announce this, that we think, if indeed

δέοι εἶναι φίλους βασιλεῖ ἂν
 it-may-become (us) to-become friends 'to (the) king; (that) 'we would

ἄξιοι πλείονος εἶναι φίλοι,
 'be-worthy of-more to-be friends, [that we would be more valuable

ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες
 friends), having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up

ἄλλῳ· δὲ εἰ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἂν ἄμεινον
 to-another; but if it-behoves (us) to-make-war, (it) would (be) better.

πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες
 to-make-war having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up

ἄλλῳ. Δὲ ὁ Φαλῖνος εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ
 to-another. But — Phalinus said. These (things) — certainly

ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσε
we-will-announce; but also (the) king commanded (us)

εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν τάδε, ὅτι μὲν μένουσι αὐτοῦ
to-say to-you thus, that — (to you) remaining here

εἴησαν σπονδαί, προῖοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι
here-would-be (a) truce, (but) advancing and also |going-away

πόλεμος. Καὶ οὖν εἶπατε
[retreating] (there would be) war. And therefore tell (us

περὶ τούτου, πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ
your answer) respecting this, whether you-will-remain and

εἰσι σπονδαί, ἢ ἀπαγγελῶ παρ' ὑμῶν
there-is (a) truce, or (whether) I-shall-announce from you

ὥς πολέμου ὄντος. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
|that war being [that there is war]. But Clearchus

ἔλεξεν· Ἀπαγγελλε καὶ τοῖνυν περὶ τούτου,
said: Announce also therefore respecting this,

ὅτι καὶ δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, ταῖτ' ἅπερ καὶ
|that 'it also 'seems to-us, the-same as (it does) likewise 'to (the)

βασιλεῖ.

'king [that we are of the same opinion and determination with the king]

Τί οὖν ἐστί ταῦτα; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. Ὁ Κλέ-
What therefore are these? said — Phalinus. — Cle-

αρχος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἦν μὲν μένωμεν σπονδαί,
archus replied: If indeed we-remain (here), (a) truce,

ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. Δὲ ὁ
(if) we-retreat and also (if) we-advance war. But — (Phalinus)

πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Ἀπαγγελῶ σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον;
again asked: Shall-I-announce (a) truce or war?

Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο ταῦτ' ἅπαν· σπονδαί
But Clearchus answered the-same again; (a) truce

μὲν μένουσι, δὲ ἀπιοῦσι ἢ προῖοῦσι πόλεμος. Δε
— remaining, but retreating or advancing war. But

τι ὁ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμνηνε.
'what — (he) might-do he-'did not 'signify.

CHAPTER II.

Φαλῖνος μὲν ἤ ὤχετο, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ
 PHALINUS — indeed departed, as-also — (those) with him

Δὲ οἱ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦκον, Προκλῆς καὶ
 But — (those) from Ariæus were-come, (namely) Procles and

Χειρίσοφος· δὲ Μένων ἔμενε αὐτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ·
 Cheirisophus; but Menon remained there with Ariæus;

δὲ οὗτοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι Ἀριαῖος φαίη εἶναι
 and these reported, that Ariæus said (that) there-are

πολλοὺς Πέρσας βελτίους ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς οὐκ
 many Persians superior (to) himself, who 'would not

ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε
 'endure him reigning; but if you-wish

συναπιέναι κελεύει ἥκειν ἤδη τῆς
 'to-depart-with (him) he-requests (you) to-come now — (this)

νυκτός· δὲ εἰ μὴ, φησὶν αὐτὸς ἀπιέναι
 night; but if (you do) not, he-says (that) he (is) to-depart

πρωῖ. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ
 early-in-the-morning. And — Clearchus said: But

χρὴ ποιεῖν οὕτως· ὥσπερ λέγετε, εἴ μὲν
 it-is-necessary to-do so; as you-say, if indeed

ἥκωμεν· δὲ εἰ μὴ, πρᾶττετε ὅποιον τι
 we-might-come (to Ariæus); but if not, do whatever

ἂν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. Δὲ οὐδὲ
 you may 'think (to be) the-most advantageous. But neither

εἶπε τούτοις ὅτι ποιήσοι. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα,
 did-he-say to-those what he-would-do. But after these

ἡλίου ἤδη δύνοντος, συγκαλέσας τοὺς
 (things), (the) sun now setting, having-assembled the

στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς ἔλεξε τοιάδε·
 generals and captains he-spoke (in) this-manner:

ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμοί θνομένῳ
 O men, to-me sacrificing-and-inspecting-the-entrails (for a sign re

ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα τὰ ἱερά οὐκ
 specting) | to-go [marching] against (the) king the victims 'did not
 ἐγίγνετο. Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἐγίγνετο
 'become (favourable). And with-good-reason therefore they-were
 οὐ· γὰρ ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι ὁ ναυσίπορος
 not (so); for as I now learn the navigable
 ποταμός Γίγρης ἐστὶ ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ
 river Tigris is in (the) middle (between) us and
 βασιλέως, ὃν ἂν οἱ δυναίμεθα διαβῆναι
 (the) king, which 'we would not 'be-able to-cross
 ἄνευ πλοίων· δὲ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα. Μὲν δὲ
 without boats; but we have not boats. — Certainly
 γε οὐκ οἶόν τε μένειν αὐτοῖ· γὰρ
 (for us) at-least (it is) not possible to-remain here: for
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔστιν οὐκ ἔχειν·
 the necessaries-of-life | are not to-have; [are not to be procured],
 δὲ ἰέναι παρὰ τοὺς φίλους Κύρου τὰ ἱερά ἢ
 but to-go to the friends of-Cyrus the sacrifices were
 πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν. Οὖν ὧδε χρή
 altogether favourable to-us. Therefore thus it-is-necessary (for us,
 ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὅ τι τις ἔχει.
 to-act; having-retired to-sup (on) whatever any-one has
 Ἐπειδὴν δὲ σημήνη τῷ κέρατι ὥς
 After indeed the-signal-may-be-given with (the) horn as (if)
 ἀναπαύεσθαι συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὴν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον
 to-go-to-rest pack-up-your-baggage; after — the second
 ἀναλίδεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· δὲ
 (signal) place (the baggage) on the beasts-of-burden; but
 ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ,
 on the third (signal), follow — (your) leader,
 ἔχοντες μὲν τὰ ὑποζύγια πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
 having indeed the beasts-of-burden next the river,
 δὲ τὰ ὄπλα ἔξω. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ
 but the heavy-armed-men on-the-outside. The generals and
 λοχαγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπῆλθον καὶ
 captains having-heard these (things) departed, and

ἐποίου· οὕτω. Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ
 did so. And (for) the rest (of the time) — (Clearchus)
 μὲν ἤρχε, δὲ οἱ ἐπείδοντο, οὐχ
 indeed commanded, and — (the others) obeyed, (they) not
 ἐλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες
 having-chosen (him actually as their commander), but perceiving
 ὅτι μόνος ἐφρόνει οἷα
 that (he) alone thought (and had the mental qualifications) such-as
 ἔδει τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ ἄλλοι δ' ἦσαν
 became — (a) commander, the other (commanders) indeed were
 ἄπειροι. Ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ,
 inexperienced. | (The) number — of-the road, [the computation
 ἦν ἡλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας
 of the distance] which they-came from Ephesus — (in) Ionia
 μέχρι τῆς μάχης, τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα
 to-the (place) of-the battle, (was) three and ninety
 σταδιοὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντα-
 day's-march (making) five and thirty and five-
 κόσιοι παρασάγγαι, πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακίς-
 hundred [535] parasangs, (or) fifty and six-
 χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι στάδιοι. ἀπὸ
 thousand and ten-thousand [16,050] stadia; (the distance) from
 δὲ τῆς μάχης εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἐλέγοντο εἶναι
 — (the place) of-the battle to Babylon was-said to-be
 ἐξήκοντο καὶ τριακόσιοι στάδιοι.
 sixty and three-hundred [360] stadia.

Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο σκότος, Μιλτοκύδης μὲν
 Thence, when it-became dark, Miltocythes —

ὁ Θράξ ἠῆτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα, ἔχων τε
 the Thracian deserted to (the) king, having not only
 τοὺς ἰππείας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς
 the horsemen — (those) with him to-the-number-of
 τετταράκοντα καὶ ὥς τριακοσίους τῶν Θρακῶν
 forty, but-also about three-hundred of-the Thracian
 πεζῶν. Δε Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ἄλλοις
 foot-soldiers. But Clearchus lead-the-way for-the res

κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα,
 according | to-the things-which-had-been-directed, [in the prescribed order],
 δ' οἱ εἶποντο, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον
 and — (they) followed, and arrived at the first
 σταδμόν, παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν στρατιάν
 station, to (where) Ariæus, and the army
 ἐκείνου, ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ
 of-himself (were), about mid night; and (when they arrived)
 θέμενοι ἐν τάξει τὰ ὅπλα οἱ
 having-been-placed in order (of battle) — (under) arms, the
 στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ξυνῆλθον
 generals and captains of-the Greeks went-together
 παρὰ Ἀριαῖον· καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος,
 to Ariæus; and not-only the Greeks but-also Ariæus,
 καὶ οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ὤμοσαν, μήτε
 and the principal-men of — (those) with him took-an-oath, not
 προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, τε ἔσεσθαι σύμμαχοι· οἱ
 to-betray one-another, but to-be-hereafter allies; the
 βάρβαροι δὲ προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι
 barbarians indeed swore-in-addition also to-lead-the-way
 ἰδόλως. Δ' ὤμοσαν ταῦτα, σφάξαντες
 without-treachery. And they-swore these (things), killing
 ταῦρον, καὶ λύκον, καὶ κάπρον, καὶ
 (in sacrificing) (a) bull, and wolf, and boar, and
 κριόν, εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες
 ram, (receiving the blood) in (a) shield, the — Greeks
 βάπτοντες ξίφος, δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι λόγχην.
 dipping (a) sword, and the barbarians (a) lance, (into the
 Ἔπει δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο
 blood). When indeed — (these) pledges-of-fidelity had-taken-place
 ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄγε δὴ, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπεὶ περ
 — Clearchus said: Come then, O Ariæus, since-then
 ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπὲ τίνα
 the same route is to-you and to-us, tell-us what
 γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας. πότερον
 opinion (or plan) you-have respecting the march, whether

ἂπιμεν, ἥνπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ
 shall we-return, (by the same route) which we-came or
 δοκεῖς ἐννενοηκένοι τινα ἄλλην κρείττω
 do-you-think to-have-thought-of (or devised) any other better
 ὁδόν; Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀπιόντες μὲν ἦν
 road? — (He) — replied: Returning — (by the way) which
 ἤλθομεν. ἂν παντελῶς ἀπολοίμεθα ὑπὸ
 we-came, 'we would 'be entirely 'destroyed by
 λιμοῦ· γὰρ ἵπάρχει ἡμῖν νῦν οὐδὲν τῶν
 famine; for there-is to-us now no (supply) of —
 ἐπιτηδείων· γὰρ οὐδὲ τῶν ἐγγυτάτω
 provisions; for neither (during) the nearest (or last)
 ἑπτακαίδεκα σταδμῶν ἰόντες δεῦρο, εἵχομεν
 seventeen days'-march coming hither, | we-having
 λαμβάνειν οὐδὲν ἐκ τῆς χώρας.
 to-take nothing from the country [we could procure nothing
 from the country]. Δ' εἴτι ἦν ἔνθα, ἡμεῖς
 But any-thing (that) was there, we
 διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπάνησαμεν. Δὲ νῦν ἐπινο-
 passing-through consumed-it. But now we
 οὔμεν πορεύεσθαι μὲν μακροτέραν, δ'
 think to-go — (a) longer (way), but 'we-shall
 οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Δὲ πορευτέον
 not 'want — provisions. But [it-is-to-be-marched
 ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταδμοὺς
 to-us [we must make the march] (on) the first days'-marches
 μακροτάτους ὥς ἂν δυνώμεθα, ἵνα ὥς
 the-longest that 'we can 'possibly-make-them, in-order that
 ἀποσπασθῶμεν πλεῖστον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύ-
 we-may-be-removed the-farthest from-the royal ar-
 ματος· γὰρ ἦν ἅπαξ ἀπόσχωμεν ὁδόν δύο ἢ
 my; for if once we-be-distant (a) journey of-two or
 τριῶν ἡμερῶν, βασιλεὺς οὐκέτι μὴ
 three days, (the) king 'would | no-more not [not]
 δύνηται καταλαβεῖν ἡμᾶς. Γὰρ μὲν ὀλίγω
 'be able to-overtake us. For indeed 'with (a) small

στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι. Δ'
 army he-'will not 'dare to-pursue (us). But

ἔχων πολὺν στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται πορεύεσθαι
 having (a) large force he-'will not 'be-able to-march

ταχέως· δὲ καὶ ἴσως σπανιεῖ τῷ
 fast-enough; and also 'will probably 'experience-want of-the

ἐπιτηδείων. Ἐγώ γε, ἔφη, ἔχω ταύτην τὴν
 necessities-of-life. I-at-least, said-he, hold this —

γνώμην.
 opinion.

Δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία ἦν δυναμένη οὐδὲν
 But this — plan-of-campaign was equivalent-to nothing

ἄλλο, ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν, δὲ ἡ τύχη
 else, than to-stealing-away or to-fleeing-openly-away, but — fortune

ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα
 conducted-the-army more-honourably. For when it-became day

ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιον ἐν δεξιᾷ
 they-marched-forth, having the sun on the-right

λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα δύνοντι ἡλίῳ
 expecting to-arrive at-the-same-time 'with (the) 'setting sun

εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ
 at (some) village-of-the Babylonian territory; and (as respects)

τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. Δὲ ἔτι
 this they-'were indeed not 'deceived. And yet

ἄμφι δεῖλῃν ἔδοξαν ὁρᾶν
 about the-fore-part-of-the-afternoon they-thought (that) they-saw (the)

πολεμίους ἰππέας· καὶ τε οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 enemy's cavalry; and not-only — (those) of-the Greeks

ἔτυχον μὴ ὄντες ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν.
 (who) happened not being [who were not] in the ranks.

ἔδεον εἰς τὰς τάξεις, καὶ Ἀριαῖος, (γὰρ ἐτύγχανε
 ran to the ranks, but-also Ariæus, (for he-happened

πορευόμενος ἐφ' ἁμάξης, διότι ἐτέτρωτο,)
 to be) proceeding in (a) wagon, because he-had been-wounded,)

καταβάς ἐδωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν
 coming-down did-'put-on (his) 'corselet, and-also — (those) with

αὐτῷ. Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὥπλι-
 him (did the same). During (the time) in-which — they-were-arm-
 ζοντο οἱ σκοποὶ προπεμφθέντες, ἤκον λέγοντες,
 ing-themselves the scouts sent-out-before, came saying,
 ὅτι εἰσιν οὐχ ἵππεις, ἀλλ' ἵποζύγια
 that they-were not horsemen, but beasts-of-burden (that)
 νέμονται. Καὶ πάντες εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι
 might-be-pasturing. And all immediately knew, that
 βασιλεὺς ἐστρατοπεδεύετο πού ἐγγύς· καὶ
 (the) king was-encamped some-where near; and
 γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω.
 really also smoke appeared in (the) villages not far
 Δὲ Κλέαρχος μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν
 (distant). But Clearchus indeed 'did not 'lead (his forces)
 ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ ᾗδει τοὺς στρατιώτας
 against the enemy; for he-knew (that) the soldiers
 ὄντας καὶ ἀπειρηκότας καὶ ἀσίτους· δὲ καὶ ἦν
 were both fatigued and fasting; and also it-was
 ἤδη ὅψε· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,
 now late; | not however [yet however] he-'did not 'decline
 φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη
 (from his route), taking-care (that) 'he-might not 'seem
 φεῖγειν, ἀλλ' ἄγων εὐθύωρον, ἔχων
 to-fly, but leading (the army) in-a-direct-line, (and) having
 τοὺς πρώτους κατεσκήνωσεν
 (or leading) (himself) the foremost (or advance) he-encamped
 ἅμα τῷ δυομένῳ ἡλίῳ, εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω
 at-the-time-of the setting sun, in the nearest
 κώμας, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
 villages, from which was-taken-away by the royal
 στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ξύλα ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν.
 troops even the wood-work from the houses.
 Οὖν μὲν οἱ πρῶτοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο
 Therefore indeed the first (or advance) encamped
 ὁμῶς τινὶ τρόπῳ, δὲ οἱ ὕστεροι προσιόντες
 however in-some order, but — (those) following coming-up

σκοταῖοι ἡλίζοντο ὥς ἕκαστοι ἐτύγχανον,
in-the-dark quartered-themselves as 'they severally 'chanced

καὶ ἐποίουν πολλὴν κραυγὴν καλλοῦντες
(to find quarters), and they-made much noise calling

ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν·
to-one-another, so-that even the enemy heard (it);

ὥστε μὲν οἱ ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον
so-that indeed the nearest of-the enemy even fled

ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο δῆλον
from the encampments. And this became apparent

τῇ ὑστερίᾳ· γὰρ οὔτε ἔτι οὐδὲν
on-the following-day; for neither any-longer | 'did no

ὑποζύγιον ἐφάνη, οὔτε
beasts-of-burden 'appear, [did any beasts of burden appear], or

στρατόπεδον, οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. Δὲ
camp, or smoke any-where near. And

ὥς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ
as it-seemed, even (the) king was-alarmed at-the approach

τοῦ στρατεύματος. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐδήλωσε
of-the (Grecian) army. And this was-manifest

οἷς ἔπραττε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ. Μέντοι τῆς ταύτης
by-what he-did on-the following-day. However — this-same

νυκτὸς προΐούσης, φόβος ἐπίπτει καὶ τοῖς Ἑλλήσι
night advancing, (a) panic fell also on-the Greeks

καὶ ἦν θόρυβος καὶ δοῦπος εἰκὸς οἷον
and there-was tumult and noise like as (sudden)

φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίνεσθαι. Δὲ Κλέ-
fear falling-on (one) (causes) to-be. But Cle.

αρχος Τολμίδην Ἡλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν
archus (ordered) Tolmides (the) Eleian, | whom he-happened

ἔχων παρ' ἑαυτῷ,
having [whom he happened to have] with himself, (and who was)

ἄριστον κήρυκα τῶν τότε, τοῦτον
the-best herald of — (those) then (existing), this-one (then)

ἐκέλευσε ἀνειπεῖν, κατακηρύξαντα σιγὴν,
he-ordered to-proclaim, he-'having (first) 'ordered silence,

ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες προαγορεύουσιν, ὃς ἂν
 that the generals publicly-announce, (that he) who might
 μηνύσῃ τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς
 give-information (respecting) the (one) having-let-loose the ass among
 τὰ ὅπλα, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον
 the arms, that he-would-receive (as) reward (a) talen
 ἄργυρίου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, οἱ στρα-
 of-silver. When indeed this was-proclaimed, the sol-
 τῶται ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι ὁ φόβος εἴη κενός, καὶ
 diers knew, that — (their) fear was groundless, and
 οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. Δὲ ἅμα ὁρδρῶ
 (that) the generals (were) safe. But at-the-time-of day-break
 ὁ Κλέαρχος παρήγγειλε τοὺς Ἑλληνας τίδεσθαι
 — Clearchus ordered the Greeks to-place-themselves
 τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τάξιν ἥπερ εἶχον ὅτε
 — (under) arms in (the) order in-which they-had (themselves) when
 ἡ μάχη ἦν.
 the battle was.

CHAPTER III

Δὲ ὁ δὴ ἔγραψα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη
 But what 'I already 'wrote, that (the) king was-alarmed
 τῇ ἐφόδῳ ἦν δῆλον τῷδε.
 at-the approach (of the Greeks) was evident by-this (that follows).
 Γὰρ μὲν τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων
 For indeed on-the preceding day sending (to the Greeks)
 ἰκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ τότε
 he-ordered (them) to-give-up — (their) arms, but afterwards
 ἅμα ἀνατέλλοντι ἡλίῳ ἐπεμψε
 at-the-same-time 'with (the) 'rising sun he-sent
 κήρυκας περὶ σπονδῶν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ
 heralds about (a) truce. But — (these heralds), when
 ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρ-
 they-went to the outposts, inquired-for the com-

χοντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ προφύλακες
 manders. When indeed the guards (at the outpost.)
 ἀπήγγελλον, Κλέαρχος, τυχὼν τότε ἐπισκοπῶν
 reported-this, Clearchus, happening then to-be-inspecting
 τὰς τάξεις, εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν
 the troops-drawn-up-in-order, told the guards to-request
 τοὺς κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ
 the heralds to-remain till 'he might 'be-at-leisure
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε ἔχειν
 When — he-had-arranged the army so-as to-have
 καλῶς ὁρᾶσθαι πάντη φάλαγγα
 (itself) beautifully to-be-seen on-all (sides), (the) phalanx
 πυκνήν, δὲ μηδένα τῶν ἀόπλων
 (being) in-close-order, but not-one of-the unarmed (men)
 καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ
 appeared to-be (there), he-called-for the messengers, and
 αὐτός τε προῆλθε ἔχων τε τοὺς εὐοπλοτάτους
 he-himself — advanced having — the best-armed
 καὶ εὐειδέστατους τῶν στρατιωτῶν αὐτοῦ
 and the-handsomest of-the soldiers of-himself (there about
 καὶ ἔφρασε τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς
 him), and he-told the other commanders (to do the)
 ταῦτά. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις
 same (thing). When indeed he-was near the messengers
 ἀνθρώπα τί βούλονται. Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον, ὅτι
 he-demanded what they-wished. — (They) indeed replied, that
 ἦκοιεν ἄνδρες περὶ σπονδῶν, οἵτινες
 they-came (as) men respecting (a) truce, (and) who
 ἔσονται ἱκανοὶ τε ὁπαγγεῖλαι τὰ
 would-be competent (and empowered) not-only to-announce —
 παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἑλλησι,
 (any communication) from (the) king to-the Greeks,
 καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ.
 out-also — (those) from the Greeks 'to (the) 'king.
 Δὲ ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοῖνυν
 But — (he, Clearchus,) replied: Announce therefore

αὐτῷ, ὅτι πρῶτον δεῖ μάχης, γὰρ
 to-him (the king), that first there-is-need 'of (a) 'battle, for
 ἔστιν οὐκ ἄριστον, οἷδὲ ὁ τολμή-
 there is no breakfast (for us), nor (is there any one) who will-be-
 σιᾶ· λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν τοῖς Ἑλλήσι,
 dar'g (enough) to-speak about (a) truce to-the Greeks,
 μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. Οἱ ἄγγελλοι ἀκού-
 not having-provided (them) breakfast. The messengers hear-
 σαντες ταῦτα ἀπήλουν, καὶ ταχύ ἦκον·
 ing these (things) departed, and soon came
 καὶ ᾧ ἦν δῆλον ὅτι βασιλεὺς
 (back); and to-whom [Clearchus] it-was manifest that (the) king
 ἦν που ἐγγὺς, ἢ τις ἄλλος, ᾧ
 was some-where near, or some (persons) else, to-whom
 ἐπετέτακτο πράττειν ταῦτα· ἔλεγον δὲ
 it-was-commanded to-transact these (affairs); they-said indeed
 ὅτι λέγειν δοκοῖεν βασιλεῖ εἰκότα,
 that (the things) they-reported seemed 'to (the) 'king reasonable,
 καὶ ἦκοιεν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας, οἱ, εἰ
 and they-came (back) having guides, who, if (the)
 σπονδαὶ γένωται, ἄξουσιν αὐτοὺς ἐνδεῖν ἔξουσι
 truce should-take-place, would-conduct them to-where they-would-have
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ὅ δὲ ἡρώτα, εἰ
 the necessaries-of-life. — But 'he (Clearchus) 'inquired, if
 σπένδοιτο αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι ἰοῦσι
 a-truce-would-be-made. (only) for-those — men going-to
 καὶ ἀπιούσιν, ἢ ἔσοινο σπονδαί
 and returning-from (the king), or (if) there-would-be (a) truce
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. Δὲ οἱ ἔφασαν ᾧ
 also 'for (all) 'the others. But — (they) said for-all,
 μέχρι τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν ἂν διαγγελῇ
 until the (things) from you may be-communicated to (the)
 βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπον ταῦτα, μεταστη-
 'king. When indeed they-said these (things), having-dis-
 σάμενος αὐτοὺς, ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο.
 missed these (messengers), — Clearchus consulted with

Καὶ ἐδόκει τὰς σπονδὰς
his officers). And it-seemed (to them) (that) the truce

ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ, καὶ ἐλθεῖν τε καὶ ἡσυχίαν
was-to-be-made speedily, and to-go not-only at (their) leisure

ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ λαβεῖν. Ὅ
after the necessaries-of-life, but-also to-take [them as required]. —

δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν καὶ μοι ταῦτα·
But Clearchus said : | It-seems indeed also-to-me the-same ;

οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε
[I am of the same opinion] ; I-'will not however immediately indeed

ἀπαγγεῖλω, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἕστ' οἱ
'announce (our determination), but will-delay until the

ἄγγελοι ἂν ὀκνήσωσι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ
messengers might be-apprehensive (that) it-'might not 'seem

ἡμῖν ποιήσασθαι τὰς σπονδὰς·
(proper) to-us to-have-made-for-ourselves the truce ; 'I

μέντοι γε οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον
however certainly 'think, said-he, (that) the same fear

παρέσεσθαι, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις.
will-be-present, even — to-our-own soldiers.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι καιρὸς ἀπήγγελλεν
When indeed he-thought (it) to-be the-proper-time he-announced

ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ ἐκέλευε
(to the messengers) that he-would-make-the-truce, and requested

ἡγεῖσθαι εὐθὺς πρὸς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
(them) to-conduct (them) immediately to the-provisions.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο· Κλέαρχος
And the (messengers then) indeed led-the-way ; Clearchus

μὲν μέντοι ἐπορεύετο ποιησόμενος τὰς μὲν σπονδὰς,
indeed however proceeded about-making the — truce,

δὲ ἔχων τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς
but having the army in order (of battle), and he-himself

ὠπισθοφυλάκει. Καὶ ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις καὶ
brought-up-the-rear. And they-met-with ditches and

αὐλῶσι πλήρεσιν ὕδατος ὥς μὴ δύνασθαι
canals (so) full of-water as not to-be-able

διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο δια-
to-cross (them) without bridges; but they-made cross-

βάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες,
ings out-of the palm-trees which had fallen-down,

δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐξέκοπτον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν
and also of — (those) they-cut-down. And here was

καταμαθεῖν Κλέαρχον ὥς ἐπεστάτει,
(an opportunity) to-observe Clearchus how he-exercised-command,

ἔχων μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ, δὲ
having indeed in — (his) left hand the spear, but

ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις
in — (his) right (hand a) truncheon; and if any-one

δοκοίη αὐτῷ τῶν τεταγμένων πρὸς τοῦτο
might-seem to-him of — (those) appointed to this (work)

βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον
to-loiter, selecting — (a) fit (person) 'he

ἂν ἔπαισε, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς ἐμβαίνειν
would 'beat (him), and at-the-same-time he leaping

εἰς τὸν πηλὸν προσελάμβανεν· ὥστε
into the mud took-part (in the work); so-that

αἰσχύνην εἶναι πᾶσιν μὴ οὐ συσπουδάξειν.
shame was to-all — not to-emulate (him in

Καὶ οἱ γεγονότες τριάκοντα
expediting the work). And — (those) being thirty

ἔτη ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ.
years (of age) were-appointed — by him (for this work);

ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρων Κλέαρχον σπου-
after indeed also the older persons) saw Clearchus hasten-

δάζοντα, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι προσελάμβανον.
ing (the work), even the older-men took-part

Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδε πολὺ μᾶλλον,
(in it). But — Clearchus hastened (the work) much more

ὑποπτεύων τὰς τάφρους εἶναι μὴ αἰεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις
suspecting the ditches to-be not always so full

ὕδατος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ ὥρα οἷα ἄρδεν το
of-water; for it-was not (the) season proper to-water the

πεδίου· ἀλλ' ὑπόπτευε βασιλέα ἀφεικένα
 ground; but suspected (that the) king had-sent-out
 το ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίου ἔνεκα τούτου, ἵνα ἤδη
 the water on the plain by-reason-of this, that already
 πολλὰ δεινὰ προφαίνοντο τοῖς Ἑλλήσι εἰς τῇ
 many difficulties might-appear to-the (Greeks in the
 πορείαν.
 march.

Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἀφίχοντο εἰς κώμας, ὃδὲν
 And proceeding they-arrived at (the) villages, from-which
 οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἀπέδειξαν λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτή-
 the guides signified (to them) to-take the provi-
 δεια. Ἐνῇν δὲ πολὺς σίτος, καὶ
 sions. There-was-in (these villages) indeed much corn, and
 οἶνος φοινίκων, καὶ ὄξος ἐψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν
 wine of-date-palms, and (an) acid-wine cooked from —
 αὐτῶν. Δὲ αἱ αὐταὶ βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων,
 them. But the same dates of-the palma,
 οἷας μὲν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν ἐν τοῖς Ἑλλήσι
 such-as indeed are | to-see [to be seen] in — Greece
 ἀπέκειντο τοῖς οἰκέταις, δὲ αἱ ἀποκείμεναι
 are-put-by for-the servants, but — (those) put-away
 τοῖς δεσπότης ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τὸ
 for-the masters were choice-ones, admirable for —
 κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος, δὲ ἡ ὄψις
 (their) beauty and — size, and — (their) appearance
 διέφερε οὐδὲν ἡλέκτρου. Δὲ ξηραίνοντες τὰς
 differed nothing from-amber. And drying —
 τινὰς ἀπετίδεναν τραγήματα. Καὶ
 some (of these) they-'put (them) 'up for-sweetmeats. And
 ἦν καὶ ἡδὺ μὲν παρὰ πότον, δὲ κεφαλαλγές.
 (they) were also pleasant indeed with drink, but causing-headache
 Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται πρῶτον ἔφαγον τὸν
 Here also the soldiers first eat | the
 ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ
 brains of-the palm-tree, [the cabbage of the palm-tree], and

οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τε τὸ εἶδος καὶ
the multitude were-astonished not-only — 'at (its) 'appearance but-also

τὴν ιδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. Καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἦν
at-the peculiarity — 'of (its) sweetness. And this also was

σφόδρα κεφαλαλγές. Δὲ ὁ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν
exceedingly (apt at) causing-headache. But the palm-tree whence

ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ἐξαιρεθείη αὐαίνεται ὅλος.
the cabbage may-have-been-taken, withered entirely.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ Τισσαφέρνης
Here they-remained three days; and Tissaphernes

ἦκε παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως, καὶ ὁ ἀδελφός
came from (the) great king, and the brother

τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως, καὶ τρεῖς ἄλλοι
of-the wife 'of (the) 'king, and (also) three other

Πέρσαι, δὲ πολλοὶ δοῦλοι εἶποντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
Persians, and many slaves attended. After indeed the

στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀπῆντησαν αὐτοῖς,
generals of-the Greeks went-to-meet them,

Τισσαφέρνης ἔλεγε πρῶτος δι' ἐρμηνέως τοιάδε·
Tissaphernes spoke first through (an) interpreter thus:

Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες, οἰκῶ γείτων τῇ Ἑλλάδι,
I, O Grecian men, dwell neighbouring — Greece,

καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ὑμᾶς ἐμπεπτωκότας εἰς πολλὰ
and when I-saw you having-fallen into many

κακὰ, καὶ ἀμήχανα, ἐποίησά μιν
evils, and inextricably-great (difficulties), | I-made-it-for-myself

εὖρημα
a-piece-of-good-luck [I considered it a most fortunate affair for me]

εἴ πως δυναίμην αἰτήσασθαι
if I-'were in-any-manner 'able to-entreat (and obtain)

παρὰ βασιλέως δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι
from (the) king to-have-given me (permission) to-save

ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Γὰρ οἶμαι
you (and restore you) to — Greece. For I-think

ἀν οὐκ ἔξειν ἀχαρίστως μοι
| (that) 'it would not 'have (itself) ungrateful to-me [that there

οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν, οὔτε
 will be no want of gratitude towards me] either from you, or
 πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. Δὲ γνούς ταῦτα
 from — all Greece. And knowing these (things),
 ἡτοῦμην βασιλεα, λέγων αὐτῷ, ὅτι
 I-made-my-request 'to (the) 'king, saying to-him, that
 ἂν δικάως χαρίζοιτο μοι, ὅτι τε πρῶτος
 he might justly 'gratify me, (as) that 'I not-only first
 ἡγγειλα αὐτῷ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα,
 'announced to-him (that) Cyrus was-marching-against (him),
 καὶ ἀφικόμην ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἔχων
 but-also I-came at-the-same-time with-the message having
 βοήθειαν, καὶ μόνος τῶν τεταγ-
 assistance (in auxiliary troops), and 'I alone of — (those) having-
 μένων κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὐκ ἔφυγον,
 been-drawn-up against the Greeks 'did not 'flee,
 ἀλλὰ διήλασα, καὶ συνέμιξα
 but charged (through their ranks), and joined (the)
 βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ, ἔνθα
 king in — your-own camp, whither (the)
 βασιλεὺς ἀφίκετο ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτεινε Κῦρον, καὶ
 king came after he-had-killed Cyrus, and
 ἐδίωξα τοὺς βαρβάρους ξὺν Κύρῳ σὺν τοῖςδε
 I-pursued — (those) barbarians with Cyrus with these,
 τοῖς νῦν παροῦσι μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ εἰς
 (namely) these now present with us, who are
 πιστότατοι αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν ὑπέσχετό
 the-most faithful to-him. And indeed 'he [the king] 'promised
 μοι βουλεύσασθαι περὶ τούτων, δὲ ἐκέλευσε
 me to-deliberate about these (affairs), and commanded
 με ἐλθόντα ἔρεσθαι ὑμᾶς ἕνεκεν τίνος ἐστρατεύσατε
 me having-gone to-ask you by-reason of-what you-took-the-field
 ἐπ' αὐτόν. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνασθαι
 against him. And I-counsel you to-reply
 μετρίως, ἵνα ἢ εὐπρακτότερον μοι, εἰάν
 moderately, that it-may-be easier for-me, if

δύνομαι διαπράξασθαι τι ἀγαθόν ἰνὶν
 I-am-able to-effect any-thing good (or advantageous) for-you
 παρ' αὐτοῦ.
 with him.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες μεταστάντες ἐβουλεύ-
 At this the Greeks withdrawing delibe-
 οντο, καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο· Κλέαρχος δ'
 rated, and gave (their) 'answer; Clearchus indeed
 ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλδομεν ὥς
 spoke (for them): We neither assembled-together for-the-purpose-of
 πολεμήσοντες βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐπορευόμεθα
 hereafter-making-war 'against (the) 'king nor did-we-set-out
 ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ Κῦρος εὗρισκε πολλάς
 against (the) king, but Cyrus invented many
 προφάσεις, καὶ ὥς σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα τε
 pretexts, and as you well know, that not-only
 λάβοι ὑμᾶς ἀπαρασκευάστους, καὶ ἀναγάγοι
 he-might-take you unprepared, but-also lead
 ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε. Ἦδη μέντοι ἐπεὶ ἐωρῶμεν αὐτὸν
 us thither. Now however when we-saw him
 ὄντα ἐν δεινῷ ἡσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς
 being in danger we-were-made-to-be-ashamed both (before) gods
 καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, παρέχοντες
 and men to-have-betrayed him, we-allowing (him)
 ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ποιεῖν εὖ
 in the former time | to-do well 'to [to confer favours
 ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέδινηκεν,
 on] 'us ourselves. Since indeed Cyrus is-dead, 'we
 οὔτε ἀντιποιούμεθα βασιλεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς,
 neither 'contend 'with (the) 'king for-the kingdom,
 οὔτ' ἔστιν ἕνεκα οὗτου ἂν βουλοίμεθα
 nor is-there (any thing) on-account-of which 'we might 'desire
 ποιεῖν κακῶς τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, οἷδ'
 to-do harm (to) the country 'of (the) 'king, nor
 ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτόν, δ' αἶ
 would we-wish to-kill him, but we would

πορευοίμεθα οἴκαδε, εἴ τις μὴ λυποῖη ἡμᾶς·
 'proceed homeward, if any-one 'would not 'molest us;

μέντοι ἀδικοῦντα πειρασόμεθα σὺν
 'those however 'injuring (us) we-will-endeavour with (the aid of)

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἔαν μέντοι τις
 the gods to-avenge (ourselves on); if however any-one

καὶ ὑπάρχη ποιῶν εὖ ἡμᾶς, καὶ τούτου
 even begin doing good to-us, and-even to-this-one we 'will

οὐχ ἡττησόμεθα ποιῶντες εὖ γε εἰς
 not 'be-inferior doing good at-least to (the best of our)

δύναμιν. Οὕτως μὲν ὁ εἶπεν.
 power. Thus indeed 'did — (Clearchus) 'speak.

Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ἔφη· Ταῦτα
 Hearing (this) — — Tissaphernes said: These (things)

ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ, καὶ πάλιν
 I will-announce 'to (the) 'king, and (will bring) back

ὑμῖν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· δὲ μέχρι
 to-you | the (things) from him; [his answer]; and until

ἐγὼ ἂν ἤκω αἱ σπονδαὶ μενόντων, δὲ
 I may come 'let the truce 'remain-in-force, and

ἡμεῖς παρεξομεν ἀγορὰν. Καὶ μὲν εἰς τὴν
 we will-provide (a) market (for you.) And indeed on the

ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἦκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
 following-day he-'did not 'come; so-that the Greeks

ἐφρόντιζον. Δὲ τῇ τρίτῃ ἡκων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι
 began-to-be-anxious. But on-the third (day) coming he-said, that

ἦκοι διαπεπραγμένος παρὰ βασιλέως δοδῆναι
 he-came having-obtained from (the) king to-be-allowed

αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πάντῃ πολλῶν
 to-himself to-save the Greeks, although a-great many

ἀντιλεγόντων, ὥς οὐκ εἴη ἄξιον
 speaking-against (and opposing it), so-that it-'might not 'be becoming

βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς στρατευσαμένους
 'for (the) 'king to-let-go — (those) making-war

ἐφ' ἑαυτὸν. Δὲ τέλος εἶπε· καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν
 against himself. And in-conclusion he-said: and now it-is-allowed

ὑμῖν λαβεῖν πιστὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, ἣ μὴν τὴν χώραν
you to-take assurances from us, that truly the country

παρέξειν φιλίαν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν
will-be-kept friendly to-you, and without-treachery hereafter-to-lead

εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, παρέχοντας
'(you) 'back to — Greece, (you) obtaining (a)

ἀγορὰν· δ' ὅπου ἂν ἡ μή
market (for provisions); but where (indeed there) may be not (any

πρίασθαι ἐάσομεν ὑμᾶς λαμβάνειν τὰ
thing) to-purchase we-will-allow you to-take the

ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Δ' αὖ
necessaries (of life) from the country. But on-the-other-hand

δεήσει ὑμᾶς ὁμόσαι ἡμῖν, ἣ μὴν πορεύεσθαι
it-will-be-necessary for-you to-swear to-us, truly to-march

ὥς διὰ φιλίας ἀσινῶς, λαμβάνοντας
as through (a) friendly (country) without-doing-harm, taking

σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ, ὅποτε μὴ παρέχωνεν
provisions and drink, whenever we-'do not 'provide (a)

ἀγορὰν· ἣν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγορὰν,
market (for you); if indeed we-provide (you a) market,

ὠνούμενους ἔξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ταῦτα
you-purchasing will-have the necessaries-of-life. These (things)

ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ Τισ-
seemed (good, and were assented to), and they-took-the-oaths, and Tis-

σαφέρνης καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς
saphernes, and the brother of-the wife 'of (the)

βασιλέως ἔδωκεν δεξιὰς τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
'king gave (their) right-hands to-the generals and

λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ ἔλαβον
captains of-the Greeks, and took (the same)

παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα Τισσα-
from the Greeks. And after this Tissa-

φέρνης εἶπε· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἀπειμι ὥς
phernes said: Now indeed — 'I (will) 'go-back to (the)

βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι,
king; after indeed I-shall-accomplish (that) which I-desire,

συσχευασάμενος, ἥξω ὥς
 having-collected-and-packed-up-my-baggage, I-will-return as (about)
 ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ αὐτὸς
 'leading you 'back to — Greece, and myself
 ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἑμαυτοῦ.
 returning to | the government of-myself [my own government].

CHAPTER IV.

Μετὰ ταῦτα τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
 AFTER these (things) not-only the Greeks but-also
 Ἀριαῖος ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἐγγίς ἀλλήλων
 Ariæus being-encamped near to-one-another
 περιέμενον Τισσαφέρην πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμέρας.
 waited for-Tissaphernes more than thirty days.
 Ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον
 During — these (days) there-came to Ariæus
 καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι,
 as-well — (his) brother as — (his) other relations,
 καὶ τινες Περσῶν πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ,
 and some Persians to those (men) with him,
 τε παρεδάρσυνον, καὶ ἔφερον δεξιὰς
 'they not-only encouraged (them), but-also brought | right-hands
 ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως, βασιλέα
 [assurances] to-some from (the) king, (that the) king
 μὴ μνησικακήσειν τῆς ἐπιστρατείας
 'would not 'remember-in-evil (the injuries) of-the expeditions
 σὺν Κύρῳ αὐτοῖς, μηδὲ μηδενὸς ἄλλου
 under Cyrus (received) from-them, | neither no other [or
 τῶν παρωχημένων. Δὲ τούτων
 any thing else] of-the (affairs) gone-by. But these
 γιγνομένων, οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον
 (things while) occurring, | the about Ariæus [the followers
 ἦσαν ἐνδηλοὶ προσέχοντες
 of Ariæus] were evidently (not so attentive to, and) applying

τὸν νοῦν ἥττον τοῖς Ἑλλήσι· ὥστε καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
the mind less to-the Greeks; so-that also through this

μὲν τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον,
indeed — many of-the Greeks 'were not 'pleased.

ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
but going-to — Clearchus and the other

στρατηγοῖς ἔλεγον· Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ
generals they-said: Why do-we-remain? or 'do-we not

ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἂν ποιήσαιτο περὶ
'believe, | that (the) king would make-it-to-himself above

παντὸς ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς,
all-things to-destroy us, [the king would above all things wish

ἵνα καὶ εἴη φόβος τοῖς ἄλλοις
to destroy us], in-order-that also there-might-be fear to-the other

Ἑλλήσι στρατεύειν ἐπὶ μέγαν βασιλέα; καὶ
Greeks to-war against (the) great king? and

νῦν μὲν ὑπάγεται ἡμᾶς μένειν, διὰ τὸ
now indeed he-deceitfully-leads us to-stay, | on-account-of the

διεσπάρδαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα·
to-have-dispersed to-him the army; [on account of the dis-

persed state of his army]; δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ πάλιν
| but (when) the army again

ἐπὶν ἁλισθῆναι αὐτῷ,
was-there (and) may-have-been-taken (or re-assembled) by-him, [but when

οὐκ ἔστιν
his army is again collected together by him], it-'will not 'be

ὥπως οὐκ ἐπιδήσεται ἡμῖν. Ἴσως δὲ
that he-'will not 'attack us. Perhaps indeed he-'is

ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι, ἢ ἀποτειχίζει,
either 'digging-out some (trench), or building-a-wall-against (us),

ὥς ἡ ὁδὸς ἢ ἄπορος. Γὰρ οὐκ ἐκὼν
so-that the road may-be impassable. For he-'will not willingly

γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλδόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
at-least 'consent for-us going-back to — Greece

ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ὥς ἡμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοῖδε, ἐνικῶμεν
to-relate, that we, being so-few, | defeated

τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ, [defeated the
the king at the gates of-him,
καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπὴλ-
king at his palace], and having-laughed-at-him we-de-

δομεν.

parted (home).

Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέ-
But Clearchus replied to — (those) thus ad-
γουσιν· Ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ ἐνδυμοῦμαι πάντα
dressing (him): I indeed also am-thinking-about all

ταῦτα· δ' ἐννοῶ, ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν δόξομεν
this; but I-think, that if 'we now 'go-away we-will-seem

ἀπιέναι ἐπὶ πολέμῳ, καὶ ποιεῖν παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς.
to-go-away for war, and to-act contrary to-the truce.

Ἐπειτα πρῶτων μὲν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν ἀγοράν,
Next-then first indeed no-one will-provide us (a) market,

οὐδὲ ὅθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὖτις
nor (will there be a place) whence we-would-procure-provisions; again

δὲ ἔσται οὐδεὶς ὃ ἡγησόμενος·
in the second place) — | there-will-be no-one — hereafter-guiding-us;

καὶ ἅμα ἡμῶν ποιούντων
[we will have no guides]; and at-the-same-time we are-doing

ταῦτα Ἀριαῖος εὐθὺς ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε
this Ariæus 'will immediately 'separate (from us); so-that

οὐδεὶς λελείψεται φίλος ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ
no-one will-be-left (a) friend to-us, but also — (those)

πρόσθεν ὄντες ἔσονται πολέμοι ἡμῖν. Δ'
formerly being (our friends) will-become hostile to-us. But

ἄρα μὲν εἰ ἔστι τις ἄλλος ποταμὸς καὶ
whether indeed — there-is any other river also

διαβατέος ἡμῖν, οἶδα οὐκ· δ' οὖν ἴσμεν
necessary-to-pass-over by-us, I-know not: but therefore-then we-know

ὅτι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ἀδύματον πολεμίων
that to-have-crossed the Euphrates (is) impossible (the) enemy

κωλύόντων. Δὴ μὲν ἂν οὐ δέη γε
prohibiting (us). Truly indeed 'it might not 'be-proper (for us) at-least

μάχεσθαι, ξύμμαχοι ἵππεις εἰσιν ἡμῖν.
to-fight, (for) auxiliary cavalry is to-us (nowhere)

δὲ ἵππεις τῶν πολεμίων εἰσιν οἱ πλείστοι καὶ
but (the) cavalry of-the enemy is — numerous and

ἄξιοι πλείστου· ὥστε νικῶντες τίνα μὲν
| worthy of-much; [efficient]; so-that conquering how-many indeed

ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; δὲ ἡττωμένων οἷόν τε
might we-kill? but being-defeated (it would be) possible

σωθῆναι οὐδένα. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν
to-save none. I indeed therefore (as respects the)

βασιλέα ᾧ ἐστὶ οὕτω πολλά τὰ σύμμαχα,
king to-whom there-are so many — auxiliaries,

εἶπερ προθυμεῖται ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς, οὐκ
if he-desires to-destroy us, 'I (I say) 'do not

οἶδα ὅτι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὁμόσαι, καὶ δοῦναι
'know what need (there was that) he swore, and gave

δεξιὰν, καὶ ἐπιορκῆσαι θεοὺς, καὶ
(the) right-hand, and perjured-himself 'before (the) 'gods, and

ποιῆσαι τὰ πιστὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἄπιστα τε
made the pledges of-himself faithless (even) not-only

Ἐλλησι καὶ βαρβάροις. Ἐλεγε πολλὰ
'to (the) 'Greeks but-also 'to (the) 'barbarians. He-said much

τοιαῦτα.
thus.

Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ Τισσαφέρνης ἦκε, ἔχων τὴν
But during this (time) Tissaphernes came, | having the

δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ, ὥς ἀπιὼν οἶκον,
forces of-himself, [having his army with him], as-if returning home,

καὶ Ὀρόντας τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ.
and-also Orontas (came having) the forces of-himself;

ἤγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα βασιλέως
'he (Orontas) 'brought — also the daughter 'of (the) 'king

τὴν ἐπὶ γάμῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν ἤδη δὲ ἐπο-
the (one) on marriage. Hence 'they now indeed 'pro-

ρεύοντο Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένους
seeded (on their march), Tissaphernes guiding (them),

καὶ παρέχοντας ἀγορὰν Δέ καὶ
and providing (them a) market (for provisions). And also

Ἀριαῖος ἔχων τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στρατεύμα
Ariæus having (and commanding) the barbarian army

Κύρου ἐπορεύετο, ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντα,
of-Cyrus marched, together-with Tissaphernes and Orontas,

καὶ ξυνεστρατοποδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. Δὲ οἱ
and-also he-encamped-together with them. But the

Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους, αἱτοί
Greeks suspecting these-men, they [the Greeks]

ἐχώρου ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας.
went , by themselves having guides (of their own).

Δὲ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλή-
And they-encamped each-time being-distant from-one-

λων παρασάγγην καὶ μείον. Δὲ ἀμφοτέροι
another (a) parasang (or) even less. But both

ἐφυλάττοντο ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους,
(parties) guarded-themselves as-if enemies to-one-another

καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο παρεῖχεν ὑποψίαν.
and immediately this excited (and increased) mistrust (and

ἔνιότιε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
suspicion). Sometimes — also (when) gathering-wood from the

αὐτοῦ, καὶ ξυλλέγοντες χόρτον καὶ
same (place), and 'were (also) 'collecting grass and

ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐνέτεινον πληγὰς ἀλλήλοις.
other such (things), | they-stretched-out blows to-one-another;

ὥστε
[they stretched out their arms threatening, or giving blows]; so-that

τοῦτο καὶ παρεῖχε ἔχθραν. Δὲ διελ-
this also caused-more animosity (between them). And having-

δόντες τρεῖς σταδμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος
zone-through three days'-march they-arrived at the wall

καλούμενον Μηδίας, καὶ παρῆλθον εἰς αὐ-
called (the wall of) Media, and they-passed-through with-in

αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἦν ὠκοδομημένον ὅπταις
it. And (this wall) was built-of burnt

πλίνδοις, κειμέναις ἀσφάλτῳ, εὖρος
bricks, laid in-bitumen, (the) breadth (of this wall was)

εἴκοσι ποδῶν, δὲ ὕψος ἑκατὸν· δὲ μῆκος
twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred-feet; and (the) length

ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· δὲ οἱ
was-said to-be twenty parasangs; and it-'was not

πολί' ἀπέχει Βαβυλῶνος. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
much 'distant from-Babylon. Hence — they-proceeded

δύο σταδμοὺς ὀκτώ παρασάγγας, καὶ διέ-
two days'-march (making) eight parasangs, and they-

βησαν δύο διώρυχας, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ
crossed two canals, the (one) indeed on (a permanent)

γεφύρας, δὲ τὴν
bridge, but the (other they crossed on a temporary bridge) 'having

ἑζευγμένην ἑπτὰ πλοίοις· δ' αὖται
(its banks) 'joined-together by-seven boats; and these (canals)

ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ καὶ
were (conducted) from the river Tigris; and also

τάφροι κατετέτμηντο ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν,
litches had-been-cut from them over the country,

αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, δ' ἔπειτα ἐλάττους,
which indeed first (were) large, but afterwards less,

δὲ καὶ τέλος μικροὶ ὀχετοὶ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ
and also at-last (only) small drains (or streams) as in

τὰς μελίνας ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται
the panie (fields) in — Greece. And (then) they-arrived

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα· πρὸς ᾧ ἦν
at the river Tigris; near to-which there-was (a)

μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος πόλις ὄνομα ἣ
large and populous city (the) name to-which

Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ πεντεκαίδεκα
(was) Sittace, being-distant from-the river fifteen

σταδίους. Οὖν μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν παρ'
stadia. Therefore indeed the Greeks encamped near

αὐτὴν, ἑγγὺς μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ παραλίσσαι
it. (and) close to (a) large and beautiful pass

καὶ δασέος παντοίῳ δένδραν· δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι,
 and thick with-all-kind of-trees; but the barbarians,
 διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· ἥσαν οὐ μέντοι
 having-crossed the (river) Tigris; they-were not however
 καταφανεῖς.
 isible.

Μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν
 After — — supper Proxenus and Xenophon
 ἔτυχον ὄντες ἐν περιπάτῳ πρὸ
 |happened being in walking [happened to be walking] before
 τῶν ὀπλων· καὶ τις ἄνθρωπος προσελθὼν
 the (place) of-arms; and a man approaching
 ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον
 inquired of-the sentinels where 'he might 'see Proxenus
 ἢ Κλέαρχον· δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει Μένωνα, καὶ
 or Clearchus; but he-'did not 'inquire for-Menon, and
 ταῦτα ὦν παρ' Ἀριαίου, τοῦ ξένου Μένωνος.
 this being from Ariæus, the guest-friend of-Menon.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι εἰμι αὐτός ὃν ζητεῖς,
 Then indeed Proxenus said (that) I-am he whom you-seek
 ὁ ἄνθρωπος εἶπε τάδε· Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος
 the man (then) spoke thus: Ariæus and Artæozus
 ὄντες πιστοὶ Κύρῳ καὶ εὖνοι ὑμῖν,
 being faithful (friends) to-Cyrus and well-disposed towards-you
 καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι
 — exhort-you to-be-on-your-guard, lest the barbarians
 ἐπιδῶνται τῆς νυκτός· δὲ ἔστι πολὺ στράτευμα
 fall-upon-you in-the night; for there-is (a) numerous army
 ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. Καὶ κελεύουσι
 in the neighbouring park. 'They also 'request-you
 πέμψαι φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τῇ γέφυρᾳ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
 ro-send (a) guard to the bridge of-the river
 Τίγρητος, ὥς Τισσαφέρνης διανοεῖται λῦσαι αὐτὴν
 Tigris, as Tissaphernes designed to-'break it
 τῆς νυκτός, εἰὰν δύνηται, ὥς μὴ
 lown in-the night, if he-can, so-that you-'can not

διαβῆτε, ἀλλ' ἀποληφθῆτε ἐν μέσῳ
'cross, but (will be) intercepted in middle (space between)

τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. Ἀκούσαντες
the river and the canal. Hearing

ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον,
these (things) they-lead him to — Clearchus,

καὶ φράζουσιν αὐτῷ λέγει. Δέ οὖν Κλέαρχος
and told (him) what he-said. But — Clearchus

ἀκούσας σφόδρα ἐταράχθη καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο.
hearing (this) 'was greatly 'agitated and alarmed.

Δέ τις νεανίσκος τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας
But a-certain young-man of-those present having-reflected (thereon)

εἶπεν, ὥς τε τὸ ἐπιδήσεσθαι, καὶ τὸ λύσειν
said, that not-only the making-an-attack, but-also the breaking

τὴν γεφυραν εἶη οὐκ ἀκόλουθα. Γὰρ δῆλον
the bridge were not consistent. For (it is) evident

ὅτι ἐπιτιδεμένους δεήσει ἢ νικᾶν ἢ
that attacking (us) it-will-be-necessary either to-conquer or

ἡττᾶσθαι. Ἐὰν οὖν μὲν νικῶσι, τί
to-be-conquered. If therefore indeed they-should-conquer, what

δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφυραν; γὰρ οὐδὲ
is-the-necessity for-them to-break-down the bridge? for neither

ἂν ὧσιν πολλαὶ γέφυραι, ἂν ἔχομεν ὅποι
if there-were many bridges, would we-have where

φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθεῖμεν. Δέ ἐὰν ἡμεῖς
fleeing we might-save (ourselves). But if we

νικῶμεν τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης οὐχ
conquer the bridge having-been-destroyed, they-'would not

ἔξουσιν ὅποι ἐκεῖνοι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὲν
'have where they might-flee; | neither indeed [nor]

οὐδεὶς πέραν

| 'will none [will any] (of their friends) on-the-other-side (of the river)

όντων πολλῶν δυνήσεται βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς
being (ever so) many 'be-able to-assist them,

τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης.
the bridge being-destroyed.

Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἤρετο
 — Clearchus having-heard — these (things) asked
 τὸν ἄγγελον τις πόση εἴη χώρα ἣ
 the messenger how much might-be (the) country (in extent) which
 ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς
 (is situated) (in the-middle) (between) the Tigris and the
 διώρυχος. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι πολλή,
 canal. And who said, that (it was) great (in extent),
 καὶ ἐνείσι κῶμαι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ
 and there-were-in-it villages and towns many and
 μεγάλαι. Καὶ τότε δὴ ἐγνώσθη, ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι
 large. And then truly they-perceived, that the barbarians
 ὑποπέμψαιεν τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὀκνοῦντες, μὴ οἱ
 covertly-sent — (this) man fearing, lest the
 Ἕλληνες, διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν, μένοιεν ἐν τῇ
 Greeks, taking-to-pieces the bridge, might-remain in the
 νήσῳ ἔχοντες ἐρύματα ἐνδεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα,
 island having as-defences on-this (side) indeed the Tigris,
 δὲ ἐνδεν τὴν διώρυχα, δ' ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτή-
 out on-the-other the canal, and they-might-have the necessa-
 ρεία ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐν μέσῳ,
 ries-of-life from the country | in (the) middle, [from the coun-
 οὔσης πολλῆς
 intervening between the river and canal], being great (in extent)
 καὶ ἀγαθῆς, καὶ ἐνόντων τῶν
 and of-good (quality of soil), and there-being-on-it — (those)
 ἐργασομένων. δὲ καὶ εἶτα γένοιτο ἀπο-
 capable-of-cultivating-it; and also afterwards might-become (a) place-
 στροφῇ, εἴ τις βούλοιτο ποιεῖν κακῶς
 of-refuge, if any-one might-wish to-do evil 'to (the)
 βασιλέα. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· μεντοὶ
 king. After this they-went-to-rest; however they
 ὁμοῦς ἐπεμψαν φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν καὶ
 likewise 'sent (a) guard to the bridge; and
 οὔτε οὐδεὶς ἐπέδετο οὐδαμῶθεν, οὔτε
 neither 'did (no-one) (any one) 'attack-them from-any-quarter, nor

οὐδεις τῶν πολεμίων ἦλθε πρὸς τὴν
 fid — (any one) of-the enemy 'go to the
 γέφυραν, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον.
 aridge, as — (those) guarding-it reported
 Δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἐγένετο ἑως, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν,
 And when it-became day-light, they-crossed the bridge,
 ἐξευγμένην τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ πλοίοις,
 joined-together by (or formed of) thirty and seven boats,
 ὡς πεφυλαγμένως οἶόν τε μάλιστα.
 (as cautiously as indeed most (could be); [with
 γὰρ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ
 the greatest caution]; for some of-the Greeks from
 Τισσαφέρνους ἐξήγγελλον, ὡς μέλλοιεν
 Tissaphernes announced, that 'they (the enemy) 'intended
 ἰπιδήσεσθαι διαβαινόντων. Ἀλλὰ μὲν
 o-attack (them) crossing (the bridge). But even
 ταῦτα ἦν ψευδῆ· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς
 his was false; — crossing-over however — Glus
 ἠπεφάνη· μετ' ἄλλων, σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν
 appeared with others, observing if they-crossed
 τὸν ποταμόν· δὲ ἐπειδὴ εἶδεν, ἀπελαύνων
 the river; but when he-saw (that they did) riding-away
 ὤχετο.
 he-hastened.

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας
 From — the Tigris they-proceeded four
 σταδμοὺς, εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν
 days'-march, (making) twenty parasangs, to the
 ποταμόν Φύσκον, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου·
 river Physcus, the breadth (thereof being) a-plethrum;
 ἐπὴν δὲ γέφυρα. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 'on (which) 'there-was — (a) bridge. And here
 ὤκειτο μεγάλη πόλις, ἣ ὄνομα Ὀπις·
 was-situated (a) large town, to-which (the) name (was) Opis;
 πρὸς ἣν νόδος ἀδελφὸς Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου,
 near which (a) natural brother of-Cyrus and Artaxerxes,

ὁ ἄγων πολλὴν στρατιὰν ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ
 who was-leading (a) numerous army from Susa and

Ἐκβατάνων, ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ, ἀπήντησε
 Ecbatana, as assisting (the) king, met

τοῖς Ἑλλησι· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ στράτευμα
 the Greeks; and having-halted | the army

ἑαυτοῦ ἐδεώρει τοὺς Ἕλληνας παρερχομένους·
 of-himself [his army] he-viewed the Greeks passing-by.

Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο μὲν εἰς δύο,
 — But Clearchus led — (his men) by two (abreast)

δὲ ἄλλοτε ἐπορεύετο καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος.
 but at-one-time he-marched-forward and at-another halting.

Δὲ ὅσον χρόνον ἐπιστήσειε τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ
 And as-long (a) time (as) he-might-halt the van of-the

στρατεύματος, τοσοῦτον χρόνον ἦν ἀνάγκη
 army, so-long (a) time it-was necessarily

τὴν ἐπίστασιν γίνεσθαι δι' ὅλου τοῦ
 (that a) — halt should-take-place through the-whole of-the

στρατεύματος· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ τοῖς
 army; so-that the army even to-the

Ἑλλησι αὐτοῖς δόξαι εἶναι πάμπολυ, καὶ τον
 Greeks themselves seemed to-be very-large, and the

Πέρσῃ θεωροῦντα ἐκπεπληχθαι.
 Persian (general) viewing (them) was-amazed.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας ἕξ
 Hence — they-proceeded through — Media | six

ἑρήμους σταδμοὺς,
 desert stations, [six days' march through a desert], (making,

τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς τὰς κώμας Παρυ-
 thirty parasang^s, to the villages of-Pary-

σάτιδος, τῆς μητρὸς Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως.
 satis, the mother of-Cyrus and 'of (the) 'king.

Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεγγελῶν Κύρῳ ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς
 Tissaphernes (as) insulting Cyrus permitted the

Ἑλλησι διαρπάσαι ταύτας, πλὴν
 Greeks to-plunder these (villages), except (the)

ἀνδραπόδων. Ἐνῇν δὲ πολὺς σῖτος, καὶ
 slaves. There-was-in-them indeed much corn, also
 πρόβατα, καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. Ἐντεῦθεν δ'
 sheep, and other things. Hence —
 ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας ἐρήμους σταδμοὺς,
 they-proceeded | four desert stations, [four days'
 march in the desert], (making) twenty parasangs, having
 τὸν ποταμὸν Τίγρητα ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Ἐν
 the river Tigris on (their) left. In (the
 δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταδμῷ, πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
 end of) — the first days'-march, beyond the river,
 ὥκειτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων πόλις,
 there-was-situated (a) large and opulent town, (the)
 ὀνομαζομένη Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι
 name (of which was) Cænæ, from which the barbarians
 διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαῖς διφθερίναις ἄρτους,
 brought-over, on rafts (made of) skins, bread,
 τυροὺς, οἶνον.
 cheese, wine.

CHAPTER V.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
 AFTER these (things) they-arrived at the river
 Ζάπατον, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέδρων.
 Zapata, (it having) the breadth of-four plethra.
 Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν δὲ
 And here they-remained three days; during —
 αὐταῖς ἦσαν μὲν ὑποψίαι, δὲ
 these (days) there-were indeed (the same) suspicions, but
 οὐδεμία φανερά ἐπιβουλὴ ἐφαίνετο. Ἐδοξεν
 no manifest plot appeared. It-seemed
 οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ συγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσα-
 therefore (good) — to-Clearchus to-have-a-conference — with-Tissa-

φερνει, καὶ εἴ πως δύναιτο, παῦσαι τὰς
 phernes, and if in-any-manner he-could, to-put-an-end to — (these
 ὑποψίας, πρὶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν· καὶ
 suspicions, before war should-arise from them; and
 ἔπεμψε τινα ἐροῦντα, ὅτι χρήζοι ξυγγενεσθαι
 ne-sent some-one saying, that he-desired to-confer
 αὐτῷ. Δὲ ὁ ἐτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἥκειν. Ἐπειδὴ
 with-him. And who promptly requested (him) to-come. When
 δὲ ξυνῆλθον, ὁ Κλέαρχος λέγει τάδε· Ἐγώ, ὦ
 indeed they-met, — Clearchus spoke thus: I, O
 Τισσαφέρνῃ, οἶδα μὲν ὅρκους γεγεννημένους
 Tissaphernes, know indeed (that) oaths have-been-taken
 ἡμῖν, καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας, μὴ ἀδικήσῃν
 between-us, and right-hands given, not to-injure
 ἀλλήλους· δὲ ὁρῶ σέ τε φυλαττόμενον ὥς
 one-another; but I-see you not-only guarding-yourself as-if
 ἡμᾶς πολεμίους, καὶ ἡμεῖς, ὁρῶντες ταῦτα,
 we (were) enemies, but-also we, perceiving these
 ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν
 (things), are-on-our-guard-against (you). After indeed considering
 οἷ' δύναμαι αἰσθῆσθαι οὔτε σέ
 (attentively), I-'am not 'able to-perceive (neither) you
 πειρώμενον ποιεῖν ἡμᾶς κακῶς, ἐγὼ τε σαφῶς
 striving to-do us ill, I indeed clearly
 οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδ' ἐπινοοῦμεν οὐδέν
 know that we at-least neither intend (nothing) (any thing)
 τοιοῦτον, ἔδοξέ μοι ἔλθειν εἰς λόγους
 of-this-sort (toward you), it-seemed to-me (best) to-come to (a) conference
 σοι, ὅπως εἰ δυνάίμεθα ἐξέλκοιμεν τὴν ἀπιστίαν
 with-you, so-that if we-can we-may-remove the mistrust
 ἀλλήλων. Γὰρ καὶ ἤδη οἶδα ἀνθρώπους,
 f-one-another. For indeed 'I now 'know men,
 τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς, δὲ καὶ τοὺς
 — (some) indeed from direct-accusation, but also — (others)
 ξ' ὑποψίας, οἱ φοβήδεντες ἀλλήλους βουλόμενοι,
 from suspicion, who having-feared one-another (and) wishing

φθάσαι πρὶν παθεῖν
to-have-anticipated (in inflicting injury) before suffering (any)

ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλ-
have-done irremediable evils to — (those) neither intend.

λουντας οὐτ' αὖ βουλομένους οὐδέν
ing nor moreover wishing (nothing) (any thing) 'of (the)

τοιοῦτον. Νομίζων οὖν τὰς τοιαύτας
'kind. Thinking therefore (that) — such-kinds-of

ἀγνωμοσύνας ἂν παύεσθαι μάλιστα συνουσίαις,
misunderstandings may be-made-to-cessate most-of-all by-meeting-together,

ἤκω. καὶ βούλομαι διδάσκειν σε, ὥς σὺ
I-come (then), and am-desirous to-inform you, that you 'do

οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον καὶ
not rightly 'mistrust us. For indeed first and

μέγιστον, οἱ ὅρκοι θεῶν κολύουσι
principally, the oaths (taken in the name) 'of (the) 'gods forbid

ἡμᾶς εἶναι πολεμίους ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων
us to-be enemies to-one-another; whoever indeed of-these

σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκῶς, τοῦτον
is-conscious to-himself (of) having-disregarded (these things), this-one

ἐγὼ ἂν οὐποτ' εὐδαιμονίσαιμι. Γὰρ τὸν
I could never (esteem) happy. For (from) the

πόλεμον θεῶν οἶδα οὐκ, οὐτ' ἀπὸ ποίου
hostility 'of (the) 'gods I-know not, neither | from [with] what-degree

ἂν τάχους οὔτε ὅποι τις φεύγων ἂν ἀποφύγοι,
— of-speed nor where any-one fleeing may escape,

οὔτ' εἰς ποῖον σκότος ἂν ἀποδραίῃ, οὔδ' ὅπως
neither into what darkness 'he might 'flee-away, nor how

ἂν ἀποσταίῃ εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίον,
he could 'retreat into (a) fortified place (and escape from

γὰρ πάντα πάντα ὑποχα τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ
them), for everywhere all (is) subject to-the gods, and

οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι πανταχῇ πάντων ἴσον. Οὕτω
the gods rule everywhere over-all-things alike. Thus

γινώσκω δὴ μὲν περὶ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ
do-I-think truly indeed respecting the gods, and also

τῶν ὀρκῶν, παρ' οἷς ἡμεῖς, συνδέμενοι,
— (r specting) oaths, with whom we, having-concurred

κατεδέμεθα τὴν φιλίαν· δὲ τῶν
(with one another), have-deposited — (our) friendship; but —

ἀνθρωπίνων ἐγὼ νομίζω σὲ ἐν τῷ παρόντι
of-all-human-things I consider you at the present (time)

εἶναι μέγιστον ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν σὺν σοὶ
to-be the-greatest good to-us. For indeed with you

πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὐπορος, δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
every — road (is) easy, and every river

διαβατός, οἷκ ἀπορία τε τῶν ἐπιτηδείων·
passable, (there is) no want indeed of-the necessities-of-life;

δὲ ἄνευ σοῦ πᾶσα ἡ ὁδὸς μὲν διὰ σκότους
but without you (our) entire — route — (will be) through darkness

(γὰρ ἐπιστάμεθα οὐδὲν αὐτῆς), δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
'for we-know nothing of-it), and every river

δύσπορος, δὲ πᾶς ὄχλος
(would be) difficult-in-crossing, also every multitude-of-men (would be)

φοβερός, δὲ ἐρημία φοβερώτατον· γὰρ
terrible, but solitude (would be) the-most-terrible (thing); for

ἐστὶ μεστὴ πολλῆς ἀπορίας. Δὲ εἰ
it-is full of-every want (and difficulty). But if

δὴ καὶ μανέντες κατακτείναιμεν σε, ἂν ἤ
truly 'having even 'become-mad we-should-kill you, would

τι ἄλλο κατακτείναντες τὸν εὔερ-
any-thing else (happen) having-slain — (our) bene-

γέτην ἀγωνιζοίμεθα πρὸς βασιλέα
factor, (but that) we-should-have-to-contend with (the) king

τὸν μέγιστον ἑφεδρον; ὅσων καὶ δὲ δὴ οἶων
the greatest avenger? of-how-many, and indeed truly how-great

ἐλπίδων ἂν στερήσαιμι ἑμαυτὸν, εἰ ἐπιχειρήσαιμι
expectations 'I should 'deprive myself, if I-should-attempt

ποιεῖν σέ τι κακὸν, ταῦτα λέξω. Ἐγὼ
to-do you any harm, this I-will-tell (you). I

γὰρ ἐπεθύμησά Κῦρον γενέσθαι φίλον μοι
therefore desired Cyrus to-become (a) friend to-me

νομίζων τῶν τότε εἶναι ἰκανώτατον
 thinking (him) of-the (men) at-that-time to-be the-most-apt
 ποιεῖν εἰ δὲ βούλοιτο· δὲ νῦν ὁρῶ
 to-do good to-whom he-wished (to do so); but 'I now 'see
 σὲ ἔχοντα τε τὴν δύναμιν καὶ χώραν Κυρίου,
 you having not-only the power and territory of-Cyrus,
 καὶ σώζοντα τὴν ἀρχὴν σεαυτοῦ, δὲ τὴν
 but-also retaining the government of-yourself. but the
 δύναμιν βασιλέως, ἣ Κῦρος ἐχρῆτο
 power 'of (the) 'king, which Cyrus experienced (as)
 πολεμία, ταύτην οὖσαν ζύμμαχον σοί.
 hostile, this (power) being (now an) ally to-you.
 Δὲ τούτων ὄντων τοιούτων, τίς
 But these (things) being in-this-manner, (is there) any-one (who)
 οὕτω μαίνεται, ὅστις οὐ βούλεται εἶναι
 is so 'mad, who 'would not 'wish to-be (a)
 φίλος σοι; Ἀλλὰ μὴν (γὰρ ἐρῶ καὶ ταῦτα
 friend to-you? But truly (for I-will-mention also those
 ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας, καὶ σε βουλή-
 (things) from which I-have hopes, (that) even you will-
 σεσθαι εἶναι φίλον ἡμῖν), γὰρ μὲν οἶδα
 desire to-be (a) friend of-us), for indeed I-know 'of (the)
 Μυσσοὺς ὄντας λυπηροὺς ὑμῖν, οὓς νομίζω
 'Mysians being troublesome to-you, whom, I-am-of-opinion (that)
 σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ἂν παρασχεῖν
 with the present (Grecian) force, 'I could 'render
 ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν· δὲ καὶ οἶδα Πισίδας·
 submissive to-you; so also I-know (that the) Pisidians (annoy
 δὲ καὶ ἀκούω εἶναι πολλὰ ἄλλα ἔθνη
 you); and also I-hear (that) there-are many other nations
 τοιαῦτα ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἀεὶ
 like-these (two mentioned) whom I-think (that) 'I might 'prevent ever
 ἐνοχλοῦντα τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Δὲ
 disturbing — your happiness. But (as respects the)
 Αἰγυπτίους, οἷς νῦν γινώσκω ὑμᾶς
 Egyptians, against-whom 'I now 'know (that) you

μάλιστα τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποῖα
have-'been very-much 'excited, I-'do not 'see what

συνμάχῳ δυνάμει μάλλον χρησάμενοι
auxiliary force (which) having-'been rather 'used,

ἂν κολάσσεσθε τῆς
'you might 'punish (them better than) — (with the force)

οὔσης νῦν σὺν ἐμοί. Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἐν τοῖς γε
being now with me. But truly among — (those) at-least

οἰκοῦσι περίξ σύ, εἰ μὲν βούλοιο εἶναι
(who) dwell round-about you, if indeed you-desired to-be (a)

φίλος τῷ, ὥς ἂν εἴης μέγιστος.
friend — (to-any), that 'you might 'be (the) greatest (possible)

δὲ εἰ τις λυτοίῃ σε, ἀναστρέφοιο ὥς
but if any-one offend you, you-might-deal (with them) as (a)

δεσπότης, ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἳ ἂν
master, having us for-assistants, — (for) 'we would

ὑπηρετοῖμεν σοι οὐκ ἔνεκα τοῦ μισθοῦ
'serve you not on-account-of — (our) pay

μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἧς.
alone, but also (on account of) the gratitude, which,

σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἂν δικαίως ἔχομεν σοι.
having-been-saved by you, 'we might justly 'have to-you

Ἐμοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐνθυμουμένῳ πάντα ταῦτα
I indeed — considering all these (things),

τὸ σὲ ἀπιστεῖν ἡμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι.
[the you to-distrust us [your distrusting us] seems to-be

οὕτω θαυμαστόν, ὥστε ἂν ἡδιστ' καὶ ἀκούσαιμι
so wonderful, that 'I would most-gladly even 'have-heard

τὸ ὄνομα τίς ἐστὶ οὕτω δεινὸς λέγειν,
the name (of him) — [who] is so skilled to-speak,

ὥστε λέγων πείσαι σε ὥς ἡμεῖς ἐπιβουλεύομεν
that speaking to-have-persuaded you that we are-conspiring

σοι. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαῦτα.
against-you. Clearchus indeed therefore spoke in-this-manner

δὲ Τισσαφέρνης ἀπημείφθη ὧδε.
but Tissaphernes replied thus (as follows):

Ἄλλὰ μὲν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἡδομαι ἀκούων
 But indeed, O Clearchus, I-am-delighted hearing (the,
 φρονίμους λόγους σου· γὰρ γινώσκων ταῦτα,
 judicious discourse of-you; for knowing these
 εἰ βουλεύεις τι κακὸν ἐμοὶ,
 (your sentiments), if you-were-to-plan any-thing evil against-me,
 ἅμα ἂν δοκεῖς μοι καὶ εἶναι κακόνους
 at-the-same-time 'you would 'appear to-me even to-be evil-minded
 σαυτῷ. Δ' ὥς ἂν μάθῃς, ὅτι ὑμεῖς ἂν οὐδὲ
 io-yourself. But that 'you may 'learn, that you 'do noi
 δικαίως ἀπιστοίητε οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοὶ,
 justly 'mistrust either (the) king or me,
 ἀντάκουσον. Γὰρ εἰ ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς
 n. ten-in-turn. For if we-wished to-destroy you
 πότερα δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν πλήδους ἱππέων
 whether do-we-seem to-you to-want (the) multitude of-cavalry,
 ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὀπλίσεως ἐν ᾗ ἂν εἴημεν ἱκανοί.
 or of-infantry or warlike-equipments by which 'we might 'be able
 μὲν βλάπτειν ὑμᾶς, δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος,
 indeed to-injure you, and (there would be) no danger
 ἀντιπάσχειν; Ἄλλὰ ἂν δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν
 to-undergo-in-return? But might we-seem to-you (as) wanting
 χωρίων ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιτίδεςσαι ὑμῖν; μὲν
 places suitable to-attack you? (are there not) indeed
 τοσαῦτα πεδία ἃ οὐ ὄντα φίλια ὑμεῖς διαπορεύεσθε
 so-many plains, which not being friendly you pass-through
 σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ, δὲ ὁρᾶτε τοσαῦτα
 with much labour (and difficulty) and do-you-see the-many
 ὄρη ὄντα πορευτέα ὑμῖν,
 mountains | being to-be-crossed by-you, [that are to be crossed by you],
 ἃ ἔξεστι ἡμῖν προκαταλαβοῦσι
 which it-is-allowed us after-having-previously-taken-possession (of them)
 παρέχειν ἄπορα ὑμῖν, δ' εἰσὶ τοσοῦτοι ποταμοί.
 to-render impassable to-you, and are-there (not) so-many rivers,
 ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι
 at which it-is-allowed us to-regulate (and determine)

ὅπσοις ὑμῶν ἂν βουλόμεθα μάχεσθαι; δε
with-how-many of-you 'we might 'wish to-fight? and

εἰσι αὐτῶν οὓς ἂν οὐδὲ διαβαίητε
are-there (not some) of-these (rivers) which 'you could not 'cross

παντάπασι, εἰ ἡμεῖς μὴ διαπορεύοιμεν ὑμᾶς.
at-all, if we 'did not 'cross you 'over

Δ' εἰ ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἥττώμεθα, ἀλλὰ
But if in all these (things) we-should-fail, but (then)

γέ τοι τό πῦρ ἔστι κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ.
at-least — — | fire is better (than) the fruit

κατα-
(of the earth); [fire is master over the produce of the soil]; (for) burn-

καύσαντες ὃν ἡμεῖς ἂν δυναίμεθ' ἀντιτάξαι λιμὸν
ing which we would be-able to-oppose famine

ὑμῖν, ᾧ ὑμεῖς, οὐδ' εἰ εἴητε πάνν ἀγαδοί,
to-you, against-which you, neither if you-were ever-so brave,

ἂν δύναισθε μάχεσθαι. Πῶς οὖν ἂν, ἔχοντες
could you-be-able to-contend. How-then therefore if, having

τοσούτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν ὑμῖν
so-many means | for the to-wage-war with-you, [for

καὶ μηδένα τούτων ἐπικίνδυνον
waging war with you], and none of-these dangerous

ἡμῖν, ἔπειτα ἂν ἐκ παντὸν τούτων ἐξελοίμεθα
to-us, now-that 'we should of all these 'select

τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, ὃς μὲν μόνος ἀσεβής
this — manner, which indeed alone (is) impious

πρὸς θεῶν, δὲ μόνος αἰσχρὸς πρὸς ἀνθρώπων;
before (the) gods, and alone (is) disgraceful before men?

Δὲ ἐστὶ παντάπασι ἀπόρων
But it-is altogether (the part of men) perplexed-by-difficulties,

καὶ ἀμηνῶν καὶ ἐχομένων ἀνάγκη, καὶ
and destitute-of-means, and held by-necessity, and

τούτων ποιητῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι
these (being) wicked (by nature), who desire

πράττειν τι τε δι' ἐπιπορκίας πρὸς θεούς,
to-effect any-thing no only by perjury to (the) gods,

καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνδρώπους. Ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε,
but-also perfidy to men. We, O Clearchus,

ἔσμέν οὐχ οὔτε οὕτως ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἡλίδιοι.
are not (neither) (either) so inconsiderate (nor) (or) foolish.

Αλλὰ τί δὴ, ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς,
But why truly, it-being-allowed (us) to-have-destroyed you, | did-'we

οὐκ ἤλδομεν ἐπὶ τοῦτο: ἴσδι
not 'go to this? [why did we not attempt it]? know

εὔ, ὅτι ὁ αἴτιος τούτου ἐμὸς ἔρως, ἐμέ
well, that the cause of-this (was) my desire, | me

τὸ γενέσθαι πιστὸν τοῖς Ἑλλήσι,
the to-become [for becoming] (a) faithful (friend) to-the Greeks

καὶ ᾧ ξενικῷ Κῦρος ἀνέβη πιστεύων
and with-which foreign (force) Cyrus went-up trusting (them)

διὰ μισθοδοσίας, τούτῳ
on-account-of (the) pay-given (them), with-this (force) (it is for)

ἐμέ καταβῆαι ἰσχυρόν δι' εὐεργεσίας.
me to-go-down strengthen on-account-of benefits (bestowed

Δέ ὅσα ὑμεῖς ἔστε
on them). But (as respects) how-many-things (in which) you are

χρήσιμοι μοι σὺ μὲν καὶ εἶπας τὰ,
useful to-me you 'have indeed even 'mentioned — (some of them),

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· γὰρ μὲν ἔξεστι
but the greatest (of all) I-myself know; for indeed it-is-allowed

μόνῳ βασιλεῖ ἔχειν τὴν τιάραν ὀρθὴν ἐπὶ
alone 'to (the) 'king to-have the tiara upright on

τῇ κεφαλῇ, δ' ἴσως, τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ,
the head, but perhaps, — (that) on the heart,

ὑμῶν παρόντων, καὶ ἕτερος ἂν εὐπετῶς
you being-present (and assisting), even another may easily

ἔχοι.

have (so.)

Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ λέγειν
Saying these (things) he-seemed to — Clearchus to-speak

ἀληθῆ· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν, ἔφη,
the-truth; and he-said· (Are) not (those) therefore, he-said

οἵτινες, τοιούτων εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων
 who, such-great (inducements) to friendship existing

ἡμῖν, διαβάλλοντες πειρῶνται ποιῆσαι ἡμᾶς πολε-
 to-us, calumniating endeavour to-make us ini-

μίους εἰσι ἄξιοι παθεῖν τὰ
 mical (to one another) are (they not) worthy to-suffer the

ἔσχατα; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἔφη ὁ
 extreme (of punishment)? And I indeed at-least said —

Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
 Tissaphernes, if 'you as-also the generals and the

λοχαγοὶ βούλεσθε ἔλθειν μοι ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ,
 captains 'will come to-me in — (a) public

λέξω τοὺς λέγοντας πρὸς ἐμέ, ὥς
 (manner), I-will-mention — (those) telling — me, that

σὺ ἐπιβουλεύεις ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ σὺν ἐμοί.
 you are-conspiring-against me, and the army with me.

Δὲ ἐγὼ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἄξω πάντα,
 And I, said — Clearchus, will-bring (them) all,

καὶ αὖ δηλώσω σοί, ὅθεν ἐγὼ ἀκούω
 and 'I in-return 'will-declare to-you, whence I hear (reports)

περὶ σοῦ. Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσα-
 about you. After these — — speeches — Tissa-

φέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε τε
 phernes treating-him-in-a-friendly-and-courteous-manner, then not-only

μὲν ἐκέλευσε αὐτὸν μένειν, καὶ ἐποιήσατο
 indeed requested him to-remain, but-also made-him (a)

σύνδειπνον. Δὲ τῇ ὑστερίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος,
 companion-at-supper. But on-the following-day — Clearchus,

ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἦν δῆλός τ'
 going to the camp, was 'evidently not-only

οἴομενος τὸν Τισσαφέρνην ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς
 thinking (that) — Tissaphernes was very kindly

διαχεῖσθαι, καὶ ἀπήγγελλεν ᾧ ἐκεῖνος
 affected (towards him), but-also announced what he

ἔλεγεν· ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἵέναι παρὰ
 had-mentioned; he-said (that) not-only (those) ought to-go to

Τισσαφέρην, οὓς ἐκέλευσε, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 Tissaphernes, whom he-called, but-also (those) of-the Greeks,
 οἱ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες,
 who might be-convicted (as) calumniating (their countrymen),
 αὐτοὺς τιμωρηθῆναι ὥς ὄντας προδότας καὶ
 (that) those are-to-be-punished as being traitors and
 κακόνους τοῖς Ἑλλήσι. Δὲ ὑπόπτενε Μένωνα
 evil-disposed to-the Greeks. For he-suspected (that) Menon
 εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα, καὶ εἰδὼς αὐτὸν
 was the calumniator, even having-known him (as)
 συγγεγεννημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου,
 having-been-with Tissaphernes (in company) with Ariæus,
 καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα,
 both (as) forming-a-party against-himself, and (as) intriguing,
 ὅπως λαβὼν τὸ ἅπαν στρατεύμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
 so-that having-secured the entire army for himself
 ἢ φίλος Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέ-
 he-might-be (a) friend to-Tissaphernes. But also — Cle-
 αρχος ἐβούλετο τὸ ἅπαν στρατεύμα ἔχειν τὴν
 archus — wished the entire army to-have —
 γνώμην πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, καὶ τοὺς παραλν-
 (their) minds for him, and — (those) molest-
 πούντας εἶναι ἐκποδῶν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 ing to-be removed-away. But some of-the soldiers
 ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ, πάντας τοὺς λοχα-
 spoke-in-opposition to-him, [Clearchus], (that) all the cap-
 γοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς μὴ ἰέναι, μηδε
 tains and generals 'should not 'go, (and that) neither
 πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος κατέτεινεν
 should-they-trust Tissaphernes. But — Clearchus contended
 ἰσχυρῶς ἔστε διεπράξατο μὲν πέντε στρατηγούς
 vehemently until he-obtained indeed five generals
 δὲ εἴκοσι λοχαγούς ἰέναι. δὲ καὶ τῶν
 and twenty captains so-go (with him), and also (some) of-the

ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι συνηκολούθησαν
 other soldiers about two-hundred followed

ὥς εἰς ἀγορὰν.
 as-if (going) to market.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσα-
 When indeed they-were at the gates of — Tissa-

φέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω,
 phernes, the generals indeed were-invited within,

Πρόξενος Βοιωτίας, Μένων Θετταλός,
 (these were) Proxenus (the) Bœotian, Menon (the) Thessalian,

Ἀγίας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σω-
 Agias (the) Arcadian, Clearchus (the) Lacedæmonian, (and) So-

κράτης Ἀχαιός· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐπὶ
 crates (the) Achæan; but the captains remained at

ταῖς θύραις. Οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον, ἀπὸ τοῦ
 the gates. Not long indeed after, at the

αὐτοῦ σημείου, τ' οἱ ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο
 same signal, not-only — (those) within were-seized,

καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα
 out-also — (those) without were-killed. And after this

τινὲς τῶν ἰππέων βαρβάρων, ἐλαύνοντες διὰ
 some of-the cavalry 'of (the) 'barbarians, riding through

τοῦ πεδίου· ὥτινι Ἑλληνι ἐντυγχάνοιεν, ἢ
 the plain; whatever Greek they-might-meet, either

δούλῳ ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ ἔκτεινον πάντας. Δὲ οἱ
 slave or freeman they-killed (them) all. But the

Ἕλληνες ὁρῶντες ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὴν
 Greeks observing from the camp — (this)

ἵππασίαν αὐτῶν τε ἐθαύμαζον, καὶ ἠμφιγνόουν
 riding-about of-them 'were not-only 'astonished, but-also doubted

ὅ τι ἐποιοῦν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων,
 what they-were-doing, until Nicarchus (an) Arcadian came fleeing.

τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ ἔχων τὰ
 being-pierced in the belly, | and having the

ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ,
 intestines in — (his) hands, [and holding back the intestines with his

καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. Ἐκ τούτο
 [lands], and related all — (that) had-occurred. Upon this
 δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα πάντες
 indeed the Greeks ran to — (their) arms all
 ἐκπεπληγμένοι, καὶ νομίζοντες
 being-struck (with consternation), and thinking (that)
 αὐτοὺς αὐτίκα ἥξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 they 'will immediately 'come against the camp.
 Οἱ πάντες δὲ οὐκ ἦλδον, δὲ Ἀριαῖος καὶ
 — All indeed 'did not 'go, but (only) Ariæus and
 Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἱ ἦσαν πιστότατοι
 Artaozus and Mithradates, who were the-most-faithful
 Κύρῳ· δὲ ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔφη καὶ
 to-Cyrus; but the interpreter of-the Greeks said (that) also
 ὅρᾱν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Τισσαφέρνους σὺν αὐτοῖς,
 he-saw the brother of-Tissaphernes with them,
 καὶ γινώσκειν· δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν
 and (that) he-knew (him); and also others 'of (the) 'Persians
 εἰς τριακοσίους τεθωρακισμένοι ξυνηκο-
 to-the-number-of three-hundred equipped-with-corselets accom-
 λούδουν. Οὗτοι, ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευον, εἰ
 panied-them. These, when they-were near, requested, if
 εἶη ἢ τις στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγὸς τῶν
 there-were either any general or captain of-the
 Ἑλλήνων, προσελθεῖν, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλῃσι
 Greeks, (them) to-come-forth, that they-may-deliver-a-message
 τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. Μετὰ ταῦτα στρατηγοὶ
 — from (the) king. After this (the) generals
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων μὲν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ
 of-the Greeks, namely Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and
 Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ἐξῆλδον φυλαττόμενοι,
 Sophænetus (the) Stymphalian, went-forth guarded
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος δὲ ξὺν
 (and with precaution), Xenophon (the) Athenian (went) also with
 αὐτοῖς, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου·
 them, that he-might-learn — (something) about Proxenus

(Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχαιεν ἀπὼν ἐν τινι
(Cheiriso-phus — | happened being-absent [was absent] at a

κώμῃ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενος.) Δὲ ἐπεὶ
village with others seeking-for-provisions.) But when

ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, Ἀριαῖος εἶπε τάδε·
they-stood in hearing (distance) Ariæus spoke thus:

Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ τε
Clearchus indeed, O men Greeks, since 'he not-only

ἐφάνη ἐπιορκῶν, καὶ λύων τὰς σπονδὰς
'appeared committing-perjury, but-also breaking the truce,

ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε· δὲ
has-received — (his) just-punishment, and died; but

Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν τὴν
Proxenus and Menon, because they-denounced the

ἐπιβουλήν, εἰσιν ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
plot, are in great honour. And the king

ἀπαιτεῖ ὑμᾶς τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ φησὶν εἶναι
demands of-you — (your) arms; for says-he | to-be

αὐτοῦ ἐπεὶ περ ἦσαν Κύρου
of-him [they are his] | because they-were of-Cyrus [because they be-

τοῦ δούλου ἐκείνου.
longed to Cyrus] the slave (and subject) of-himself.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπεκρίναντο (δὲ
To this the Greeks answer (for

Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγε)· ὦ Ἀριαῖε
Cleanor the Orchomenian spoke) (for them): O Ariæus,

κάκιστε ἀνθρώπων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε φίλοι.
most-wicked of-men, and the others as-many-as were friends

Κύρου οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς
of-Cyrus, do-'you not respect (neither) (either) (the) gods

οὔτ' ἀνθρώπους, οἵτινες ὁμόσαντες νομιεῖν τοὺς
(nor) (or) men, who having-sworn to-consider —

αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχθροὺς ἡμῖν,
those friends and enemies to-us (to be the same to you),

προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀδευπάτῳ
betraying us with Tissaphernes the most-godless

τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ, ἀπολωλέκατε τε τοῦς
 and also most-crafty, you-have-destroyed not-only the
 αὐτοὺς ἄνδρας, οἷς ὤμνυτε, καὶ προδεδω-
 very-same men, to-whom you-swore, but-also deserting-and-be-
 κότες ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔρχεσθε
 traying | us the other [us, who are left] have-come
 ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις; Δὲ ὁ Ἀριαῖος
 against us with — (our) enemies? But — Ariæus
 εἶπε· Γὰρ Κλέαρχος φανερός ἐγένετο πρόσθεν
 said. For Clearchus evidently was before
 ἐπιβουλεύων Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντα καὶ
 plotting-against Tissaphernes and also Orontes and
 ἡμῖν πᾶσιν ξὺν τοῖς τούτοις. Ἐπὶ τοῖτοις
 against-us all with — these. After this
 Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε· Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν, εἰ
 Xenophon spoke thus: Clearchus indeed therefore, if
 ἔλυσεν τὰς σπονδὰς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔχει
 he-has-broken the truce contrary to — (his) oaths he-has
 τὴν δίκην· γὰρ δίκαιον ἀπόλλυσθαι
 — (his) just-punishment; for it-is-just to-destroy
 τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας· δὲ Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων
 — (those) perjuring-themselves; but Proxenus and-also Menon
 ἐπεὶπερ εἰσὶν μὲν ὑμέτεροι εὐεργέται, δὲ ἡμέτεροι
 since they-are indeed your benefactors, and our
 στρατηγοὶ, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· γὰρ δῆλον,
 generals, send them hither; for (it is) clear,
 ὅτι, ὄντες γε φίλοι ἀμφοτέροις, πειράσονται
 that, being at-least friends to-both (parties), they-will-endeavour
 συμβουλεύειν τὰ βέλτιστα καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν.
 to-advise the best both for-you and for-us
 Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι διαλεχθέντες πολὺν
 After this the barbarians, having-conversed for-a-long
 χρόνον ἀλλήλοισι ἀπῆλθον ἀποκρινάμενοι οὐδέν.
 time with-one-another, departed, having-answered nothing.

CHAPTER VI.

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν δὴ, οὕτω ληφθέντες,
 THE generals indeed, thus taken (prisoners),
 ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα, καὶ τὰς
 were-taken-up to (the) king, and 'having — (their)
 κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες ἐτελεύτησαν· εἷς μὲν
 heads 'cut-off died; one indeed
 αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν
 of-them Clearchus by-general-account of all —
 ἔχόντων ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ, δόξας
 (those) having experimentally (a knowledge) of-him, | having-appeared
 γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ ἐσχάτως πολεμικὸς
 to-be [seemed to be] (a) man both extremely addicted-to-war
 καὶ φιλοπόλεμος. Γὰρ καὶ δὴ
 and fond-of-military (affairs and enterprises). For also truly
 ἕως μὲν ἦν πόλεμος τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις
 as-long-as indeed there-was war with-the Lacedæmonians
 πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενε.
 against the Athenians, he-remained (with the Lacedæmonians).
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο πείσας τὴν πόλιν
 But when peace took-place | having-persuaded the city
 αὐτοῦ ὡς οἱ Θράκες
 of-himself [having persuaded Sparta, his city,] that the Thracians
 ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ διαπραξάμενος
 were-committing-injuries on-the Greeks, and having-obtained
 ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν Ἐφόρων
 as-well-as he-could from the Ephori (the means to carry
 ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς Θραξίν
 on the war) he-sailed as about-making-war against-the Thracians
 ὑπὲρ Χερρόνησου καὶ Περίνδου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
 above (the) Chersonesus and Perinthus. But when the
 Ἐφοροὶ πῶς μεταγνόντες, αὐτοῦ ὄντος
 Ephori 'having some-how 'changed-their-minds, he being

ἤδη ἔξω, ἐπειρῶντο ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν
now without (their jurisdiction), they-endeavoured to-'turn him

ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείδεται,
back from (the) Isthmus, there he-'did not-any-longer 'obey.

ἀλλ' πλέων ὤχετο εἰς Ἑλλάσποντον
but sailing (away) he-proceeded to (the) Hellespont

Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν τελῶν
And for this he-was-condemned-to-death by the magistrates

ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ, ὥς ἀπειδῶν. Δὲ ὦν ἤδη
in — Sparta, as being-disobedient. But being now (an)

φυγὰς, ἔρχεται πρὸς Κύρον, καὶ μὲν ὁποίοις
exile, he-goes to Cyrus, and indeed by-what

λόγοις ἐπεισε Κῦρον γέγραπται
discourses (and means) he-persuaded Cyrus has-been-written

ἄλλῃ· δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσι αὐτῷ μυρίου
in-another-place; and Cyrus gave him ten-thousand

δαρεικούς. Δὲ ὁ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐτράπετο
darics. And who taking (this sum) 'did not 'turn-himself

ἐπὶ ῥαθυμίαν, ἀλλ' συλλέξας στρατεύμα ἀπὸ
to idleness, but having-collected (an) army with

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί,
this-same — money, he-made-war with-the Thracians,

καὶ τε ἐνίκησε μάχῃ, καὶ δὴ ἔφερε καὶ
and not-only conquered (them) in-battle, but-also — took-away and

ἤγε ἀπὸ τούτου τούτους, καὶ διεγένετο
led-away from this (country) all-things, and he-continued

πολεμῶν, μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος·
fighting, until Cyrus needed — (his) army:

δὲ τότε ἀπῆλθεν ὥς αὖ πολε-
and then departed (to go to him) that (he might be) again making-

μήσων ξὺν ἐκείνῳ.
war with him.

Δοκεῖ μοι ταῦτα οὖν εἶναι ἔργα
It-seems to-me (that) these therefore were (the) occupations

φιλοπολέμου, ὅς τις ἐξὸν μὲν ἔχει
of-one-fond-of-war, who when-it-was-allowed-him indeed to-have

εἰρήνην ἀνευ αἰσχύνῃς καὶ βλάβῃς, αἵρεται
 peace without shame and detriment, he-chose

πολεμεῖν, δὲ ἐξὸν ῥαθυμεῖν,
 to-make-war, and when-it-was-allowed-him to-lead-a-life-of-indolence,

βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν,
 he-wished to-undergo-severe-labour so-as to-be-engaged-in-war (with its

δὲ ἐξὸν ἔχειν χρήματα
 toils and adventures), und when-it-was-allowed-him to-have riches

ἀκινδύνως, αἵρεται πολεμῶν ποιεῖν ταῦτα
 without-danger, he-chose making-war to-make these (riches)

μείονα. Δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον
 less. But he desired to-spend-his-money in war

ὥσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς τινὰ
 as (he might have spent it) on (a) beloved-object, or on any

ἄλλην ἡδονήν· οὕτω μὲν ἦν φιλοπόλεμος.
 other pleasure: so 'fond indeed was-he 'of-war.

Δὲ αὖ ἐδόκει εἶναι πολεμικὸς ταύτῃ, ὅτι
 And again he-appeared to-be fitted-for-war in-this, that

τε ἦν φιλοκίνδυνος, καὶ ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς
 not-only he-was fond-of-danger, | but-also marching against the

πολεμίους,
 enemy. [but was always ready to lead his army against the enemy],

καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτὸς, καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
 both by-day and night, and in — danger (was)

φρόνιμος, ὥς οἱ παρόντες
 prudent-and-self-possessed, as — (those) being-present (with him)

πανταχοῦ πάντες ὁμολόγουν. Καὶ δ' ἐλεγέτο
 in-any-place all confessed. And also he-was-said

εἶναι ἀρχικὸς ὥς δυνατόν ἐκ τοῦ
 to-be qualified-for-commanding in-as-much-as he-could-be from —

τοιούτου τρόπου, οἷον καὶ κεῖνος εἶχεν. Γὰρ
 such (a) disposition, as even-he had. For

μὲν ἦν ἱκανὸς, ὥς καὶ τις ἄλλος, φροντίζειν,
 indeed he-was capable, (more) than even any other, to-take-care

ὅπως ἡ στρατιὰ ἔξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτῷ, καὶ
 how the army would have provisions for-itself. and

παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα· δὲ καὶ ἱκανὸς ἔμποι-
to-procure the-same; and also (he was) capable to-im-

ῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν, ὡς Κλεάρχῳ εἶη πειστέον.
press on — (those) present, that Clearchus was to-be-obeyed

Δὲ τοῦτο ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι χαλεπὸς
And | this he-effected from — (that) to-be severe;

γὰρ καὶ ὁρᾷν ἦν
[this he effected by his severity]; for even to-look-at he-was

στυγνὸς, καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχὺς· τε
gloomy-and-stern, and in — (his) voice harsh; 'he not-only

ἀεὶ ἐκόλαζε ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ἐνίοτε ὀργῇ, ὡς
always punished severely, but-also sometimes in-anger, so (that)

καὶ ἔσθ' ὅτε μεταμέλειν αὐτῷ. Καὶ δ' ἐκόλαζε
even 'he sometimes 'repented himself. And also he-punished

Γνώμη· γὰρ ἡγεῖτο ἀκολάστου
according-to-rule (or on principle); for he-thought an-undisciplined

στρατεύματος εἶναι οὐδὲν ἄφελος. Ἀλλὰ καὶ
army to-be (of) no use. But even

ἔφασαν αὐτὸν λέγειν, ὡς δέοι τὸν
they-said (that) he (used) to-say, that it-becomes the

στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι τὸν ἄρχοντα μᾶλλον
soldier to-fear — (his) commander more

ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλάξειν
than the enemy, if he-'would either 'keep

φυλακὰς, ἢ ἀφέξεσθαι φίλων, ἢ
guard 'well, or abstain-from (doing injury to) friends, or

ἰέναι ἀπροφασίστως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. Μὲν
go without-hesitation against the enemy. Indeed

οὖν ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
therefore in — dangerous-and-frightful-circumstances (the soldiers)

σφόδρα ἥδελον ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ, καὶ
'were exceedingly 'willing to-listen-to (and obey) him, and

οἱ στρατιῶται οἷκ' ἠροῦντο ἄλλον·
the soldiers 'did not 'wish-for another (commander),

γὰρ καὶ ἔφασαν τότε τὸ στυγνὸν ἐν τοῖς
'or indeed they-said (that) then the gloomy-sternness in the

προςώποις αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι φαιδρόν, και
countenance of-him appeared cheerful-and-animated, and

τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐρρωμένον πρὸς
— (his) severity seemed to-be what-was-strong-in-courage against

τοὺς πολεμίους ὥστε ἐφαίνετο
the enemy so-that (his countenance) appeared (indicative of)

σωτήριον, καὶ οὐκέτι χαλεπὸν. Δ' ὅτε
saving-and-protecting, and no-longer severe. But when

γένοιτο ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ, καὶ ἐξείη
they-were out-of — danger, and it-might-be-allowed-them

ἀπιέναι πρὸς ἄλλους ἀρχομένους
to-go to others | as-persons-having-been-commanded, [as

πολλοὶ ἀπέλειπον αὐτὸν· γὰρ εἶχεν οὐκ
soldiers], many left him; for he-had no

τὸ ἐπίχαρι, ἀλλ' ἦν ἀεὶ χαλεπὸς
agreeableness (or manners), but he-was always stern

καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε οἱ στρατιῶται διέκειντο πρὸς
and unfeeling; so-that the soldiers were-affected towards

αὐτὸν ὥςπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. Καὶ
him as boys towards (their) teacher. And

γὰρ οὖν οὐδέποτε εἶχεν ἐπομένους
— therefore 'he never 'had (those) following (him)

φιλίᾳ καὶ μὲν εὐνοίᾳ· δὲ
through-friendship (or) even indeed being-well-disposed-towards-him; but

οἵτινες ἢ τεταγμένοι ὑπὸ πόλεως,
those-who either had-been-ordered (to the service) by (the) state,

ἢ κατεχόμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι, ἢ τινὶ ἄλλῃ
or being-compelled by — want, or any other

ἀνάγκῃ παρείησαν αὐτῷ ἐχρῆτο
necessity, might-be-with him, he-made-use-of (as) being

σφόδρα πειδομένοις. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο νικᾶν
extremely 'obedient. And when they-began to-conquer

ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη ἦν τὰ ποιοῦντα
ander him the enemy, | now were the doing

μεγάλα τοὺς στρατιώτας
great [the opportunities were then great] 'for the 'soldiers

συν αὐτῷ εἶναι χρησίμους· γὰρ τε τὸ ἔχειν
with him to-be useful-and-good; | for not-only the to-have

θαῤῥαλέως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους παρῆν,
confidently against the enemy was-present (to them),

[for they had a perfect feeling of confidence, in their minds, against the

καὶ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὴν τιμωρίαν
enemy], but-also | the to-fear [the fear of] — punishment

παρ' ἐκείνου ἐποίει αὐτοὺς εὐτάκτους. Τοιοῦτος
from him made them well-disciplined. Such

μὲν δὴ ἦν ἄρχων· δὲ ἐλέγετο οὐκ ἐδέλαιν
truly — was-he commanding; but he-was-said not to-wish

μάλα ἄρχεσθαι ἄλλων. Δὲ ἦν, ὅτε ἔτε-
much to-be-commanded by-others. And he-was, when he

λεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.
died, about — fifty (years of) age.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιωτίας ὢν εὐδὺς μὲν

Proxenus indeed the Boeotian (when) being just indeed (only a)

μειράκιον, ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ ἱκανός
youth, desired to-become (a) man capable

πράττειν τὰ μεγάλα· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν
to-perform — great-thing; and through this-same —

ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε ἀργύριον Γοργία τῷ Λεοντίνῳ.
desire he-gave money to-Gorgias the Leontinian

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ,

(for instruction). When indeed he-had-been-with him (some time),

νομίσας εἶναι ἤδη ἱκανός καὶ ἄρχειν,
having-thought (himself) to-be now qualified both to-command,

καὶ ὢν φίλος τοῖς πρώτοις
and, being (a) friend to-the first (or chief men, that) he-'might

μὴ ἡττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἦλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς
not 'be-inferior in-conferring-benefits, he-went on these-same —

πράξεις σὺν Κύρῳ· καὶ ᾧετω κτήσεσθαι.
doings (expeditions) with Cyrus; and thought to-acquire

ἐκ τούτων μέγα ὄνομα, καὶ μεγάλην δύναμιν,
from this (a) great name, and great power,

καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα. Δ' ἐπιθυμῶν τοσούτων
and much money. But desiring these-same (things?)

σφόδρα, καὶ αὖ εἶχεν ἔνδηλον, ὅτι
vehemently, 'he also on-the-other-hand 'had (this) evident, that 'he

ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι οὐδὲν τούτων μετὰ ἀδικίας,
might 'wish to-acquire nothing of-these (things) by unjust-means,

ἀλλὰ ᾧετο τούτων δεῖν τυγχάνειν σὺν
but he-thought (that) such-things ought to-be-acquired by

τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ, δὲ ἄνευ τούτων
— just and honourable (means), but without these

μή. Ἦν δὲ δυνατὸς ἄρχειν καλῶν μὲν
not (at all). He-was indeed competent to-command orderly —

καὶ ἀγαθῶν· μέντοι οὐχ ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς
and good (men); however not capable to-impress the

στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτ' αἰδῶ οὔτε
soldiers of-himself (neither) (either) with-respect (nor) (or)

φόβον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ἡσχύετω τοὺς
fear, but he-'was even more 'in-awe (of) — (his)

στρατιώτας, ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι
soldiers, than those 'under (his) 'command (were of)

ἐκείνον· καὶ ἦν φανερός μᾶλλον φοβούμενος
him; and he-was evidently more fearing

τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις,
[the to-be-hated — (by his) soldiers, [the hatred

ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ.
of his soldiers], [than the soldiers the to-disobey him

Δὲ ᾧετο ἄρχειν
[than his soldiers were to disobey him]. And he-thought (it) to-be-sufficient

πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν καὶ δοκεῖν εἶναι ἐπαινεῖν
for — commanding, and to-seem to-be (so) to-praise

μὲν τὸν ποιοῦντα καλῶς, δὲ μὴ ἐπαινεῖν
indeed — (him) acting well, but not to-praise

τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν μὲν τῶν
— (him) acting-improperly. Therefore indeed of — (those)

συνόντων οἱ μὲν καλοὶ τε καὶ ἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν
with-him — (such) indeed (as were) orderly and also-good were

εἵνοι αὐτῷ, δὲ οἱ ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον
 attached to-him, but — (such as were) wicked plotted-against (him)
 ὥς ὄντι εἵμεταχειρίστῳ. Δὲ ὅτε ἀπέδνησκεν ἦν
 as being easily-managed. And when he-died he-was
 ὥς τριάκοντα ἐτῶν.
 about thirty years (of age).

Δὲ Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦν δῆλος μὲν ἐπιθυμῶν
 But Menon the Thessalian was evidently indeed desiring
 ἰσχυρῶς πλουτεῖν, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν ἄρχειν ὅπως
 vehemently to-become-rich, and desiring to-command so-that
 λαμβάνοι πλείω, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν τιμᾶσθαι ἵνα
 he-might-take more, and desiring to-be-honoured in-order-that
 κερδαίνοι πλείω· ἐβούλετο τε μέγιστα εἶναι φίλος
 he-might-gain more; he-wished — most-of-all to-be (a) friend
 τοῖς δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ
 to-the powerful, in-order-that acting-unjustly | he-'might not
 δίδοι δίκην. Ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ
 'give justice [he might not be punished]. | Towards indeed the
 κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοίη, ὥετο
 to-accomplish [for accomplishing] of-what he-might-desire, he-thought
 συντομωτάτην ὁδὸν εἶναι τε διὰ τοῦ ἐπιорκεῖν,
 the-shortest way to-be not-only through | the to-perjure,
 καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἑξαπατᾶν.
 [perjury], but-also | to-lie [falsehood] and | to-deceive [deceit],
 δ' ἐνόμιζε τὸ ἀπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς εἶναι τὸ
 but he-considered — sincerity and — truth to-be the
 αὐτὸ τῷ ἡλιδίῳ. Δὲ μὲν ἦν φανερός στέργων
 same with — folly. And indeed he-was evidently having-affection
 οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίνη εἶναι φίλος, τούτῳ
 for-no-one, to-whom indeed he-seemed to-be (a) friend, against-this-one
 ἐγίγνετο ἐνδηλὸς ἐπιβουλεύων. Καὶ μὲν
 he-was evident (as) plotting (mischief). And indeed
 κατεγέλα οὐδενὸς πολεμίῳ, δὲ ἀεὶ διελέγετο
 he-derided no enemy, but 'he always 'conversed
 τῶν πάντῳ συνόντων ὥς κατα-
 — with-all (those) | being-about-him [his associates] as-if ridi-

γελῶν. Καὶ μὲν τοῖς κτήμασιν τῶν
 culing (them). And indeed against-the property of — (his)
 πολεμίων οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε, γὰρ ᾤετο
 enemies he-'formed no 'designs, for he-thought (it)
 εἶναι χαλεπὸν λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν φυλατ-
 to-be difficult to-take the (property) of — (those) guard-
 τομένων. δὲ μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ὄν
 ing (it); | but (he) alone he-thought to-know (it) being
 ῥᾱστον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἀφύλακτα.
 easy to-take the unguarded [but he thought that

he alone knew that it was easy to take the unguarded property of friends].

Καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσδάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους
 And as-many-as indeed he-might-perceive perjured and unjust:
 ἐφοβεῖτο ὡς εὔ ὀπλισμένους, δὲ τοῖς
 he-feared as well armed (against him), but the
 ὁσίοις καὶ ἀσκούσιν ἀλήθειαν ἐπειράτο χρῆσθαι
 pious and those-practising truth he-endeavoured to-make-use-of
 ὡς ἀνάνδροις. Δὲ ὥσπερ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ
 as weak-persons. And as any-one prides-himself on
 θεοσεβείᾳ, καὶ ἀληθείᾳ, καὶ δικαιοσύνητι, οὕτω
 religion, and truth, and justice, so
 Μένων ἠγάλλετο δύνασθαι τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν, τῷ
 Menon prided-himself to-be-able — to-deceive, —
 πλάσασθαι ψευδῆ, τῷ διαγελᾶν φίλους· δὲ
 to-devise falsehoods, — to-sneer-at friends; and (that)
 τὸν μὴ πανοῦργον
 — (he who was) not ready-to-do-any-thing (of a villanous nature for his

own advantage) 'he always 'considered to-be of-the un-

δεύτων. Καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχειρεῖ
 taught (and ignorant). And with whom indeed he-endeavoured

πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ, τούτους ᾤετο
 to-have-the-first-place 'in (their) 'friendship, these-same he-thought

δεῖν κτήσασθαι διαβάλλων τοῦς
 't to-become-him to-gain-over (through) plotting-against —

πρώτους. Δὲ τὸ παρέ-
 'those who had been) first (in their favour). And | the to-

χεσθαι τοὺς στρατιώτας πειδομένους
 keep [the keeping of] — (his) soldiers obedient

ἐμνηχανᾶτο ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς.
 he-effected | from the to-do-wrong with-them [by participating

Δὲ ἡξίου τιμᾶσθαι καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι,
 in their evil deeds]. Also he-claimed to-be-honoured and courted,

ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι ἂν δύναιτο καὶ ἐδελε-
 showing that 'he might 'be-able and might-wish

ἄδικεῖν πλεῖστα. Δὲ κατέλεγεν εὐεργεσίαν,
 to-injure the-most. And he-called-it (a) favour

ὁπότε τις ἀφίστατο αὐτοῦ, ὅτι χρώ-
 (on his part), when any-one deserted him, that (while) making-

μενος αὐτῷ οἷκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.
 use of-him he-'did not 'destroy him.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ ἔξεστι περὶ τὰ
 And indeed truly (were) it-allowed (to speak) respecting the

ἄφανῃ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, δὲ ἄ
 private (affairs) of-him 'one-might-say-what-is-not-true, but what

πάντες ἴσασι ἐστὶ τὰδ'. Ὡν ἔτι ὥραιος
 all know is this. Being yet in-the-prime-of-youth

διεπράζατο παρὰ Ἀριστίππῳ μὲν στρατηγεῖν
 he-obtained from Aristippus — to-command (of)

τῶν ξένων· δὲ ἐγένετο, ὦν ἔτι ὥραιος,
 the foreign-mercenaries; and he-became, being yet in-the-bloom-of-youth,

οἰκειότατος Ἀριαίῳ, ὄντι βαρβάρῳ, ὅτι
 most-intimate with-Ariæus, he-being (a) barbarian, for 'he

ἡδετο καλοῖς μεираκίοις· δὲ αὐτὸς εἶχε
 (Ariæus) 'delighted in-beautiful youths; and he-himself had

Θαρύπαν παιδικά, ἀγένειος ὦν
 Tharypas (a) favourite, (a) beardless-youth — (having one)

γενειῶντα. Δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν ἀποδνησ-
 having-a-beard. But — (his) fellow-officers being-put-

κόντων, ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν
 to-death, because they-fought against (the) king with

Κίρῳ πεποιηκὼς ταῦτ' αὖ οὐκ ἀπέθανε
 Cyrus (though) he-having-done the-same 'did not 'die
 δὲ μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
 but after the death of-the other generals
 τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ
 having-been-punished by (the) king he-died, no
 ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ
 like Clearchus, and the other generals, 'having
 τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες, (ὥσπερ δοκεῖ εἶναι
 — (their) heads 'cut-off, [which seems to-be
 τάχιστος θάνατος,) ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς
 (the) speediest death,) but living having-been-tortured
 ἐνιαυτὸν ὥς πονηρός, λέγεται
 (during a) year as (a) malefactor, he-is-said 'to (have)
 τυχεῖν τῆς τελευτῆς.
 met — (with his) end.
 Δὲ Ἀγίας ὁ Ἀρκάς, καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιοῦ,
 But Agias the Arcadian, and Socrates the Achæan,
 καὶ τούτῳ ἀπεθανέτην. Δὲ οὐτ' οὐδεὶς
 also these-two died. But neither 'did (no-one) (any-one)
 κατεγέλα τούτων ὥς κακῶν ἐν πολέμῳ, οὐτ'
 'deride these as cowards in battle, or
 ἐμέμφετο αὐτοὺς εἰς φιλίαν. Δὲ ἄμφω
 reproached them (in regard) to friendship. And both
 ἦσθη ἀμφὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα τὰ ἔτη
 were about five and thirty — years
 ἰπὸ γενεᾶς.
 from (their) birth.

BOOK III.

CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν, ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed truly, the Greeks did, in —
 ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
 (their) upward-march — with Cyrus until the battle
 καὶ ὅσα ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε, τῶν
 and what took-place after Cyrus died, the
 Ἑλλήνων, ἀπίοντων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει, ἐν
 Greeks, departing with Tissaphernes, (confiding) in
 ταῖς σπονδαῖς, δεδήλωται, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 the truce, has-been-shown, in the preceding discourse.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν,
 After indeed not-only the generals had-been-seized,
 καὶ οἱ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν
 but-also — (those) of-the captains and of-the soldiers
 συνεπόμενοι ἀπολώλεσαν, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν
 accompanying (them) had-perished, the Greeks were
 δὴ ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ, ἐννοούμενοι μὲν, ὅτι
 truly in much perplexity, reflecting indeed, that
 ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις βασιλέως, δὲ κύκλῳ
 they-were at the gates of (the) king, and in (a) circle
 αὐτοῖς ἦσαν παντὶ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη
 around) them there-were everywhere (a great) many both nations
 καὶ πόλεις πολέμιοι, δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἔμελλε
 and towns hostile (to them), and no-one hereafter would
 παρέξειν ἀγορὰν, δὲ ἀπείχον τῆς
 provide (a) market (for them), and they-were-distant from —
 Ἑλλάδος οὐ μείον ἢ μύρια στάδια, δ'
 Greece not less than ten-thousand stadia, and

ἦν οὐδεὶς ἡγεμὼν τῆς ὁδοῦ, δ' ἀδιάβατοι
there-was no guide (for) the road, and impassable

ποταμοὶ διεἰργον ἐν μέσῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε,
rivers intervened in (the) midst of — (their) road homeward,

δὲ καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ προῦδε-
nd also the barbarians having-come-up with Cyrus had-aban

δῶκεσαν αὐτοῖς, δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν μόνοι,
doned them, and they-were-left alone,

οὐδὲ ἔχοντες οὐδένα ἱππέα σύμμαχον·
(nor-indeed) (and indeed) having no cavalry (as) auxiliary;

ὥστε ἦν εὐδῆλον, ὅτι νικῶντες ἂν
so-that it-was very-evident, that defeating (the enemy) 'they would

μὲν κατακάνοιεν οὐδένα, δὲ αὐτῶν ἡττηθέντων
indeed 'kill no-one, but they being-defeated,

οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθεῖη. Ἐννοοῦμενοι
not-one (of their number) would be-left (alive). Reflecting

ταῦτα, καὶ ἔχοντες ἀδύμως,
on-these (things), | and having (themselves) dejectedly, [and be-

ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐγεύσαντο σίτου
ing disheartened], few indeed of-them tasted food

εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν, δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀνέκαυσαν
— (for) — (that) evening, and few kindled (a)

πῦρ, δὲ πολλοὶ οὐκ ἤλθον ἐπὶ τὰ
fire, and many 'did not 'go to the (place of)

ἔπλα ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀνεπαύοντο
arms (during) that-same — night, and they-went-to-rest

ὅπου ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανεν, οὐ δυνάμενοι κα-
where each happened (to be), not being-able to-

θεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων,
asleep for sorrow and (the) desire (for) country,

γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς ἐνόμιζον οὐποτ'
parents, wives, children, whom they-thought never

ὄψεσθαι ἔτι. Οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες
to-see more. Thus indeed — disposed 'they all

ἀνεπαύοντο.

'went-to-rest.

Ἦν δὲ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ τις Ξενοφῶν.

There-was — in the army a-certain Xenophon (an)

Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὦν οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λο-
Athenian, who being neither (a) general nor (a) cap-

χαγός, οὔτε στρατιώτης, συνηκολούδει,
tain, nor (a private) soldier, accompanied (the

ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος μετεπέμψατο αὐτὸν
expedition), but Proxenus sent-for him

οἰκοδεύων, ὦν ἀρχαῖος ξένος· δὲ ὑπισχνεῖτο
from-home, he-being (an) old guest-friend; and he-promised

αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, ποιήσειν αὐτὸν φίλον Κύρῳ,
him, if he-should-come, to-make him (a) friend to-Cyrus,

ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη νομίζειν κρείττω ἑαυτῷ
whom he said (that) he-considered better to-himself (than)

τῆς πατρίδος. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἀναγνοὺς
— (his) country. — Xenophon indeed having-read

τὴν ἐπιστολὴν, ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθη-
the letter, consults Socrates the Athe-

ναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπ-
nian about the journey. And — Socrates having-

τεύσας μὴ οἱ ἐπαίτιον τι
feared lest — 'they (might) 'criminate (him) in-some (manner)

πρὸς τῆς πόλεως εἴη γενέσθαι φίλον
with — (his) government if-he-were to-become (a) friend

Κύρῳ, ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἐδόκει προδύμως συμπολεμῆσαι
to-Cyrus, because — Cyrus seemed zealously to-have-assisted

τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, συμβουλεύει
the Lacedæmonians against the Athenians, he-advised

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, ἔλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς, ἀνακοι-
— Xenophon, (that) having-gone to Delphos, to-con-

νῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν
sult the gods about the journey. And — Xenophon

ἔλθων ἐπῆρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω, τίνι θεῶν
going inquired-of — Apollo, to-which 'of (the) 'gods

θύει καὶ εὐχόμενος
[sacrificing and praying [he should sacrifice and pray]](that) 'he

ἂν ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδόν, ἥ
might 'go the road, [that he might perform the journey], which
ἐπινοεῖ, κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα, καὶ πράξας
he-intends, most-honourably and most-successfully, and having-performed

καλῶς σωδείη. Καὶ
(it) successfully | might-be-saved [might return in safety]. And

ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ θύειν
— Apollo | unfolded to-him [answered him] to-sacrifice 'to (the)

θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθε πάλιν,
gods to-whom it-was-proper. When indeed he-had-gone back

λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. Δ'
'to Athens), he-tells the oracle to — Socrates. And

ὁ ἀκούσας ἠτιᾶτο αὐτόν, ὅτι οὐ πρῶτον
who hearing (it) blamed him, that he-'did not first

ἠρώτα τοῦτο, πότερον εἴη λῶον αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι
'inquire this, whether it-were better for-him to-go-forth

ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας εἶναι ἰτέον,
or to-remain, but himself having-decided | (that) it-is to-be-gone,

ἐπυνθάνετο τοῦτ' ὅπως ἂν
[that he would go], he-inquired this how 'he might

πορευθεῖη κάλλιστα. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,
'proceed to-the-best-advantage. Since however, said-he,

ἤρου οὕτως, χρὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτ'
you-have-inquired thus, it-becomes (you) to-do those (things)

ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ
as the god directed (you). — Xenophon indeed —

οὕτω, θυσάμενος οἷς ὁ θεὸς ἀνεῖλεν,
therefore, having-sacrificed (to the gods) that the god told-him-in-reply,

ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον
set-sail, and finds Proxenus and Cyrus

ἐν Σάρδεσι, ἥδη μέλλοντας ὁρμᾶν τὴν ὁδόν
in Sardis, 'being now 'about starting on-the way

ἄνω, καὶ συνεστάθη Κῦρῳ. Δὲ τοῦ Προξένου
upward, and he-was-presented to-Cyrus. And — Proxenus

προθυμουμένου, καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπροϋδυμεῖτο αὐτόν
ing-very-desirous, and — Cyrus joined-in-the-desire for-him

μῖναι. Δὲ εἶπε ὅτι, ἐπειδὴν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία
to-remain. And he-said that, as-soon as the expedition

λήξῃ εἰδὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν.
may-be-ended (that) he-'would directly 'send him 'back.

Δὲ ἐλέγετο ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς
It also was-said (that) the expedition (was intended) to-be against (the)

Πισίδας.
Pisidians.

Μὲν δὴ ἐστρατεύετο οὕτως ἐξαπατηθεὶς
'He indeed truly 'joined-the-expedition 'being thus 'deceived.

οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου (γὰρ οὐ ᾔδει τὴν
not by Proxenus (for he-'did not 'know, (that) the

ὁρμὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδὲ ἄλλος
movement (was) against (the) king, nor (any) other

οὐδεὶς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου)· ἐπεὶ
(no-one) (one) of-the Greeks except Clearchus); when

μέντοι ἦλθον εἰς Κιλικίαν, ἐδόκει ἤδη εἶναι
however they-had-gone to Cilicia, it-seemed now to-be

σαφές πᾶσιν, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἶη ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
manifest to-all, that the expedition was against (the) king.

Δὲ φοβούμενοι τὴν ὁδόν, καὶ ὁμῶς
But fearing the (length of the) road, and likewise

ἄκοντες οἱ πολλοὶ δι'
unwilling (to proceed farther, yet) the greater-part (of them) through

αἰσχύνῃν καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνη-
shame both (as respects) one-another and Cyrus accom-

κολοῖδυσαν· καὶ εἰς ὧν Ξενοφῶν ἦν.
panied (him); and one of-whom Xenophon was.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἀπορία, ἐλυπεῖτο
But when (all) was perplexity-and-anxiety, he-was-troubled-and-grieved

μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο
indeed with the rest, and he-'was not 'able

καθεύδειν· δε λαχὼν μικρὸν ὕπνου εἶδεν
to-sleep; but having-got (a) little sleep | he-saw (a)

ὄναρ. Ἐδοξεν αὐτῷ, βροντῆς
vision [he had a dream]. It-seemed to-him, (a) thunder (storm)

γενομένης, σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πα-
 having-occurred, (that a) thunder-bolt fell on — (his) pa-
 τράαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου πᾶσαν λάμ-
 ternal house, and from this it-'was all 'lighted.
 πεσδαι. Δὲ περίφοβος εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ
 up. And frightened 'he immediately 'awoke, and
 τὸ ὄναρ μὲν ἔκρινε πῇ ἀγαθόν, (ὅτι ὦν ἐν
 the dream indeed he-judged somewhat favourable, (because being in
 πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις, ἔδοξε ἰδεῖν μέγα
 trouble and danger, he-seemed to-have-seen (a) great
 φῶς ἐκ Διὸς). δὲ καὶ πῇ ἐφοβεῖτο (ὅτι
 light from Jupiter); but also he-'was somewhat 'alarmed (because
 τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν
 the dream appeared to-him to-be from Jupiter (who was) indeed
 βασιλέως, δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι κύκλῳ,)
 (a) king, and the fire seemed to-shine all-around,)
 μὴ οὐ δύναίτο ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας
 lest he-'should not 'be-able to-depart from the territory
 τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπὸ
 of-the king, but should-be-hemmed-in on-all-sides by
 τινῶν ἀποριῶν.
 some (great) difficulties.

Ὅποιόν τι ἐστὶ μέντοι ἰδεῖν τὸ τοιοῦτον
 What-kind-of thing it-is indeed to-see — such (a)
 ὄναρ, ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων
 dream, it-is-allowed to-perceive from the (things) occurring
 μετὰ τὸ ὄναρ. Γὰρ γίγνεται τάδε. Εὐθὺς
 after the dream. For it-happened thus. Immediately
 ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη ἔννοια πρῶτον μὲν ἐμπίπτει
 after he-was-aroused (this) thought first indeed occurs
 αὐτῷ· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ νύξ δὲ προβαίνει·
 to-him: why am-I-lying-down? the night indeed is-passing-away;
 δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς
 and at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day (it is) probable (that)
 τοὺς πολεμίους ἥξειν. Εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα
 the enemy will-come. If indeed we-shall'-get

ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχὶ
into (the power of the) king, | what prevents lest no.

ἀποθανεῖν ὑβριζομένους,
to-die [what prevents us to die] being-treated-insultingly (and

ἐπιδόντας μὲν πάντα τὰ χαλεπώτατα,
ignominiously), after-beholding indeed all the most-grievous-things,

δὲ παδόντας πάντα τὰ δεινότατα; Δ' ὅπως
and suffering all the most-dreadful-things? But how

ἄμυνοῦμεθα οὐδεὶς παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμε-
we-shall-defend-ourselves no-one provides nor takes-

λεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἄγειν
care, but we-repose as-if it-were-allowed-us | to-act

ἡσυχίαν. Οὖν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως ἐγὼ
[to enjoy] tranquillity. Therefore from what city 'do I

προσδοκῶ τὸν στρατηγὸν πράξειν ταῦτα; δὲ
'expect the general to-do these-things? and

ποίαν ἡλικίαν ἀναμένω ἐλθεῖν ἐμαυτῷ; γὰρ
what age am-I-waiting-for to-come to-myself? for

ἔγωγ' οὐκ ἔσομαι ἔτι πρεσβύτερος, εἰάν τήμερον
I-at-least 'will not 'be yet older, if to-day

προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. Ἐκ τούτου
I-'give myself 'up to-the enemy. After this

ἀνίσταται, καὶ πρῶτον συγκαλεῖ τοὺς λοχαγούς
he-rose, and first called-together the captains

Προξένου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ
of-Proxenus. And when they-assembled, he-said; I, O

ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε δύναμαι καθεύδειν (ὥσπερ
men captains, 'am neither 'able to-sleep (as

οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς), οὔτε ἔτι κατακεῖσθαι, ὁρῶν
I-think neither (are) you), nor yet to-be-still, seeing

ἐν οἷοις ἐσμέν. Γὰρ μὲν δῆλον ὅτ'
in what (circumstances) we-are. For indeed (it is) plain that

οἱ πολέμοι οἱ πρότερον ἐξέφηναν τὸν πόλεμον
the enemy 'did not first 'declare the war

πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν ἐνόμισαν παρασκευάσασθαι
against us, before they-thought (that) they had-arrange

τὰ ἑαυτῶν καλῶς· ὃ οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν οὐδὲν
 the (things) of-themselves well: but no-one of-us 'takes (not)
 ἀντεπιμελεῖται, ὅπως ἀγωνιούμεθα ὥς
 (any) 'heed-in-return, how we-may-contend (with them) | as
 κάλλιστα. Καὶ εἰ μὲν
 most-beautiful [in the best possible manner]. And if indeed
 ὑφесόμεθα, καὶ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ
 we-shall-be-remiss, and shall-get into (the power of the)
 βασιλεῖ. τί οἴομεθα πείσεσθαι;
 king, what 'may-we (not) 'expect to-suffer (from him)?
 ὃς ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀδελφοῦ,
 who cutting-off the head and the hand of-his-brother,
 καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου καὶ ὁμοπατρίου, καὶ ἤδη
 both of-the same-mother and of-the-same-father, and (he) already
 τεθνηκότος, ἀνεσταύρωσε· δὲ ἡμᾶς, οἷς
 dead, fixed-them-on-a-stake: but (as respects) us, to-whom
 μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστι κηδεμῶν,
 indeed (there is) no-one present (as a) protector (and supporter),
 δὲ ἐστρατεύσαμεν ἐπ' αὐτόν, ὥς ποιήσοντες
 and (who) had-marched against him, as (if) making
 δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως,
 (a subject and) slave (of him, who) before (was a) king.
 καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα. τί
 and 'putting (him) 'to-death, if we-were-able, what
 οἴομεθα ἂν παθεῖν; Ἄρ' ἂν οἷκ' ἔλθοι
 do-we-think (that) 'we might 'suffer? Would 'he not 'resort
 ἐπὶ πᾶν, ὥς αἰκισάμενος ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα
 to every-thing, that having-punished us to-the utmost
 παράσχοι πᾶσιν ἀνδράποισ φόβον
 (of severity) he-might-inspire all men (with) fear
 ποτε τοῦ στρατεῦσαι ἐπ' αὐτόν; Ἀλλὰ
 of-ever | of-the to-have-marched [marching] against him? But
 πάντα ποιητέον ὅπως τοι μὴ γενησόμεθα
 every-thing is-to-be-done that — we-'may not 'get
 ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν, ἔστε μὲν
 into his (power). I indeed therefore, as-long-as indeed

αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὐποτε ἐπανόμεν μεν
the truce was (in existence) never ceased —
οἰκτεῖρων ἡμᾶς, δὲ μακαρίζων βασιλέα καὶ
pitying ourselves, but considering-as-happy (the) king and
τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, διαδεώμενος μὲν ὄσῃν
— (those) with him, having-gone-through indeed so-great (a)
χώραν αὐτῶν, καὶ οἶαν ἔχοιεν, ὥς δὲ τὰ
territory of-them, and what they-might-have, as indeed the
ἄφρονα ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας,
copious provisions, so-great (a number) indeed (of) servants,
δὲ ὅσα κτήνη, δὲ χρυσόν, δὲ
and how-great (a number of) cattle, and (quantity of) gold, and (of)
ἑσθῆτα. Δὲ αὖ ὁπότε ἐνδυμοίμην τὰ
raiments. But on-the-other-hand when I-reflect on-ῑe
τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι μετεῖη ἡμῖν
(condition) of-the soldiers, that there-was-a-share to-us
μὲν οὐδενὸς πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν, εἰ
indeed of-nothing of-all — (these) good (things), —
μὴ πριαίμεδα, δ' ἥδειν ὀλίγους
unless we-bought (them), and (when that) I-knew (only) few
ἔχοντας ἔτι οὗτου ὠνησόμεδα, δὲ
(of us) having yet wherewith we-might-buy, and (that our)
ὄρκους ἤδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ
oaths now restraining us to-procure —
ἐπιτήδεια ἄλλως πως ἢ ὠνούμενους· οὖν
provisions (in) any-other manner than buying; therefore
λογιζόμενος ταῦτ', ἐνίστε ἐφοβούμην τὰς
considering these (things), 'I sometimes 'feared the
σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.
truce more than (I) now (do) the war.
Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδὰς, δοκεῖ
Since however they have-broken the truce, it-seems
μοὶ καὶ ἡ ὕβρις ἐκείνων καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα
to-me (that) both the insolence of-themselves and — our
ὑποψία λελῦσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται
mi-trust is-ended. | For in (the) middle [for between us] lie

ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἄρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ
 but we will-begin | the to-impel [to excite] even
 τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρετὴν. Φάνητε ἀριστοὶ
 — others to — valour. Show-yourselfs the-best

τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν
 (and bravest) of-the captains, and of-the commanders
 ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι. Δὲ καὶ γὰρ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς
 the-most-worthy-to-command. And also-I, if indeed you

ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, βούλομαι
 will give-the-start to these (things), am-willing

ἔπείσδαι ὑμῖν· δ' εἰ ὑμεῖς τάττετέ με ἡγεῖσθαι,
 to-follow you; but if you appoint me to-lead,

οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ
 'I (will) not 'give-as-an-excuse — (my) age, but

καὶ ἡγοῦμαι ἀκμάζειν ἐρύκειν τὰ κακὰ ἀπ'
 even think-myself to-be-of-sufficient-age to-keep-off — harm from

ἑμαυτοῦ.
 myself.

Ταῦτα μὲν ὁ ἐλέξε· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ
 These (things) indeed — (Xenophon) spoke; but the captains,

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πάντες ἐκέλευον
 hearing these (things), all requested (him)

ἡγεῖσθαι· πλὴν ἦν τις Ἀπολλωνίδης,
 to-be-their-commander; except there-was a-certain Apollonides,

τῇ φωνῇ Βοιωτιάζων· δ' οὗτος εἶπεν,
 in — (his) speech resembling-a-Bœotian; and this (person) said,

ὅτι φλυαροίη, ὅστις λέγει ἂν τυχεῖν
 that he-speaks-nonsense, who says (that) 'he might 'obtain

σωτηρίας ἄλλως πως, ἢ πείσας
 safety by-any-other means, than having-persuaded (the)

βασιλέα, εἰ δύνατο· καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο
 king, if he could, (to grant it); and at-the-same-time he-began

λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἵπο
 to-talk (of) the difficulties. Xenophon however having

λαβὼν μεταξὺ ἐλέξεν ὧδε· ὦ θαν-
 taking-him-up in-the-midst (of his speech) spoke thus · O most-

μασιώτατε ἄνδραπε, σὺ δέ γε οὐδὲ ὄρων γιγνώ
 wonderful man, you indeed — neither seeing under
 σκεις, οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. Μέντοι γε ἥσδα
 stand, nor hearing have-remembered. However at-least you were
 ἐν ταύτῳ τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς,
 in the-same (place) with-these (here present), when (the) king,
 ἵππει Κῦρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ
 after Cyrus died, 'being greatly 'elevated-in-mind at
 τούτῳ, πέμπων ἐκέλευε τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι.
 this, sending he-ordered the arms to-be-given-up.
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι,
 But when we not giving-them-up, but being-armed,
 ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ
 going-forth encamped-opposite him, what did-'he not
 ἐποίησε, πέμπων πρέσβεις, καὶ αἰτῶν σπονδάς,
 'do, sending ambassadors, and requesting (a) truce,
 καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἕστε ἔτυχεν σπονδῶν;
 and supplying the provisions, until he-obtained (a) truce?
 Δ' ἐπεὶ αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,
 And when on-the-other-hand the generals and captains,
 ὥσπερ σὺ δὴ κελεύεις, ἦλθον εἰς λόγους
 as you indeed (now) advise, went to (a) conference
 αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὀπλων, πιστεύσαντες ταῖς
 with-them without (their) arms, trusting to-the
 σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι,
 truce, 'are not now they 'beaten. goaded,
 ὑβρίζομενοι, οὐδὲ δύνανται οἱ τλήμονες ἀποθανεῖν,
 insulted, not able the wretched-men to-die,
 καὶ οἶμαι μάλ' ἐρῶντες τούτου; Πάντα ἃ σὺ
 and I-think greatly desiring it? All which you
 εἰδὼς φῆς τοὺς μὲν κελεύοντας
 having-known (yet) you-say (that) — (those) indeed exhorting (us)
 ἀμύνεσθαι φλυαρεῖν, δὲ κελεύεις ἰόντας
 to-defend-ourselves talk-foolishly, and do-you-request (us) going
 πάλιν πείθειν; Ἐμοὶ δὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ
 again to-try-persuasion? To-me indeed, O men, it-seems

μήτε προσίεσθαι τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον
(that we ought) neither to-admit this — man

εἰς ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, τε ἀφιλομένους
into the-same (place) with-us ourselves, but taking-from (him

τὴν λοχαγίαν, ἀναδέοντας σκεῖν, χρῆσθαι
— (his) captaincy (and) lying-on (him) baggage, use-him

ὥς τοιοῦτω. Γὰρ οὗτος καταισχύνει καὶ τὴν
as such. For this-man disgraces both — (his)

πατρίδα, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι ὢν Ἕλλην,
country, and all — (Greece, that being (a) Greek,

ἐστὶ τοιοῦτος.
he-is such (a character).

Ἐντεῦθεν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος ὑπολαβὼν
Thence Agasias (the) Stymphalian having-taken-up

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὐδὲν παν-
(the discourse) said: But to-this-man at-least nothing at-

είπασσι προσήκει οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας, οὔτε τῆς
all belongs — either of — Bœotia, or of —

Ἑλλάδος, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ εἶδον τὰ ὦτα
Greece, — since I perceived (that) — (his) ears

τετρυπημένον ὥσπερ Λυδόν. Καὶ εἶχεν
were-bored as (a) Lydian. | And it-had (itself)

οὕτως Οὖν μὲν ἀπήλασαν τοῦτον.
so [and it was so]. Therefore indeed they-'drove him 'away.

Δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἰόντες παρὰ τὰς τάξεις,
But the others going to the (different) ranks (and

ὅπου μὲν εἴη στρατηγὸς
divisions of the army), where indeed there-might-be (a) general

σῶος, παρεκάλουν τὸν στρατηγόν· δὲ ὁπόδει
saved, they-called-up the general; but where

οἶχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστρατηγόν· δ' ὅπου αὖ
he-had-perished, the lieutenant-general; but where again

εἴη λοχαγός, τὸν λοχαγόν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
(there-might-be (a) captain, the captain. When indeed

πάντες συνῆλδον ἐκαδέζοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσδει
all came-together they-seated-themselves in the front

τῶν ὀπλῶν· καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λεχαγοὶ
of-the (place) of-arms; and the generals and captains

συνελθόντες ἐγένοντο τοὺς ἄμφι ἐκιντόν.
assembling were — (in all) about a-hundred.

Ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, ἦσαν σχεδὸν
| When indeed this was, [when this occurred], it was near

μέσαι νύκτες. Ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἡλείος,
mid night. There Hieronymus (the) Elian,

ὢν πρεσβύτατος τῶν λοχαγῶν Προξένου, ἤρχετο
being the-oldest of-the captains of-Proxenus, commenced

λέγειν ὧδε· ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,
to-speak thus: O men generals and captains

ἔδοξε ἡμῖν ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα
it-seemed (proper) to-us seeing the present (state of our affairs).

καὶ συνελθεῖν αὐτοῖς, καὶ παρακαλέσαι ἡμᾶς,
both to-assemble-together ourselves, and to-call-on y. u.

ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα εἰ δυναίμεθα
(to join us) in-order-that we-may-determine if we-ca-

τι ἀγαθόν. Δ', ἔφη
on-something good (and advantageous to ourselves). But, said-he

σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, λέξον ἅπερ καὶ
'do you, O Xenophon, 'relate what (you have) even (said

πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
to us.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν λέγει τάδε· Ἀλλὰ δὴ
On this Xenophon speaks thus: But truly,

μὲν πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ταῦτα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς
indeed 'we all 'know this, that (the) king,

καὶ Τισσαφέρνης συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν οὓς μὲν
and Tissaphernes have-seized-upon (all) of-us whom indee-

ἐδυνήθησαν· δὲ δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσιν
they-could; and (it is) evident that they-are-plotting;

τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὥς ἀπολέσωσιν, ἣν δύνωνται
against-the rest (of us), that they-may-put-us-to-death, if they-can

Δὲ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ἡμῖν, ὥς
But at-least I-think every (thing) is-to-be-done by-us, that we-'may

μήποτε γενώμεθα ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις,
never 'get into (the power of) the barbarians.

ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι, ἢν δυνώμεθα
but rather (that) they, if we-are-able (to accomplish it)

ἐφ' ἡμῖν. Ἐπίστασθε
[(may fall) into us [may fall into our hands]. Know

εἰ τοίνυν, ὅτι ὑμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοῦτοι ὅσοι νῦν
well therefore, that you, being so-many as now

συνεληλύδατε, ἔχετε μέγιστον καιρόν.
have-come-together (of you), have the-greatest opportunity

Γὰρ πάντες οἱ οὗτοι στρα-
[of distinguishing yourselves]. For all — these sol-

τῶται βλέπουσι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶν μὲν ὁρῶσιν
diers look to you, and-if indeed they-see

ὑμᾶς ἀδύμοι, πάντες ἔσονται κακοὶ· δὲ εἰ τε
you dispirited, all will-be cowards; but if not-only

ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ φανεροὶ παρασκευαζόμενοι ἥτε ἐπὶ
you yourselves appearing prepared go against

τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε τοὺς ἄλλους
the — enemy, and-also exhort the others

ἵστε εἰ ὅτι ἔψονται ὑμῖν, καὶ πειρά-
(to the same) know well that they-will-follow you, and will-en-

σονται μιμεῖσθαι. Δὲ τοι ἴσως ἐστὶ καὶ
deavour to-imitate (you). And — perhaps it-is even

δίκαιοι ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων.
right (that) we should-differ somewhat from-these (soldiers).

Γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἐστέ στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι
For you are generals, you (are) taxiarchs

καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε
and captains; and when peace was, you had-a-greater-portion

τούτων καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς· καὶ νῦν
(than) these both of-riches and honours; and now

τοίνυν, ἐπεὶ ἐστὶ πόλεμος, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀξιούν
therefore, when there-is war, it-is-proper (that) you excee.

αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους,
these, (and that you) be superior not-only to-the multitude.

καὶ προβουλεύειν καὶ προπονεῖν τούτων
but-also to-plan-and-devise and to-labour-and-exert-yourselfs for-these,

ἣν που δέη. Καὶ νῦν μὲν πρῶτον
if any-where it-may-be-needed. And now indeed in-the-first (place)

οἶμαι ὑμᾶς ἂν μέγα ὠνῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα,
[I-think (that) you may greatly benefit the army,

ὃ ἐπιμεληθεῖν, ὅπως στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
if you-take-care, that generals and captains

ἀντικατασταθῶσιν ὡς τάχιστα ἀντὶ τῶν
be-chosen as speedily-as-possible in-place-of — (those)

ἀπολωλότων. Γὰρ ἄνευ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν οὔτε
we-are-deprived-of. For without commanders nothing either

καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν ἂν γένοιτο, ὡς μὲν εἰπεῖν
honourable or good can happen, as indeed to-speak

συνελόντι, οὐδαμοῦ, δὲ δὴ ἐν τοῖς πολε-
in-comprehensive (language), no-where, but truly in — warlike

μικοῖς παντάπασιν. Γὰρ μὲν ἡ εἰς ταξία δοκεῖ
affairs not-at-all. For indeed — order appears

σώζειν, δὲ ἡ ἀταξία ἤδη ἀπολώλεκε
to-preserve (armies), but — want-of-order 'has already 'destroyed

πολλοὺς. Δὲ ἐπειδὴν καταστήσῃσθε τοὺς ἄρ-
many. And after you-have-appointed the com-

χοντας, ὅσους δεῖ, καὶ ἣν συλλέγητε
manders, as-many-as it-is-proper (to appoint), and if you-assembled

καὶ παραδαρρύνετε τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας, οἶμαι
and encouraged the other soldiers, I-think

ἂν ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι πάννυ ἐν καιρῷ. Γὰρ
that you will-have-acted very-much in season-and-to-the-purpose. For

νῦν μὲν ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε, ὡς ἀδύμως
now indeed likewise even you perceive, how dispiritedly

μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ ἀδύμως
indeed they-went to the (place of) arms, and (also how) dejectedly

πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς, ὥστε, ἐχόντων
(they went, on — guard, | so-that, having (themselves)

οὕτω γ', οὐκ οἶδα
so at-least, [while they are in this state of mind], I-'do not 'know

τι τις ἂν χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, τι
for what any-one might use them, 'should any-thing

δεῖοι εἴτε νυκτὸς εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. Δὲ ἦν
'be-required either by-night or even by-day. But if

τις τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας αὐτῶν, ὥς μὴ
any-one should-turn the thoughts of-them, that they-'may not

μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί
alone 'contemplate, what they-will-suffer, but also what

ποιήσουσι, ἔσονται πολὺ εἰδυμότεροι. Γὰρ δὴ
they-will-do, they-will-be much more-inspired. For truly

ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι ἐστὶν οὔτε πλῆθος οὔτε ἰσχὺς
you-are-aware, that it-is neither multitude nor strength

ἣ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ποιῶσα νίκας.
which in — war | are-making victories; [produce victories];

ἀλλ' ὅποτεροι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἂν
but which-ever, with the (assistance of the) gods being

ἐρρωμενέστεροι ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς
more-resolute — in-mind may-go against the

πολεμίους, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι
enemy, (as) for the most-part the adverse (enemy)

οὐ δέχονται τούτους.

| 'can not 'receive them [can not sustain their attack].

Δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐντεδύμηναι, καὶ τοῦτο,
But I-at-least, O men, have-considered, also this,

ὅτι ὅποσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου
that those-who indeed desire to-live | by all means

ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν ὥς ἐπὶ
[at any rate] in — warlike-affairs, these indeed (as) for

τὸ πολὺ ἀποδνήσκουσι κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχροῶς
the most-part die wretchedly and also dishonourably

δὲ ὅποσοι μὲν ἐγνώκασιν θάνατον εἶναι κοινὸν
but: those-who indeed have-known death to-be common

πᾶσι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, ἀγωνίζονται δὲ
to-all, and inevitable to-men, contend-in-battle —

περὶ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποδνήσκειν,
'for the honourably to-die, [for an honourable death]

ὁρῶ τούτους μᾶλλον πως ἀφικνουμένους εἰς τὸ
I-perceive these rather somehow arriving at —

γῆρας, καὶ, ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν διάγοντας
old-age, and, as-long-as 'they may 'live passing (their time)

εὐδαιμονέστερον. Καὶ ἃ καταμαδόντας
more-happily. And which (things) having-understood

νῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς (γὰρ ἔσμεν ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ)
it now 'becomes us (as we-are in such (a) state)

εἶναι τε ἀγαθοῦς ἀνδρας αὐτούς καὶ
(that) we-be not-only brave men ourselves but-also

παρακαλεῖν τοὺς ἄλλους. Ὁ μὲν εἰπὼν
exhort the others (to be so). Who indeed saying

ταῦτ' ἐπαύσατο.
this ceased (speaking).

Δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Ἀλλὰ μὲν,
But after this Cheirisophus said: But indeed,

ὦ Ξενοφῶν, πρόσθεν ἐγὶ γνωσκον σε μόνον
O Xenophon, before-this I-knew you only

τοσοῦτον, ὅσον ἤκουον εἶναι Ἀθηναῖον· δὲ
so-much, as-that I-heard you-were (an) Athenian; but

νῦν καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε τε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις καὶ
now 'I even 'praise you not-only for what you-say but-also

πράτεις, καὶ ἂν βουλοίμην ὅτι εἶναι
(for what) you-perform, and could wish that there-were

πλείστους τοιούτους· γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ κοινὸν
many such; for 'it would 'be — (a) general

ἀγαθόν. Καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ
good. And now, said-he, let-'us not 'delay, O

ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' οἱ δέομενοι ἄρχοντες ἀπελθόντες
men, but — (those) wanting commanders having-retired

ἤδη αἰρεῖσθε, καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἡκετε
now to-choose (them), and having-elected (them) 'let (them) 'come

εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου, καὶ ἄγετε τοὺς
to the middle of-the camp, and bring —

αἰρεθέντας· ἔπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν ἐκεῖ τους
(those) chosen; afterwards we-will-cal'-together there the

ἄλλους στρατιώτας. Δ', ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ
 her soldiers. But, said-he, 'let also Tolmides the
 κῆρυξ παρέστω ἡμῖν. Καὶ ἅμα εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
 herald 'be-present with-us. And at-the-time he-was-saying this
 ἀνέστη, ὡς τὰ δέοντα μὴ μέλλοιτο,
 he-rose-up, that the (things) necessary 'might not 'be-delayed,
 ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο. Ἐκ τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχον-
 but be-executed. On this they-chose (as) comman-
 τες, ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίῳ Δαρδανεύς,
 lers, in-place-of — Klearchus Timasion (the) Dardanian,
 δὲ ἀντὶ Σωκράτους Ξαντικλῆς Ἀχαιοός, δὲ
 and in-place-of Socrates Xanticles (the) Achæian, and
 ἀντὶ Ἀγίου Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἀντι-
 n-place-of Agias Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and in-place-of
 Μένωνος Φιλῆσιος Ἀχαιοός, δὲ ἀντὶ Πρωξένου
 Menon Philesius (the) Achæan, and in-place-of Proxenus
 Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος.
 Xenophon (the) Athenian.

CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρηντο, τε ἡμέρα
 WHEN indeed (the officers) were-chosen, not-only 'was (the) day
 σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε, καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦκον εἰς τὸ
 just 'dawning, but-also the commanders had-come to the
 μέσον, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς, προφύ-
 middle (of the camp), and it-seemed (necessary) to-them, senti-
 λακας καταστήσαντας, συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρα-
 nels being-placed, to-call-together the sol-
 τιώτας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
 diers. When indeed also the other soldiers
 συνῆλθον, Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος πρῶτον
 came-together, Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian first
 μὲν ἀνέστη, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· ὦ ἄνδρες στρα-
 indeed rose-up, and spoke thus: O men sol-

τιῶται, τα παρόντα μὲν χαλεπὰ,
diers, — (our) present-affairs indeed are-fraught-with-difficulties.

ὁπότε στερόμεθα τοιούτω ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν,
since we-are-deprived of-such men (our) generals,

καὶ λοχαγῶν, καὶ στρατιωτῶν· δὲ καὶ
and (also) 'of (our) 'captains, and soldiers; and also

πρὸς ἔτι οἱ ἀμφὶ Ἀριαῖον, οἱ
of (those) moreover (namely) — (those) with Ariæus, who

ἔντες πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι, προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς.
being formerly (our) allies, have-deserted us.

Δὲ ὁμῶς δεῖ τε ἐλθεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόν-
But likewise it-becomes (us) not-only to-get-out of — (our) pre-

των ἀγαδούς ἀνδρας, καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσ-
sent (difficulties) (like) brave men, but-also not to-give-

δαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἣν μὲν δυνώμεθα,
ap, but to-endeavour that, if indeed we-can,

νικῶντες καλῶς, σωζώμεθα· δὲ εἰ μὴ,
conquering honourably, we-may-save-ourselves; but if not,

ἀλλὰ γε ἀποδνήσκωμεν καλῶς, δὲ μηδέποτε
yet at-least let-us-die honourably, and never

γενώμεθα ζῶντες ὑποχείριοι
| we-being living [while we live] putting-ourselves-in-the-hands-of

τοῖς πολεμίοις. Γὰρ οἶομαι ἂν ἡμᾶς παθεῖν
the enemy. For I-think that we would-suffer

τοιαῦτα, οἷα οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν τοὺς
such-things, as 'may the gods 'do to — (our)

ἐχθροὺς. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος
enemies. After this-one Cleanor (the) Orchomenian

ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἀλλὰ μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
rose-up and spoke as-follows: But indeed, O men,

ὁρᾶτε τὴν ἐπιорκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν βασιλέως,
you-see the perjury and impiety 'of (the) 'king,

δὲ ὁρᾶτε τὴν ἀπιστίαν Τισσαφέρνους, ὅστις λέγων
and you-see the faithlessness of-Tissaphernes, who saying

ὥς εἶη τε γείτων τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ ἂν
that he-was not-only (a) neighbour of-the Greeks, but-also would

ποιήσαιτο περὶ πλείστου σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ
make-it of much (account) to-have-saved us, and

αὐτὸς ὀμόσας ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς
he-himself having-sworn to these (things) to-us, he

δούς δεξιᾶς, αὐτὸς ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε
having-given (the) right-hand, he having-deceived (us) took

τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ ῥδέσθη
prisoners) — (our) generals, and neither has-he-respected

Δία ξένιον, ἀλλὰ γενόμενος καὶ
Jupiter (the god of) hospitality, but having-become also (a)

ὁμοτράπεζος Κλεάρχῳ, αὐτοῖς τούτοις
table-companion to-Clearchus, by-these same (means)

ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἀριαῖος
having-deceived — men he-destroyed -(them). Ariæus

δὲ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ῥδέλομεν καδιστάναι βασιλέα, καὶ
also, whom we wished to-have-constituted king, and

ἔδωκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστά μὴ προδώσειν
we-gave and received pledges not to-betray

ἑλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος, οὔτε δείσας τοὺς θεοὺς
one-another, (yet) even this-one, neither having-feared the gods

οὔτε αἰδεσθεῖς τεδνηκότα Κύρου, τιμώμενος
or having-respected (the) departed Cyrus, (though) honoured

μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν
in-the-highest-degree by Cyrus (while) living, 'having now

ἀποστάς πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθίστους ἐκείνου,
'gone-over to the bitterest-enemies 'of (Cyrus) 'himself,

πειρᾶται ποιεῖν κακῶς ἡμᾶς τοὺς φίλους Κύρου.
he-endeavours to-do ill to-us the friends of-Cyrus.

Ἀλλὰ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο τούτους·
But indeed 'may the gods 'repay these (men);

δὲ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ὁρῶντας ταῦτα μήποτε ἔτ
but it-becomes us seeing these (things) never more

ἐξαπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ, μαχομένους
to-be-deceived by these (men), but, fighting

κράτιστα ὥς ἂν δυνώμεδα, πάσχει
in-the-bravest (manner) that 'we may 'be-able, to-bear

τοῦτο ὅτι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς.
that which may seem (proper) to-the gods.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται, ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ
After this Xenophon stood-up, equipped for

πόλεμον ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο, νομίζων, εἴτε
war as handsomely (as) he-was-able, thinking, that-if

οἱ θεοὶ διδοῖεν νίκην τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον
the gods should-grant victory (that) the most-beautiful ornaments

πρέπειν τῷ νικᾶν, εἴτε δέοι
became | to-the to-conquer [victory], (or) that-if it-might-be-so (that he

τελευτᾶν, ἔχειν ὀρθῶς,
was) to-die, | to-have (itself) properly, [it would be well] (that

ἑαυτὸν ἀξιῶσαντα τῶν καλλίστων
he should think) himself as-having-been-worthy of-the most-beautiful

ἐν τούτοις τυγχάνειν τῆς τελευτῆς.
(equipments, and) in these to-meet — (his) end

δὲ τοῦ λόγου ἤρχετο ὧδε· Μὲν τε τὴν ἐπιορκίαν
but — (his) speech he-began thus: Indeed not-only the perjury

καὶ ἀπιστίαν τῶν βαρβάρων Κλεάνωρ μὲν
but-also (the) perfidy of-the barbarians Cleanor indeed

λέγει, δὲ οἶμαι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐπίστασθε
'has (just now) 'mentioned, and I-think you also are-aware-of-it

Εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλευόμεδα πάλιν ἵεναι διὰ
If indeed therefore we-deliberate | again to-go through

φιλίας αὐτοῖς
friendship with-them [of again coming to terms of friendship with them]

ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν ἄδυμίαν,
(it is of) necessity (that) we (must) have much mistrust,

καὶ ὀρῶντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἷα
'having also 'seen — (our) generals, what (they)

πεπόνδασιν, οἳ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς
suffered, who through faith in-them 'put themselves

ἐν χειρὶσαν· εἰ μὲντοι διανοούμεδα σὺν τοῖς
'int·their-hands; if however we-intend with — (our

ὅπλοις τε ἐπιθεῖναι δίκην αὐτοῖς
 arms not-only | to-impose justice on-them [to inflict punish-

ment on them] (for that) which they-have-done, but-also (for) the future

ἵεναι διὰ παντός πολέμου αὐτοῖς, σὺν
 to-go through all (kinds) of-warfare with-them. with (the help of)

τοῖς θεοῖς εἰσὶ πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐπίδες σωτηρίας.
 the gods there-are many and fair hopes of-safety.

Δὲ αὐτοῦ λέγοντος τοῦτο τις πτάρνυται· δ'
 But he saying this some-one sneezes; and

οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες πάντες μιᾷ ὁρμῇ
 the soldiers hearing (it) all with-one impulse

προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν· καὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
 worshipped the god; and Xenophon said: (As)

Ἐπεὶ ἡμῶν λεγόντων περὶ σωτηρίας, οἶωνός
 while we were-speaking about safety, (an) omen

τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, δοκεῖ μοι. ὦ ἄνδρες,
 of — Jupiter the Preserver appeared, it-seems to-me. O men,

εὐξασθαι τῷ τούτῳ θεῷ δύσειν σωτή-
 (that) we-vow to — that god to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-

ρια, ὅπου πρῶτον ἀφικώμεθα εἰς φιλίαν χῶραν,
 safety, when first we-arrive in (a) friendly country,

δὲ καὶ συνεπεύξασθαι θύσειν τοῖς ἄλλοις
 and also (that) we-vow-together to-sacrifice-hereafter to-the other

θεοῖς κατὰ δύναμιν. Καὶ ἔφη. ὅτι
 gods according-to (our) ability. And he-said, to-whomsoever

ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Καὶ
 this seems (right) hold-up — (your) hand. And

ἅπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Ἐκ τούτου εὐξαντο
 all held-up (their hands). Upon this they-'made

καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ τὰ
 (their) 'vows and sang-a-pean. | And when the (things)

τῶν θεῶν εἶχεν καλῶς,
 of-the gods had (themselves) well, [and when the religious

ceremonies were duly performed], he-commenced again thus:

Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι εἶεν πολλαὶ καὶ
 I-happened (to be) saying that there-were many and
 καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν
 fair hopes to-us of-safety. For first indeed
 ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν,
 we 'have truly 'observed | the oaths of-the gods,
 δὲ οἱ πολέμοι τε
 [our oaths made to the gods], but the enemy 'have not-only
 ἐπωρκήκασιν, καὶ λελύκασι τὰς σπονδὰς
 'perjured (themselves), but-also have-broken the truce
 καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δ' ἐχόντων
 and — (their) oaths. But (things) having (themselves)
 οὕτω, εἰκὸς μὲν τοὺς θεοὺς εἶναι ἐναντίους
 thus, it-is-proper indeed (for) the gods to-be against
 τοῖς πολεμίοις, δὲ συμμάχους ἡμῖν, οἵπερ εἰσι
 — (our) enemies, but auxiliaries to-us, who are
 ἱκανοί, ὅταν βούλωνται καὶ ταχὺ ποιεῖν τοὺς
 competent, when they-will both speedily to-make the
 μεγάλους μικροὺς, καὶ εὐπετῶς σῶζειν τοὺς μικροὺς.
 great little, and easily to-save the little,
 καὶ ὥς ἐν δεινοῖς. Δὲ ἔπειτα,
 although they-may-be in dangers. But (next) after (this),
 (γὰρ ἀναμνήσω ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους τῶν
 (for I-shall-remind you even (of) the dangers of—
 ἡμετέρων τῶν προγόνων, ἵνα εἰδῇτε ὥς
 our — ancestors, in-order-that you-may-perceive that
 τε προσήκει ὑμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθοῖς, τε σὺν
 — it-becomes you to-be brave, and-that with (the help of)
 τοῖς θεοῖς οἱ ἀγαθοὶ σώζονται καὶ ἐκ πάντων
 the gods the brave are-saved even from the greatest
 δεινῶν.) γὰρ μὲν Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν
 dangers;) for indeed (the) Persians and — (those) with
 αὐτοῖς ἐλδόντων παμπληθεὶ στόλῳ, ὥς
 them coming 'with (a) 'numerous host, as 'making
 τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀφανιούντων αὐτίς, Ἀθηναῖοι
 — Athens 'disappearing again, (but the) Athenians

τολμήσαντες ὑποστῆναι αὐτοῖς ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.
daring to-withstand them conquered them

Καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὅπόσους τῶν
And having-vowed to Diana (that) as-many of-the

πολεμίων ἂν κατακάνοιεν τοσαύτος χιμαίρας
enemy 'as 'they might 'kill so-many she-goats

καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ εἶχον οὐκ
they-would-sacrifice to-the goddess, (but) when | they-had not (a)

ἱκανὰς εὗρεῖν,
sufficient-number to-find, [they could not find a sufficient number],

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς θύειν πεντακοσίας κατ'
it-seemed (good) to-them to-sacrifice five-hundred every

ἐνιαυτὸν, καὶ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀποδύουσιν. Ἐπειτα
year, and also even now they-sacrifice (them). (Afterwards,

ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον, ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίδ-
when Xerxes after-this, having-collected — (that) innumer-

μητον στρατιάν, ἦλθεν ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
able army, — went against the Greeks, and

τότε οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς προγόνους
then — our ancestors conquered the ancestors

τούτων, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
of-these (barbarians), both by land and by sea.

Τεκμήρια μὲν ὧν ἔστι τὰ τρόπαια ὁρᾶν,
(The) proofs indeed of-which are the trophies | to-see,

δὲ μέγιστον μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία τῶν
[to be seen], but the-greatest witness (is) the liberty of-the

πόλεων, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε
states, in which you were-born and bred

γὰρ προσκυνεῖτε οὐδένα ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην,
for you-worship no man (as) master,

ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς. Τοιούτων προγόνων μὲν
but the gods (only). Of-such ancestors indeed

ἐστε. Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ ἔρῳ τοῦτο,
are-you. 'I indeed certainly at-least 'will not 'say this,

ὥς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὐπω πολλοί
that you disgrace them: but not-yet many

ἡμέραι, ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξά-
 days, | from which [since] having-been-drawn-up-in-order-of-battle
 μενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐχθόνοις ἐκείνων,
 against these — descendants of-those (barbarians),
 ἐνικᾶτε αὐτῶν πολλαπλασίους
 you-conquered (a force) of-them many-times-more-numerous (than)
 ὑμῶν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ τότε καὶ
 yourselves with (the assistance of) the gods. And then
 δὴ ἦτε ἀγαδοὶ ἄνδρες περὶ τῆς βασιλείας
 truly you-were brave men | (contending) about the kingdom
 Κύρου· δὲ νῦν ὁπότε
 of-Cyrus; [contending to elevate Cyrus to the throne]; but now, when
 ὁ ἀγὼν ἐστὶ περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας, δήπου
 the contest is about — your-own safety, 'it certainly
 προσήκει ὑμᾶς πολὺν, καὶ εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ
 'becomes you much, both to-be more (brave) and
 προθυμοτέρους. Ἀλλὰ μὲν καὶ νῦν πρέπει
 more-daring. But certainly 'it even now 'becomes
 εἶναι θαρρῶραυτέρους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.
 you) to-be more-confident-and-daring against the enemy
 Γὰρ μὲν τότε ὄντες ἄπειροι αὐτῶν, τε ὁρῶντες
 For indeed then being inexperienced of-them, and seeing
 τὸ ἄμετρον πλῆθος, ὁμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ
 the immense multitude, however you-dared with the
 φρονήματι πατρίῳ ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· δὲ
 spirit derived-from-your-ancestors to-go against them; but
 νῦν, ὁπότε καὶ ἤδη ἔχετε πείραν αὐτῶν, ὅτι
 now, when 'you even already 'have experience of-them, that
 θέλουσι καὶ ὄντες πολλαπλάσιοι
 they-wish even (though) being many-times (more numerous
 μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἐτι
 than you) not to-receive you (attacking them), how then
 προσήκει ὑμῖν φοβεῖσθαι τούτους; Μηδὲ μέντοι
 does-it-become you to-fear these (men)? | Nor indeed
 δόξητε ἔχειν τοῦτο μείον,
 think to-have this less, [nor think this to be a disadvantage],

οἱ Κυρεῖοι, πρόσθεν ταπτόμενοι σὺν ἡμῖν,
 the followers-of-Cyrus, formerly drawn-up with us,

νῦν ἀφεστήκασι. Γὰρ ἔτι οὗτοι εἰσι
 (have) now deserted (us). For also these (men) are

καχίονες τῶν ἡττημένων ὑφ' ἡμῶν.
 more-cowardly (than) — (those) defeated by us.

Γοῖν ἐφειγόν πρός ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς.
 For-indeed they-fled to them deserting us.

Δὲ πολὺ κρεῖττον ὄραν τοὺς θέλοντας
 And (it is) much better to-see — (those) wishing

ἄρχειν φυγῆς ταπτομένους σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις,
 to-commence flight arranged with the enemy,

ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει. Δὲ εἰ τις ὑμῶν
 than in — our ranks. But if any-one of-you

ἀδυμεῖ. ὅτι μὲν εἰσὶν οὐκ ἵππεις ἡμῖν,
 is-disheartened, that indeed there-are no horsemen to-us, [that

δὲ πολλοὶ πάρεσι τοῖς πολεμίοις,
 we have no cavalry], | but (that) many are-present to-the enemy,

ἐνδυμήδητε ὅτι
 [but that the enemy have a large force of cavalry], consider that

οἱ μύριοι ἵππεις εἰσὶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι
 — ten-thousand horsemen are nothing else than ten-thousand

ἄνθρωποι· γὰρ μὲν οὐδεὶς πώποτε ἀπέθανεν ἐν
 men: for indeed no-one ever died in

μάχῃ οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ὑπὸ
 battle (neither) (either) bitten — (or) kicked by

ἵππου, δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι
 (a) horse, but the men are (those) who do whatever

ἂν γίγηται ἐν ταῖς μάχαις. Οὐκοῦν ἡμεῖς ἐσμεῖ
 may happen in — battles. Therefore we are

ἐπ' πολὺ ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματος γε τῶν ἱππέων·
 on (a) much safer vehicle (than) at-least the cavalry,

γὰρ μὲν οἱ κρέμανται ἐφ' ἵππων, φοβούμενοι
 for indeed — (those) hang on horses, fearing

οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν·
 not as alone, but also [the to-have-fallen; [falling]

δ' ἡμεῖς βεβηκότες ἐπὶ γῆς
[but we having-gone on (the) ground [but we marching on the

παίσομεν μὲν πολὺ ἰσχυρότερον ἢν τις
ground] shall-strike indeed much more-violently if any-one

προσίσῃ, δὲ πολὺ μᾶλλον τευξόμεθα οὗτου βουλώ-
approach, and much more shall-we-attain-the-aim which we-de-

μεθα. Δὲ ἐνὶ μόνῳ οἱ ἵππεῖς προέχουσιν
sired. But in-one (thing) alone the cavalry have-the-advantage-of

ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν ἔστιν ἀσφαλέστερον αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῖν.
us: to-fly is safer for-them than for-us.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ θαρρῆετε μὲν τὰς μάχας,
If indeed truly you-are-confident-and-courageous — for — battle,

δὲ ἄχθεσθε τοῦτο, ὅτι Τισσαφέρνης οὐκέτι
but you-are-troubled at-this, that Tissaphernes 'will no-longer

ἡγήσεται ὑμῖν, οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς παρέξει
'guide you, nor 'will (the) king 'provide (you a

ἄγορᾶν, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον ἔχειν Τισσα-
market consider whether (it is) better to-have Tissa-

φέρην ἡγεμόνα, ὃς ἐστὶ φανερός ἐπιβουλεύων
phernes (as) guide, who is evidently plotting-against

ἡμῖν, ἢ ἄνδρας οὓς ἡμεῖς λαβόντες ἂν
us, or (the) men whom, we having-seized-them, may

κελεύωμεν ἡγεῖσθαι, οἳ εἰσονται ὅτι, ἢν ἁμαρ-
order to-guide (us), who will-know that, if they

τάνωσι περὶ ἡμᾶς, ἁμαρτάνουσι περὶ τὰς
err with-respect-to us, they-err with-respect-to the

ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ τὰ
lives and bodies of-themselves. But (as respects) —

ἐπιτήδεια πότερον κρεῖττον ὠνεῖσθαι ἐκ τῆς
provisions whether (it is) better to-purchase from the

ἄγορᾶς, ἥς οὗτοι παρῆχον, μικρὰ μέτρα
market, which these (people) provide, small measures

πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ ἔτι ἔχοντας τοῦτο,
for-much money, neither yet having this (money),

ἢ, ἢνπερ κρατῶμεν, λαμβάνειν αὐτοὺς, χρωμένους
or, if we-are-victorious, to-take them, using

ὅπως μέρω ἕκαστος ἂν βούληται. Εἰ δὲ
such measure (as) each might wish. If however

μὲν γινώσκετε ταῦτα
indeed you-know these (things respecting guides and provisions)

ὅτι κρείττονα, δὲ νομίζετε τοὺς ποταμοὺς
that (it would now be) better, but think the rivers

εἶναι ἄπορον, καὶ ἡγείσθε
to-be (a thing) impassable, and think (yourselves) to-be

μεγάλως ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε
greatly 'misled crossing (them), consider

εἰ ἄρα οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ πεποιήκασιν
whether the barbarians 'have (not) even 'done (a)

μωρότατον. Γὰρ μὲν πάντες οἱ ποταμοί,
most-foolish (thing). For indeed all the rivers,

εἰ καὶ ὥσι ἄποροι πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν,
if even they-may-be impassable at-a-distance-from — (their) sources),

προϊοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς γίνονται διαβατοί,
(but) going to the sources they-become passable,

οὐδὲ βρέχοντες τὸ γόνυ. Εἰ δὲ μήτ' οἱ ποταμοί
not-even wetting the knee. If indeed neither the rivers

διοίσουσι, τε μεδεῖς ἡγεμῶν φανέται
should-differ (in their breadth), and no guide appear

ἡμῖν, οὐδ' ὧς ἀδυμητέον ἡμῖν γε. Γὰρ
to-us, nor thus is-there-to-be-discouragement to-us at-least. For

ἐπιστάμεθα Μυσοῦς, οὓς ἂν οὐκ φαίμεν
we-know (that the) Mysians, whom 'we should not 'assert

εἶναι βελτίους ἡμῶν, οἱ, βασιλέως
to-be braver (than) ourselves, who, (the) king (being)

ἄκοντος, οἰκοῦσι πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ
unwilling, inhabit many also both rich and

μεγάλας πόλεις ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ βασιλέως.
large cities in the country 'of (the) 'king

ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὥσαύτως.
we-know also (that the) Pisidians (have acted) in-like-manner

δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἶδομεν Λυκάονας, ὅτι
and also we-'have ourselves 'seen (the) Lycæonians, that

καταλαμβάντες τὰ ἐρυμνὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις καρ
 seizing the fortified-places in the plains they-en-

ποῦνται τὴν χώραν τούτου. Καὶ ὁ
 joy-the-fruits (in) the territory of-this (king). And indeed

ἤγωγε ἂν ἔφην ἡμᾶς χρῆναι μήπω εἶναι
 -at-least would have-said (that) we ought not-yet to-be

φανερὸς ὄρμημένους οἴκαδε, ἀλλὰ κατασκευ
 appearing (as) having-started for-home, but to-be-getting

ἄζεσθαι ὥς οἰκῆσοντας που αὐτοῦ.
 ourselves-ready as (if) about-taking up-our-abode some-where here.

Γαρ οἶδα ὅτι καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἂν δοίῃ πολλοὺς
 For I-know that even (the) king indeed would give many

ἡγεμόνας Μυσοῖς, δ' ἂν πολλοὺς ὀμήρους
 guides 'to (the) 'Mysians, and would (give) many hostages

τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν ἀδόλως καὶ
 (to them) | of-the to-send-away [to send them away] without-treachery and

γ' ἂν ὁδοποιήσειε αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ βούλονται
 also would make-roads for-them, even if they-wished

ἀπιέναι σὺν τεθρίπποις. Καὶ οἶδ' ὅτι γ' ἂν
 to-depart with four-horse-chariots. And I-know that 'he also would

ἐποίει ταῦτα τρισάσμενος ἡμῖν, εἰ ἑώρα
 'do these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw

ἡμᾶς παρασκευαζομένους μένειν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
 as making-preparations to-remain. But (not so) for

δέδοικα, μὴ, ἂν ἅπαξ μάδωμεν ζῆν ἄργοι,
 I-fear, lest 'we may once 'have-learned to-live idle,

καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ ὀμιλεῖν
 and to-pass-our-lives in plenty, and to-associate 'with (the)

καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις
 'handsome and large women and virgins 'of (the)

Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν, μὴ, ὥς περ οἱ
 Medes and also 'of (the) 'Persians, (that) lest, like the

λωτοφάγοι, ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε. Δοκεῖ
 lotus-eaters, we-might-forget the road homewards. It-seems

οὖν μοι εἶναι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον πρῶτον
 therefore to-me to-be proper and just first

πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς
to-attempt to-return to — Greece and to

τοὺς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδείξαι τοῖς Ἑλλησιν,
the members-of-our-families, and to-show the Greeks.

ὅτι ἐκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν
that voluntarily they-are-poor, when-it-is-allowed them to-see

κομισαμένους ἐνθάδε πλουσίους, τοὺς
those) having-come hither rich, (but) — (those)

νῦν οἱκοι πολιτεύοντας ἐκεῖ σκληρῶς. Ἀλλὰ,
now at-home living there with-difficulty. But (why

γὰρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐστὶ δῆλον ὅτι, πάντα ταῦτα
more), for, O men, it-is evident that, all these

τάγαδ' αὖ τῶν κρατούντων. Δὴ
good (things belong to) the conquerors. 'It certainly

δεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθα τε
'is-proper to-mention this, how 'we may 'proceed not-only

ὥς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὥς
as safely-as-possible, but-also if it-be-necessary to-fight, that

μαχοίμεθα κράτιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν,
we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage. First indeed therefore.

ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἀμάξιας,
said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-burn the carriages,

ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν μὴ
which we-have, in-order-that the cattle of-us 'may not

στρατηγῇ,
'be-the-leader-of-the-army, [in order that our baggage may not influence

ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα ὅπη
the movements of our army], but (that) we-may-march whithersoever

ἂν συμφέρῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ. ἔπειτα καὶ
'it may 'be-convenient for-the army (to march); afterwards also

συγκατακαῦσαι τὰς σκηνάς. Γὰρ αὗται
to-'burn the tents 'with (them). For these

αὖ μὲν παρέχουσιν ὄχλον ἄγειν, δὲ συνωφε-
(tents) again — give trouble to-carry, and contri

λοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι
use nothing — (either) to the to-fight [and are of ac

οὐτ' εἰς τὸ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
 use in battle] | or to the to-have — provisions [or in pro-
 curing provisions]. Moreover — also let-us-get-rid-of the
 περιττὰ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν, πλὴν ὅσα
 superfluous (things) of — (our) other furniture, except what
 ἔχομεν ἔνεκεν πολέμου, ἢ σίτον ἢ ποτῶν, ἵνα
 we-have for-the-purpose of-war, or of-food, or of-drink, in-order-that
 ὥς πλείστοι ἡμῶν ὧσιν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις δὲ ὥς
 as many-as-possible of-us may-be under — arms and as
 ἐλάχιστα σκευοφορῶσι. Γὰρ μὲν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι
 few-as-possible may-carry-baggage. For indeed you-know that
 πάντα κρατουμένων ἀλλότρια.
 all (things) 'of (the) 'conquered (become the) property-of-others;
 δὲ ἢν κρατῶμεν δεῖ νομίζειν καὶ τοὺς
 and if we-conquer it-becomes (you) to-think (that) even the
 πολεμίους ἡμετέρους σκευοφόρους. Λοιπὸν
 enemy (are to be) our baggage-carriers. (It) remains
 μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ νομίζω εἶναι μέγιστον.
 for-me to-mention what 'I even 'consider to-be (of the) greatest
 (importance). Γὰρ ὁρᾶτε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅτι
 'they-did not 'dare first to-bring-on (the)
 πόλεμον πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συνέλαβον τοὺς στρα-
 war against us, before they-had-seized the gene-
 τηγοὺς ἡμῶν, νομίζοντες μὲν ὄντων
 rals of-us, thinking (that) 'we indeed ('being) (having)
 τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ ἡμῶν πειδομένων
 — commanders, and we being-obedient (to them, that)
 ἡμᾶς εἶναι ἱκανοὺς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ.
 we were competent to-conquer in — battle;
 δε λαβόντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς
 but taking — (our) commanders they-thought (that) we
 εἶναι ἀπολέσθαι ἀναρχίᾳ καὶ ἀταξίᾳ. Οὐν
 would perish in-anarchy and confusion. Therefore

δεῖ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας τοὺς νῦν
 it-is-proper — (that) the commanders — (our) present (commanders)
 γενέσθαι πολὺ ἐπιμελεστέρους τῶν
 be much more-vigilant (than) — (those who)
 πρόσθεν, δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους
 before (were commanders), and (that) the commanded (should be)
 πολὺ μᾶλλον εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειδομένους τοῖς
 much more orderly and obedient to-the
 ἀρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν. Δὲ ἥν τις ἀπει-
 commanders now than formerly. And if any-one might-be-disobe-
 δῇ, ἥν ψηφίσῃσθε τὸν ὑμῶν ἀεὶ ἐντυχ-
 dient, if you-decree (that) — (he) of-you at-any-time meet-
 χάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἀρχοντι κολάζειν,
 ing (such a one, is to assist) with the commander to-punish
 οὕτως οἱ πολέμοι ἔσονται πλεῖστον εψευσ-
 (him), thus the enemy will-be very-much de-
 μένοι· γὰρ τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὄψονται
 ceived (in what they expected); for in-that — day they-will-see
 μυρίου Κλεάρχους ἀνδ' ἐνός, τοὺς ἐπιτρέ-
 ten-thousand Clearchuses in-place-of one, — (who) will-per-
 ψοντας οὐδενὶ εἶναι κακῷ. Ἀλλὰ
 mit no-one to-be bad (disobedient or cowardly). But
 γὰρ καὶ ἤδη ὧρα περαίνειν· γὰρ οἱ
 (enough), for (it is) even now time to-finish; for the
 πολέμοι ἴσως αὐτίκα παρέσονται. Ὅτῳ
 enemy 'will perhaps immediately 'be-present. To-whom
 οὖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἔχειν
 therefore it-may-seem | (that) these (things) hold (themselves)
 καλῶς ἐπικυρωσάτω
 well [that what I have said is just and reasonable] let-them-approve
 ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα περαίνῃται
 (them) as speedily-as-possible, in-order-that they-may-be-accomplishe
 ἔργῳ. Δὲ εἴ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτην,
 in-fact. But if any-thing else (is) better than this,
 καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης τολμάτω
 let-him (though) even — (a) private (soldier) 'be-bold (enough)

διδάσκειν· γὰρ πάντες δεόμεθα κοινῆς
to-instruct (us); for 'we all 'seek (a) common
σωτηρίας.
safety.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' εἰ μὲν
After this Cheirisophus said: But if indeed
δεῖ τινος ἄλλου πρὸς τούτοις, οἷς
it-is-needed of-any-thing else for these (affairs), which

Ξενοφῶν λέγει, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται ποιεῖν·
Xenophon mentions, it-'will even speedily 'be-allowed-us to-do (it);

δὲ ἃ νῦν εἴρηκε, δοκεῖ μοι
and what he-'has now 'said, it-seems to-me (that we ought)

ψηφίσασθαι ὥς τάχιστα εἶναι ἄριστον· καὶ
to-vote as speedily-as-possible to-be the-best; and

δτω δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἀνατενιάτω τὴν
to-whom it-seems these (things to be right) let-him-hold-up —

χεῖρα. Ἄπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Δέ
(his) hand. All held-up (their hands). But

Ξενοφῶν πάλιν ἀναστὰς εἶπε· ὦ ἄνδρες,
Xenophon again rising said: O men,

ἀκούσατε ὧν δοκεῖ μοι προς-
hear (me respecting that) which seems to-me to-be-necessary-

δεῖν. Δῆλον ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεύ-
in-addition. (It is) evident that it-is-proper (that) we march-

εσθαι ὅπου ἔχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ ἀκούω
to where we-shall-have — provisions; and I-hear (that)

εἶναι καλὰς κώμας, οὐ πλεῖον
there-are (some) considerable villages, 'being not more (than)

εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. Ἄν οἷκ οὖν δαυ-
twenty stadia 'distant. 'I would not therefore 'won-

μάζομι, εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες,
der, if the enemy, like — cowardly dogs,

μὲν τε διώκου τοὺς παριόντας καὶ
indeed not-only follow — (those) passing-by but-also

δάκνουσιν, ἣν δύνωνται, δὲ φεύγουσι τοὺς
bite (them), if they-can, but flee-from — (those)

διώκοντας, καὶ εἰ αὐτοὶ
 following (them), and (I would not be surprised) if they
 ἐπακολουθοῦσιν ἡμῖν ἀπιοῦσιν. Ἴσως οὖν
 follow us departing. Perhaps therefore (it will be)
 ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι ποιησαμένους
 safer for-us to-march-forth having-formed (a hollow)
 πλαίσιον τῶν ὀπλων. ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα
 square of-the heavy-armed-men, in-order-that the baggage,
 καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος εἴη ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ.
 and the many camp-followers may-be in the-greatest-safety (within it).
 Εἰ νῦν οὖν ἀποδειχθεῖη, τίνα χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι
 If now therefore it-should-be-designated, whom it-becomes to-lead
 τοῦ πλαισίου, καὶ κοσμεῖν τὰ πρόσθεν,
 the square, and to-regulate-and-arrange the front,
 καὶ τίνας εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἑκατέρων πλευρῶν,
 and who (are) to-be on — each flank,
 δὲ τίνας ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, ἂν οὐ δέοι,
 and who are-to-take-charge-of-the-rear, 'it may not 'be-necessary, (that)
 ἡμᾶς βουλευέσθαι ὅποτε οἱ πολέμοι ἔλθοιεν,
 we deliberate (about this) when the enemy may-come,
 ἀλλὰ ἂν εὐδὺς χρῶμεθα τοῖς τεταγ-
 but 'we might immediately 'make-use-of the (things) ar-
 μένοις. Εἰ οὖν μὲν τις ἄλλος ὀρᾷ
 ranged. If therefore indeed any-one else sees (something)
 βέλτιον, ἐχέτω ἄλλως. Δὲ
 better, | let-it-have-itself otherwise [let it be arranged otherwise]. But
 εἰ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείσθω, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἐστὶ.
 if not, 'let Cheirisophus indeed 'lead, since also he-is
 Λακεδαιμόνιος· δὲ δύο στρατηγῶ τῶν πρεσ-
 (a) Lacedæmonian; but 'let two generals of-the old
 βυτάτων ἐπιμελείσθω ἑκατέρων τῶν πλευρῶν·
 est (generals) 'take-charge of-each of-the flanks,
 δὲ ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτεροι, τε ἐγὼ καὶ Τιμασίων,
 and 'let us the younger, namely I and Timasias,
 ὀπισθοφυλακῶμεν, τὸ νῦν εἶναι. Δὲ
 'take-command-of-the-rear, | the now to-be [for the present]. And 'for:

τὸ λοιπόν, πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως, ἀεὶ
the rest, having-tryed this — arrangement, always

βουλευσόμεθα ὅτι ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι
(or at any time) we-can-consider what may seem to-be (the)

κράτιστον. Εἰ δὲ τις ὁρᾷ ἄλλο
best. If indeed any-one perceives (any thing) else

ῥέλιον, λέξάτω. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
better, let-him-mention (it). But when no-one objected,

εἶπε· Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνα-
he-said: To-whom it-seems (that) these (things are right), let-him-

τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Νῦν
hold-up — (his) hand. He-approved these (things). Now

τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν τὰ
therefore, said-he, departing it-becomes (you) to-perform — (things

δεδογμένα· καὶ ὅστις τε
that) have-seemed-good (and been determined on); and whoever

ὑμῶν ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν τοὺς οἰκείους, μεμ-
of-you desires to-see — (their) homes-and-families, let-him-

νήσδω εἶναι ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ· γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ τυχεῖν
remember to-be (a) brave man; for it-is not to-obtain

τούτου ἄλλως·
of-this otherwise; [for in no other manner can this be obtained];

ὅστις τε ἐπιθυμεῖ ζῆν, πειράσδω νικᾶν· γὰρ μὲν
whoever — desires to-live, let-him-strive to-conquer; for indeed

τὸ κατακαίνειν ἐστὶ τῶν νικῶντων, δὲ
[the to-kill [killing] is (the part) of-the conquering, but

τὸ ἀποδυνήσκειν τῶν ἡττωμένων· δὲ
[the to-die [dying] (is the part) of-the conquered; and

καὶ εἴ τις ἐπιθυμεῖ χρημάτων πειράσδω κρατεῖν·
also if any-one desires property let-him-strive to-vanquish;

γὰρ ἐστὶ τῶν νικῶντων καὶ σώζειν
for it-is (the part) of — (those) conquering also to-save

τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ λαμβάνειν τὰ
the (property belonging) to-themselves, and to-take the (property)

τῶν ἡττωμένων.
of-the conquered.

CHAPTER III.

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
 THESE (things) having-been-spoken they-rose-up, and
 ἰπελδόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἀμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς·
 departing they-burned the carriages and the tents;
 δὲ μὲν τῶν περιττῶν οὗτου τις δέοιτο,
 and indeed of-the superfluous-things of-which any-one might-want,
 μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, δὲ τὰ ἄλλα ἐρρίπτουν
 they-distributed-among one-another, but the rest they-threw
 εἰς τὸ πῦρ. Ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἡριστοποι-
 into the fire. Having-done these (things) they-break-
 οῦντο. Δὲ ἀριστοποιουμένων Μιθραδάτης
 fasted. But (while) breakfasting Mithradates
 ἔρχεται σὺν ὡς τριάκοντα ἵππεῦσι, καὶ καλε-
 came with about thirty horsemen, and having-
 σάμενος τοὺς στρατηγούς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει
 called the generals to (a) place-of-hearing he-speaks
 ὧδε· Ἐγώ, ὃ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες, ἦν καὶ πιστὸς
 thus: I, O Grecian men, was even faithful
 Κύρῳ, ὅς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν εὖνους
 to-Cyrus, as you know, and (am) now well-disposed
 ὑμῖν· καὶ εἰμὶ ἐνθάδε διάγων σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ.
 to-you; and I-am here living with much fear.
 Εἰ οὖν ὁρώην ὑμᾶς βουλευομένους τι
 If therefore I-perceive (that) you are-concerting any-thing
 σωτήριον, ἂν ἔλθοιμι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ἔχων
 salutary, 'I might 'go to you, having (with me)
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς θεράποντας. Οὖν λέξατε
 also all — (my) followers. Therefore tell
 με τί ἔχετε ἐν νῶ ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὖνουν
 me what you-have in min¹ as 'to (a) 'friend and also well-disposed

καὶ βουλόμενον ποιῆσθαι τὸν πόλον
 (to you), and wishing to-make the march
 κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευομένοις
 in-common with you. The generals consulting-together
 ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ Χειρίσοφος
 it-seemed (best) to-have-answered thus; and Cheirisophus
 ἔλεγε· Δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, εἰ τις ἐὰν ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι
 spoke: It-seems (good) to-us, if any-one allows us to-depart
 οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἀσινέστατα
 for-home, to-proceed-through the country as harmlessly-as
 ἂν δυνώμεθα· δὲ ἥν τις ἀποκωλύῃ ἡμᾶς
 'we may 'be-able; but if any-one prohibit us
 τῆς ὁδοῦ, διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς
 the road, to-'fight (our way) 'against this-one as
 κράτιστα ἂν δυνώμεθα. Ἐκ τούτου Μιθραδάτης
 bravely-as 'we may 'be-able. On this Mithradates
 ἐπειρᾶτο διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἶη σωθῆναι.
 endeavoured to-instruct (them) how impossible it-would-be to-be-saved
 βασιλέως ἄκοντος. Ἐνθα δὴ ἐγίγ-
 (the) king (being) unwilling. Hereupon indeed it-was-
 κώσκετο ὅτι εἶη ὑπόπεμπτος· γὰρ καὶ τις
 perceived that he-might-be insidiously-sent; for also some-one
 τῶν οἰκείων Τισσαφέρνους παρηκολούθει ἕνεκα
 of-the followers of-Tissaphernes attended for-the-sake-of
 πίστεως. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἔδοκει τοῖς
 (securing his) fidelity. And from this it-seemed to-the
 στρατηγοῖς εἶναι βέλτιον ποιήσασθαι δόγμα,
 commanders to-be best to-make (a) decree, (that)
 ἕστ' εἴεν ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ τὸν
 as-long-as they-might-be in the territory-of-the-enemy, (that) the
 πόλεμον εἶναι ἀκήρυκτον. Γὰρ προς-
 war (was) to-be without-heralds (and implacable). For coming-
 ὄντες διέφθειρον τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ
 to (them) they-were-corrupting the soldiers, and
 διέφθειραν γε ἕνα λοχαγὸν Νικάρχον
 they-corrupted at-least one captain (namely) Nicarchus (the

Αρχάδα· καὶ ὤχετο ἀπὶ ὧν νυκτὸς
 Arcadian: | and he-went-away departing [and he went off] by-night
 σὺν ὡς εἴκοσι ἀνδράποισι.
 with about thirty men.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες, καὶ διαβάντες
 After this having-taken-their-first-meal, and having-crossed
 τοὶ ποταμόν Ζαπάταν, ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι
 the river Zapata, they-marched-forth drawn-up-in-order,
 ἔχοντες τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ.
 having the baggage-cattle and the camp-followers in (the) middle
 Δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ προεληλυθότων πολὺ,
 (of the square). But they not having-gone far,

ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν ἐπιφαίνεται ἔχων ὡς δια-
 — Mithradates again appeared having about two-
 κοσίους ἰππείας, καὶ ὡς τετρακοσίους τοξότας καὶ
 hundred horsemen, and about four-hundred archers and
 σφενδονήτας. μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους· καὶ
 slingers, very light and active; and
 προσήει μὲν ὡς ὢν φίλος πρὸς τοὺς Ἑλληνας.
 approached indeed as being (a) friend to the Greeks.

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν
 But when he-was near, suddenly — (those) indeed
 αὐτῶν καὶ ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοὶ ἐτόξευον,
 of-them both horse and foot commenced-discharging-arrows,

δ' οἱ ἐσφενδόνων, καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. Δὲ
 and — (others) slinging-stones, and wounded (our men) But

οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν
 the rear-guard of-the Greeks — suffered indeed

κακῶς, δ' ἀντεποιοῦν οὐδέν. Γὰρ
 badly, and could-'do nothing 'against (the enemy). For

τε οἱ Κρηῖτες ἐτόξευον βραχύτερα
 not-only 'did the Cretans 'shoot (their) 'arrows a-shorter-distance

τῶν Περσῶν, καὶ ἅμα ὄντες φιλοὶ
 (than) the Persians, but-also at-the-same-time being light-armed

κατεκέκλειντο εἰσὼ τῶν ὀπλων· οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ
 'they-were-included within the heavy-armed-men: the javelin-men

τε ἡκόντιζον βραχύτερα ἢ ὥς ἐξικνεῖσθαι.
indeed 'threw (their) 'javelins shorter than so-as to-reach

τῶν σφενδονητῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι
the slingers. Upon this it-seemed to-Xenophon

εἶναι διωκτέον· καὶ οἱ τῶν ὀπιλιτῶν
to-be necessary-to-pursue; and — (those) of-the heavy-armed-men

καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ
and of-the targeteers (who) happened (to be) with him

ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες ἐδίωκον· δὲ διώκοντες κατε-
guarding-the-rear pursued; but pursuing they-

λάμβανον οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων. Γὰρ οὔτε ἦσαν
overtook no-one of-the enemy. For neither were-there

ἵππεῖς τοῖς Ἑλλησιν, οὔτε ἐδύναντο οἱ πεζοὶ
horsemen to-the Greeks, nor could — (our) infantry

καταλαμβάνειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ, τοὺς πεζοὺς
overtake, in (a) small space, the infantry

φεύγοντας ἐκ πολλοῦ· γὰρ
(of the enemy) fleeing from (a) (much) (distance); for

ἦν οὐχ οἶόν τε διώκειν πολὺ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου
it-was not possible to-follow far from the rest (of the)

στρατεύματος. Δὲ γὰρ βάρβαροι ἵππεῖς καὶ ἅμα
army. And the barbarian cavalry even while

φεύγοντες ἐτίτρωσκον τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ
fleeing wounded (our men) shooting-their-arrows from

τῶν ἵππων εἰς τοῦπισθεν· δὲ ὅποσον οἱ Ἕλληνες
the horses backwards; and as-much-as the Greeks

προδιώξειαν τοσοῦτον ἔδει πάλιν ἐπαναχω-
advanced-in-pursuit so-much it-was-necessary again to-re-

ρεῖν μαχομένους. Ὡστε τῆς ὅλης ἡμέρας
treat fighting. So-that (during) the entire day

οὐ διῆλδον πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι
they-'did not 'pass-through more (than) five and twenty

σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς
stadia, but late-in-the-afternoon they-arrived at the

κώμας. Ἐνθα δὴ ἦν πάλιν ἀδυμία. Καὶ
villages. Here truly there-was again dejection-of-mind. And

Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν
Cheirisophus and the oldest of-the generals

ἠτιῶντο Ξενοφῶντα, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν
blamed Xenophon, that he-pursued (the enemy), (departing)

ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ τε αὐτός ἐκινδύνευε
from the phalanx, and so-indeed he endangered

καὶ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατα βλάπτειν
(himself) and 'was none the-more 'able to-injure

τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ἔλεγεν
the enemy. But Xenophor having-heard (this) said

ὅτι ἠτιῶντο ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτὸ
that they-blamed (him) justly, and (that) the act itself

μαρτυροίη αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,
(in its results) bore-testimony for-them. But I, said-he,

ἀναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἑώραν ἡμᾶς μὲν
was-forced to-pursue, after I-saw (that) we indeec

ἐν τῷ μένειν πᾶσ-
[in the to-remain [in keeping our stations in the hollow square] were-

χοντας κακῶς, δὲ οὐ δυναμένους ἀντιποιεῖν. Δὲ
suffering badly, and not being-able to-retaliate. But

ἐπειδὴ ἐδιώκομεν, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ ὑμεῖς
when we-pursued, said-he, (the things were) true (as) you

λέγετε· γὰρ μὲν ἐδυνάμεθα ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον
say; for indeed we-were-able to-do not-any more

κακῶς τοὺς πολεμίους, δὲ ἀνεχωροῦμεν πάνν
injury (to) the enemy, but we-retained very

χαλεπῶς. Χάρις οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς ὅτι οὐκ
difficultly. Thanks therefore to-the gods, that they-'did not

ἦλθον σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις,
'come with (a) great force but (only) with (a) few

ὥστε μὲν μὴ βλάψαι μεγάλα, δὲ
(troops), so-as indeed not to-have-injured (us) much, and (yet:

δηλῶσαι ὧν δεόμεθα. Γὰρ νῦν μὲν οἱ
to-have-shown (us) what we-needed. For now indeed the

πολέμιοι τοξέουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν
enemy 'shoot (their) 'arrows and sling-stones

ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρήτες δύνανται ἀντιτοξεύειν,
'so (far) 'as (that) neither the Cretans are-able to-shoot-back,

οὔτε οἱ βάλλοντες ἐκ χειρὸς ἐξικνεῖσθαι,
nor — (those) throwing from (the) hand (are able) to-reach,

δὲ ὅταν διώκωμεν αὐτοὺς, μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε
and when we-pursue them, (it is) indeed not proper —

διώκειν πολὺ χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος,
to-follow (a) great distance from the army;

δὲ οὐδ' ἐν ὀλίγῳ, εἰ ταχὺς πεζός
but neither in (a) small (space), if (ever so) swift (the) foot-soldier

εἴη, ἂν διώκων καταλάβοι πεζὸν
might-be, could 'he pursuing 'overtake (a) foot-soldier | (he be-

ἐκ ῥύματος τόξου.
ing distant) from (the) drawing 'of (a) 'bow [starting from the

Εἰ οὖν ἡμεῖς μέλλομεν
distance of a bow-shot from him]. If therefore we intend

εἶργειν τούτους, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι
to-keep-off these (our enemies), so-as not to-be-able

βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, δεῖ τὴν τα-
to-hurt us marching-forth, it-is-necessary — as-

χίστην τε σφενδονητῶν καὶ ἱππέων.
speedily-as-possible (to procure) not-only slingers but-also cavalry.

Ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν
I-hear indeed (that) there-are in the army of-us

Ῥοδίους, φασιν τοὺς πολλοὺς ὧν ἐπίστασθαι
Rhodians, they-say (that) the great-part of-them know

σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ
(how) to-use-the-sling, and (that) the weapon of-them also

φέρεισθαι διπλάσιοι τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν.
carries double (the distance) of-the Persian slings

Γὰρ ἐκεῖναι διὰ σφενδονᾶν τοῖς λίθοις
For these (Persian slings) on-account-of slinging — stones

χειροπληθέσι ἐξικνοῦνται ἐπὶ βραχὺ.
filling-the-hands reach (only) to (a) short (distance).

δὲ γε οἱ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ἐπιστάνται χρῆσθαι
but — the Rhodians even know (how) to-use

μολυβδίσιν. Ἦν οὖν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες αὐτῶι
 leaden-bullets. If then we-ascertain which-ones of-them

πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ μὲν δῶμεν ἀργύριον
 have-acquired slings, and (that) indeed we-give money

τούτῳ αὐτῶν, δὲ τῷ ἐδέλοντι πλέκειν
 so-that-one for-them, and — (to him) willing to-plait

ἄλλας τελῶμεν ἄλλο ἀργύριον, καὶ τῷ
 other (slings) we-might-give other money, and — (for him)

ἐδέλοντι σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ
 willing to-use-the-sling in the rank-or-place-assigned-to (him)

εὐρίσκαμεν τινὰ ἄλλην ἀτέλειαν, ἴσως τινὲς
 we-may-find some other privileges, probably some

ἱκανοὶ ὠφελεῖν ἡμᾶς φανοῦνται.
 capable to-aid us will-appear (and offer their services).

Δὲ καὶ ὁρῶ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι,
 And also I-see horses (being) in the army,

τοὺς τινὰς μὲν παρ' ἐμοί δὲ τοὺς
 — some indeed (are) with me and — (others)

καταλελειμμένους τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, δὲ καὶ πολλοὺς
 left by — Clearchus, and also many

ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. Ἄν
 others taken-from-the-enemy (used in) carrying-baggage. If

οὖν ἐκλέξαντες πάντας τούτους, μὲν
 therefore, collecting all these (horses), 'we indeed

ἀντιδῶμεν σκευοφόρα, δὲ κατασκευάσωμεν
 'give-in-place (of them) ordinary-baggage-cattle, and equip

τοὺς ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοι ἀνιάσουσι
 the horses for cavalry, perhaps even these will-annoy

τι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Ταῦτα
 somewhat the (enemy) fleeing. | (Respecting) these (things)

ἑδοξε. Καὶ τῆς ταύτης
 it-seemed-right. [These things were approved of.] And the same

νυκτὸς μὲν ἐγένοντο σφενδονῆται εἰς
 night indeed there-became slingers to (the number of,

διακοσίους, δὲ καὶ τῇ ἑσπεραίᾳ ἵπποι δὲ καὶ
 two-hundred, and also on-the next-day horses and also

ἵππεις εἰς πεντήκοντα ἐδοκιμίσθησαν,
 horsemen to (the number of) fifty were-judged-fit
 καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες ἐπορίσθησαν
 (for service), and leathern-jackets and breastplates were-provided
 αὐτοῖς· καὶ Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος
 for-them and Lycius the son-of-Polystratus (the) Athenian
 δε ἐπεστάδην ἵππαρχος.
 'was also 'appointed (their) commander.

CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ μείναντες τὴν ταύτην ἡμέραν, τῇ ἄλλῃ
 AND halting for — that-same day, on-the next
 ἀναστάντες πρωϊαίτερον ἐπορεύοντο·
 (day) rising-up earlier-in-the-morning (than usual) they-marched-forth;
 γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι χαρά-
 for it-was-necessary (that) they should-cross (a) ravine-formed-
 δραν, ἐφ' ἣ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι
 by-a torrent, at which they-were-afraid lest the enemy
 ἐπιδοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσι. Δὲ αὐτοῖς διαβε-
 might-attack them crossing-over. But they having-
 βηκόσιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν φαίνεται ἔχων
 crossed-over — Mithradates again appeared having (a)
 χιλίους ἵππείας δὲ καὶ τοξότας σφενδονήτας
 thousand horsemen and also archers (and) slingers
 εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· γὰρ ᾗτησε Τισσα-
 to (the number of) four-thousand; for he-solicited Tissa-
 φέρηνην τοσοῦτους, καὶ ἔλαβεν, ὑποσχόμενος
 phernes (for) so-many, and obtained (them), promising
 ἂν λάβῃ τούτους, παραδώσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
 if-'he should 'receive these, to-deliver the Greeks
 αὐτῷ, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι, ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν
 to-him, having-despised (them), because, in the former
 προσβολῇ ἔχων ὀλίγους ἔπαδε μὲν οὐδέν,
 attack having (only) few (men) he-suffered indeed no (loss).

δὲ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι πολλά κακὰ
and thought (that) he-had-occasioned (them) much annoyance

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες
When indeed the Greeks 'having (now) 'crossed (the ra-

ἀπειχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτὼ στα-
vine, and) were-distant from-the ravine about eight sta-

δίους, καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης διέβαινε ἔχων τὴν
dia, also — Mithradates crossed-over having the

δύναμιν. Δὲ παρήγγελτο τε
force (above mentioned). And instructions-had-been-given not-only

τῶν πελταστῶν, καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν,
(to those) of-the targeteers, but-also (to those) of-the heavy-armed-men,

οὓς ἔδει διώκειν, καὶ εἶρητο τοῖς ἵππευσι
whom it-became to-pursue, and-also it-was-told to-the horsemen

διώκειν θαρρόυσι, ὥς ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως ἐφε-
to-pursue being-confident-and-bold, as (a) sufficient force would

ψομένης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει
be-following (them). When indeed — Mithradates had-overtaken

καὶ ἤδη σφενδόνας καὶ τοξεύματα
(them), and already (the) slings and arrows

ἔξικοῦντο ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι
began-to-reach (them) (then) the-signal-was-given to-the Greeks

τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐδὺς, οἷς εἶρητο,
with-the trumpet, and directly 'they, of-whom it-was-requested,

ἔδεον ὁμόσε, καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς ἤλαυνον.
'ran there (to meet the enemy), and the cavalry charged;

δὲ οἱ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο ἀλλ' ἐφευγον
but the (enemy) 'did not 'receive (them) but fled

ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. Ἐν τῇ ταύτῃ διώξει τε
to the ravine. In — this pursuit not-only

πολλοὶ τῶν πεζῶν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀπέθανον,
many of-the foot-soldiers (of) the barbarians died,

καὶ ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ἐλήφθησαν ζωοὶ εἰς
but-also in the ravine were-taken alive to (the number of)

ὀκτωκαίδεκα τῶν ἵππέων. Οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ
eighteen of-the horsemen. The Greeks indee'

αὐτοκέλευστοι ἤκισαντο τοὺς ἀποθαινόντας, ὡς
 of-their-own-accord mutilated the dying, 80

ὅτι εἴη φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ὁρᾶν.
 that it-might-be most-frightful for-the enemy to-see.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμοιοι πράξαντες οὕτω ἀπῆλθον.
 And indeed the enemy having-fared thus departed.

δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πορευόμενοι ἀσφαλῶς τὸ λοιπὸν
 but the Greeks proceeding safely (for) the rest

τῆς ἡμέρας, ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Τίγρητα.
 of-the day, arrived at the river Tigris.

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη ἐρήμη πόλις, δ'
 Here there-was (a) large deserted city, and (the)

ὄνομα αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα· δὲ Μῆδοι τὸ παλαιὸν
 name to-it was Larissa; and (the) Medes — formerly

ᾠκουν αὐτήν. Τὸ εὖρος δὲ τοῦ τείχους αὐτῆς
 inhabited it. The breadth indeed of-the wall of-it

ἦν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, δ' ὕψος ἑκατόν.
 was five and twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred;

ἡ περίοδος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου δύο παρασάγγαι.
 the circuit indeed of-the enclosure (was) two parasangs:

ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνδοις κεραμίαις· δ' ὑπῆν
 it-was-built — of-bricks made-of-clay; and there-was-under (it)

λιδίνη κρηπίς τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν.
 (a) stone foundation the height (of it being) twenty feet.

Ὁ βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε Πέρσαι ἐλάμβανον
 The king 'of (the) 'Persians, when (the) Persians were-wresting

τὴν ἀρχὴν παρὰ Μήδων, πολιορκῶν ταύτην,
 the empire from (the) Medes, besieging this (city),

ἐδύνατο οὐδενὶ πρόπῳ ἐλεῖν· δὲ νεφέλη
 could in-no manner take (it); but (a) cloud

προκαλύψασα ἥλιον ἠφάνισε, μέχρι οἱ ἄνθρωποι
 having-covered (the) sun made-it-disappear, until the people

ἐξέλιπον, καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω. Παρὰ ταύτην
 deserted (it), and so it-was-taken. Near this

τὴν πόλιν ἦν λιδίνη πυραμῖς, τὸ εὖρος
 — city there-was (a) stone pyramid, the breadth

μὲν ἑνὸς πλέθρου, δὲ τὸ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων.
indeed (of it was) of-one plethra, and the height of-two plethra.

Ἐπὶ ταύτης ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων
On this (pyramid) there were many of-the barbarians

ἀποπεφευγότες ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν πλησίον. Ἐντεῦδε
having-fled from the villages near. Hence

ἐπορεύθησαν ἓνα σταδμόν, ἕξ παρασάγγας.
they-proceeded one day's-march, (making) six parasangs,

πρὸς μέγα ἔρημον τεῖχος, κείμενον πρὸς τῇ
to (a) large deserted fortress, situated near — (a)

πόλει· δὲ ὄνομα τῇ πόλει ἦν Μέσπιλα·
city; and (the) name (to-the) (of the) city was Mespila;

δὲ Μῆδοι ποτε ὤκουν αὐτήν. Δὲ ἡ κρηπὶς
and (the) Medes formerly inhabited it. And the foundation

μὲν ἦν ξεστοῦ λίθου κονχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος
indeed was of-polished stone (full of) shells, the breadth

πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὕψος
(thereof was) fifty feet, and the height

πεντήκοντα. Ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπωκοδόμητο
fifty (feet). On — this was-constructed — (a)

πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ εὖρος μὲν πενήκοντα
brick wall, the breadth indeed (thereof being) fifty

ποδῶν, δὲ τὸ ὕψος ἑκατόν· δὲ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ
feet, and the height a-hundred; and the circuit of-the

κύκλου ἕξ παρασάγγαι. Ἐντὶ αὐτῇ Μηδία
enclosure (was) six parasangs. Here Media (the)

γυνὴ βασιλέως ἐλέγετο καταφυγῆναι ὅτε Μῆδοι
wife 'of (the) 'king it-is-said took-refuge when (the) Medes

ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν. Δὲ ὁ
were-deprived (of) the empire by (the) Persia But the

βασιλεὺς Περσῶν πολιορκῶν ταύτην πόλιν.
king 'of (the) 'Persians besieging this city 'was

οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἐλεῖν οὔτε χρόνῳ, οὔτε βίᾳ.
not 'able to-take (it) either by-length-of-time, or by-force

Ἰὲ Ζεὺς ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἐμβροντήτους.
but Jupiter made the inhabitants (as it were) thunder-struck

καὶ οὕτως ἐάλω.
and so (the place) was-taken.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἓνα σταδμόν,
Hence — they-proceeded one day's-march, (making

τέτταρας παρασάγγας. Εἰς δὲ τοῦτον τὸν
four parasangs. In — this —

σταδμόν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνε, ἔχων τε
day's-march Tissaphernes appeared, having not-only (the,

ἵππεας οὓς αὐτὸς ἦλθε, καὶ τὴν δύναμιν
cavalry (with) which he came, but-also the force

Ὀρόντου τοῦ ἔχοντος τὴν θυγατέρα
of-Orontes — (he) having (with him) the daughter

βασιλέως, καὶ ἔχων βαρβάρους
'of (the) 'king (in marriage), and having (the) barbarians

οὓς Κῦρος ἀνέβη, καὶ ἔχων οὓς ὁ
whom Cyrus went-up (with), and having (the troops) which the

ἀδελφὸς βασιλέως ἐβοήθει βασιλεῖ, καί,
brother 'of (the) 'king assisted (the) king (with), and,

πρὸς τούτοις, ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ.
besides these, as-many-as (the) king had-given him;

ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα ἐφάνη πάμπολυ. Δ'
so-that the army appeared exceeding γ (large). But

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, μὲν καταστήσας τὰς
when he-came near, (then) indeed having-placed — (some)

τῶν τάξεων ὀπισθεν εἶχε, δὲ παρα-
of — (his) ranks in-the-rear he-kept (them there), but lead-

γαγὼν τὰς ἐμβάλλειν εἰς τὰ
ing — (others) (obliquely) to-throw (them) to the

πλάγια. μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ'
flanks, (though) indeed he-'did not 'dare (to attack) nor

ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεῖν. δὲ παρήγγειλε
did-he-wish to-risk (any thing); but he-ordered

σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
(his men) to-use-their-slugs and bows. When indeed the

Ῥόδιοι διαταχθέντες ἐσφενδόνησαν, καὶ οἱ Σκί-
 Rhodians dispersed-along-the-ranks used-their-slings, and the Scy-
 θαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν
 thian archers used-their-bows, | and no-one failed 'of (a)
 ἀνδρός, (γὰρ οὐδὲ εἰ
 'man, [no one failed to hit a man], (for neither if he-'had
 πάνυ προθυμοῖτο ἦν ῥάδιον,) καὶ ὁ Τις
 very-much 'desired (to do so) was-it easy,) and — Tis-
 σαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἀπεχώρει ἔξω βελῶν,
 saphernes very speedily retreated beyond (the) missiles,
 καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν.
 and the other divisions (of the Persians) (also) retreated.
 Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύ-
 And the rest of-the day the (Greeks) indeed continued
 οντο, δ' οἱ εἶποντο· καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι
 their-march, and the (enemy) followed; and the barbarians
 οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο τότε τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·
 no-longer harassed (them) then with — (their) skirmishing
 γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνων μακρότερον τῶν
 for the Rhodians threw-stones farther (than) the
 Περσῶν καὶ πλείστων τοξοτῶν. Δὲ καὶ τὰ
 Persians, and the-most of-the-bowmen. And also the
 τόξα, τὰ Περσικά, ἐστί μεγάλα· ὥστε ὅποσα
 bows, (namely) the Persian, are large; so-that as-many
 τῶν τοξευμάτων ἀλίσκοιτο ἦν χρήσιμα τοῖς
 of-the arrows as-were-taken (up) were useful to-the
 Κρηδοί· καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοῖς τοξεύμασι
 Cretans, and they-continued using the arrows
 τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἰέντες
 of-the enemy, | and they-practised shooting upwards going
 μακράν.
 far [and they practised shooting these arrows high into the air]
 Δὲ καὶ εὗρίσκετο πολλὰ νεῦρα ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
 And also they-found many bow-strings in the villages
 καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας.
 also 'lead, so-as to-be-used for the slings.

Καὶ μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 And indeed on-that — day, when the Greeks
 ἐπιτυχόντες κώμαις κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο, οἱ
 arriving 'at (the) 'villages encamped, the
 βάρβαροι ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τότε μείον ἐν τῇ
 barbarians departed, having then the-worst in the
 ἐκκροβόλῃ· δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν οἱ Ἕλληνες
 ekkinish; but on-the following day the Greeks
 ἔμειναν, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· γὰρ ἦν πολὺς σῖτος
 remained, and collected-provisions; for there-was much corn
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο
 in the villages. But on-the next-day they-marched
 διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνας εἶπετο ἀκροβο-
 through the plain, and Tissaphernes followed throwing-
 λιζόμενος. Ἐνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν,
 at-them-from-a-distance. Here indeed the Greeks perceived,
 ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον εἶη πονηρὰ τάξις,
 that (a) column of-equal-sides was (a) bad arrangement.
 πολεμίων ἐπομένων. Γὰρ ἦν μὲν τὰ κέρατα
 the) enemy following. For if indeed the wings
 τοῦ πλαισίου συγκύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδοῦ οὐσης
 (or flanks) of-the square close-together, or (the) road being
 στενωτέρας, ἢ ὀρέων ἀναγκαζόντων, ἢ γεφύρας,
 narrow, or mountains forcing, or (a) bridge
 εὐεὶν ἀνάγκη τοῦς ὀπλίτας
 to be passed), it s a-necessity (that) the heavy-armed-men
 ἐκδιβέσθαι, καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως,
 be-pushed-out-of-the places, and march with-difficulty,
 ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, δὲ καὶ ἅμα
 at-the-same-time indee (being) pressed-upon, and also at-the-same-time
 ταραττομένους· ὥστε ἐνάγκη εἶναι
 thrown-into-confusion so-that (from) necessity (they were) to-be
 δυσχρήστους, ὄντας ἀτάκτους. Δ' αὖ ὅταν τὰ
 useless, bing in-confusion. And again when the
 κέρατα διασχῇ, ἀνάγκη τότε τοὺς ἐκδι-
 wings divide, it is-necessary then (that) — (those) pushed

δομένους διασπᾶσθαι, καὶ τὸ μέσον
out-of-their-places 'be (now) 'drawn-asunder, and the middle

τῶν κεράτων γίνεσθαι κενόν, καὶ τοὺς
(between) the wings becomes empty, and —

ταῦτα πάσχοντας ἀδυμεῖν, τῶν
(those) 'being thus 'affected must-become-dispirited, the

πολεμίων ἐπομένων. Καὶ ὁπότε δέοι
enemy following (them). And whenever it-might-be-necessary

διαβαίνειν γέφυραν ἢ τινὰ ἄλλην διάβασιν,
to-go-over (a) bridge or any other crossing-place,

ἕκαστος ἔσπευδε βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος·
each-one hastened desiring to-have-arrived the-first;

καὶ ἦν ἐνταῦθα εὐεπίδετον τοῖς πολεμίοις.
and there-was here a-fine-opportunity-of-attack for-the enemy.

Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔγνωσαν ταῦτα, ἐποίησαν
But when the generals knew this, they-formed

ἕξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ ἐπέστησαι
six companies each-of a-hundred men, and they-appointed

λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἄλλους πεντη-
captains (over these) and (they appointed) others command-

κοντῆρας, καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχας.
ing-fifty (men), and others commanding-five-and-twenty (men)

Οὗτοι λοχαγοὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι,
These captains indeed (with their companies) on-the-march,

ὁπότε μὲν τὰ κέρατα συγκύπτει,
whenever indeed the wings (or flanks of the square) closed,

ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι,
remained behind, so-as not to-disturb the flanks,

δὲ τότε παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων.
and then | they-led-on [defiled] outside the flanks.

Δὲ ὁπότε αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου διάσχοιεν
But whenever the flanks of-the square might-open

ἀνεξεπίμπλασαν τὸ μέσον, εἰ μὲν τὸ διέχον εἶη
they-filled-up the middle, if indeed the separating was

στενώτερον κατὰ λόχους· δὲ εἰ πλατύτερον κατὰ
narrow by companies; but if somewhat-wide by

πεντηκοστῦς, δὲ εἰ πάνν πλατύ κατ' ἑκαμυταίς
fifties, and if very wide by twenty-fives.

ὥστε τὸ μέσον ἀεὶ εἶναι ἔκπλεων. Εἰ δὲ καὶ
so-as (for) the middle always to-be full. If indeed also

δέοι διαβαίνειν τινὰ διάβασιν ἢ
it-might-be-necessary to-go-through any passage-or-crossing or (over a)

έφυραν, οὐκ ἑταράττοντο, ἀλλ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ
bridge, they-'were not 'thrown-into-confusion, but the captains

διέβαινον ἐν τῷ μέρει· καὶ εἰ
(with their companies) went-over in — succession; and if

τι δέοι που τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗτοι
any-thing was-wanted any-where (in) the phalanx, these

ἐπιπαρήσαν. Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν
were-at-hand. In-this — order they-proceeded

τέτταρας σταδμούς. Δὲ ἤνίκα ἐπορεύοντο τοὶ
four days'-march. But when they-were-proceeding on-the

πέμπτον, εἶδον τι βασίλειον, καὶ περὶ
fifth (day's march), they-saw a-kind-of palace, and around

αὐτὸ πολλάς κώμας, δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς
it (there were) many villages, and the road to

τὸ τοῦτο χωρίον γιγνομένην διὰ ὑψηλῶν γηλόφων,
— this place lying over high hills,

οἱ καθεῖκον ἀπὸ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ
which reached-down from (a) mountain at (the foot of), which was the

κώμη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἄσμενοι εἶδον τοὺς
village. And indeed the Greeks rejoicing saw the

γηλόφους, ὥς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων
hills, as (was) natural, (the forces) of-the enemy

ὄντων ἱππέων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
being cavalry. When indeed proceeding from the

πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν τρῶτον γήλοφον, καὶ
plain they-ascended on-to the first hill, and (then)

κατέβαινον ὥς ἀναβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον.
they-commenced-descending so-as to-ascend on-to the next.

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπίγιγνονται, καὶ ἀπο
Here the barbarians came-upon (them), and from

τοῦ ἰψηλοῦ ἔβαλλον εἰς τὰ πικνῆς,
 the high (ground) they-threw to the places-below, (and)
 ἐσφενδύων ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων. Καὶ
 used-their-slings (and) shot-their-arrows, under (the) lash. And
 ἐτίτρωσκον πολλοὺς καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν γυμ-
 they-wounded many, and they-had-the-advantage of-the light-
 νήτων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω
 armed Greeks, and 'shut them 'up within
 τῶν ὀπλων, ὥστε ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ
 the heavy-armed-men, so-that on-that — (same) day both
 οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἦσαν παντάπασι
 the slingers and the archers were entirely
 ἄχρηστοι, ὄντες ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ. Δὲ
 useless, being among the crowd (of camp-followers). But
 ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες πιεζόμενοι ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν
 when the Greeks hard-pressed attempted to-pursue
 μὲν ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον σχολῇ, ὄντες
 indeed they-arrived at the summit (but) slowly, being
 ὀπλῖται, δὲ οἱ πολέμοιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. Δὲ
 heavy-armed, but the enemy speedily sprang-down. And
 πάλιν, ὅποτε ἠτίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα,
 again, when they-went-back to the rest (of the) army,
 ἐπασχον ταῦτά· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου
 they-suffered the-same; and at the second hill
 ταῦτά ἐγίγνετο· ὥστε ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ
 the-same-things occurred; so-that it-seemed (proper) to-them not
 κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου,
 to-move the soldiers from the third hill.
 πρὶν ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς
 before they-had-led-up targeteers from the right flank
 τοῦ πλαισίου πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
 of-the square on-to the mountain. When indeed these
 ἐγενοντο ἵπερ τῶν ἐπομένων πολεμίων, οἱ πολέμοιοι
 nad-got above the pursuing enemy, the enemy
 οὐκέτι ἐπετίδεντο τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδο-
 no-longer attacked the (Greeks) descending, having

κότες μὴ ἀποτμηθεῖναι, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
 feared lest they-might-be-cut-off, and the enemy [the Greeks
 γένοιτο αὐτῶν ἀμφοτέρωθεν. Πορεῖ-
 might-be-on them [the Persians] from-both-sides. March-
 ὄντες οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας, οἱ μὲν
 ng thus for-the rest of-the day, — (some) indeed
 τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ
 on-the road over the hills, — (others) however
 ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὸ ὄρος, ἀφίκοντο εἰς
 marching-along (them) over the mountain, they-arrived at
 τὰς κώμας, καὶ κατέστησαν ὀκτώ ἰατροὺς· γὰρ
 the villages, and they-appointed eight surgeons; for
 ἦσαν πολλοὶ τετρωμένοι.
 there-were many wounded.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἔνεκα
 Here they-remained three days, both on-account
 τῶν τετρωμένων, καὶ εἶχον ἅμα
 of-the wounded, and (because) they-had at-the-same-time
 πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, καὶ πολλὰς
 much provisions, (namely) wheat-flour, wine, and much
 κριθὰς συμβεβλημένας ἵπποις. Δὲ ταῦτα
 barley having-been-laid-up for-horses. For this (barley)
 ἦν συνενηνεγμένα τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς
 was collected for-the (person) being-satrap of-the
 χώρας. Δὲ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταβαίνουσιν εἰς
 country. But on-the-fourth day they-went-down to
 τὸ πεδίον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης κατέλαβεν
 the plain. When however Tissaphernes overtook
 αὐτοὺς σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἡ ἀνάγκη ἐδίδαξεν
 them with — (his) force, — necessity taught
 αὐτοὺς κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην,
 them to-encamp where first they-saw (a) village,
 καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· γὰρ ἦσαν
 and not to-march-on still fighting; for there-were
 πολλοὶ ἀπόμαχοι, οἱ τετρωμένοι, καὶ
 many unfit-for-action, (namely) — (those) wounded, and

οἱ φέροντες ἐκείνους καὶ οἱ δεξά-
 — (those) carrying those (wounded), and — (those) having-re-
 μενοὶ τὰ ὅπλα τῶν φερόντων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 ceived the arms of — (those) carrying. When indeed

κατεσκήνησαν, καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι προσιόντες πρὸς
 they-encamped, and the barbarians coming-up to

τὴν κώμην ἐπεχείρησαν ἀκροβολίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
 the village attempted to-skirmish with-them,

οἱ Ἕλληνες πολὺ περιῆσαν· γὰρ διέφερε
 the Greeks 'had greatly 'the-advantage; for it-differed

πολὺ ὀρμῶντες ἐκ χώρας ἀλέξασθαι,
 much (that) rushing from (their own) ground they-repelled

ἢ πορευόμενοι μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολε-
 [an attack), or (that) marching-along they-fought the ene-

μίοις ἐπιούσι. Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δεί-
 my coming-upon (them). When indeed it-was now late-in-the

λη, ἦν ὥρα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπιέναι· γὰρ οἱ
 afternoon, it-was time for-the enemy to-depart; for the

βάρβαροι οὐποτε ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο μείον
 barbarians never encamped at-a-less (distance

τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἐξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβού-
 from-the Grecian (camp) (than) sixty stadia, fear-

μενοι μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιδῶνται αὐτοῖς τῆς
 ing lest the Greeks might-attack them (in) the

νυκτὸς. Γὰρ Περσικόν στρατεύμα ἐστὶ πονηρὸν
 night. For (a) Persian army is (a) miserable

νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς
 thing) at-night; for not-only 'are — (their) horses

δέδενται, καὶ ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι
 'tied, but-also (as) for the most (part) have-been-tied-by-

εἰσι· ἔνεκα τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν
 the-feet | on-account the not to-run-away [to prevent them running

εἰ λυθείησαν· ἐάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται,
 away] if they-were-let-loose, if also any alarm should-occur,

δεῖ Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ ἐπισάξαι
 it-becomes-necessary 'for (the) 'Persian man to-put-the-housings

τὸν ἵππὸν, καὶ δεῖ χαλινῶσαι, καὶ
on-the horse, and it-is-necessary to-bridle (him), and
θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Δὲ
having-put-on-armour to-mount on the horse. But

πάντα ταῦτα χαλεπὰ ποιεῖν νύκτωρ,
all these (things) (are) difficult to-perform by-night,
καὶ ὄντος θορύβου. Ὕνεκα
[and there-being (an) alarm [when there is an alarm]. On-account

τούτου ἀπεσκήνουν πόρρω τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
of-this they-encamped-at-a-distance far-from the Greeks.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοῖς
But when the Greeks knew (that) they

βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους,
were-desiring to-depart and announcing (the same),

ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι, τῶν
it-was-proclaimed to-the Greeks to-collect-their-baggage, the

πολεμίων ἀκούντων. Καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν
enemy hearing (it). And the barbarians indeed

τινα χρόνον ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας· δὲ ἐπειδὴ
for-some time retarded the march; but when

ἐγίγνετο ὅψ' ἀπῆεσαν. Γὰρ οὐκ ἐδόκει
it-became late they-went-away. For it-'did not 'seem

λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι, καὶ κατὰγεσθαι
to-be-expedient to-them to-march, and arrive

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτός. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ
at the camp by-night. When indeed the

Ἕλληνες ἤδη ἑώραν σαφῶς ἀπιόντας, καὶ
Greeks now saw (them) evidently departing, also

αἱ τοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες, καὶ διῆλθον ὅσοι
they-themselves having-decamped, even passed-over as-much-as

ἑξήκοντα σταδίου. Καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον
sixty stadia. And there-became such (an)

μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων, ὥστε τῇ ὑστε-
interval (between) the armies, that on-the next

ραία οἱ πολέμοι οὐκ ἐφάνησαν, οὐδὲ τῇ
day the enemy 'did not 'appear, nor on-the

τρίτη· δὲ τῇ τετάρτῃ οἱ βάρβαροι προελθόντες
third; but on-the fourth the barbarians having-gone-forward

νυκτὸς καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον,
in-the-night occupied (a) place above-on-the-right,

ἣ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔμελλον παρίεναι ἀκρωνυχίον
by-which the Greeks had to-pass on-the-brow

ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἦν ἡ κατάβασις εἰς
'of (the) 'mountain, beneath which was the descent to

τὸ πεδίον. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ Χειρίσοφος ἑώρα τὴν
the plain. But when Cheirisophus saw the

ἀκρωνυχίαν προκατειλημμένην, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα
eminence pre-occupied, he-calls-for Xenophon

ἀπὸ τῆς οἰῶς, καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς
from the rear, and orders (him that) taking the

πελταστάς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. Ὁ δὲ
targeteers to-advance to the front. — But

Ξενοφῶν μὲν οὐκ ἤγε τοὺς πελταστάς, (γὰρ
Xenophon indeed 'did not 'bring the targeteers, (for

ἑώρα Τισσαφέρνην ἐπιφαινόμενον, καὶ πᾶν τὸ
he-saw Tissaphernes appearing, and all — (his)

στράτευμα,) αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἡρώτα· Τί
army,) he-himself indeed having-ridden-up inquired: Why

καλεῖς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἐξεστίν
do-you-call (me)? But — (Cheirisophus) said to-him: You-may

ὄραν· γὰρ ὁ λόφος ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως προκα-
see; for the eminence above the descent has-been-

τείληπται ἡμῖν, καὶ ἔστι οὐ παρελθεῖν,
pre-occupied against-us, and it-is not (possible) to-pass (it),

εἰ μὴ ἀποκόψομεν τούτους Ἀλλὰ τί
— unless we-cut-off those (on it). But why did-'you

οὐκ ἤγες τοὺς πελταστάς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει,
not 'bring the targeteers? But — (Xenophon) replies,

ὅτι οὐκ ἑδόκει αὐτῷ καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὀπισθεν
that it-'did not 'seem-right to-him to-leave the rear

ἔρημα, πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἀλλὰ
destitute (of defence), (the) enemy appearing. But

μὲν ἔφη ὧρα γε βουλευέσθαι πῶς τις
 indeed said-he (it is) time at-least to-consider how some
 ἀπελαῖ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου
 (of us) will-drive — (these) men from the hill.
 Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τὴν κορυφὴν τοῦ
 Here Xenophon perceives the summit of-the
 ὄρους οὕσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος
 mountain (as) being above the army (of the Per-
 εαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον
 himself, and from this (place) (there was) (an) approach
 ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν, καὶ λέγει·
 to the hill, where the enemy were, and he-says:
 Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἵεσθαι ὥς
 (It is) best, O Cheirisophus, for-us to-go as
 τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· γὰρ ἦν
 quick-as-possible on-to the summit (of the mountain); for if
 λάβωμεν τοῦτο, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ οὐ
 we-take this, — (those) above the road 'will not
 δυνήσονται μένειν. Ἀλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ
 'be-able to-remain. But, if you-wish, remain with
 τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐδέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ
 the army, I indeed wish to-go-forward; if
 δέ χρήζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, δὲ ἐγὼ
 indeed you-want-it, proceed on-to the mountain, and I
 μὲν αὐτοῦ. Ἀλλὰ δίδωμι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρί-
 will-remain here. But I-allow you, said — Cheiri-
 σοφης, ἐλέσθαι ὁπότερον βούλει. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 sophus, to-choose which-of-the-two you-wish. — Xenophon
 εἰπὼν ὅτι ἐστὶν νεώτερος αἰρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,
 replying that (as) he-is the-younger it-becomes (him) to-proceed,
 δὲ κελεύει συμπέμψαι οἱ ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
 and he-requests to-have-sent (with himself) — men from the
 στόματος· γὰρ ἦν μακρὸν λαβεῖν ἀπὸ
 front; for it-was (a) long (way) to-take (them) from
 τῆς οὐράς. Καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς
 the rear. And — Cheirisophus sends-with (him) the

πελταστάς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος· ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς
targeteers from the front; he-took also the

κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. Δ' ἐκέλευσε
(targeteers) in (the) middle of-the square And he-ordered

καὶ συνέπεσδαι αὐτῷ τοὺς τριακοσίους, οὓς
also to-follow him the three hundred, (men) whom

αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ
he-himself had of-the picked-men in the front of-the

πλαισίου

square.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύναντο.

Hence they-marched-forward as speedily-as they-could.

Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου, ὡς ἐνόησαν τὴν
But the enemy on the eminence, when they-perceived the

πορείαν αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐδὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ
march of-these towards the summit, directly also they

ὤρμησαν ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
rushed to-contend for the summit. And here

ἦν μὲν πολλὴ κραυγὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύ-
was indeed (a) great shout from-the Grecian ar-

ματος, διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, δὲ
my, cheering-on — (those) of-their-men, and

πολλὴ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην
much shouting | from — (those) about Tissaphernes [from the

διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν.
army of Tissaphernes] cheering-on — (those) of-their-men.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν παρελάνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρε-
But Xenophon riding-along on — (a) horse en-

κελεύετο· Νομίζετε, Ἄνδρες, νῦν
couraged (his men): Consider, O men, (that) now (you are)

ἀμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς
to-contend for — Greece, now for — (your)

παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν πονήσαντες
children and — (your) wives, now having-laboured

ὀλίγον πορευσόμεθα τὴν λοιπὴν ὁμαχεί.
a-little we-shall-march the rest (of the way) without-fighting

Δὲ Σωτηρίδης ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Ἐσμέν οὐκ ἐξ
But Soterides the Sicyonian said: We-are not

ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν· γὰρ σὺ μὲν ὀχεῖ ἐφ'
an-equality, O Xenophon; for you indeed are-carried on (a)

ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ κάμνω χαλεπῶς, φέρων τὴν
horse, I however labour grievously, carrying — (my)

ἀσπίδα. Καὶ ὅς, ἀκούσας ταῦτα, καταπηδήσας
shield. And who, hearing this, having-leaped

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠδεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως,
from — (his) horse, pushed him from the ranks,

καὶ ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα, ἐπορεύετο ἔχων
and taking — (his) shield, he-proceeded, having (it),

ὥς τάχιστα ἐδύνατο. Ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ ἔχων
as speedily-as he-was-able. He-happened — also having (a)

θώρακα τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστε
corselet (on) (namely, that peculiar to) the cavalry; so-that

ἐπιέζετο. Καὶ μὲν παρεκελεύετο τοῖς
he-was-oppressed. Yet however he-continued-to-exhort — (those)

ἐμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν, δὲ τοῖς ὀπισθεν, ἐπο-
in-front to-lead-on-gently, and — (those) in-the-rear, fol-

μένους μόλις παριέναι. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
lowing with-difficulty to-come-up. But the other soldiers

παίουσι, καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτη-
beat, and throw-at and revile — Sote-

ρίδην, ἔστε ἡνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα
rides, until they-obliged (him) taking — (his) shield

πορεύεσθαι. Δὲ ὁ ἀναβάς ἕως
to-march-forward. But — (Xenophon) having-remounted as-long-as

μεῖ ἦν βάσιμα ἤγεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου,
indeed it-was passable (for a horse) led-the-way on horse-back,

δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἄβατα, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον
but when it-was impassable, leaving — (his) horse

ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. Καὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ
he-hastened-along on-foot. And having-got on to-the summit

φθάνουσι τοὺς πολεμίους.
they-occupy (it) (before) the enemy.

CHAPTER V.

Ἐνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφειγον
 THEN truly indeed the barbarians having-turned fled
 ἣ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
 (by the way) which each-one could, and the Greeks
 εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. Οἱ δὲ ἅμφι Τισ-
 held the summit. | — (Those) indeed about [the armies of] Tis-
 σαφέρην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ὥχοντο
 saphernes and Ariæus having-turned-aside went-off
 ἄλλην ὁδόν. Οἱ δὲ ἅμφι Χειρίσοφον κατα-
 another way. — (Those) indeed about Cheirisophus de-
 βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ
 ascending encamped in (a) village filled (with)
 πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἄλλαι
 many good (things). And also there-were other
 κῶμαι, ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν·
 villages in this — plain along the river
 Τίγρητα, πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δ' ἥνικα
 Tigris, full of-many good (things). But, when
 ἦν δεῖλη οἱ πολέμοι ἐξατίνης ἐπιφαί-
 it-was late-in-the-afternoon, the enemy suddenly ap-
 νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ κατέκοψάν τινες τῶν
 pear in the plain, and cut-off some of-the
 Ἑλλήνων ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καδ' ἄρπα-
 Greeks dispersed in the plain for plun-
 γήν· γὰρ καὶ πολλαὶ νομαὶ βοσκημάτων
 der; for also many herds of-cattle
 κατελήφθησαν διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ
 were-seized (that were about) to-have-been-transported to the
 πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρης
 opposite-side of-the river. Here Tissaphernes

καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπεχείρησαν καίειν τὰς
and — (those) with him attempted to-burn the
κώμας. Καὶ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἥδύ-
villages. And some of-the Greeks 'were much 'dis

μησαν, ἐννοούμενοι μὴ, εἰ καίοιεν
heartened, being-apprehensive lest, if they-burned (the villages) they-

οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν τὰ
'would not 'have (a place) whence they-might-procure —

ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον
provisions. | And — (those) indeed about Cheirisophus

ἀπήσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας
[Cheirisophus and his men] returned from (giving) — assistance;

ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς
but Xenophon, when he-came-down, riding-past the

τάξεις, ἥνίκα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπήντησαν ἀπὸ
ranks, when the Greeks came-back from (giving)

τῆς βοηθείας, ἔλεγεν· Ὁρᾶτε, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες,
— assistance, said: You-see, O Grecian men,

ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν εἶναι ἤδη
(the enemy) conceding (that) the country is now

ἡμετέραν· γὰρ ἃ, ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο, διεπράτ-
ours: for that-which, when they-made-the-truce, they-stipu-

τοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν χώραν βασιλέως. νῦν
lated-for, not to-burn the country 'of (the) 'king. now

αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὥς ἄλλότριαν.
they-themselves burn (it) as (if it belonged to) another.

Ἄλλ' ἐάν γε που καταλιπῶσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
But if at-least any-where they-leave — provisions

ὑποῖς ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς πορευομένους ἐνταῦθα.
for-themselves they-will-see even us proceeding thither

Ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι
But O Cheirisophus, said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought

βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας, ὥς ὑπὲρ τῆς
to-give-assistance against — (those) burning, as for — (our)

ἡμετέρας. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὐ-
own-country. — But Cheirisophus said. It-'does not therefore

δοκε ἔμοιγε ἄλλα, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς καίωμεν,
seem (so) to-me-at-least: but, said-he, 'let us 'burn

καὶ οὕτω θᾶπτον παύσονται.
and so they-'will the-sooner 'cease.

Δε ἐπεὶ ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνας οἱ
But when they-went-away to — (their) tents the

ἄλλοι ἦσαν μὲν
rest : of the army, being the private soldiers,) were indeed (occupied,

περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, δὲ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
about the provisions. but (the) generals and (the) captains

συνῆλθον. Καὶ ἦν πολλὴ ἀπορία
convened-together (in council). And there-was much perplexity

ἐνταῦθα. Γὰρ μὲν ἔνθεν ἦν ὄρη ὑπερί-
here. For indeed from-here there-were mountains exceeding-

ψηλα, δὲ ἔνθεν ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος τό,
high, but from-there — (a) river (having) so-great — (a)

βάθος, ὥς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν
depth, so-that not-even the spears were-above (the water)

πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους. Δὲ τις ἀνὴρ
(to those) making-trial of-the depth. But a-certain man

Ῥόδιος προσελθὼν αὐτοῖς ἀπορουμένοις εἶπεν·
(a) Rhodian coming-to them (thus) perplexed said

Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ
I will, O men, have-'crossed you 'ver 'by

τετρακισχιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἂν ὑπηρετήσητε
four-thousand heavy-armed-men 'at-a-time, if you-will-supply

ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι, καὶ πορίσητε τάλαντον
me with-what I-want, and will-furnish (me) (a) talent (as a)

μισθόν. Δὲ ἐρωτώμενος οὗτο δέοιτο· Δεήσομαι,
recompense. But being-asked what he-might-require: I-shall-want,

ἔφη, διςχιλίων ἀσκῶν· δ' ὁρῶ πολλὰ πρόβατα
said-he, two-thousand hides-for-bags; and I-see many sheep

καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ, ἀποδαρέντα
and goats and oxen and asses, which, having-been-skinned

καὶ φουσηθέντα, ἂν ῥαδίως παρέχοι τὴν
and blown-out, might easily furnish the (means of)

διάβασιν. Δὲ καὶ δεήσομαι τῶν δεσμῶν, οἷς
crossing. And also I-shall-want the cords, which

χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τοῦτοις ζεύξας τοὺς
you-use about the baggage-cattle; with-these having-joined the

ἄσκους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὀρμίσας ἕκαστον ἄσκον
bags to one-another, having-stretched each bag,

ἰδούς ἀρτήσας, καὶ ἀφεῖς
stones (having-been-suspended (from it), and having-'let (them) 'down

ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὼν
like anchors into the water, having-'extended (the bags) 'across

καὶ δήσας ἀμφοτέρωθεν, ἐπιβαλῶ
and having-secured (them) to-both (banks), I-will-'put

ὑλην, καὶ ἐπιφορήσω γῆν. Ὅτι
wood 'on (them), and will-'throw earth 'over (the wood). That

οὖν μὲν οὐ καταδύσεσθε, μάλα
therefore indeed you-'will not 'be-sunk, | (as) you-'will much

αὐτίκα εἴσεσθε· γὰρ πᾶς
immediately 'see; [as you will at once perceive;] for every

ἄσχος ἔξει δύο ἄνδρας τοῦ μὴ καταδῖναι·
skin | will-keep two men from-the not to-be-sunk; [will

δεῖ ἢ ὑλὴ καὶ ἢ γῆ
keep two men from sinking;] and the wood and the earth

σχήσει ὥστε μὴ ὀλισθάνειν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,
will-keep (them) so-as not to-fall-off. To-the generals,

ἀκούσασι ταῦτα, τὸ ἐνδύμημα μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι
having-heard this, the contrivance indeed seemed to-be

χάριεν, δὲ τὸ ἔργον ἀδύνατον· γὰρ ἦσαν πέ-
ingenious, but the execution impossible; for there-were on-the

ραν πολλοὶ ἵππεις οἱ κωλύσοντες,
other-side many horsemen — (those) would-be-disputing (their pas-

οἱ εὐδὺς ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τοῖς πρώτοις
age), (and) who immediately would permit the first (or

ποιεῖν οὐδὲν τούτων. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν
(foremost) to-do none of-these (things). Thence indeed

τὴν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοῦμπαλιν.
in-the next-day they-slowly-began-to-retreat — back-again

τῇ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα, εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους
 by-the (road) towards Babylon, to the unburnt
 κώμας, κατακαύσαντες ἐνθεν ἐξήεσαν· ὥστε
 villages, having-burnt (those) whence they-departed; so-that
 οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσέλαινον, ἀλλὰ ἐδε-
 the enemy 'did not 'come-up (to them), but continued-
 ὦντο, καὶ ἦσαν ὅμοιοι θαυμάζειν
 observing (them), and they-were like to-wonder [and they won-
 ὅποι ποτὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πρέψονται, καὶ
 dered] where at-any-time the Greeks would-turn-themselves, and
 τί ἔχοιεν ἐν νῷ. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι
 what they-might-have in (their) mind. There indeed the rest
 στρατιῶται ἦσαν ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
 (of the) soldiers were (occupied) about — provisions;
 δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον,
 but the generals and the captains again assembled
 καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἐαλωκότας,
 (in council), and having-brought-together — (those) taken-prisoners,
 ἤλεγχον πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν κύκλῳ,
 they-questioned (them about) all the country in-a-circle (round
 τίς ἐκάστη εἶη. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον,
 about them) that each (part) might-be. And — (they) said,
 ὅτι τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν εἶη τῆς
 that the (parts) indeed towards (the) south were — (those
 ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα καὶ Μηδίαν δι' ἧς περ
 towards Babylon and Media through which 'they (the Greeks)
 ἦκοιεν· ἡ δὲ ἡ πρὸς ἑὼ φέροι ἐπὶ Σοῦσά
 'had-come; and — (that) towards (the) east led to Susa
 τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα ἐνθα βασιλεὺς λέγεται
 — and Ecbatana where (the) king is-said
 θερίζειν καὶ ἐαρίζειν· δὲ ἡ διαβάντι τὸν
 to-spend-the summer and spring; and the (road) going-across the
 ποταμὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν φέροι ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ
 river towards (the) west led to Lydia and
 Ἰωνίαν· δὲ ὅτι ἡ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ τετραμμένη
 Ionia; and that the (road) over the mountains and winding

πρὸς ἄρκτον ἄγοι εἰς Καρδούχους. Δὲ ἔφασαι
to (the) north might-lead to (the) Carduchi. And they-said

τούτους οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη,
(that) these (people) dwell (scattered) over the mountains,

καὶ εἶναι πολεμικοὺς, καὶ οἷκ ἀκούειν
and are warlike, and 'do not 'obey (the)

βασιλέως· ἀλλὰ καὶ ποτε βασιλικήν
king; but (that) even once (a) royal

στρατιάν, δώδεκα μυριάδας, ἐμβαλεῖν
army, (of) twelve ten-thousand [120,000] (men), attacked

εἰς αὐτοὺς· δὲ οὐδένα τούτων ἀπονοστήσαι
— them; but (that) not-one of-them returned

διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. Ὅποτε μέντοι
on-account-of the difficulties-of-the-country. When however

σπεύσαιντο πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν ἐν
they-made-a-treaty with the satrap — (he who dwelt) in

τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ σφῶν ἐπιμιγνύναι
the plain, (that) also some-of-those (of the plain) had-intercourse

τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων
— with those (mountaineers) and some-of-these (mountaineers)

πρὸς ἑαυτούς.
with those (of the plain).

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκάθισαν
The generals having-heard these (things) placed

χωρὶς τοὺς φάσκοντας εἰδέναι
apart — (those) saying (that) they-knew (the road)

ἐκασταχόσε, ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν δῆλον, ὅποι ἐμελλον
in-each-direction, making no-one certain, whither they-intended

πορεύεσθαι. Ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι
to-proceed. It-seemed however to-the generals to-be

ἀναγκαῖον ἐμβάλλειν διὰ τῶν ὀρέων εἰς
necessary to-force-their-way over the mountains into (the coun-

Καρδούχους· γὰρ ἔφασαν διελθόντας
try of the) Carduchi; for they-said (that) having-passed-through

τούτους ἥξειν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν πολλῆς
these (that) they-would-come into Armenia (it being) large

καὶ εὐδαίμονος, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἤρχε. Δ' ἐντεῦθεν
and rich, (and) which Orontes governed. And whence

ἔφασαν εἶναι εὐπορον πορεύεσθαι
they-said (that it would) be an-easy-thing (for-them) to-proceed

τις ὅποι ἐδέλοι Ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐδύ-
any where they-might-wish. With-reference to-these (things) they-

σαντο, ὅπως ὀπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς
sacrificed, in-order-that when it-'might even 'seem (to be) the

ᾠρας ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν (γὰρ
time they-'might (begin to) 'make the march (for

ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὄρέων
they-feared lest the passage-over the mountains

προκαταληφθεῖν) καὶ παρήγγειλαν
might-be-pre-occupied) (by the enemy); and they-announced (that)

ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν πάντα συνεσκευ-
when (the soldiers) had-supped (that) all having-packed-

ασμένους ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἔπεσθαι
up-their-baggage are-to-go-to-rest, and to-follow (their leaders)

ἵνῃκα τις ἂν παραγγείλῃ.
when any 'signal might 'be-given.

BOOK IV.

CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ ἀναβίσει
 WHAT indeed really happened in the expedition-up-the-country

μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην
 till the battle, and what (occurred) after the battle

ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἃς βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 during the truce, which (the) king and the Greeks

ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα,
 going-up with Cyrus made, and what, (the)

βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους παραβάντος τὰς
 king and Tissaphernes having-broken the

σπονδὰς, ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, τοῦ
 truce, war-was-waged against the Greeks, the

Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπακολουδοῦντος
 Persian army pursuing (them),

δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 has-been-related in the preceding discourse.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο, ἔνθα μὲν ὁ ποταμὸς Τίγρης
 But when they-arrived, where indeed the river Tigris

ἦν παντάπασιν ἀπορος διὰ τὸ βάθος
 is altogether impassable on-account-of — (its great) depth

καὶ μέγεθος, δὲ ἦν οὐ πάροδος
 and size, and there-was no passage (along the banks),

ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη ἐκρέματο ἀπότομα
 as-indeed the Carduchian mountains hung steep

ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς
 over this — river, it-seemed truly (therefore) to-the

στρατηγοῖς εἶναι πορευτέον διὰ τῶν ὄρεων.
generals to-be necessary-to-march over the mountains.

Γὰρ ἤκουον τῶν ἀλισκομένων, ὅτι, εἰ
For they-had-heard — (from those) made-prisoners, that, if

διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη, διαβήσονται τὰς
they-should-cross the Carduchian mountains, they-might-ford the

πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ,
sources of-the river Tigris in — Armenia,

ἣν μὲν βούλωνται, δὲ ἣν βούλωνται μὴ,
if indeed they-wished (to do so), but if they-wished not

περίασι. Καὶ τε ἐλέγετο
(to do so), 'they (might) 'go-round (them). And also it-was-said

τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Εὐφράτου εἶναι οὐ πρόσω
(that) the sources of-the Euphrates were not far

τοῦ Τίγρητος, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον.
from-the Tigris, | and it-is so having [and it is

Δὲ ποιοῦνται ἐμβολὴν εἰς τοὺς
really so]. And they-make (the) irruption into the (terri-

Καρδούχους ὧδε, πειρώμενοι ἅμα
tory of the) Carduchi in-this-manner, endeavouring at-the-same-time

μὲν λαθεῖν δὲ ἅμα φθα-
indeed to-have-concealed (their march) and-also at-the-same-time to-anti-

σαι τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν καταλαβεῖν τὰ
cipate the enemy before (that) they-have-occupied the

ἄκρα. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν
heights. When indeed it-was about the last

φυλακὴν, καὶ ἐλείπετο ὅσον τῆς νυκτὸς
watch, and there-was-left as-much of-the night (as)

διελθεῖν τὸ πεδῖον σκοταίους, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάν-
to-pass-over the plain in-the-dark, then rising-

τες, ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικ-
up, (and) at the-word-of-command marching-forth they

νοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς
arrived at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day at

τὸ ὄρος.
the mountain.

Ἐνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο τοι
 Here indeed Cheirisophus — took-the-lead of-the
 στρατεύματος, λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αἰτὸν
 army, taking (with him) — (those) about him
 καὶ πάντας τοὺς γυμνήτας. δὲ Ξενοφῶνι
 and all the light-armed-men; but Xenophon
 εἶπετο σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις ὀπισθοφύλαξιν, ἔχων
 followed with the heavy-armed rear-guard, having
 οὐδένα γυμνῆτα· γὰρ ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδεὶς
 not-one light-armed-man; for there-seemed to-be no
 κίνδυνος, μή τις ἐπισποῖτο ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν,
 fear, lest any-one might-pursue from — behind,
 πορευομένων ἄνω. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν
 (they) marching upwards. And Cheirisophus indeed
 ἀναβαίνει ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, πρὶν τινὰ τῶν
 went-up on-to the summit, before (that) any-one of-the
 πολεμίων αἰσδέσθαι. Δ' ἔπειτα ὑφηγεῖτο
 enemy perceived (him). But then led-forward-slowly.
 δὲ τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀεὶ ὑπερ-
 and the (part) of-the army from-time-to-time passing-
 βάλλον ἐφείπετο, εἰς τὰς κώμας
 over (the summit) continued-following (him), into the villages
 τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκυσι τε καὶ μιχοῖς
 (namely) — (those) in the narrow-valleys and also 'in (the) 'recesses
 τῶν ὄρεων.
 of-the mountains.

Ἐνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ἐκλιπόντες τὰς
 Then truly indeed the Carduchi, having-left —
 οἰκίας, καὶ ἔχοντες γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας,
 (their) dwellings, and having (their) wives and children
 ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ πολλὰ τὰ
 fled on-to the mountains. There-was indeed much —
 ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνειν· δὲ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν
 provisions to-take; and also — (their) dwellings were
 κατεσκευασμένοι παμπόλλοις χαλκώμασι, ὧν οἱ
 furnished with-a-great-many brazen-utensils, of-which the

Ἕλληνες ἔφερον οὐδέν, οὐδὲ ἐδίωκον τοὺς
Greeks took-away none, nor did-they-pursue the

ἀνθρώπους, ἰπορειδόμενοι, εἰ οἱ
people, sparing (them), as-if (to try whether) the

Καρδοῦχοι ἐδελήσειαν πῶς αὐτοὺς διέναι
Carduchi 'would by-any-means 'let them pass-through

ὥς διὰ τῆς φιλίας χώρας ἐπείπερ ἦσαν
as through — (a) friendly country in-as-much-as they-were

πολέμιοι βασιλεῖ. Μέντοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
enemies 'to (the) 'king. However the provisions,

ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυχάνοι,
[to-which any-one might-arrive, [which any one might obtain,]

ἐλάμβανον· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη. Δὲ οἱ
they-took; for it-was (a) necessity (to do so). But the

Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε ὑπήκουον, καλούντων, οὔτε ἐποί-
Carduchi neither listened, being-called-on, nor did-they

ουν οὐδὲν ἄλλο φιλικόν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
make any-one other friendly (demonstration). But when the

τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας
rear — of-the Greeks were-descending into the villages

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι (γὰρ δια
from the eminence (it being) now somewhat-dark (for on-account-of

τὴν ὁδὸν τὸ εἶναι στενὴν ἢ ἀνάβασις καὶ κατὰβασις
the road — being narrow, the ascent and descen-

εἰς τὰς κώμας ἐγένετο αὐτοῖς
to the villages happened for-them (to be the occupation of)

τὴν ὅλην ἡμέραν)· τότε δὴ τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων
the entire day); then indeed some of-the Carduchi,

συλλεγέντες ἐπέδεντο τοῖς τελευταίοις, καὶ
collecting-together attacked the hindmost, and

ἀπέκτεινάν τινας, καὶ κατέτρωσαν λίθους
they-killed some, and worried (them with) stones

καὶ τοξεύμασι, ὄντες ὀλίγοι, γὰρ
and arrows, (they, the Carduchi,) being few, for

τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἐπέπεσε ἐξ ἀπροσδοκῆτοι.
the Grecian (army) had-come-on (them) — suddenly

Εἰ μέντοι τότε συνελέγησαν πλείους
 If however then they-had-assembled more (numerous) (a)
 πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν
 great (part) of-the army would-have-been-in-danger —
 διαφθαρεῖν. Καὶ οὕτω μὲν τὴν νύκτα
 to-have-been-destroyed And so indeed — (that) night
 ἠϋλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· δὲ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι
 they-lodged in the villages; and the Carduchi
 ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὄρεων, καὶ
 burned many fires in-a-circle on the mountains, and
 συνεώρων ἀλλήλους. Ἄμα δὲ
 observed (the position of) one-another. At-the-same-time indeed
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
 with-the (break of) day it-seemed (best) to-the generals and
 λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνελθοῦσι,
 captains of-the Greeks having-assembled-in-council,
 πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας τε τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ
 to-march-forth having also (only) the necessary and
 δυνατώτατα τῶν ὑποζυγίων, καταλιπόντας τᾶλλα,
 strongest of-the baggage-cattle, leaving-behind the-rest,
 καὶ ὅποσα ἀνδράποδα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα
 and as-many slaves (as) were recently captured,
 ἀφεῖναι πάντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Γὰρ τὰ
 to-dismiss all (these) in the army. For the
 ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα ὄντα πολλὰ
 baggage-cattle and — (those) captured being many
 ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν σχολαίαν· δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ
 made the march slow; and the many (men)
 ὄντες ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι, ἔδει
 being (in charge) over these were unfit-for-action, it-was-necessary
 τε διπλάσια ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
 also (that) double (the quantity of) provisions be-procured
 καὶ φέρεσθαι, τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων πολλῶν. Δί
 and carried, the men being many. And
 δόξαν ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν ποιεῖν οὕτω.
 they-approved these (things), (and) proclaimed to-do so

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο,

When indeed having-breakfasted they-proceeded (on their march),

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ,

the generals standing-secretly in — (a) narrow (part of the

εἰ εἵρισκοιεν τι τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ

row-1) if they-found any-thing of-the (things) mentioned not

ἰφειμένον, ἀφηροῦντο· οἱ δὲ

left, they-'took (them) 'away; the (men) indeed

ἐπείδοντο, πλὴν εἰ τις ἔκλεψε τι, οἷον ἢ

obeyed, unless if any-one was-smitten-with any-thing, as if

ἐπιθυμήσας παιδὸς ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐτρεπῶν.

having-desired (a) boy or woman of-the handsome-ones.

Καὶ μὲν ἐπορεύθησαν οὕτω ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν,

And indeed they-proceeded thus that — day,

τὰ μὲν μαχόμενοι τι, δὲ καὶ τὰ

— (sometimes) indeed fighting somewhat, and also — (sometimes)

ἀναπαυόμενοι. Δὲ εἰς τὴν ἑστέραίαν πολὺς

resting. But on the next-day (a) great

χειμῶν γίγνεται, δ' ἦν ἀναγκαῖον πορεύεσθαι·

storm happened, but (yet) it-was necessary to-proceed;

γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν οὐ ἱκανά. Καὶ μὲν

for the provisions were not sufficient. And indeed

Χειρίσοφος ἡγεῖτο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὠπισθοφυλάκει.

Cheirisophus continued-to-lead and Xenophon brought-up-the-rear.

Καὶ οἱ πολέμοι ἐπετίθεντο ἰσχυρῶς καὶ

And the enemy 'pressed greatly 'on (them) and

τῶν χωρίων ὄντων στενῶν, προσιόντες

the places being narrow, (the enemy) coming-up

ἐγγὺς ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόων· ὥστε οἱ Ἕλληνες

near they-shot-arrows and slung-stones; so-that the Greeks

ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες ἠναγκάζοντο

pursuing and again retreating were-compelled

πορεύεσθαι σχολῇ· καὶ θαμινὰ ὁ Ξενοφῶν

to-march slowly; and frequently — Xenophon

παρήγγελλεν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμοι ἐπικέοιντο

passed-the-word to-halt, when the enemy might-'press

ἰσχυρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ὅτι
 hard 'on (them). Then — Cheirisophus when
 παρεγγνῶτο ἄλλοτε μὲν ὑπέμενε, δὲ τότε
 the-word-was-passed at-other-times indeed halted, but once he-'did
 οὐκ ὑπέμεινεν, ἀλλ' ἤγε ταχέως, καὶ παρηγγία
 not 'halt, but led-on rapidly, and ordered
 ἔπεσθα· ὥστε ἦν δῆλον ὅτι εἷη τι
 (them) to-follow; so-that it-was evident that there-was some
 πρᾶγμα· δ' ἦν οὐκ σχολή
 thing (to do); but there-was not leisure 'for (a person)
 παρελδόντι ἰδεῖν τὸ αἴτιον τῆς
 moving-along (to the front) to-have-ascertained the cause of-the
 σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ἐγίγνετο ὁμοία φιγῇ
 haste; so-that the march became like 'to (a) 'flight
 τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ
 for-the rear-guard. And here (a) brave man
 Κλεώνυμος Λακωνικὸς ἀποδνήσκει, τοξευδεῖς
 Cleonymus (a) Lacedæmonian died, being-shot-with-an-arrow
 διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς στολάδος εἰς τὰς
 through the shield and the corselet on the
 πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκάς διαμπερὲς εἰς
 side, and-also Basias (an) Arcadian (shot) right-through —
 τὴν κεφαλὴν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταδμόν,
 the head. When indeed they-arrived at (the) station
 ὁ Ξενοφὼν εὐθὺς ἐλθὼν ὥσπερ
 (or place of encampment) — Xenophon immediately having-gone | as
 εἶχε πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον
 he-had (himself) [just as he was] to — Cheirisophus
 ᾗτιᾱτο αὐτόν, ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμεινεν ἀλλ'
 he-blamed him. that he-'did not 'halt but (that)
 φεύγοντες ἠναγκάζοντο ἅμα μάχεσθαι.
 fleeing they-were-compelled at-the-same-time to-fight
 Καὶ νῦν δύο καλῶ τε κάγαθῶ ἀνδρὲ τέθνηκον,
 And now two honourable and also-brave men have-died,
 καὶ ἐδυνάμεθα οὔτε ἀνελεῖσθαι οὔτε
 and we-could neither carry-away (their bodies) nor

θάψαι. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀποκρίνεται πρὸς ταῦτα.
bury (them). — Cheirisophus answered to these

Βλέψον, ἔφη, πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ ἶδε
(things), Look, said-he, at — (these) mountains, and see

ὥς ἀβατα πάντα ἐστί· δὲ αὕτη μία ὁδός,
how impassable (they) all are; and this one (only) road

ἣν ὁρᾷς, ὀρδία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἐξεστί σοι
which you-see, (is) steep, and on this it-is-allowed to-you

ὄραν τοσοῦτον ὄχλον ἀνδρώπων οἱ κατει-
to-see how-great (a) multitude of-men (there are) who having-

ληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἐκβασιν. Ταῦτ'
occupied guard the pass. For-these (reasons)

ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐχ ὑπέμενον
I hastened-on, and for this I-did not 'wait-for

σε, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι τὴν
you, (but strove) if by-chance I-could reach the

ὑπερβολήν· πρὶν κατεilhφθαι.
passage-over (the mountain) before it-had-been-occupied (by the enemy);

δ' οἱ ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν, φασιν εἶναι οὐκ
for the guides whom we-have, say (that) there-is no

ἄλλην ὁδόν. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
other road. — But Xenophon says: But I

ἔχω δύο ἀνδρας. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ παρείχον
have two men. | For when (the enemy) presented

πράγματα ἡμῖν, ἐνηδρεῦ-
things to-us, [for when the enemy annoyed us,] we-placed-an-

σαμεν, (ὅπερ καὶ ἐποίησε ἡμᾶς ἀναπνεῦσαι),
ambush, | (which also made us breathe,) [and

καὶ ἀπεκτείναμέν τινας
which gave us time to breathe,] and we-killed some

αὐτῶν, καὶ προῦδυμήδημεν λαβεῖν ζῶντας,
of-them, and we-were-eager to-take (them) alive,

ἐνεκεν αὐτοῦ τούτου ὅπως χρησαίμεθα
on-account-of this very-same (thing) that we-might-use (them as)

ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν.
guides knowing the country.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνδράποους, διαλα
And immediately leading-forward the men, having-
βόντες ἤλεγχον, εἰ εἶδεῖεν τινα
taken (them) 'apart they-questioned (them), if they-knew any

ἄλλην ὁδοὶ ἢ τὴν φανεράν. Ὅ
other road than the (one) apparent (before them). The (one)

μὲν οὖν ἔφη οὐκ ἕτερος, καὶ μάλα
indeed — said (that there was) not another, and very

πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἔλεγεν
many fearful-threats were-brought-forward; but when he-said

οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον, κατεσφάγη, τοῦ ἑτέρου ὄρωντος.
nothing useful he-was-put-to-death, the other-one seeing (it).

Δὲ ὁ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν
But the (one) remaining said that this (other one) indeed 'would

οὐ φαίη εἶδέναι διὰ ταῦτα
not 'say (any thing about another road) | to-appear through this

ὅτι θυγάτηρ τυγχάνει αὐτῷ
[for the reason] that (a) daughter happens (to be) to-him

ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· δ'
there with (a) man having-been-given (to him in marriage); but

αὐτὸς ἔφη ἡγήσεσθαι ὁδὸν δυνατὴν
he said (that) he-would-lead (them) 'by (a) 'road possible

πορεύεσθαι καὶ ὑποζυγίοις. Δ' ἐρωτώμενος, εἰ
to-be-passed-through even by-beasts-of-burden. But being-asked, if

εἴη τι χωρίον ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον, ἔφη
there-were any place in it difficult-to-pass, he-said (that)

εἶναι ἄκρον, ὃ εἰ μὴ τις προκαταλήψοιτο
there-was (a) height, which — unless some-one should -'take-possession-of

ἔσεσθαι ἀδύνατοι παρελθεῖν Ἐνταῦθα
(it) 'beforehand it-would-be impossible to-pass over (it). Then

ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ
it-seemed-proper having-called-together (the) captains (being) also

πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν, τε λέγειν
targeteers, and (those) of-the heavy-armed-men, | and to-tell

τα παρόντα,
(them) the (things) being-present, [and inform them of the state of affairs,]

καὶ ἐρωτᾷν εἰ ἔστι τις αὐτῶν, ὅστις ἂν ἐδέλοι
and to-inquire if there-is any-one of-them, who might wish

γενέσθαι ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ, καὶ
(to prove himself) to-be (a) courageous man, and

ὑποστὰς πορεύεσθαι
having-engaged (himself) to-go-on (this expedition as a)

ἐδελοντῆς. Τῶν ὀπλιτῶν μὲν Ἀριστώνυμος
volunteer. Of-the heavy-armed-men indeed Aristonymus (of)

Μεθυδριεύς Ἀρκὰς ὑφίσταται, καὶ Ἀγασίας
Methydrium (an) Arcadian offered-himself, and (also) Agasias

Στυμφάλιος Ἀρκὰς· δὲ Καλλίμαχος Παρ-
(of) Stymphalus (an) Arcadian; but Callimachus (of) Par

ράσιος, Ἀρκὰς, ἀντιστασιάζων αὐτοῖς,
rhasia, (an) Arcadian, 'contesting (the honour) 'with them,

ἔφη οὗτος ἐδέλειν πορεύεσθαι προσλαβὼν
said (that) he-himself wished to-go taking (with him)

ἐδελοντάς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος. Γὰρ
volunteers from all the army. For

ἐγὼ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἔψονται,
I, said-he, know that many of-the young-men will-follow,

ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. Ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσι, εἴ τις καὶ
I leading. After this they-inquired, if any also

τῶν γυμνήτῶν ταξιαρχῶν ἐδέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι.
of-the light-armed taxiarchs might-wish to-go-with

Ἀριστεάς Χίος ὑφίσταται, ὃς
(the volunteers). Aristneas (of) Chios offers-himself, (a man) who

πολλαχοῦ ἐγένετο ἄξιος πολλοῦ τῇ στρατιᾷ
often had-been worthy of-much in-the army

εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.
on (occasions) — like-these.

CHAPTER 11.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη μὲν δείλη, δ' οἱ

AND it-was now indeed late-in-the-afternoon, and the (generals

ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας

Cheirisophus and Xenophon,) ordered them having-eaten-something

πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ δῆσαντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα παρα-

to-march-forth. And having-bound the guide they-

διδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται ἦν

delivered (him) to-them, and they-arrange-with (them) if

λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, φυλάττειν τὸ

they-should-take (possession of) the summit, to-guard the

χωρίον μὲν τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἅμα τῇ

place (during) indeed the night, but at-the-same-time with-the

ἡμέρα σημαίνειν σάλπιγγι· καὶ

(dawn of) day to-give-the-signal 'with (the) 'trumpet; and (that,

μὲν τοὺς ὄντας ἄνω ἵεναι ἐπὶ τοὺς

indeed — (those) being above to-go against — (those)

κατέχοντας τὴν φανεράν ἔκβασιν, δὲ αὐτοὶ

having-possession-of the apparent egress. and they (the

ἐκβαίνοντες συμβοηθήσειν ὥς

generals) coming-forth (from below) altogether-to-assist (them) 'as

τάχιστα δύνωνται. Συνδέμενοι ταῦτα οἱ

speedily 'as they-could. They-having-arranged these (things) the

μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὥς δις

(detachment) indeed proceeded (being a) multitude-of about two

χίλιοι· καὶ ἦν πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ.

thousand; | and there-was much water from heaven [and there

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς

was a heavy rain at the time]. And Xenophon, having the

ὀπισθοφυλάκας, ἡγεῖτο πρὸς τὴν φανεράν

rear-guard, led (them) to the apparent

ἔχθασιν, ὅπως οἱ πολέμοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν
 egress, so-that the enemy might-direct — (their) mind
 ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ὥς οἱ περιόντες
 to-that — road, and so (that) — (those) going-round-about
 μάλιστα λάθοιεν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφυλάκες
 'might the-best 'escape-notice. But when the rear-guard
 ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ, ἣν ἔδει δια-
 were at (the) ravine, | which it-was-necessary they-having.
 δάντ' ἔχθαιεν πρὸς τὸ ὄρδιον,
 passed through (it) to-come-out on the acclivity, [which they
 τηνικαῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι
 had to cross to ascend the acclivity,] then the barbarians
 ἐκκλίνδουν ὀλοιστρόχους ἀμαξιαίους καὶ
 rolled (down) round-stones large-enough-to-load-a-wagon, and
 μέζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι
 (other stones also) greater and smaller, which being-borne-along
 πταίοντες πρὸς τὰς πέτρας διεσφενδονῶντο.
 (and) striking against the rocks were-slung-about;
 καὶ παντάπασιν ἣν οὐδὲ οἶόν τε πελόσαι
 and altogether it-was not-even possible to-have-approached
 τῇ εἰσόδῳ. Ἐνιοὶ δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν εἰ
 the entrance (of the pass). Some indeed of-the captains, as
 μὴ δύναιντο ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο
 the 'could not 'effect (a passage) in-this (way) endeavoured
 ἄλλῃ· καὶ ἐποίουν ταῦτα μέχρι
 (to approach) in-another; and they-did these (things) until
 ἐγένετο σκότος· δὲ ἐπεὶ ᾤοντο ἀπιόντες εἶναι
 it became dark; but when they-thought (that) retiring to-be
 ἀνεῖς, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· καὶ
 an observed, then they-went-away to — (their) supper; for
 δι' ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἀνάριστοι οἱ
 in deed they-happened being dinnerless, — (those, namely,)
 ἀπὸ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. Οἱ πολέμοι μέντοι
 of them guarding-the-rear. The enemy however
 δηλονότι φοβούμενοι, οὐδὲν ἐπαίσαντο
 evidently fearing (something), 'did not cease

δι' τῆς ὅλης νυκτος κυλινδοῦντες τοὺς λίθους
 through the whole night rolling (down) — stones
 δ' ἦν τεκμαίρεσθαι τῷ ψόφῳ. Δ' οἱ
 as it-was (easy) to-be-conjectured by-the noise. But — (those,
 ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα περιόντες κύκλῳ,
 having the guide | going-around in-a-circle, [taking a
 περιουσίαν,] surprise the guard sit
 μένους ἀμφὶ πῦρ· καὶ μὲν κατακάνοντες τοὺς,
 ting round (a) fire; and indeed having-killed — (some).
 δὲ καταδιώξαντες τοὺς, αὐτοὶ
 and having-followed-after — (others) (in their flight), they
 ἔμενον ἐνταῦθα ὥς κατέχοντες τὸ ἄκρον. Δ' οἱ
 remained there as-if occupying the summit. But —
 οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν
 they-'did not 'occupy (the summit), but (a) knoll was
 ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, παρ' ὅν ἦν ἡ αὐτὴ στενὴ ὁδός,
 above them, by which was the same narrow road,
 ἐφ' ἣ οἱ φύλακες ἐκάθηντο. Μέντοι ἦν
 at which the guard were-seated. However there-was (an)
 ἔφοδος αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ
 approach thence to the enemy, — (those namely)
 ἐκάθηντο ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ.
 stationed on the open way.
 Καὶ ἐνταῦθα μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα· δὲ
 And here indeed they-passed the night; but
 ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπέφαινε συντεταγμένοι
 when (the) day was-beginning-to-dawn (they) drawn-up-in-order
 ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ καὶ
 proceeded in-silence against the enemy; for —
 ἐγένετο ὁμίχλη, ὥστε προσελθόντες ἐγγὺς
 there-was (a) mist, so-that advancing near
 ἦλθον. Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ
 they-escaped-observation. But when they-saw one-another, and
 τε ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐπεφθέγγετο, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
 the trumpet sounded-the-attack, and the Greeks

αλαλάξαντες ἔιντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρώπους, δὲ οἱ
 raising-the-shout-of-battle rushed against the men, out the

οὐκ ἀδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν
 (enemy) 'did not 'receive (them), but leaving the

ὁδόν, ὀλίγοι φεύγοντες ἀπέδνησκον· γὰρ
 road, (a) few (only) fleeing died; | for

ἦσαν εὐζωνοι. Δὲ
 they-were well-girt [for they were active in their movements]. But

οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος,
 — (those) with Cheirisophus, hearing the trumpet,

εὐδὺς ἔιντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανεράν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι
 immediately rushed up along the open road; others

δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ
 indeed of-the generals (with their men) proceeded by

ἀτρίβεις ὁδοὺς ἧ ἕκαστοι ἔτυχον ὄντες, καὶ
 untrodden paths wherever each happened (as) being, and

ἀναβάντες ὥς ἐδύναντο, ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους
 ascending as (well as) they-could, drew-up one-another

τοῖς δόρασι. Καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν
 with — (their) spears. And these first-ones joined

τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
 — (those) having-secured the place. But Xenophon

ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, ἐπορεύετο
 having the half of-the rear-guard, proceeded

ἧ οἱ ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα·
 (by the road) in-which — (those) having the guide (did);

(γὰρ ἦν εὐδοωτάτη τοῖς ἵποζυγίοις·) δὲ τοὺς
 (for it-was the-most-practicable for-the baggage-cattle;) but the

ἡμίσεις ἔταξε ὀπισθεν τῶν ἵπο-
 (other) half he-ordered (to be stationed) behind the baggage-

ζυγίων. Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ
 cattle. And proceeding-forward they-happened-to-find (a) hill

ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν
 (hanging) over the road occupied by the

πολεμίων, οὓς ἦν ἀνάγκη ἢν ἀποκόψαι ἢ
 enemy, whom it-was (a) necessity either to-have-dislodged or

διεζεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ
to have-been-separated from the other Greeks. And

αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν
(the men) themselves indeed might have-proceeded (in the same

ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἢ οὐκ
road) in-which the others (did), but (for) the baggage-cattle it-was not

ἐκβῆναι ἄλλῃ ἢ ταύτῃ.
(possible) to-go-from (the valley) in-any-other (way) than this

Ἐνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις, προσβάλ-
Then indeed having-encouraged one-another, they-make-an-

λουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον τοῖς ὀρδίοις λόχοις,
attack against the hill | in-the straight companies, [in

οἱ κύκλῳ, ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες
columns of companies,] not 'in (a) 'circle, but leaving

ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοιντο φεύγειν.
(a) way-of-escape for-the enemy, if they-wished to-flee.

Καὶ τῷς μὲν, αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπῃ
And for-a-while indeed, they ascending in-whatever-manner

ἕκαστος ἐδύναντο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ
each could, the barbarians shot-arrows and

ἔβαλλον, δ' οὐ προσίεντο ἐγγὺς, ἀλλὰ
threw-stones, but they-'did not 'let-them-come near, but

φυγῇ λείπουνσι τὸ χωρίον. Καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες
in-flight they-leave the place. And — the Greeks

παρεληλύθεσαν τοῦτον, καὶ ὁρῶσιν ἕτερον
having-passed-over this (hill), — they-see another

λόφον ἔμπροσθεν κατεχόμενον.
hill before (them) occupied (by the enemy)

Ἔδόκει αὖτις πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῦτον.
[It-seemed (necessary) again to-proceed against this.

Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐννοήσας, μή, εἰ κατα-
But — Xenophon having-been-apprehensive, lest, if he-should-

λείποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον ἔρημον, καὶ
leave the captured hill destitute (of troops), and

οἱ πολέμοι πάλιν λαβόντες ἐπιδοῖντο τοῖς
the enemy again taking (it) might-attack the

ἡποζυγίοις παριοῦσι, (δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἦν ἐπὶ πολλὰ
baggage-cattle passing-by, (for the baggage-cattle | were on much

ἄτε πορευόμενα διὰ τῆς στενῆς
[formed a long train] as-when proceeding through the narrow

ὁδοῦ,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου
(defiles 'of (the) 'road,) he-leaves on the hill (the)

λοχαγούς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος,
captains Cephisodorus (the son) of-Cephisophon, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου,
Athenian, and Amphicrates (the son) of-Amphidemus, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν, φυγάδα Ἀργεῖον.
Athenian, and Archagoras, (an) exile (from) Argos;

αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν
himself indeed with the rest marched against the

δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ αἰροῦσι τοῦτον καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
second hill, and they-capture this-one even in-the same

τρόπῳ. Ἔτι δ' ἦν τρίτος μαστός λοιπός
manner. Still however there-was (a) third hill remaining

αὐτοῖς, πολὺ ὀρδιώτατος, ὃ ὑπὲρ τῆς φυλακῆς
for-them, much the-steepest, that above (where) the guard

ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης τῆς νυκτὸς
at the fire was-taken (by surprise) — at-night

ὑπὸ τῶν ἐδελοντῶν. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
by the volunteers. When indeed the Greek

ἐγένοντο ἐγγὺς οἱ βάρβαροι λείπουν τὸν μαστόν
got near the barbarians leave the hill

ἄμαχητὶ, ὥστε γενέσθαι θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι, καὶ
without-fighting, so-as to-be wonderful to-all, and

ἰψώπτεον δείσαντες αὐτοῦς ἀπολιπεῖν,
they-suspected (that) having-been-in-fear (that) they left

μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῖντο. Δ' ἄρα
(the place), lest being-surrounded they-might-be-besieged. But indeed

οἱ καθορῶντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου τὰ
— (they) looking-down from the height (upon) the (things)

γιννομενα ὀπισθεν, πάντες ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τοὺς
 occurring behind, all went-off against the
 ὀπισθοφύλακας.
 rear-guard.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινον
 And Xenophon indeed with the youngest-men ascended
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν,
 on-to the summit, and the rest he-ordered to-march-slowly,
 ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμίξειαν καὶ
 so-that the rear companies might-come-up-with (them) and
 εἶπε προελδόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν θέσθαι
 he-told (them) having-advanced along the road to-halt
 τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ. Καὶ ἐν τῷ τούτῳ
 under-arms on the level (ground). And at the same
 χρόνῳ Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος ἦλθε πεφευγώς,
 time Archagoras the Argive came having-fled,
 καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου λόφου,
 and says that they-had-been-cut-off from the first hill,
 καὶ ὅτι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης τεθνήκασιν,
 and that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates were-dead,
 καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μὴ ἀλλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς
 and-also how-many others (who) not having-leaped down the
 πέτρας ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας
 rocks (and) arrived at the rear-guard
 Οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ διαπραξάμενοι ταῦτα
 The barbarians indeed having-accomplished these (things,
 ἦκον ἐπὶ λόφον ἀντίπορον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ
 same on (a) hill opposite the knoll; and
 Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως
 Xenophon commenced-treating with-them through (an) interpreter
 περὶ σπονδῶν, καὶ ἀπῆτει τοὺς νεκροὺς. Οἱ
 about (a) truce, and demanded the dead. — (They)
 δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ
 indeed said (that) they-would-give-them-up on — (this con-
 μὴ καίειν τὰς κώμας. Ὅ
 dition), (that) he-'would not 'burn the villages —

Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Δὲ ἐν ᾧ
 Xenophon agreed-to this. | But in which [but while]

μὲν τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα παρῆει,
 indeed the remaining (part of the) army was-passing-along,

δὲ οἱ διελέγοντο ταῦτα, πάντες οἱ
 and — they-were-discussing these (things), all — (those)

ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνεβλήσαν. Ἐνταῦθα
 from that (part of) the country flocked-together. There

οἱ πολέμιοι ἴσταντο· καὶ ἐπεὶ
 the enemy made-a-stand; and when 'they (the Greeks with
 ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ
 Xenophon) 'began to-descend from the knoll

πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειντο,
 towards the others, | where the arms lay, [where

οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ ἵεντο
 the heavy armed men were drawn up,] the enemy truly hurried-on

πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ
 in-great multitude and 'with (much) 'noise-and-tumult; and

ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ, ἀφ'
 when they-got on the vertex of-the knoll, from

οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρας·
 which Xenophon was-descending, they-commenced-rolling (down) stones;

καὶ μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος ἐνός, δὲ ὁ
 and indeed broke the leg of-one (man), and the

ὑπασπιστῆς ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπε
 shield-bearer having the shield (of Xenophon) deserted

Ξενοφῶντα· δὲ Εὐρύλοχος Ἀρκὰς Λουσιεὺς
 Xenophon; but Eurylochus (an) Arcadian of-Lusia (a)

ὀπλίτης προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προβέβλημένους
 heavy-armed-soldier ran-to him, and having-thrown

πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον
 before both (his shield) they-departed, and the others went

πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους.
 to — (those) drawn-up (on the level ground).

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ τὸ πᾶν Ἑλληνικόν ἐγένετο
 From this indeed the entire Grecian (force) got

ὁμοῦ, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ
 alike-together (on the level ground), and they-encamped there
 ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ δαψιλέσι
 among many and fine houses and abundant
 ἐπιτηδείοις· γὰρ καὶ ἦν πολὺς οἶνος, ὥστε
 provisions; for also there-was much wine, so-that
 εἶχον ἐν κονιατοῖς λάκκοις. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ
 they-kept (it) in plastered cisterns. Xenophon and also
 Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο, ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς
 Cheirisophus effected (this), that having-taken the
 νεκροὺς ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα·
 dead (from the enemy) they-would-deliver-up the guide;
 καὶ ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν
 and they-performed all (things) in — (their) power
 τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν, ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀγαθοῖς
 for — (those) having-died, such-as is-usual-and-appropriate-for-brave
 ἀνδράσι. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο ἄνευ
 men. And on-the next-day they-proceeded without (a)
 ἡγεμόνος· δ' οἱ πολέμοιοι μαχόμενοι, καὶ ὅπη
 guide; but the enemy fighting, and where
 εἶη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες
 there-might-be (a) narrow place pre-occupying (it)
 ἐκώλυνον τὰς παρόδους. Ὅποτε οὖν μὲν κωλύ-
 obstructed the passes. When therefore indeed they-im-
 οιεῖ τοὺς πρώτους, Ξενοφῶν ἐχβαίνων
 peded | — (those) first, [the front,] Xenophon going-from
 ὀπισθεν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, ἔλυσεν τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς
 behind to the mountain, opened the obstructions of-the
 παρόδου τοῖς πρώτοις πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι
 passes for-the front endeavouring to-get
 ἐνωτέρω τῶν κωλόντων· δὲ ὅποτε ἐπι-
 higher (than) — (those) obstructing; but when they-
 δοῖντο τοῖς ὀπισθεν, Χειρίσοφος ἐχβαίνων
 attacked — (those) behind, Cheirisophus departing
 καὶ πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι ἀνωτέρω
 (from his place) and endeavouring to-get higher (than)

ἦν καλυόντων, ἔλυσεν τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς
 — (those) obstructing, opened the obstruction of-the
 παρόδου τοῖς ὀπισθεν· καὶ οὕτως αἰεὶ ἐβοήθουν
 passes for — (those) behind; and thus always they-assisted
 ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἐπεμέλυντο ἀλλήλων. Δὲ
 each-other, and strenuously took-care of-each-other. And
 καὶ ὅποτε ἦν οἱ βάρβαροι παρεῖχον πολλὰ
 also sometimes it-was (that) the barbarians | exhibited many
 πράγματα τοῖς ἀναβαῖσι
 things to — (those) [annoyed very much those] having-ascended
 πάλιν καταβαίνουσι· γὰρ ἦσαν ἐλαφροὶ
 (when) again descending; for they-were nimble
 ὥστε ἀποφεύγειν καὶ φεύγοντες ἐγγύθεν, γὰρ
 so-as to-escape even fleeing from-near, for
 εἶχον οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. Δὲ
 they-had nothing else than bows and slings. And
 καὶ ἦσαν ἀριστοὶ τοξόται· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγύς
 also they-were the-best archers; they-had indeed bows nearly
 τριπλήκη, δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα πλεον ἢ διπλήκη·
 three-cubits (long), and the arrows more than two-cubits;
 εἶλκον δὲ τὰς νευράς, ὅποτε τοξεύοιεν προβαί-
 they-drew indeed the strings, when they-shot stepping-
 νοντες τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ
 forward with-the left foot against the lower (part) of-the
 τόξου. Δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν
 bow. And the arrows went through the
 ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
 shields and through the corselets. But the Greeks,
 ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς ἀκοντίοις,
 after they-took (them up), made-use-of them for-javelins,
 ἐναγκυλῶντες. Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς
 having-fitted-a-poise-to-the-middle-like-a-javelin. In these —
 χωρίοις οἱ Κρήτες ἐγένοντο χρησιμώτατοι. Δὲ
 places the Cretans were the-most-useful. And
 Στρατοκλῆς Κρής ἤρχε αὐτῶν
 Stratocles (a) Cretan commanded them

CHAPTER III

Δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν αὖ ἡυλίσθησαι
 And this — day likewise (the Greeks) were-lodge
 ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ταῖς ὑπὲρ τοῦ πεδίου
 in the villages (namely) — (those) above the plain
 τοῦ Κεντρίτην,
 — (that is situated) along the river Centrites, (the)
 εὐρος ὥς δίπλεδρον, ὃς ὀρίζει τὴν
 breadth (thereof is) about two-hundred-feet, which (river) bounds —
 Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν χώραν τῶν Καρδούχων. Καὶ
 Armenia and the country of-the Carduchi. And
 οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνεπαύσαντο ἐνταῦθα ἄσμενοι
 the Greeks rested here rejoiced (at)
 ἰδόντες πεδίον· δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς ἀπεῖχε τῶν
 seeing (a) plain; and the river was-distant from-the
 ὄρέων τῶν Καρδούχων ἕξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια.
 mountains of-the Carduchi six or seven stadia.
 Τότε μὲν οὖν ἡυλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως,
 | Then indeed therefore they-were-lodged very pleasantly, [here
ἔχοντες καὶ τὰ πύ-
 they stayed with great pleasure,] having also (plenty of) pro-
 τήδεια καὶ μνημονεύοντες πολλὰ τῶν (on their)
 visions and were-reflecting much — (on their)
 παρεληλυθότων πόνων. Γὰρ ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας
 past labours. For (during) seven days
 ὅσας περ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρ
 however-many-that they-marched through (the country) of-the Car-
 δούχων, μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν πάσας, καὶ
 duchi, fighting they-passed (them) all, and
 ἔπαδον κακά ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα
 suffered evils so-many-that not 'all — (those) 'to-getner

ὑπο βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνηους.
received) from (the) king and Tissaphernes (would

ὧς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων
equal them). So-that therefore freed from-these (dangers)

ἠδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.
they gladly 'were-made-to-take-repose.

Ἄμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρῶσιν
At-the-same-time indeed with-the (break of) day they-perceive

ἐξοπλισμένους ἰππέας που πέραν τοῦ
completely-armed horsemen some-where on-the-other-side of-the

ποταμοῦ, ὥς κωλύσοντας διαβαί-
river, so-as (that) they-would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-

νειν, δε πεζοὺς παρατεταγμένους
over, and (also they perceived) foot-soldiers drawn-up-in-order-of-battle

ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις ἄνω τῶν ἰππέων, ὥς κωλύ-
on the high-banks above the horsemen, so-as (that) they-

σοντας ἐκβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν.
would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-over into — Armenia.

Δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι
And these were Armenians and Mardians and Chaldeans

μισθοφόροι Ὀρόντου καὶ Ἀρτούχου. Δὲ οἱ Χαλ-
mercenaries of-Orontes and Artuchus. And the Chal-

δαῖοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι.
ians were-said to-be (a) free and also (a) brave

δ' εἶχον ὅπλα μακρὰ γέρβρα καὶ
(people); and they-had (for) arms long shields and

λόγχας. Δὲ αἱ αὐταὶ ὄχθαι, ἐφ' ὧν οὗτοι
spears. But the same elevated-banks, on which these

ἦσαν παρατεταγμένοι, ἀπείχον ἀπὸ
(foot-soldiers) were drawn-up-in-order-of-battle, were-distant from

τοῖ ποταμοῦ τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα.
the river three or four plethra (the plethra

δὲ μία ὁδὸς ἣ ὁρωμένη
being about a hundred feet); and (the) one (only) road which was-visible

ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω, ὥςπερ χειροποίητος· οἱ Ἕλληνες
was (one) leading upwards, as-if made-by-hand; the Greeks

ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν ταύτη. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ
 endeavoured to-cross in-this (place). When indeed the
 τε ὕδωρ ἐφαίνετο ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν πειρωμένοις
 — water appeared above the breasts to-those-making-trial
 καὶ ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν τραχὺς μεγάλους
 (to cross over) and the river was rough with-large
 καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς λίδοις, καὶ οὐτ' ἦν ἔχειν
 and slippery rocks, and neither was-it (possible) to-have
 τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὕδατι· δὲ εἰ μὴ ὁ ποταμὸς
 — (their) arms in the water; | but if not [or else] the river
 ἥρπαζεν· εἴ τις φέροι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπὶ
 'swept (them) 'away; if any-one carried — (his) arms on
 τε τῆς κεφαλῆς ἐγίγνοντο γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ
 — — (his) head he-became bare-and-exposed to the
 τοξεύματα καὶ τᾶλλα βέλη· οὖν
 arrows and the-other missiles (of the enemy); therefore
 ἀνεχώρησαν, καὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο αὐτοῦ παρὰ
 they-retreated, and encamped there along
 τὸν ποταμόν. Ἐνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν
 the river. There indeed (where) they-themselves had-been
 τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα, ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, ἑώραν τοὺς
 on-the previous night, on the mountain, they-saw the
 Καρδούχους συνειλεγμένους πολλοὺς ἐν τοῖς
 Carduchi assembled-together (in) great-numbers in —
 ὅπλοις. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν πολλὴ ἀθυμία τοῖς
 arms. Here truly there-was great despondency to-the
 Ἕλλησιν ὁρῶσι μὲν τὴν δυσπορίαν τοῦ
 Greeks (as) they-perceive indeed the difficult-passage of-the
 ποταμοῦ, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
 river, and (as) they-perceive — (those on the other side of the
 κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
 river) opposed to-crossing-over, and (as) they-perceive the
 Καρδούχους ἐπικεισομένους ὀπισθεν τοῖς
 Carduchi hanging-on (the) rear (of) — (those)
 διαβαίνουσιν. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ
 crossing-over. Therefore indeed on-that-same — day and

τὴν νύκτα ἔμειναν ὄντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ Ἄδ
— night they-remained, being in great perplexity. | But

Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν ὄναρ· ἔδοξε
Xenophon saw (a) dream [but Xenophon had a dream]: he seemed

δεδέσθαι ἐν πέδαις, δὲ αὐταὶ περιῤῥν-
to-have-been-bound in fetters, but these (seemed) to-have-

ῆναι αὐτῷ αὐτόματα, ὥστε λυθῆ-
dropped-off from-him of-their-ownaccord, so-that (he seemed) to-have-

ναι, καὶ διαβαίνειν, ὅποσον ἐβούλετο.
been-loosened, and (able) to-stride-about, as-much-as he-pleased.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὄρθρος, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρί-
But when it-was near-the-dawn-of-day, he-went to — Cheiri-

σοφον, καὶ λέγει, ὅτι ἔχει ἐλπίδας ἔσεσθαι
sophus, and says, that he-has hopes (that all) will-be

καλῶς, καὶ διηγεῖται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. Ὁ
well, and relates to-him — (his) dream. — (He)

δὲ ἡδετό τε, καὶ ὥς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέ-
indeed was-delighted, — and, as speedily-as (the) dawn began-

φαινε πάντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ πορόντες ἐδύνοντο·
to-appear, all the generals being-present sacrificed;

καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν καλὰ εὐδὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ πρότοι.
and the victims were favourable immediately from the first.

Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν
And the generals and captains going-away from the

ἱερῶν παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστο-
sacrifices gave-orders in-the army (for the troops) to-break-

ποιεῖσθαι. Καὶ δύο νεανίσκω προσέτρεχον τῷ
fast. And two young-men came-running to —

Ξενοφῶντι ἀριστῶντι· γὰρ πάντες ἡδεσαν
Xenophon (while) breakfasting; for all knew

ὅτι ἐξείη προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ
that it-might-be-allowed (to them) to-approach him even

ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι, καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι,
breakfasting and supping, and (also) if he-were-asleep,

ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τις ἔχοι τι
having-been-awakened to-speak (to him), if any-one might-have any-thing

τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον.
of — (those things) (relating) to the war (to say)

Καὶ τότε ἔλεγον, ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν συλλέγοντες
And then they-said, | that they-might-happen gathering

φρύγανα ὥς ἐπὶ πῦρ,
sticks as for (the) fire, [that as they were gathering stick

κἄπειτα κατίδοιεν, ἐν τῷ πέραν
for the fire,] (and then) they-saw, on the other-side (of the river)

ἐν πέτραις καδηκούσαις ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
on (the) rocks reaching-down to the river

αὐτὸν, γέροντά τε καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παιδίσκας,
itself, an-old-man and also women and girls,

ὥςπερ κατατιθεμένους μαρσίπους ἱματίων ἐν
as-if depositing bags of-clothes in (a)

ἀντρῶδι πέτρᾳ. Δὲ δόξαι σφισι ἰδοῦσι
cavernous rock. And (that) it-appeared to-them seeing

εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διαβῆναι· γὰρ οὔδ' εἶναι
(this) to-be safe to-cross-over: for (that) neither was-it

πρόσβατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἱππεῦσι κατὰ τοῦτο.
accessible for-the hostile cavalry at this (place)

Δ' ἔφασαν ἐκδύντες ἔχοντες τὰ
And they-said, (that) having-undressed (and) having — (their)

ἐγχειρίδια διαβαίνειν γυμνοὶ ὥς νευσούμενοι, δὲ
daggers they-crossed-over naked as being-about-to-swim, and

πορευόμενοι πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν
proceeding forwards (that) they-crossed-over before (that)

βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λαβόντες
they-wetted the middle, and crossing-over and taking

τὰ ἱμάτια ἦκειν πάλιν.
the clothes (that) they-came (back) again.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτός οὖν τε εὐθύς
— Xenophon himself therefore not-only immediately

ἔσπενδε καὶ ἐκέλευε τοῖς νεανίσκοις
'made (a) 'libation, but-also ordered the young-men

ἐγχεῖν, καὶ
to-pour-in (wine into the cups to make a libation themselves), and

εὐχέσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς φήνασι τε τὰ ὀνείρατα
to-pray to-the gods having-shown not-only the dreams

καὶ τὸν πόρον, καὶ ἐπιτελέσαι τὰ ἀγαθὰ
but-also the passage, even (that) they-would-complete the good-things

λοιπὰ. Δὲ σπείσας εὐδὺς ἤγε τοὺς
remaining. And (the) libations-made 'he immediately 'led the

νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦντα
young-men to — Cheirisophus, and relate

ταῦτα. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀκούσας
these-same (things). And also — Cheirisophus having-heard (them)

ἐποίει σπονδὰς. Δὲ μὲν σπείσαντες
made (a) libation. And indeed having-made-the-libations

παρήγγελλον ἄλλοις σύσκευάζεσθαι.
'they-ordered | the-others [the soldiers] to-collect-their-baggage-together;

αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγούς
they-themselves indeed calling-together the generals

ἐβουλεύοντο ὥπως ἂν διαβαῖεν
consulted-with (them) how 'they might 'cross (the river)

κάλλιστα, καὶ τε νικῶεν τοὺς
to-the-best-advantage, and not-only (that) they-might-conquer —

ἐμπροσθεν, καὶ πάσχοιεν μηδὲν κακόν
(those) in-front-of (them), but-also suffer no evil

ὑπὸ τῶν ὀπισθεν. Καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς
'from — (those) 'in (their) 'rear. And it-seemed to-them

Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι, καὶ διαβαί-
good) (that) Cheirisophus indeed should-take-the-lead, and to-cross-

νειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ
ever having the half of-the army, and

ἔτι τὸ ἥμισυ ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενο-
moreover (that) the (other) half should-remain-behind with Xeno-

φῶντι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον
phon, and (that) the baggage-cattle and the crowd (of camp-

διαβαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
(followers) to-cross-ever in (the) middle of-these (two divisions).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα εἶχε καλῶς,
When indeed these (things) had (themselves) well

ἐπορεύοντο· ὃ οἱ νεανίσκῳ.
 (and in good order), they-proceeded-forward; and the young-men
 ἡγούντο ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμόν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
 guided (them) having the river on (the) left,
 δὲ ὁδὸς ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ἦν ὥς τέτταρες
 and (the) way to the ford was about four
 στάδιοι. Δὲ, αὐτῶν πορευομένων, αἱ τάξεις τῶν
 stadia. But, they proceeding, the lines of-the
 ἱππέων ἀντιπαρήεσαν. Δὲ
 cavalry passed-along-opposite (them, on the other side of the river). And
 ἐπειδὴ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας
 when they-were at the ford and the shores
 τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔδεντο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ Χειρίσοφος
 of-the river, they-stacked — (their) arms, and Cheirisophus
 αὐτὸς πρῶτος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδύς
 himself first having-crowned-himself and taking-off-his-clothes
 ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ παρήγγελλε πᾶσι
 he-took — (his) arms, and he-ordered all
 τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
 the rest (to do the same), and he-ordered the captains
 ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρδίους, τοὺς μὲν
 to-lead the companies drawn-up-in-columns, — (some) indeed
 ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, δὲ τοὺς
 (of these columns being) on (the) left-hand, and — (others)
 ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. Καὶ οἱ μάντις μὲν ἐσφα-
 on (the) right-hand of-himself. And the augurs indeed sacri-
 γιάζοντο εἰς τὸν ποταμόν· οἱ
 ficed-victims (so that the blood flowed) into the river; the
 πολέμοι δὲ ἐτόξευόν 'τε καὶ
 enemy indeed (at the same time) kept-shooting-arrows and also
 ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ' οὕτω ἐξικνούντο.
 kept-slinging-stones; but they-'did (not) as-yet 'reach (the Greeks).
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ σφάγια ἦν καλὰ πάντες οἱ στρα-
 When indeed the victims were favourable all the sol-
 τῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, δὲ καὶ ἅπασι αἱ γυναῖκες
 diers even raised-the-war-ory, and also all the women

συνωλόλιζον.

cried-out-and-shouted-with (them). For there-were many mistresses

ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι.

in the army. And Cheirisophus indeed entered

καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
(the river), and — (those) with him (also); but — Xenophon,

λαβὼν τοὺς εἰζωνοτάτους τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων,
taking the most-active of-the rear-guard,

ἔδει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον
ran at (the) utmost (speed) back to the fora,

τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἑκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ
— (to that) opposite the outlet — (that led) to the

ὄρη τῶν Ἀρμενίων, προσποιούμενος διαβάς
mountains of — Armenia, making-a-feint (as) crossing

ταύτη ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς ἵππεις παρὰ τὸν
in-that (place) to-cut-off the cavalry along the

ποταμόν. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι μὲν ὄρῶντες τοὺς
river. But the enemy indeed seeing — (those)

ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς περῶντας τὸ ὕδωρ,
with Cheirisophus easily crossing-over the water,

ὄρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας
seeing likewise — (those) with Xenophon | running

εἰς τοῦμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ ἀποκλεισθεῖν
to the-contrary [running back,] fearing lest they-might-be-in-

ησαν, φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὥς πρὸς
tercepted, they-flee at (their utmost) power as-if to

τὴν ἑκβασιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
the outlet from the river upwards. When indeed

ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς
they-got to the road (or outlet) they-stretched upwards to

τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δὲ, ὁ ἔχων τὴν
the mountain. Lycius indeed, who having (the command of) the

τάξιν τῶν ἱππέων, καὶ Αἰσχίνης, ὁ ἔχων
body of — cavalry, and Æschines, who having (the

τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν
command of) the body of — targeteers (name'y) — (those

ἰμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἑώραν, φεύγοντας
with Cheirisophus, when they-saw (the enemy) fleeing

ἀνὰ κράτος εἶποντο· οἱ στρατιῶται
at (their utmost) power commenced-pursuing; the soldiers

δὲ ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ
also called-out (that they should) not be-left-behind, but

συνεβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Δ'
to-go-through-with (the pursuing cavalry) to the mountain. But

αὖ Χειρίσοφος ἐπεὶ διέβη, οὐ μὲν
on-the-contrary Cheirisophus when he-crossed-over, 'did not indeed

ἐδίωκε τοὺς ἰππείας, δε εὐδὺς ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ
'follow the cavalry, but immediately went-forth against

τοὺς πολεμίους ἄνω κατὰ τὰς ὄχδας προς-
the enemy above (stationed) along the banks extend-

ηκούσας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δὲ οἱ ἄνω
ing-down to the river. But — (those) above (on these

ὄρωντες μὲν τοὺς ἰππείας ἑαυτῶν φεύγοντας,
high banks) seeing indeed the cavalry of-themselves fleeing,

δ' ὄρωντες ὀπλίτας ἐπιόντας σφίσιν
and seeing (the) heavy-armed-soldiers advancing-against themselves

ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
they-abandon the heights above the river.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὰ πέραν γιγνό-
Xenophon indeed when he-saw (things) on-the other-side be-

μενα καλῶς ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην
coming prosperous-and-well departed (with) the greatest-speed

πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στρατεύμα· (γὰρ καὶ οἱ Καρ-
to the crossing army; (for also the Car-

δοῦχοι ἦσαν ἤδη φανεροὶ καταβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ
duchi were now evidently descending to the

πεδῖον ὥς ἐπιδησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίσις.)
plain as-if about-attacking — (those) behind.)

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν κατεῖχε τὰ ἄνω.
And Cheirisophus indeed (now) occupied the (place) above,

δὲ Λύκιος, σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπι-
and Lycius, with (his) few 'men) having-undertaken to

διώξαι, ἔλαβε τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα τῶν σκευο-
pursue, captured the (portions) left-behind of-the bag

φόρων, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τε καλὴν ἐσθῆτα
gage, and among these not-only fine garments

καὶ ἐκπώματα. Καὶ μὲν τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν
but-also drinking-cups. And — the baggage of-the

Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέ
Greeks and the crowd (of camp-followers) 'were yet 'pass-

βαινε, δὲ Ξενοφῶν στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχοις,
ing, and Xenophon having-turned towards the Carduchi,

ἔδετο ἀντία τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ παρήγγειλε
halted over-against (them) under-arms; and he-ordered

τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν λόχον
the captains to-form each — company

ἑαυτοῦ κατ' ἐνωμοτίας, παραγαγόντας
of-theirs into divisions-of-five-and-twenty-men, having-wheeled

τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν παρ' ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος·
the division-of-twenty-five-men by the-left into line

καὶ μὲν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἐνωμοτάρχας
and (he ordered) — the captains and (the) commanders-'of

ἵεναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, δὲ
(these) 'divisions to-go against the Carduchi, and (the)

οὐραγοὺς καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
commanders-of-the-rear to-halt at the river.

Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ὥς ἐώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας
But the Carduchi, as they-perceived the rear-guard

τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους, καὶ ἤδη φαινου-
of-the crowd (of camp-followers) diminished, and now ap-

μένους ὀλίγους, δὴ ἐπήεσαν θάπτοι' ἄδοντες
peared few, 'they indeed 'advanced more-quickly singing

τινας ᾠδας. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ εἶχε τὰ
ertain songs. — Cheirisophus indeed, when he-had the

παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς, πέμπει τοὺς πελταστάς
(things) about himself safe, sends the targeteers

καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα,
and slingers and archers to Xenophon

καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ
and he-commanded (them) to-do whatever 'he might 'order

Δ' ὁ Ξενοχῶν ἰδὼν αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας πέμψας
But — Xenophon having-seen them crossing having-sen't

ἄγγελον κελεύει μείναι αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ
a) messenger to-request (them) to-remain there at the

ποταμοῦ, μὴ διαβάντας. Ὅταν δ' αὐτοὶ
river, not having-crossed. When indeed they [Xenophon

ἄρξονται διαβαίνειν ἐμβαίνειν
and his men] begin to-cross (that they should) enter

ἐναντίους ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν σφῶν ὥς
(the river) opposite on-this-side and on-that-side of-them as-if

διαβησομένους, τοὺς ἀκοντιστάς διηγκυλωμέ-
about-to-cross, the javelin-men holding-the-javelin-by-the-

νους, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβεβλημένους.
poise, and the archers having-'placed (their) 'arrows-on-

δὲ μὴ προβαίνειν πρόσω τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
the-string; but not to-advance far-into the river.

Παρήγγειλε δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἑαυτῷ
[He-ordered — — (those) about himself [he ordered his

ἐπειδὰν σφενδόνη ἐξικνῆται,
own men] (that) when (a stone from a) sling shall-reach

καὶ ἀσπίς ψοφῇ παιανίσαντας
(them), and (a) shield resounded (that) having-sung-the-pæan

θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· δὲ ἐπειδὰν οἱ
they-should-rush on the enemy; and when the

πολέμιοι ἀναστρέψωσι, καὶ ὁ σαλπικτῆς σημή-
enemy should-turn-to-flee, and the trumpeter should-sound-the-

νῆ τὸ πολεμικόν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τοὺς
signal the warlike-one (of attack) from the river, (that) the

οὐραγούς μὲν ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ
leaders-of-the-rear — having-turned to (the) right

ηγείσθαι, δὲ πάντας θεῖν, καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι
to-take-the-lead, and all to-run, and to-cross-over as

τάχιστα, ἧ ἕκαστος εἶχεν τὴν τάξιν,
fast-as-possible. where each-one had — (his) file

ὥς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἔσοιτο
 so-as not to-impede one-another; (and) that that-one would-be
 ἄριστος ὃς ἂν πρῶτος γένηται ἐν τῷ
 the-best (man) who might first get on the

πέραν.
 other-side.

Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὁρῶντες τοὺς λοιπούς
 But the Carduchi seeing — (those) remaining

ἤδη ὀλίγους, (γὰρ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τεταγμένων
 now few, (for also many of — (those) ordered

μένειν ὥχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ὑποζυ-
 to-remain departed taking-care, — (some indeed of-the-baggage-

γίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, δ' οἱ
 sattle, — (some) also 'of (their) 'utensils (and baggage), and — (others)

ἑταίρων,) ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως,
 of (their) 'mistresses,) here indeed 'pressed boldly 'on,

καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν.
 and began to-'use (their) 'slings and bows.

Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὄρμησαν δρόμῳ
 But the Greeks having-sung-the-pæan started-forward 'in (a) 'run

ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο·
 upon them; — 'they indeed 'did not 'receive (the 'charge

γὰρ καὶ ἦσαν ὀπλισμένοι, ὥς μὲν ἐν
 of the Greeks); for though they-were armed, as indeed in

τοῖς ὄρεσιν, ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ
 — (their) mountains, fit for — attacking and

φεύγειν, δὲ πρὸς δέχεσθαι τὸ εἰς χεῖρας,
 fleeing, but for receiving (any enemy) | the to hand

οὐκ ἱκανῶς. Ἐν τούτῳ
 [hand to hand] (they were) not fit. At this (time);

ὁ σαλπικτής σημαίνει· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι
 the trumpeter sounds; and the — enemy

ἔφευγον ἔτι πολὺ θάττον, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες στρέ-
 fled yet much faster, but the Greeks having

ψαντες τὰναντία ἔφευγον ὅτι τάχιστα διὰ τοῦ
 turned to-the-contrary fled as-fast-as-possible over the

ποταμοῖ· Οἱ τινες δὲ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων, αἰσδο-
 river. — Some however of-the enemy, per-
 μενοι ἔδραμον πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν, καὶ
 ceiving (this) ran back to the river, and
 τοξεύοντες ἔτρωσαν ὀλίγους,
 'using (their) 'bows wounded (a) few (of our men,
 δ' οἱ πολλοί, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὄντων
 but the greater (number of them), even the Greeks being
 πέραν, ἔτι ἦσαν φανεροὶ φεύγοντες Δ' οἱ
 on-the-other-side, yet were evidently fleeing. But —
 ὑπαντήσαντες, ἀνδρίζο
 (those who) had-come-to-meet (them), priding-themselves-on-their-man-
 μενοι καὶ προϊόντες προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ,
 hood-and-courage, and advancing farther (than) — proper,
 πάλιν διέβησαν ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ
 again crossed (the river) behind — (those) with
 Ξενοχῶντος· καὶ ἐτρώδησαν καὶ
 Xenophon; and 'they (the Carduchi) 'wounded' even
 τινες τούτων.
 some of-those.

CHAPTER IV

Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξά-
 WHEN indeed they-had-crossed, (and) having-drawn-themselves-up-
 μενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας, ἐπορεύθησαν,
 in-order about (the) middle 'of (the) 'day, they-proceeded,
 οὐ μείον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας, διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας,
 not less than five parasangs, through — Armenia,
 ἅπαν πεδίου καὶ γηλόφους λείους·
 (it being) altogether (a) plain, and (having) hills of-gentle-ascent;
 γὰρ ἦσαν οὐ κῶμαι ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ
 for there-were not villages near the river on-account-of

τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους
the wars (namely) — (those) with the Carduchi.

Δὲ εἰς ἣν κώμην ἀφίκοντο ἦν τε μεγάλη.
But (the village) at which village they-arrived was not-only large,

καὶ εἶχε βασίλειον τῷ σατραπῇ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς
but-also had (a) palace for-the satrap, and on the

πλείσταις οἰκίαις ἐπῆσαν τύρσεις· ἐπιτήδεια δ'
most houses there-were towers; provisions indeed

ἦν δαψιλῇ. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο
were abundant. Thence — they-proceeded two

σταδμοί, δέκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι ὑπερῆλ-
days'-march, (making) ten parasangs, until they-passed-

δον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος. Ἐντεῦθεν
beyond the sources of-the river Tigris. Thence

δ' ἐπορεύθησαν τρεῖς σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα
— they-proceeded three days'-march (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Τηλεβόαν. Οὗτος
parasangs to the river Teleboas. This

δ' ἦν μὲν καλὸς, δ' οὐ μέγας· δ' ἦσαν
(river) — was indeed beautiful, but not large; and there-were

πολλαὶ κῶμαι περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν. Δὲ ὁ οὗτος
many villages along — (this) river. And — this

τόπος ἐκαλεῖτο Ἀρμενία ἣ πρὸς
place was-called Armenia (that namely) which (was) towards (the)

ἐσπέραν. Δ' ὑπαρχος αὐτῆς ἦν Τηρίβαζος,
west. And (the) lieutenant-governor of-it was Teribazus,

ὅς καὶ γενόμενος φίλος βασιλεῖ (καὶ ὁπότε
who even had-become (a) friend 'to (the) 'king (and when

παρεῖη οὐδεὶς ἄλλος ἀνέβαλλε βασιλέα
he-might-be-present no-one else put (the) king

ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Οὗτος προσήλασεν ἔχων
on — (his) horse. This (person) came-forward havin

ἱππέας, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν,
cavalry (with him), and having-sent-forward (an) interpreter to-say,

ὅτι βούλοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἀρχουσι. Ἐδοξε
that he-wished to-have-spoken-with the commanders. It-seemed

δέ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀκοῦσαι. Καὶ πρὸς·
indeed (good) to-the generals to-hear (him). And ad.

ἐλδόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἡρώτων τί θέλοι.
vancing within hearing (distance) they-inquired what he-might-wish.

Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, ὅτι βούλοιο σπείσασθαι,
Who — (then) said, that he-desired to-make-a-treaty (with them),

ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς ἀδικεῖν τοὺς
|on which [on the condition] (that) neither he-himself should-injure the

Ἕλληνας, μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς
Greeks, nor (that) they (the Greeks) should-burn the

οἰκίας, τε λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
houses, also (that they might) take — provisions

ὅσων θέοιντο. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε
(of)-as-much-as they-wanted. These (proposals) seemed (good)

τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.
to-the generals, and they-made-a-treaty on these (terms).

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου τρεῖς
Thence indeed they-proceeded through (the) plain three

σταδμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας· καὶ
days'-march (making) fifteen parasangs; and

Τηρίβαζος παρηκολούθει, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ,
Teribazus followed, | having the force of-himself,

ἀπέχων ὥς δέκα σταδίου·
[having his own troops,] (and) being-distant about ten stadia;

καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασιλεία, καὶ πολλὰς
and they-arrived at (a) palace, (there being) also many

κώμας περίξ μεστάς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.
villages round-about (it) filled-with much — provisions.

Δ' αὐτῶν στρατοπεδευομένων γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς
But they having-encamped there-happened in-the night

πολλή χιών· καὶ ἔωθεν ἔδοξε διασκη-
much snow; and in-the-morning it-seemed-best to-distribute-in.

νῆσαι τὰς τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς
quartees the troops and the generals among the

κώμας· γὰρ οὐ ἑώραν οὐδένα πολέμιον,
villages; for they-'did not 'see (no) (any) enemy.

καὶ ἑδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
and it-seemed to-be safe on-account-of the quantity of —

χιώνος. Ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν
snow. Here they-had — provisions such-as are

ἰγαδά, ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, εὐώδεις
good, (namely) | victims, [animals used for food,] corn, fragrant

παλαιούς οἶνους, ἀσταφίδας, παντοδαπά ὅσπρια.
old wines, dried-grapes, all-kinds (of) pulse.

Τινὲς δὲ τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ
Some — of — (those) scattered-about from the

στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον, ὅτι κατίδοιεν στρατεύμα,
camp said, that they-saw (an) army,

καὶ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοιτο νύκτωρ. Ἐδόκει
and (that) many fires appeared during-the-night. It-seemed

δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διασκη-
indeed to-the generals not to-be safe to-quarter

νοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν πάλιν τὸ
dispersed, but (that they ought) to-bring-together again the

στράτευμα. Ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλδον· γὰρ ἑδόκει καὶ
army. Thereupon they-assembled; for it-seemed even

συναιδριάζειν. Δ' αὐτῶν νυκτερευόντων ἐνταῦθα
to-be-clearing-up. But they passing-the-night here

ἄπλετος χιὼν ἐπιπίπτει, ὥστε ἀπέκρινψε καὶ
(a) vast-quantity (of) snow falls, so-that it-covered both

τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνδρόπους κατακειμένους
the arms and the men lying

καὶ ἡ χιὼν συνεπόδισε τὰ ὑποζύγια·
(on the ground); and the snow benumbed the baggage-cattle;

καὶ ἦν πολὺς ὄκνος ἀνίστασθαι· γὰρ ἡ χιὼν
and there-was much sluggishness to-rise-up; for the snow

ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα κατακειμένων ἦν ἁλεινὸν,
having-fallen-on (them) lying-down was warm (to them),

μὴ παραρροεῖν ὅτῳ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
(provided) it-'did not 'fall-off from-them. When however

Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε ἀναστὰς γυμνὸς
Xenophon | dared having-risen-up naked [dared to rise up

σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἂν και
 [divested of his outer garments] to-split wood, speedily — also

τις ἄλλος ἀναστὰς ἀφελόμενος ἐκείνου
 some other-one having-risen-up (and) having-taken (the wood) from-him

ἔσχιζεν. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες
 split (it). After this — also the others having-risen-up

ἔκαιον πῦρ καὶ ἐχρίοντο. Γὰρ εὗρίσκετο
 lit (the) fire and anointed-themselves. For they-found

πολὺ χρίσμα ἐνταῦθα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου,
 much ointment there, which they-used in-place-of oil.

σύειον, καὶ σησάμινον, καὶ ἀμυγδάλινοι
 (it being made of) hog's-lard, and sesame, and almonds

ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν, καὶ τερεβίνθινοι. Δέ
 of the bitter (kind), and turpentine. And

ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον
 of the self same (substances) also an-odoriferous-unguent

εὗρίσκετο.
 was-found.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν εἶναι διασκη-
 After this it-seemed again to-be necessary-to-be-dis-

νητέον εἰς τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. Ἐνθα δὴ
 persed-in-quarters in the villages under shelter. Here indeed

οἱ στρατιῶται ἦσαν σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ
 the soldiers went with much shouting and

ἡδονῇ ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
 delight to the shelter-under-roofs, and (to) — provisions,

δὲ ὅσοι, ὅτε πρότερον ἀπήσαν,
 but as-many-as, when before they-departed (from the villages),

ἐνέπρησαν τὰς οἰκίας ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας ἐδίδosan
 set-fire-to the houses through folly | gave

δίκην σκηνοῦντες κακῶς.
 justice [suffered punishment] (by) encamping uncomfortably (in the

ἄντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην
 open air). Thence they-sent at-night Democritus (of)

Τεμενίτην, δόντες ἄνδρας, ἐπὶ τὰ
 Temenos, giving (him a detachment of) men, to the

ὄρη, ἔνθα οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι
mountains, where — (those) having-straggled 'from the camp'

ἔφασαν καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· γὰρ οὗτος
said (that) they-saw the fires; for this (man)

ἔδόκει καὶ ἤδη πρότερον ἀληθεῦσαι πολλά
seemed also already before to-have-truly-reported many

τοιαῦτα, τε τὰ ὄντα ὡς ὄντα, καὶ
such (things), not-only the (things) being as being, but-also

τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. Δὲ πορευθεῖς,
the (things) not being as not being. And having-gone-forth,

ἔφη μὲν οὐκ ἰδεῖν τὰ πυρά, δὲ συλλαβὼν
he-said (that he) indeed 'did not 'see the fires, but having-captured

ἄνδρα ἦκεν ἄγων, ἔχοντα Περ-
(a) man he-came bringing (him), (this man) having (a) Per-

σικόν τόξον καὶ φαρέτραν, καὶ σάγαριν
sian bow and quiver, and (a) kind-of-battle-axe

οἶανπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. Ἐρωτώμενος δὲ
such-as the Amazons have. Being-asked —

ποδαπὸς εἴη, ἔφη μὲν εἶναι Πέρσης,
of-what-country he-might-be, he-said indeed (that) he-was (a) Persian,

δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος Τηρι-
and (that) he-was-proceeding from the army of-Teri-

βάζου, ὅπως λάβοι ἐπιτήδεια· δ' οἱ ἡρώτων
bazus, that he-might-procure provisions; and — they-asked

αὐτόν, τε ὅποσον τὸ στράτευμα εἴη. καὶ
him, not-only how-great the army might-be, but-also

ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι
for what it-had-been-assembled. And — (he) said, | that

Τηρίβαζος εἴη ἔχων τε τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ
Teribazus might-be having not-only the force of-himself,

καὶ Χάλυβας καὶ
[that Teribazus had not only his own army,] but-also Chalybian and

Ταόχους μισθοφόρους· δὲ ἔφη αὐτόν παρεσκευ-
Taochan mercenaries; and he-said (that) he was-pre-

ἄσσαι ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς,
pared at the crossing of-the mountain, in the KARTOW

ἥπερ μοναχῇ εἷη πορεία, ὥς ἐνταῦθα
 (parts) by-which alone there-was (a) passage, that there
 ἐπιδησόμενον τοῖς Ἑλλησιν. Ἔδοξε τοῖς
 he-was-about-attacking the Greeks. It-seemed (good) to-the
 στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα συναγαγεῖν τὸ
 generals (after) having-heard this to-collect-together the
 στράτευμα· καὶ εὐθὺς καταλιπόντες φύλακας,
 army; and immediately leaving sentinels,
 καὶ Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ
 and Sophrañetus (the) Stymphalian (as) commander over
 τοῖς μένουσι, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες
 — (those) remaining (behind), they-proceed, having (a)
 ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἀλόντα ἄνθρωπον. Ἐπειδὴ
 guide (namely) the captured man. When
 δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προΐ-
 however they-crossed-over the mountains, the targeteers going-
 ὄντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον
 before and having-perceived the camp (of the enemy)
 οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὀπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακρα-
 they-'did not 'wait-for the heavy-armed-men, but having-raised
 γόντες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Δ' οἱ βάρβαροι
 a-shout they-ran against the camp. But the barbarians
 ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον, οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ'
 hearing the noise, 'did not 'remain, but
 ἔφευγον· ὁμῶς δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν βαρ-
 fled; likewise — also ' they-killed some of-the bar-
 βάρων· καὶ ἵπποι ἤλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι, καὶ
 barians; and horses were-taken about twenty (in number), and
 ἡ σκηνὴ ἣ Τηριβάζου ἐάλω, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ
 the tent — (that) of-Teribazus was-taken, and in it
 εἶναι ἀργυρόποδες κλῖναι καὶ ἐκπώ-
 (there were found) to-be silver-footed couches and drinking-
 ματα, καὶ οἱ φάσκοντες ἀρτοκόποι,
 cups, and — (those) saying (that they were) bakers,
 καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόαι. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
 and — (those) (saying that they were) cup-bearers When indeed

οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἐπύδοντο ταῦτα,
 the commanders of-the heavy-armed-men heard these
 ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην
 (things), it-seemed to-them (best) to-depart | the fastest
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μὴ τις
 [as fast as possible] to — (their own) camp, lest any
 ἐπίδεσις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. Καὶ
 attack might-happen to — (those) having-been-left-behind. And
 εὐδὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλ-
 immediately having-recalled (the men) by-the (sound of the) trum-
 πυγῇ ἀπῆσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ
 pet they-departed, and they-arrived at — (their)
 στρατόπεδον αὐθιμερόν.
 camp the-same-day.

CHAPTER V.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει εἶναι πορευτέον,
 But on-the next-day it-was-thought to-be necessary-to-proceed,
 ὅπῃ δύναιτο τάχιστα, πρὶν ἢ τὸ στράτευμα
 in-what-way they-could most-speedily, before that the army
 συλλεγῆναι πάλιν, καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ
 (of the enemy) was-collected again, and to-have-seized the
 στενά. Δ' εὐδὺς συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύ-
 defiles. And immediately having-collected-their-baggage they-pro-
 οντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος ἔχοντες πολλοὺς
 ceeded through much snow having man,
 ἡγεμόνας καὶ αὐθιμερόν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον,
 guides; and on-the-same-day having-passed-over the height,
 ἐφ' ᾧ Τηρίβαζος ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίδесδαι,
 on which Teribazus intended to-attack (them),

κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν,
they-encamped. Hence they-proceeded

τρεις σταδμούς ἐρήμους πεντεκαίδεκα
three days'-march (in a) desert (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, καὶ
parasangs to the river Euphrates, and

διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρέχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν.
they-crossed-over it being-wet to the navel.

Δὲ ἐλέγοντο αἱ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ οὐ εἶναι πρόσω.
And they-say the sources of-it not to-be far.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος καὶ
Hence they-advanced through much snow and

πεδίου τρεις σταδμούς, πεντεκαίδεκα
(through a) plain three days'-march, (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας. Ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο
parasangs. The — third (day's march) was

χαλεπὸς καὶ βορρᾶς ἄνεμος ἔπνει ἐναν-
difficult-and-severe and (the) north wind blew against-them-

τίος, παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα, καὶ
in-their-faces, entirely parching-up every-thing, and

πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἐνθα δὴ τις τῶν
benumbing the men. Then indeed some-one of-th-

μάντεων εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ
augurs said (that) it-was-to-be-sacrificed to-the wind, and

σφαγιάζεται· καὶ δὴ ἔδοξε περιφανῶς πᾶσι
it-was-sacrificed; and indeed it-seemed evidently to-all (that)

τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος λῆξαι. Δὲ τὸ βάθος
the violence of-the wind ceased. And the depth

τῆς χιόνος ἦν ὀργυιὰ· ὥστε καὶ πολλὰ τῶν
of-the snow was (a) fathom; so-that even many of-the

ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων ἀπώλετο, καὶ
baggage-cattle and of-the slaves perished, and

τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. Δὲ διεγέγοντο
of-the soldiers about thirty. And they-passed

τὴν νύκτα καίοντες πῦρ· δ' ἦν πολλὰ ξύλα
the night burning fire; for there-was much wood

ἐν τῷ σταδμῷ· οἱ δὲ προσιόντες ὀψέ
in the place-where-they-halted; — (those) indeed coming late

εἶχον οὐ ξύλα. Οἱ οὖν ἥκοντες πάλαι
had no wood. — (Those) therefore coming before

καὶ καίοντες τὸ πῦρ οὐ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας
and burning the fire (would) not (let) — (those) coming-late

προσέεισαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς
approach to the fire, unless they-shared with-them

πυροῦς, ἢ τι ἄλλο, εἴτι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν.
wheat, or any-thing else, if-any-thing they-might-have eatable.

Ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν ἕκαστοι
So-then indeed they-shared with-one-another what each

εἶχον. Ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, τῆς χιόνος
had. There-where indeed the fire was-burning, the snow

διατηχομένης, ἐγίγοντο μεγάλοι βόθροι ἕστε
(being) melted, there-became large pits until

ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν
to the ground; where indeed there-was-present (an opportunity)

μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.
to-measure the depth of-the snow.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύοντο τὴν ὅλην ἐπιοῦσαι
Hence — they-proceeded (during) the entire following

ἡμέραν διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων
day through snow, and many of-the men

ἐβουλιμίαςαν. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθοφυλακῶν, καὶ
got-the-bulimy. But Xenophon commanding-the-rear, and

καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων
finding — (those) fallen-down of-the men

ἠγνόει ὅ τι τὸ πάθος εἴη. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ τις
knew-not what the disease might-be. But when some-one

τῶν ἐμπεύρων εἶπε αὐτῷ ὅτι σαφῶς
of — (those) acquainted-with (it) told him that evidently

βουλιμιῶσι, καὶ φάγωσι τι, ἀναστήσονται,
they-had-the-bulimy, and-if they-eat something, they-would-get-up,

περιὸν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ ποὺ ὁρῶη τι
going-about among the baggage-cattle, if any-where he-saw any thing

βρωτὸν ἢ ποτόν, διεδίδου, καὶ δίδοντας
eatable or drinkable, he-distributed (it), and giving it,

διέπεμπε τοῖς βουλιμιῷσι τοὺς δυναμένους
he-sent-about to — (those) having-the-bulimy — (those) being-able

παρατρέχειν. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐμφάγοιεν τι,
to-run-about. When — they-might-have-eaten any-thing,

ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. Δὲ πορευομένων
they-stood-up and proceeded-forth. But proceeding (as

Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας ἀφικνεῖται
their march) Cheirisophus indeed about dark arrives

πρὸς κώμην, καὶ καταλαμβάνει πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ
at (a) village, and finds at the spring

ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας ἐκ
in-front of-the rampart women and girls from

τῆς κώμης ὑδροφορούσας. Αὗται ἠρώτων αὐτοὺς
the village carrying-water. These asked them

τίνες εἶεν. Δ' ὁ ἐρμηνεὺς εἶπε Περσιστί,
who they-might-be. And the interpreter said 'in (the)' Persian-language,

ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς τὸν
that they-were-proceeding from (the) king to the

σατράπην. Αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ
satrap. — (they) — replied, that he-was not

ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην.
there, but was-distant as-much-as (a) parasang.

Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὀψὲ συνεισέρχονται σὺν ταῖς
But — (they) because it-was late enter-together with the

ὑδροφόροις εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα πρὸς τὸν κωμάρχην.
water-carriers into the fort to the head-man-of-the-village

Ἐνταῦθα οὖν μὲν Χειρίσοφος καὶ ὅσοι τοῦ
There therefore indeed Cheirisophus and as-many of-the

στρατεύματος ἐδυνηθήσαν ἐστρατοπεδεύ-
army (as) were-enabled (to come up) en-

σαντο· δ' οἱ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν
camped; and — (those)-of-the other soldiers that-were

μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν
not 'able to-have-completed the route passed-the-night

ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες τῶν
fasting and without fire; and there some of-the

στρατιωτῶν ἀπώλοντο. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν πολεμίων
soldiers perished. And some of-the enemy

ἑννικελευμένοι ἐφείποντο, καὶ ἥρπαζον τὰ
being-collected-together pursued (the rear), and seized --

τῶν ἱποζυγίων μὴ δυνάμενα, καὶ
(those) of-the baggage-cattle not being-able (to proceed), and

ἐμάχοντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ αὐτῶν. Δὲ καὶ
fought with-one-another for them. And also

ἐλείποντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε οἱ διεφθα-
there-were-left-behind of-the soldiers both — (those) having-

μένοι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος,
been-ruined (as respects) the eyes by the snow,

τε οἱ ἀποσσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους
[and — (those) having-been-mortified (as respects) the fingers

τῶν ποδῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους.
of-the feet by the cold [and those who had their toes

Δὲ μὲν ἦν ἐπικούρημα τοῖς
mortified by the cold]. But indeed it-was (a) defence to-the

ὀφθαλμοῖς τῆς χιόνος, εἴ τις πορεύοιτο
eyes from-the snow, if any-one (when) he-proceeded (on)

ἔχων τι μέλαν πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν,
the march) (having) (had) something black before the eyes,

δὲ τῶν ποδῶν, εἴ τις κινοῖτο, καὶ
and (a defence) of-the feet, if any-one moved-about, and

μηδέποτε ἔχοι ἡσυχίαν, καὶ εἴ τὴν νύκτα
never might-have rest, and if at — night

ὑπολύνειτο. Δὲ ὅσοι ἐκοιμῶντο ὑποδε-
they-loosened-their-sandals. But (as many) as slept having-their-

δεμένοι, οἱ ἱμάντες εἰσεδύνοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας
sandals-on, the straps penetrated into the feet

καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο·
and the soles (of the sandals) were-frozen-about (the feet);

γὰρ καὶ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα ἐπήλπιε,
for indeed, when — (their) old sandals failed

πεποιημένοι ἦσαν καρβάτινας ἐκ τῶν
 (them), they-had-made (for themselves) rough-sandals from the
 νεοδάρτων βοῶν. Διὰ τὰς ἀνάγκας οὕν
 raw-hides of-oxen. Through — (such) necessity therefore
 τοιαύτας τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὑπελείποντο· καὶ
 as-these some of-the soldiers were-left-behind; and
 ἰδόντες τι μέλαν χωρίον, διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι
 seeing a black place, [on-account-of the to-have disappeared
 αὐτόδι τὴν χιόνα,
 there (as respects) the snow, [on account of the disappear-
 εἶκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ
 ance there of the snow,] they-conjectured (that it) had-melted; and
 ἔτετήκει διὰ τινὰ κρήνην, ἣ ἦν ἀτμίζουσα
 it-had-melted through some spring, which was smoking
 πλησίον ἐν νάπῃ. Ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι
 near in (a) woody-vale. There turning-aside
 ἐκάθηντο, καὶ ἔφασαν οὐ πορεύεσθαι.
 they-sat-down, and said (that they would) not proceed.
 Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας,
 — But Xenophon having (the command of) rear-guard,
 ὥς ᾗσθετο ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ
 as he-perceived (this) begged of-them by-every art and
 μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων, ὅτι πολλοὶ
 means not to-be-left-behind, saying, that many (of the)
 πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι ἔπονται, καὶ τελευτῶν
 enemy being-assembled-together pursued (them), and finishing
 ἐχαλέπαινε. Οἱ δὲ ἐκέλευον σχάζειν
 he-grew-angry. — (They) indeed requested (him) to-kill
 γὰρ ἂν οὐ δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.
 (them); for (that) 'they — 'were not 'able to-proceed.
 Ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον φοβῆσαι
 Then it-seemed (to him) to-be the-best to-have-scared
 τοὺς ἐπομένους πολεμίους, εἴ τις δύναίτο, μὴ
 the pursuing enemy, if any-thing could-be-done, lest
 ἐπιπέσοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. Καὶ μὲν ἦ
 they-should-fall-upon — (those) being-exhausted. And indeed it-was

ἤδη σκότος, οἱ δὲ προσήεσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ
 now dark, — 'they indeed 'advanced with-much noise
 διαφερόμενοι ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον. Ἐνθα δὴ
 disputing about what they-had (of the booty). Then truly
 μὲν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἄτε ὑγιαίνον-
 indeed — (those of the) rear-guard as being-in-good-condition-
 τες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους·
 and-able, starting-up ran to the enemy;
 δ' οἱ κάμνοντες, ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον μέγιστον
 and the exhausted (men), | having-shouted as-much as-the-greatest
 ἠδύναντο, ἔκρουσαν
 they-could, [having shouted as loud as they possibly could,] struck
 τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ
 the shields against the spears. The enemy indeed
 δείσαντες, ἤκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος
 having-become-alarmed, threw themselves among the snow
 εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἐφθέγγετο
 into the woody-vale, and no-one (of them) afterwards made-a-noise
 οὐδαμοῦ.
 any-where.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰπόντες
 And Xenophon indeed and — (those) with him, telling
 τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν, ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τινες
 — (those) being-weak-and-helpless, that on-the next-day some
 ἥξουσὶ ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι,
 would-come to them, (then) proceeding (on their march, but)
 πρὶν διελθεῖν τέτταρα στάδια ἐτυγχάνουσιν
 before (that) they-had-gone-over four stadia they-found
 ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τοῖς στρατιώταις ἀναπαυομένοις
 on the road — soldiers resting
 ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος ἔγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδε
 on the snow (and) having-been-covered (by it), and neither
 οὐδεμία φυλακὴ καθεστῆκει, καὶ
 had (no) (any) guard 'been-placed-over (them), and
 ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. Δ' οἱ ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ
 they-'roused them 'up. And — they-said that — (those)

ἐμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. Ὅδε
before 'did not 'make-progress. — (Xenophon) indeed

παριών, καὶ παραπέμπων τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους τῶν
going-past, and sending-on the strongest of-the

πελταστών, ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη
targeteers, ordered (them) to-see-and-ascertain what might-be

τὸ κωλύον. Οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον, ὅτι τὸ
the hindrance. — 'They indeed 'announced that the

ὅλον στράτευμα οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο.
whole army might-'be thus (in a manner) 'taking-rest.

Καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐνταῦθα ἡγλίσθησαν
And — (those) with Xenophon then took-up-their-quarters

αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρός καὶ ἄδειπνοι, καταστησάμενοι
there without fire and supperless, stationing

φυλακὰς οἷας ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν
(such) guards as they-were-able. When indeed it-was

πρὸς ἡμέραν, ὃ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας τοὺς νεώ-
towards day, — — Xenophon having-sent the young-

τάτους πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας
est (of his men) to — (those) being-weak-and-sick

ἐκέλευεν ἀναστήσαντας ἀναγκάζειν
ordered (them) having-'roused (them) 'up to-compel (them)

προϊέναι. Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει
to-go-forward. At — this (time) Cheirisophus sends

τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς οἱ
'some) of — (those) from the village | about-seeing how the

τελευταῖοι ἔχοιεν. Δ'
last might-have (themselves) [to see how the rear fared]. But

οἱ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες
— (the young men sent by Xenophon) rejoiced (at) seeing (them)

παρέδωκαν τούτοις ἀσθενοῦντας κομίζειν ἐπὶ
gave-over to-these (the) weak-and-sick to-conduct to

τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ
the camp, they-themselves — proceeded-forward, and

πρὶν διεληλυθέναι εἴκοσι στάδια ἦσαν πρὸς
before (that) they-had-completed twenty stadia they-were

τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ἡϋλίζετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
the village where Cheirisophus was-quartered. When indeed

συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε εἶναι ἀσφαλές
they-got-together among-one-another, it-seemed to-be safe

σκηνοῦν τὰς τάξεις κατὰ τὰς κώμας. Καὶ
to-quarter the troops up-and-down the villages. And

Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἔμενεν αὐτοῦ, οἱ ἄλλοι
Cheirisophus indeed remained there (where he was), the others

δὲ διαλαχόντες κώμας ἃς ἑώραν. ἔπορεύ-
indeed having-drawn-lots (for the) villages which they-saw, pro-

νιτο, ἕκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς ἑαυτῶν.
ceeded, | each having the (men) of-themselves [each hav-

ing their respective command].

Ἐνθα δὴ Πολυβώτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς
Here indeed Polybotes (an) Athenian captain

ἐκέλευσεν ἑαυτὸν ἀφιέναι· καὶ
requested (that) they-would-'allow him 'to-go-away; | and

λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους,
taking the well-girt, [and taking with him the most active

θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην, ἣν Ξενοφῶν
of his men], running to the village, which Xenophon

εἰλήχει, καταλαμβάνει πάντας τοὺς κωμή-
obtained-by-lot, he-surprises all the inhabitants-of-

τας ἔνδον, καὶ τὸν κωμάρχην, καὶ ἑπτακαίδεκα
the-village at-home, and the village-chief, and seventeen

πώλους τρεφομένους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ, καὶ
colts bred for (a) tribute 'to (the) king, and

τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου γεγαμημένην
the daughter of-the village-chief married (the)

ἐνάτην ἡμέραν· δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ὥχετο
ninth day; and the husband of-her had-gone-ou'

θηράσων λαγῶς, καὶ οὐχ ἦλω ἐν ταῖς κώμαις.
hunting hares, and 'was not 'found in the villages

Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα
The — houses were under-ground, the — mouth (as

ὥσπερ φρέατος, δὲ κάτω εὐρείαι.
 entrance was) like (that) 'of (a) 'well, but below spacious.
 Δὲ αἱ εἰσοδοὶ μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί.
 And the entrances — for-the cattle (were) dug.
 δὲ οἱ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. Ἐν δὲ
 but the men descended on ladders. In —
 ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες,
 the houses there-were goats, sheep, cows, fowls,
 καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· δὲ πάντα τὰ κτήνη
 and the young of-these; and all the cattle
 ἐτρέφοντο χιλῶ ἔνδον. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
 were-nourished on-hay within (the houses). And also there-was
 πυροί, καὶ κριθαί, καὶ ὄσπρια, καὶ κρίδιος οἶνος
 wheat, and barley, and legumes, and barley wine
 ἐν κρατῆρσι· δὲ καὶ αἱ αὐταὶ κριθαὶ ἐνήσαν
 in large-bowls; and also — (these) same barley-grains floated
 ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο,
 even-with-the-brims (of the vessels), and reeds lay-in (them),
 οἱ μὲν μείζους, δὲ οἱ ἐλάττους, οὐκ
 — (some) indeed larger, but — (others) smaller, (and) not
 ἔχοντες γόνατα· δ' ἔδει ὅποτε τις διψῶη
 having joints; and it-was-proper when any-one might-be-thirsty
 λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. Καὶ
 having-taken these into — (his) mouth to-suck. And
 ἦν πάνυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μὴ τις ἐπιχέοι
 it-was very strong, | if not [unless] some-one poured-in
 ἕδωρ· καὶ τὸ πόμα ἦν πάνυ ἡδὺ συμμα-
 water; and the drink was very pleasant to-one-accus-
 δόντι.
 tomed-to (it).

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐποιήσατο τὸν ἄρχοντα της
 — And Xenophon made-for-himself the ruler of —
 ταίτης κώμης σύνδειπνον, καὶ ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν
 this village his-guest-at-supper, and he-exhorted him.
 θαρρῆν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔτε στερήσοιτο
 to-be-of-good-courage, saying, that he-should not be-deprived

τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίαςιν ἀντεμπλήσαντες τήν
of — (his) children, and (as) they-depart they-would-be-about-filling the

οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, ἣν φαίνεται
house of-himself with — provisions, if he-show-himself (as)

ἐξηγησάμενος τι ἀγαθόν τῷ στρατείματι,
having-been-the-leader (in) some good for-the army.

ἔστ' ἂν γέγωνται ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνῃ. Ὁ δὲ
until 'they might 'get with another tribe. — And

ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος, ἔφρασεν
this he-promised, and, being-kindly-disposed, he-told

οἶνον ἔνθα ἦν κατωρυγμένος. Οὖν
(them respecting) wine where it-was buried. Therefore

μὲν ταύτην τήν νύκτα, πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται
indeed this — (same) night, all the soldiers

διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως, ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν
having-been-quartered-dispersedly thus, were-made-to-rest in great

ἀφθόνοις, ἔχοντες τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ
abundance, having the village-chief under guard, and

τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. Δὲ τῇ
the children of-him likewise under eye. And on-the

ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κωμάρχην
next day Xenophon taking the village-chief

ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χειρίσοφον· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι
proceeded to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-pass-by

κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις.
(a) village, he-turned-aside to — (those) in the villages,

καὶ πανταχοῦ κατελάμβανε εὖωχουμένους καὶ
and everywhere he-found (them) feasting and

εὐδυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν
enjoying-themselves, and nowhere did-they-'allow (them) 'to.

πρὶν παραδεῖναι ἄριστον αὐτοῖς.
depart before (that) they-had-'placed dinner 'before them

Δ' ἦν οὐκ ὅπου οὐ παρετίδесαν ἐπὶ
And there-was not anywhere (where) they-'did not 'place on

τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεια, ἐρίφεια,
the same table flesh (of) lamb, κτ'

χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις,
pork, veal, fowl, with much bread,

τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς κριθίνοις.
— (that) namely (of) wheat, and — (that of) barley

Ὅποτε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βούλοιτο προπιεῖν
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed | wished to-drink-before

τῷ εἶλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα,
to-the [wished to drink to another] he-drew (him) to the large-bowl,

ἐνθεν ἔδει ἐπικύψαντα ῥοφοῦντα πίνειν
there it-was-necessary having-stoooped-down sucking to-drink

ὥσπερ βοῦν. Καὶ ἐδίδοσαν τῷ κωμάρχει λαμ-
like (an) ox. And they-granted to-the village-chief to-

βάνειν ὃ τι βούλοιτο. Ὁ δὲ ἐδέχετο οὐδὲν
take whatever he-might-wish. Who however accepted nothing

ἄλλο μὲν, ὅπου δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συγ-
also indeed, where however he-may-have-seen any of — (his) re-

γενῶν αἰὲ ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτὸν.
lations 'he always 'took (them) with him.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-
When however they-came to Cheirisophus, they-

λάμβανον καὶ αὐτοὺς σκηνοῦντας,
found also-these (his men feasting) being-in-their-quarters,

ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνοις τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ,
crowned with-crowns (made) of — dry grass,

καὶ Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς
and Armenian boys — (in) — (their) barbarian

στολαῖς διακονοῦντας. Δὲ ἐδείκνυσαν τοῖς παισὶν
dresses waiting-on-them. And they-showed the boys

ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὃ τι δέοι ποιεῖν.
(by signs) as-if (they were) deaf-and-dumb what they-ought to-do.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἐφιλοφρονήσαντ
When — Cheirisophus and Xenophon had-saluted

ἀλλήλους, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχην,
one-another, in-common — they-questioned the village-chief,

διὰ τοῦ ἑρμηνέως περσίζοντος, τίς ἡ χώρα
throug' the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country

εἶη. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀρμενία. Καί
might-be. And who said, that (it was) Armenia. And

πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφονται. Δ'
again asking for-whom the horses might-be-bred. And

ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι δασμός βασιλεῖ· ἔφη δε,
— (he) said, as (a) tribute 'to (the) 'king; he-said also, (that)

τὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι Χάλυβας, καί
the neighbouring country was (that of the) Chalybes, | and

ἔφραζεν τὴν ὁδὸν ἣ εἶη.
mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [and he told them the

Καὶ τότε μὲν Ξενοφῶν ὤχετο
direction of the road]. And then indeed Xenophon departed

ἄγων αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας ἑαυτοῦ,
conducting him to the family of-himself, [to his own family,]

καὶ δίδωσι ἵππον ὃν εἰλήφει παλαί-
and he-gave (the) horse which he-had-taken (and which was) rather-

τερον τῷ κωμάρχη ἀναδρέψαντι καταδῦσαι,
old to-the village-chief (he) having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice,

ὅτι ἤκουσεν αὐτὸν εἶναι ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου,
because he-had-heard (that) it was (a) victim of-the Sun,

δεδιώξας μὴ ἀποθάνη· γὰρ ἐκεκάκωτο ὑπὸ τῆς
having-feared lest it-might-die; for it-had-been-injured by the

πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει τῶν πώλων,
journey; 'he indeed 'himself takes (some) of-the colts,

καὶ ἐκάστῳ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν
and to-each of-the other generals and captains

ἔδωκε πῶλον. Οἱ δ' ἵπποι ταύτη ἦσαν
he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this (country) were

μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, δὲ πολὺ
smaller indeed (than those) of-the Persians, but much

θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα ὁ κωμάρχης
more-spirited. And indeed here the village-chief

διδάσκει περιελεῖν σακία περὶ τοὺς πόδας
instructs (them) to-tie small-bags about the feet

τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων· ὅταν ἄγωσι
of-the horses and of-the cattle; when they-drove (them)

διὰ τῆς χιόνος· γὰρ ἄνευ τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο
through the snow; for without the little-bags they-sung

μέχρι τῆς γαστρού.
up-to the belly.

CHAPTER VI.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ὀγδόη ἡμέρα ἦν, μὲν παραδίδωσι
WHEN — (the) eighth day was, 'he indeed 'delivered-over
τὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρισόφω, δὲ καταλείπει τοὺς
the guide to-Cheirisophus, but he-left the
οἰκέτας τῷ κωμάρχη, πλὴν τοῦ
members-'of (his) 'family to-the chief-of-the-village, except — (his)
υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· δὲ τοῦτον
son — (who was) just coming-to-age; and him
παραδίδωσι Ἐπισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτη φυλάττειν
he-gave-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis to-guard
ὅπως, εἰ ἡγήσοιτο καλῶς. ἀπίοι
that, if 'he (the father) 'should-guide (them) fairly, he-might-return
ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον. Καὶ εἰσεφόρησαν εἰς τὴν
(home) having also this-one. And they-brought to the
οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ὥς πλεῖστα ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀνα-
house of-him as many-things (as) they-could, and having
ζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. Δ' ὁ κωμάρ-
broken-up-their-camp they-proceeded-on-their-march. And the village-
χης λελυμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ χιόνος·
chief unbound guided them through (the) snow;
καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταδμῷ, καὶ
and now also it-was in the third day's-march, and
Χειρίσοφος ἐχαλεπάνδη αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ
Cheirisophus became-angry with-him that he-'did no

ἤγεν εἰς κώμας. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἶεν οὐκ
 'lead (them) to villages. But who said that there-was not

ἐν τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἔπαισε
 (any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus struck

αὐτὸν μὲν, δ' οὐκ ἔλησε. Δ' ἐκ τούτου
 him indeed, but 'did not 'bind (him). | And from this

ἐκεῖνος ἀποδράς ὥχετο τῆς νυκτός,
 he having-fled went-away (in) the night, [and on this ac-

καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. Τόδε
 count he ran off at night,] leaving-behind — (his) son. This

δὴ ἡ κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια τοῦ
 truly-indeed, (namely) the ill-treatment and neglect of-the

ἡγεμόνος, ἐγένετο μόνον διάφορον Χειρι-
 guide, was (the) only dissension (between) Cheiri-

σόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ. Δὲ Ἐπισ-
 sophus and Xenophon on the route. But Epis-

θένης τε ἠράσθη τοῦ παιδός, καὶ κομίσας
 thenes not-only became-fond of-the boy, but-also having-taker

οἴκαδε ἐχρήτο πιστοτάτῳ.
 (him) home | made-use-of (him as) the-most-faithful [found him very

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἐπτά
 much attached to himself]. After this they-proceeded seven

σταδμοὺς, ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας,
 days'-march, always five parasangs the day,

παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Φᾷσιν, εὐρύς πλε-
 to the river Phasis, (the) breadth (of which is) equal-

δριαῖον. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμοὺς
 to-a-plethrum. Hence they-proceeded two days'-march

δέκα παρασάγγας· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
 (making) ten parasangs; at — the pass-over

εἰς τὸ πεδίον Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι,
 (the mountains) on-to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taochi,

καὶ Φασιανοὶ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς. Χειρί-
 and (the) Phasiani had-come-to-oppose them. Cheiri-

σοφος δ', ἐπεὶ κατείδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ
 sophus indeed, when he-saw the enemy on the

ἵπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχω
 pass, ceased proceeding (on the march), being-distant
 εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ
 about thirty stadia, that he-'might not 'approach
 τοῖς πολεμίοις ἄγων κατὰ κέρασ· δὲ
 the enemy | leading by (a) wing; [in column;] and
 καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς
 also announced to-the other (officers) to-bring-up the
 λόχους, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος.
 companies, so-that the army might-get into line.
 Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦλθον, συνεκάλεσε
 And when the rear-guard came, he-called-together
 τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε·
 the generals and captains, and spoke thus:
 Οἱ μὲν πολέμοι ὡς ὁρᾶτε κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς
 The — enemy as you-see possess the passes
 τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὧρα βουλευέσθαι, ὅπως
 of-the mountain, (it is) indeed time to-consider, how
 ἀγωνιούμεθα ὥς κάλιστα. Δοκεῖ
 we-may-encounter (them) to-the-best-advantage-possible. It-seems
 οὖν μὲν ἐμοὶ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις
 therefore indeed to-me to-direct — the soldiers
 ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δὲ ἡμᾶς βουλευέσθαι, εἴτε
 to-take-their-dinners, and (that) we should-consult, whether
 δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε
 it-seems (best) to-cross-over the mountain either to-day or
 αὔριον. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ,
 to-morrow. To-me indeed at-least, said — Cleanor, it-seems
 ἐπὰν ἀριστήσωμεν τάχιστα ἐξο-
 (best), after we-have-dined as-speedily-as-possible (and) having-
 πλισαμένους ὡς τάχιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.
 armed-ourselves as speedily-as-possible to-go against the men.
 Γὰρ εἰ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, τε
 For if we-shall-waste the present day, not-only
 οἱ πολέμοι νῦν ὁρῶντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαρρᾶ-
 the enemy now seeing us will-be mor-

λεώτεροι, καὶ ἄλλους εἰκός, τούτων θαρ-
 volder, and (that) others as-is-natural, these becoming-confi-

ούντων, προσγενέσθαι πλείους.
 dent-and-bold, will-join (them in) greater (numbers).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ
 After this-one Xenophon said: I indeed

γινώσκω οὕτω· εἰ μὲν ἐστὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι,
 think thus: if indeed it-is necessary to-fight

τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευσάσθαι ὅπως ὥς μαχούμεθα
 this ought to-be-arranged how — we-may-fight

κράτιστα. Εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὑπερβάλλειν
 to-the-best (advantage). If indeed we-wish to-cross-over

ὥς ῥᾶστα, τοῦτο δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
 (the mountain) as easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be

σκεπτέον ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα
 necessary-to-be-considered how-that we-may-receive — the-fewest

τραύματα, δὲ ὥς ἀποβάλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα
 wounds and so-that we-may-lose the-fewest (bodies)

ἀνδρῶν. Οὖν μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ
 (of-) men. Therefore indeed the mountain is — (as far as,

ὁρώμενον πλεον ἢ ἑφ' ἐξήκοντα στάδια,
 is-to-be-seen more than (to) sixty stadia (in length),

δ' ἄνδρες φανεροί εἰσιν φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς
 but (the) men manifestly are watching us

οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· οὖν
 nowhere, except along this-same — road; therefore (it is)

πολὺ κρεῖττον, καὶ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι λαθόντας
 much better, both to-endeavour to-seize, being-concealed,

τι τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυναίμεθα
 some (part) of-the desert mountain, and if we-can

ἄρπάσαι φθάσαντας, μᾶλλον
 to take-forcible-possession, having-occupied (it before the enemy), rather

ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἄνδρας
 than to-fight against strong places and men

παρεσκευασμένους. Γὰρ πολὺ ῥᾶσι
 prepared (to resist) For (it is) much easier

ιέναι ὄρδιον ἀμαχί, ἢ ὁμαλες
to-go (up a) steep (place) without-fighting, than (along) level (roads)

πολεμίων ὄντων ἔνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν· καὶ νύκτωρ
(the) enemy being here and there; and at-night

τις ἂν ὁρώη τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν μᾶλλον
any-one may see — (things) before (his) feet more

ἀμαχί, ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν
(distinctly when) not-fighting, than in (the) day (time) (while)

μαχόμενος· καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα εὐμενεστέρα τοῖς
fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder to-the

ποσὶν ἰούσιν ἀμαχί, ἢ ἡ ὁμαλή
feet to-those-marching without-fighting, than the smooth (one)

βαλλομένοις τὰς κεφαλὰς. Καὶ οἱ
to-those-being-struck on-the head (with stones). And it-'does not

δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀδύνατον κλέψαι ἔξόν
'seem to-me to-be impossible to-steal (a march) it-being-allowed

μὲν ἰέναι νυκτός, ὥς μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι, δέ
(us) indeed to-go by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-'being also

ἔξόν ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὥς μὴ παρέχειν
'allowed (us) to-go-away so-far | as not to-suffer (a)

αἰσθῆσιν. Δε
being-heard [as to allow no opportunity of being heard or perceived]. And

μοι ἂν δοκοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν
to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending to-attack

ταύτην ἂν χρῆσθαι τῷ ἄλλῳ ὄρει
in-this (manner) — to-have the rest (of the) mountain

ἐρημοτέρῳ· γὰρ οἱ πολέμοιοι μᾶλλον μένοιν
more-deserted; for the enemy 'would rather 'remain

αὐτοῦ ἀδρόοι. Ἀτὰρ ἐγὼ συμβάλλομαι
here collected-together. But-why 'should I 'conjecture

τί περὶ κλοπῆς; γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὃ Χειρίσοφε,
any-thing about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus,

ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὅσοι
hear, (that) you, the Lacedæmonians, as-many (of you as)

ἐστὲ ὁμοίων, εὐδὺς ἐν
are 'of (the class of) 'equals (or higher order). immediately from

παιδων μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ εἶναι οὐκ
boys (commence) to-practice to-steal, and (that) it-is not

αἰσχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν, ὅσα
shameful, but commendable to-steal, as-many-things-as (the

νόμος μὴ κωλύει. Δὲ ὅπως κλέπτητε ὡς
law 'does not 'forbid. And so-that you-may-steal | as

κράτιστα, καὶ πειρᾶσθε λαν-
best-possible, [as adroitly as possible,] and have-exerted-yourselves to-

δάνειν, ἄρα ἐστὶν νόμιμον ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε
conceal (it), now-then it-is lawful for-you, if you-are-caught

κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστὶν
stealing, to-be-scourged. Now therefore (this) is

μάλα καιρὸς σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν
(the) very (best) opportunity for-you to-show — (your)

παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν
education, and to-guard moreover, lest we-may-be-caught

κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ λάβωμεν
stealing the mountain, (and) so-that we-'may not 'receive

πληγὰς. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, καὶ γὰρ
'stripes. But also, said — Cheirisophus, and-I

ἰκοίω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, εἶναι δεινούς
I-have-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are clever

κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα δεινοῦ
(to-steal) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though very great

κινδύνου ὄντος τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς
danger being to — (him) stealing, and (that) — (your)

κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ οἱ
best (men) moreover (steal) the-most, if-indeed the

κράτιστοι ἀξιοῦνται ἄρχειν ὑμῖν· ὥστε
best (men) are-thought-worthy to-rule you; so-that (it is)

ἔρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.
time also for-you to-show — (your) education.

Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰμι ἔτοιμος,
I indeed therefore, said — Xenophon, am ready,

ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἐπειδὴν δειπνή-
having the rear-guard (with me), after we-shall-have-

ὦμεν, ἵεναι καταληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ
 upped, to-go about-taking-possession (of) the mountain. And also
 ἔχω ἡγεμόνος· γὰρ οἱ γυμνήτες ἐνεδρεύσαντες
 i-have guides; for the light-armed-men having-laid-in-ambush
 ἔλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπῶν ἐφεπομένων ἡμῖν· καὶ
 took some of-the marauders following us; and
 πυνδάνομαι τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ οὐκ ἄβατον,
 I-hear from-these, that the mountain is not impassable,
 ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε εἰάνπερ
 but (that) it-is-grazed-on by-goats and oxen; so-that if
 ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους ἔσται
 once we-take-possession-of any (part) of-the mountain there-will be
 βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. Δὲ ἐλπίζω
 passable (places) even for-the cattle. And I-expect (that)
 τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεῖν ἐπειδὰν
 the enemy 'will not-indeed longer 'remain after
 ἴδωσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων.
 they-see us on the level (with them) on the heights.
 Γὰρ ἐδέλουσι οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
 For they-will not-indeed now come-down to (an) equality
 ἡμῖν. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σέ
 with-us. — And Cheirisophus said: And why is-it-proper (that) you
 ἵεναι, καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ
 (should) go, and leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but
 πέμψον ἄλλους, μὴ ἂν τινες ἐδελούσιοι φαίνωνται.
 send others, unless that some volunteers may-'make
 Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεδν
 (their) 'appearance. Upon this Aristonymus (the) Metny-
 δριεύς ἔρχεται, ἔχων ὀπλίτας, καὶ Ἀρι-
 drian came-forward, having (his) heavy-armed-men, and Aris-
 τέας Χῖος, γυμνήτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος
 teas (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachus
 Οἰταῖος, γυμνήτας· καὶ σύνθημα
 (the) Œtean, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement
 ἐποίησαντο, ὅποτε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα
 was-made, (that) when they-might-have-possession-of the heights

καίειν πολλά πυρά. Ταῦτα συνδέμενοι
to-burn many fires. These (things) being-agreed-on

ἤριστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου ὁ Χειρίσοφος προ-
they-dined; after — the dinner — Cheirisophus led.

ἤγαγε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους
forward the whole army against the enemy

ὥς δέκα σταδίους, ὅπως δοκοίη ὥς μάλιστα
about ten stadia, so-that he-might-seem as-much-as-possible

προσάξειν ταύτην.
to-be-about-to-lead-against (them) in-that (direction).

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νύξ
When indeed they-had-supped, and it-was night

οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ὥχοντο, καὶ
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed, and

καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
take-possession-of the mountain; and the other (troops)

ἀνεπαύοντο αὐτοῦ. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ,
reposed there (where they were). The enemy indeed,

ὥς ᾗσδοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρευσαν, καὶ
as they-perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch, and

ἔκαιον πολλά πυρά διὰ νυκτός. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
burned many fires during (the) night. When indeed

ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἤγε
it-was day, Cheirisophus — having-offered-sacrifice led

κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν· οἱ δὲ καταλαβόντες
(the army) along the road; — (those)—having-taken-possession-of

τὸ ὄρος ἐπήεσαν κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ τῶν
the mountain advanced along the heights. But of-the

πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
enemy the great (part) indeed remained at the pass

τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς
of-the mountain, but (a) part of-them went (against) — (those)

κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ πρὶν τοὺς πολλοὺς,
along the heights. But before (that) | the many, [the

εἶναι ὁμοῦ, οἱ κατὰ τὰ
main bodies of the armies,] were together, — (those) along the

ἄκρα συμμιγνύασιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
heights met one-another, and the Greek

νικῶσι καὶ διώκουσιν. Ἐν τούτῳ
conquered and drove-back (their opponents). At this time

δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, μὲν οἱ πελτασταί
— also — (those) from the plain, namely the targeteer

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδεον δρόμῳ πρὸς τοῖς
of-the Greeks ran 'in (a) 'race against — (those)

παρατεταγμένους, δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐφείπετο ταχὺ
drawn-up-against (them), and Cheirisophus followed quickly

βάδην σὺν τοῖς ὀπλίταις. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
step-by-step with the heavy-armed-men. But the enemy (namely)

οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπειδὴ ἑώραν τὸ ἄνω
— (those) on the road, when they-saw — (those) above

ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ οὐ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν
defeated, flee-away; and not many indeed of-them

ἀπέθανον. Δὲ ἀμπολλα γέρρα ἐλήφθη, ἃ
died. But (a) great-many shields were-taken, which

οἱ Ἕλληνες κόπτοντες ταῖς μαχαίραις,
the Greeks cutting — (with their) swords.

ἐποίουν ἀχρεῖα. Δ' ὥς ἀνέβησαν,
made useless. And as they-arrived-on (the heights),

θύσαντες, καὶ στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, κατέβησαι
having-sacrificed, and having-erected (a) trophy, they-descended

εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ ἦλθον εἰς κώμας γεμούσας
into the plain, and they-went to villages stored-with

πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν.
many and good (things)

CHAPTER VII.

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν πέντε ἡμέρας.
 FROM — these (villages) they-proceeded five days.
 μούς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς Ταόχους.
 march, (making) thirty parasangs, to (the) Taochi;
 καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπε· γὰρ οἱ Ταόχοι
 and — provisions began-to-fail (them); for the Taochi
 ὄκουν ἰσχυρὰ χωρία, καὶ ἐν οἷς εἶχον πάντα
 inhabited strong places, and in which they-had all
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνακεκομισμένοι.
 — (their) provisions having-'carried (them) 'up (and stored
 them there) Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς χωρίον, ὃ
 When however they-arrived at (a) place, which
 μὲν εἶχεν οὐ πόλιν οὐδ' οἰκίας, δ' αὐτόσε καὶ
 indeed had no town nor houses, and there both
 ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πολλὰ κτήνη ἦσαν
 men and women and many cattle were
 συνεληλυδότες, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἦκων εὐθὺς
 included, Cheirisophus indeed having-come immediately
 προσέβαλλε πρὸς τοῦτο· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ πρώτη
 made-an-attack against this (place), when — the first
 τάξις ἀπέκαμιν, ἄλλη προσήει καὶ αὐτὸς
 division began-to-grow-tired, another succeeded and again
 ἄλλη· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ ἰσχυρὰ· ἀδρόοις
 another; for it-was not (possible for them) drawn-up-in-a-body
 περιστῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἦν ποταμὸς κύκλῳ.
 to-stand-around (it), as there-was (a) river 'in (a) 'circle
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθο-
 (around it). When — Xenophon came with the rear-
 φύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὀπλίταις, ἔνταῦθα
 guard and targeteers and heavy-armed-men, then
 δὴ Χειρίσοφος λέγει· Ἦκετε εἰς καλὸν· γὰρ
 truly Cheirisophus says: You-have-come most-opportunely; for

τὸ χωρίον αἰρετέον· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
-- (this) place must-be-taken; for there-is no — provisions

τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰ μὴ ληφόμεθα τὸ
'for the 'army | if not [unless] we-shall-take — (this)

χωρίον. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐβουλευόντο κοινῇ· καὶ
place. Then indeed they-deliberated in-common; and

τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος, τί εἴη τὸ κωλύον
— Xenophon having-asked, what might-be the hindrance

εἰσελθεῖν, ὁ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ αὕτη
to-enter (the place), — Cheirisophus said: But this

ἐστὶν μία πάροδος ἣν ὁρᾷς· ὅταν δέ
is (the) one (only) passage which you-see; whenever indeed

τις πειράται παρίεναι ταύτῃ, κυλινδοῦσι
any-one should-attempt to-pass-along this, they-roll (down)

λίδους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας
stones over this — impending rock;

δ' ὃς ἂν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται.
(he) indeed who may have-been-struck, 'is thus 'disposed-of.

Δ' ἅμα ἔδειξε ἀνδρώπους συντετριμμένους
And at-the-same-time he-showed men crushed

καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Δὲ ἦν ἀναλώσωσιν
both (as respects) legs and ribs. But if they-should-expend

τοὺς λίδους, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τι ἢ οὐδὲν ἄλλο
— (their) stones, said — Xenophon, is-there nothing else

κωλύει παρίεναι; γὰρ δὴ οὐχ ὁρῶμεν
(that) prevents (us) to-advance? for indeed we-'do not 'see

ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, εἰ μὴ τούτους ὀλίγους
(any) of — (those) opposed-to-us, unless these few

ἀνδρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὀπλισμένους.
men, and of-these (only) two or three are-armed.

Δὲ τὸ χωρίον, ὃ δεῖ διελθεῖν βαλλο-
And the space, which it-is-necessary to-pass-through (while) being

μένους ἐστίν, ὥς καὶ σὺ ὁρᾷς, σχεδὸν τρία
thrown-at is, as even you see, about three

ἡμιπλεδρά. Δὲ τούτου ὅσων
half-plethra [about 150 feet]. And of-this (space) as-much as (a)

πλέθρον δασὺ μεγάλαις πίτυσι διαλει-
plethrum [about 100 feet] (is) thick with-great pine-trees standing.

πούσαις ἀνδ' ὧν ἄνδρες ἐστηκότες ἀν-
apart-from-one-another against which men standing —

τί πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ
what will-they-suffer either from the thrown stones or

ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδουμένων; τὸ λοιπὸν
from the rolled (ones)? the rest (of the space)

ἤδη οὖν γίγνεται ὥς ἡμίπλεθρον,
now therefore becomes about (a) half-plethrum [about 50 feet], (over)

ὃ δεῖ, ὅταν οἱ λίθοι λωφήσωσι, παρα-
which it-is-necessary, when the stones may-cease, to-run-

δραμεῖν. Ἀλλὰ, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, εὐθὺς
past. But, said — Cheirisophus, immediately

ἐπειδὰν ἀρξῶμεθα προσιέναι εἰς τὸ δασὺ,
when we-commence to-advance to the (part) thick (with trees)

πολλοὶ οἱ λίθοι φέρονται. Αὐτὸ, ἔφη,
many — stones are-thrown. That, said (Xenophon),

ἂν εἴη τὸ δεόν γὰρ θᾶπτον ἀναλώσουσι
would be the thing-wanted, for the-more-speedily will-they-expend

τοὺς λίθους. Ἀλλὰ πορευόμεθα,
— (their) stones. But let-us-advance (to the place),

ἐνθεν ἔσται τι μικρόν ἡμῖν παραδραμεῖν,
whence there-will-be some small (place) for-us to-run-past,

ἢν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ῥάδιον ἀπελθεῖν,
if we-can, and (from which we may) easily depart,

ἢν βουλώμεθα.
if we-please.

Ἐντεῦθεν Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ Καλλί-
Thence Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and Calli-

μαχος Παρῤῥάσιος λοχαγός, (γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία
machus (the) Parrhasian (a) captain, (for the lead

τῶν λοχαγῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων
of-the captains of-the rear-guard (was in possession)

τούτου ἐκείνη τῇ ἡμέρᾳ,) ἐπορεύοντο· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
of-this-one on-that — day,) proceeded-forward; but the other

λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. Μετὰ τοῦτο
captains remained in — safety. After this

οὖν ὥς ἐβδομήκοντα ἄνθρωποι ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ
therefore about seventy men went-off under

τὰ δένδρα, οὐκ ἀδρόοι, ἀλλὰ καδ' ἓνα,
the trees, not collected-in-a-body, but one-by-one,

ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὥς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας
each-one guarding-himself as (well as) he-could. Agasias

δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεὺς
— the Stymphalian and Aristonymus (the) Methydrian

καὶ οὗτοι ὄντες λοχαγοὶ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, καὶ
and these being captains of-the rear-guard, and

ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· γὰρ ἦν
others also, standing-near without the trees; for it-was

οὐκ ἀσφαλές πλεῖον ἢ τὸν ἓνα λόχον ἐστάναι
not safe (for) more than — one company to-stand

ἐν τοῖς δένδροις. Καλλίμαχος ἦν δα δὴ μηχανᾶ-
under the trees. Callimachus then indeed con-

ταί τι· προέτρεχεν ἀπο τοῦ δένδρου,
trived something (thus): he-ran-forward from the tree,

ὑφ' ᾧ αὐτός ἦν, δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· δὲ ἐπεὶ
under which he was, two or three times; but when

οἱ λίθοι φέροντο, ἀνεχάζετο εὐπετῶς· ἐφ' ἐκάστης
the stones were-hurled, he-retired expeditiously; at each

δὲ προδρομῆς πλεον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν
— sally more than ten wagon (loads) of-stone

ἀνηλίσκοντο. Δὲ ὁ Ἀγασίας, ὥς ὁρᾷ τὸν
were-consumed. But — Agasias, as he-perceives —

Καλλίμαχον, ᾧ ἐποίει, καὶ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα
Callimachus, what he-was-doing, and all the army

θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παρα-
beholding (it), fearing lest (he might) not (be) the-first run-

δράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ παρακαλέσας τὸν
ning-by into the place, neither calling-to —

Ἀριστώνυμον ὄντα πλησίον, οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον
Aristonymus (he) being near. nor (to) Eurlochus

τον Λουσιέα ὄντας ἑταίρους, οὐδὲ οὐδένα
the Lusian (both) being (his) comrades, nor (to) no-one

ἄλλον, αὐτός χωρεῖ, καὶ παρέρχεται
else, he went-on (by himself), and passed-by

πάντας. Ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὡς ἑώρα αὐτὸν
all. — But Callimachus, as he-saw him

παριόντα ἐπιλαμβάνεται τῆς ἵτιος αὐτοῦ.
passing-by seizes the rim (of the shield) of-him;

δ' ἐν τούτῳ Ἀριστῶνυμος Μεθυδριεύς παρέδει
but at this (time) Aristonymus (the) Methydrian ran-by

αὐτοὺς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς.
them, and after this (one) Eurylochus (the) Lusian.

Γὰρ πάντες οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς, καὶ
For all these claimed-for-themselves valour, and

διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους. καὶ οὕτως
contended with one-another (as respects it); and thus

ἐρίζοντες αἰροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Γὰρ ὡς ἅπαξ
contending they-take the place. For as 'they once

εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἠνέχθη ἄνωθεν.
'had-run-in, not (a) stone was-thrown from-above

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν δεινὸν θέαμα. Γὰρ αἱ
Then indeed there-was (a) dreadful spectacle. For the

γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παῖδια,
women throwing — (their) children (over the precipice),

καὶ εἶτα ἐπικατεῖρῥίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
(and) then threw-themselves-down-upon (them), and the men

ὡσαύτως. Ἐνθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας
in-like-manner (did the same). Then indeed also Æneas (the)

Στυμφάλιος, λοχαγός, ἰδὼν τινα, ἔχοντα
Stymphalian, (a) captain, seeing some-one (of them), having (a)

καλὴν στολὴν, θέοντα ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν
handsome dress, running as being-about-'throwing himself 'over,

ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων. Δέ
laid-hold (of him) as being-about-hinder (him). But

ὁ ἐπισπᾶται αὐτὸν, καὶ ἀμφοτέροι ὥχοντο
— (he) 'drags him 'along, and both went 'over)

φερόμενοι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν, καὶ ἀπέδαιον.
being-borne down the rocks, and died

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἄνθρωποι ἐλήφθησαν,
Therefore indeed very few men were-captured,

δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ βόες καὶ ὄνοι καὶ πρόβατα.
but — many oxen and asses and sheep.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χα.
Thence they-proceeded through (the country) 'of (the) 'Cha-

λύβων ἑπτὰ σταδμοὺς, πεντήκοντα παρα-
lybians seven days'-march, (making) fifty para-

σάγγας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ἀλκιμώτατοι ὦν
sanga. These were the-bravest (of those people) whose

διήλθον, καὶ ἦσαν εἰς χεῖρας.
(country) they-passed-through, | and they-went to hands [and they

Εἶχον δὲ λινοῦς θώρακας
came to close combat]. They-had also linen cuirasses (reaching)

μέχρι τοῦ ἥτρου, δ' ἀντί τῶν πτερύγων
just to-the groin, and in-place of — skirts (they had)

πυκνὰ σπάρτα ἐστραμμένα. Εἶχον δὲ καὶ
thick cords twisted. They-had also —

πημίδας, καὶ κράνη, καὶ μαχαίριον παρὰ
greaves, and helmets, and (a) knife at

τὴν ζώνην ὅσον Λακωνικὴν ξυήλην,
— (their) girdle as-long-as (a) Spartan (dagger) sickle-shaped,

ὃ ἔσφαττον, ὧν δύναιτο κρατεῖν.
with-which they-cut-the-throats, of — (those) they-could master,

καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες τὰς κεφαλὰς αὐτῶν ἔχοντες
and cutting-off — (their) heads — (and) having

ἐπορεύοντο. καὶ ᾗδον, καὶ ἐχόρευον.
(them) they-proceeded (on their march); and they-sang, and danced.

ὅποτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἐμελλον ὄψεσθαι.
when (they thought) the enemy were-about to-see (them)

Καὶ εἶχον δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πηχῶν,
And they-had also (a) spear about fifteen cubits (in length)

ἔχον μίαν λόγχην. Οὗτοι ἐτέμενοι
'but) having 'only) one spike. These (people) remained

ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
in — (their) towns. When however the Greeks

παρέλθοιεν, εἵποντο ἀεὶ μαχόμενοι.
may-have-passed-by, they-followed continually fighting (with them).

Ὡικουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὄχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
They-dwelt — in — strongholds, and — (their) provisions

ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ἐν τούτοις, ὥστε
were-brought-up in these (strongholds), so (that)

τοὺς Ἕλληνας λαμβάνειν μηδὲν αὐτόθεν, ἀλλὰ
the Greeks took nothing from-that-place, but

διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν, ἃ ἔλαβον ἐκ τῶν
were-nourished by-the cattle, which they-took from the

Ταόχων. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ
Taochi. After this the Greeks arrived — at

τὸν ποταμόν Ἄρπασαν, εὗρος
the river Harpasus, (the) breadth (of which being)

τεττάρων πλέδρων. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
four plethra. Thence they-proceeded through

Σκυθινῶν τέτταρας σταδμοὺς,
(the country of the) Scythini four days'-march, (making)

εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας,
twenty parasangs, through (a) plain to villages,

ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
in which they-remained three days, and collected-provisions.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον τέτταρας σταδμοὺς
Thence indeed they-went four days'-march (making)

εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, πρὸς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα,
twenty parasangs, to (a) large - and wealthy

καὶ οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἣ ἑκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας. Ἐκ
and populous city, which was-called Gymnias. From

ταύτης ὁ ἄρχων τῆς χώρας πέμπει ἡγεμόνα
this (place) the ruler of-the country sends (a) guide

τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὅπως ἄγοι αὐτοὺς διὰ τῆς
to-the Greeks, that he-might-conduct them through the

χώρας πολεμίας ἐαυτῶν. Δ' ἐκείνος
country inimical (to his people) themselves. And he

ἐλθὼν λέγει, ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν
having-come says, that he-will-lead them (in) five day

εἰς χωρίον. ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλλατταν· δὲ εἰ
to (a) place, whence they-would-see (the) sea; and if

μὴ ἐπηγγέλλετο τεθνάναι. Καὶ ἡγούμενος,
not announced-himself (willing) to-die. And leading

ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν
(them), when he-entered into the (country) inimical

ἐαυτοῖς, παρεκελεύετο αἰδεῖν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν
to-themselves, he-exhorted (them) to-burn and lay-waste the

χώραν· καὶ ᾧ ἐγένετο δῆλον ὅτι ἔλδοι
country; and by-which it-became evident that he-had-come (by)

ἔνεκα τούτου, οὐ τῆς εἰνοίας τῷ
reason of-this, (and) not — (from any) good-will (for) the

Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ
(Greeks. And they-arrived at the mountain on-the

πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης.
fifth day; (the) name — (of) the mountain was Theches

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους.
When indeed the foremost got on the mountain.

καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, πολλὴ κραιγὴ
and looked-down (on) the sea, (a) great noise

ἐγένετο. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
occurred. But — Xenophon and the rear-guard

ἀκούσας ᾤκηθησαν ἄλλους πολεμίους ἔμπροσθεν
having-heard (it) thought (that) other enemies in-front

ἐπιτίδυσθαι· γὰρ εἶποντο ὀπισθεν ἐκ τῆς
were-assailing (them); for they-followed behind from the

καιομένης χώρας, καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ποιησάμενοι
burnt places, and the rear-guard by-forming

ἐνέδραν τε ἀπέκτεινάν τινες καὶ ἐζώγησαν.
(an) ambushade not-only killed some, but-also made

καὶ ἔλαβον ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν γέρρα
(others) 'prisoners; and they-took about — twenty shield.

ὠμοβόεια δασειῶν βοῶν.
made of) raw-hides of-thick-haired oxen.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ βοή τε ἐγίγνετο πλείων καὶ
When indeed the noise not-only became greater but-also

εγγύτερον, καὶ οἱ αἰεὶ ἐπιοντες ἔδρον
nearer, and — (those) continually running-up kept-running

δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς αἰεὶ βοῶντας, καὶ ἡ βοή
in-haste to — (those) continually shouting, and the noise

ἐγίγνετο πολλῷ μείζων, ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους
became much greater, by-how-much indeed more-numerous

ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι δὴ εἶναι τι
they-became, it-seemed to — Xenophon indeed to-be something

μεῖζον. Καὶ ἀναβάς ἐφ' ἵππον,
greater (than common). And (he) having-mounted on (his) horse,

καὶ ἀναλαβὼν Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,
and having-taken-with (him) Lucius and the cavalry,

παρεβοήδει· καὶ τάχα δὴ
(he went forward, that) he-might-give-assistance; and quickly indeed

ἀκούουσι τῶν στρατιωτῶν βοῶντων, Θάλαττα!
they-hear the soldiers shouting, (The) sea!

Θάλαττα! καὶ παρεγγυόντων.
(the) sea! and cheering-on (those in the rear).

Ἐνθα δὲ ἅπαντες ἔδρον καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες,
Then indeed all commenced-running and the rear-guard,

καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ οἱ
and the baggage-cattle were-excited (to their full speed) and (also) the

ἵπποι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον,
horses. And when all arrived on the summit,

ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλαν ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατη-
then indeed they-embraced one-another, also (the) gene-

γούς καὶ λοχαγούς, δακρύνοντες. Καὶ ἑξαπίνης,
rals and captains, shedding-tears. And suddenly,

οἷου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος, οἱ
whoever indeed (it might be) having-exhorted (them to it), the

στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους, καὶ ποιοῦσι μέγαν
soldiers bring stones, and make (a) large

κολωνόν. Ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίδεσαν πλῆθος
mound. Then they-placed-on (this mound a) multitude

δερμάτων ὠμοβοείων, καὶ βακτηρίας, καὶ τὰ γέρρα
 of-skins of-raw-ox-hides, and staves, and the shields

αἰχμάλωτα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν τε αὐτός κατέτεμνε
 captured (from the enemy), and the guide not-only himself cut-to-pieces

τὰ γέρρα, καὶ διεκελεύετο τοῖς ἄλλοις.
 the shields, but-also exhorted the others (to do the same).

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα,
 After thus the Greeks sent-away the guide,

δόντες δῶρα ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον,
 giving (him) presents from (the) common (stock, namely, a) horse,

καὶ ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην, καὶ Περσικὴν σκευὴν,
 and (a) silver cup, and (a) Persian robe,

καὶ δέκα δαρεικοὺς· δ' μάλιστα ἤτει τοὺς
 and ten darics; but most-of-all he-asked-for the

δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν
 finger-rings, and he-obtained many (of them) from the

στρατιωτῶν. Δὲ δείξας κώμην αὐτοῖς οὗ
 soldiers. And he-having-pointed-out (a) village to-them where

σκηνήσουσι, καὶ
 they-might-encamp (or take up their quarters), and (he also having showed

τὴν ὁδόν, ἣν πορεύονται εἰς Μάκρωνας,
 them) the road, on-which they-were-to-proceed to (the) Macrones,

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα, ὥχετο ἀπιὼν τῆς νυκτός.
 when it-was evening, he-departed, proceeding during-the night.

CHAPTER VIII.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
 HENCE — the Greeks proceeded through

Μακρῶνων τρεῖς σταδμοὺς,
 (the country) 'of (the) 'Macrones three days'-march, (making)

δέκα παρασάγγας. Δὲ τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
 ten parasangs. And on-the first day

ἰφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὃς ὄριζε τῇν
 they arrived at the river, which bounded-and-divided the

τῶν Μακρόνων καὶ τῇν τῶν Σκι-
 (territories) of-the Macrones — (from) — (those) of-the Sey-

δινῶν. Εἶχον δ' ἵπερδέξιον χωρίον οἷον
 thini. They-had — 'on (their) 'right (a) place such-as

χαλεπώτατον, καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς
 (to be) the-most-difficult (of access), and on (their) left

ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ὁ ὀρίζων, δι' οὗ
 another river, into which the bounding (river), through where

ἔδει διαβῆναι, ἐνέβαλλεν. Οὗτος
 it-was-necessary to-cross, emptied (itself). This (river),

δὲ ἦν δασὺς δένδροις οὗ μὲν παχέσι,
 — was thick-set (on its shores) with-trees not indeed thick (or large)

δὲ πικνοῖς. Ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἔπει
 but (growing) close-together. These (trees) the Greeks, after

προσῆλθον, ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ
 they-arrived, cut-down, hastening to-go-out from the

χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα. Δ' οἱ Μάκρωνες, ἔχοντες
 country as speedily-as-possible. But the Macrones, having

γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους χιτῶνας
 wicker-shields and spears and hair tunics,

παρτεταγμένοι ἦσαν καταντιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως,
 had-been-drawn-up on-the-opposite-side of-the crossing-place,

καὶ διεκελεύοντο ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἑρρίπτον λίθους
 and encouraged one-another, and they-threw stones

εἰς τὸν ποταμόν, δὲ οὗ ἐξικνοῦντο, οὐδ'
 in the river, but 'they-did not 'reach (our men), (nor) (or)

ἔβλαπτον οὐδένα.

hurt none (of-them).

Ἐνθα δὴ τις ἀνὴρ τῶν πελταστῶν προσέρχεται
 Then indeed some man of-the targeteers comes-up

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι
 to — Xenophon, affirming (that he) had-been-a-slave

Ἀθήνησι, λέγων, ὅτι γινώσκει τὴν φωνήν
 at-Athens, (and) saying, that he-knew the language

τῷ ἰνδρώπων. Καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ταύτην εἶναι
of — (there) men. And I-think, said-he, this to-be

ἐμῇ πατρίδα· καὶ εἰ μὴ τι κωλύει, ἐδέλω
my country; and | if not [unless] something hinders, I-wish

διαλεχθῆναι αὐτοῖς. Ἄλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη·
to-speak with-them. But nothing hinders, said

ἀλλὰ διαλέγου, καὶ μάδε πρωτον
(Xenopho); but speak (with them), and ascertain first

τίνες εἰσίν. Ἐρωτήσαντος, οἱ δ'
what (people) they-may-be. He-inquiring, — (they) —

εἶπον, ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα αὐτοὺς
said, that (they were) Macrones. Ask their

τοῖνι, ἔφη, τί ἀντιτετάχεται, καὶ
then, said (Xenophon), why drawn-up-against (us), and

χρῆζοισιν εἶναι πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ
wish to-be enemies to-us. But — (they)

ἀπεκρίναντο· Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἔρχεσθε ἐπὶ
answered: (Because) that even you come against

ἡμετέραν χώραν. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκέλευον
our country. The generals (then) ordered (him)

λέγειν, ὅτι οὐ ποιήσονται κακῶς γε,
to-say, | that not making evil at-least, [that not in the

ἀλλὰ πολεμήσαντες
least intending to injure you,] but having-been-making-war 'with (the)

βασίλει, ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
'king, we-were-returning to — Greece, and (that,

βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Ἐκεῖνοι
we-desire to-arrive to (the) sea. They

ἠρώτων, εἰ ἂν δοῖεν τὰ πίστά τούτων.
asked, if (they) would give — pledges of these (things).

Δ' οἱ ἔφασαν ἐδέλιν καὶ δοῦναι
And — (they) said (that they) wished both to-give

καὶ λαβεῖν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ Μάκρωνες διδόασιν
and to-receive (them). Then the Macrones gave

τοῖς Ἑλλησι βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην, δὲ οἱ Ἑλληνας
the Greeks (a) barbarian lance, and the Greeks

ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικὴν· γὰρ ἔφασαν
(gave) them (a) Grecian (one); for they-said (that)

ταῦτα εἶναι πιστὰ· δὲ ἀμφοτέροι
these were (their) pledges; and both (parties called on the)

θεοὺς ἐπεμαρτύραντο.
gods (that) they-might-witness (it).

Δὲ μετὰ τὰ πιστὰ, οἱ Μάκρωνες εὐδὺς
And after the pledges, the Macrones immediately

συνεξέκοπτον τὰ δένδρα, τε ὥδοποιοῖον
cut-down-with (them) the trees, not-only to-make-a-road (for

· ὁδὸν ὥς διαβιβάσοντες, ἀναμε·
them, for a) path as about-'passing (them) 'through min

μιγμένοι ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἑλλησι· καὶ
gling (at the same time) among the Greeks; but-also

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν οἷαν ἐδύναντο· καὶ
provided (a) market (for them) such-as they-were-able; and

παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις, ἕως κατέ-
they-'led (them) 'along for three days, until they-set-

στησαν τοὺς Ἑλληνας ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρια Κόλχων.
down the Greeks on the borders (of the) Colchians.

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μέγα ὄρος, δὲ προσβατὸν· καὶ
Here was (a) large mountain, but accessible; and

οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τούτου.
the Colchians had-been-drawn-up on this (mountain).

Καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἀντιπαρετάζαντο
And the Greeks indeed — (at) first drew-up-against

κατὰ φάλαγγα, ὥς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς
(them) in line, as thus about-leading (the men) against

τὸ ὄρος· δὲ ἔπειτα ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
the mountain; but when it-seemed-to-the generals (that)

συλλεγεῖσι βουλευσασθαι ὅπως ἀγωνιοῦνται
they-should-assemble to-deliberate how they-should-contend

ὥς κάλλιστα. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔλεξεν, ὅτι δοκεῖ,
to-the-greatest-advantage Xenophon therefore said, that it-seemed

παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα,
(to him), ceasing (to have the troops) — 'in (a) 'line

ποιῆσαι ὀρδίους λόχους· γὰρ μὲν
to-form | straight companies; [columns of companies;] for indeed

ἡ φάλαγξ εὐδὺς διασπασθήσεται· γὰρ μὲν
the line 'will immediately 'be-broken; for indeed

ἐν — (some places) εὕρήσομεν ἄνοδον, δὲ τῇ
in — (some places) we-will-find (an) impassable-road, but in — (others)

εὖοδον τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐδὺς τοῦτο ποιήσῃ ἀδυ-
a) good-road to-the mountain; and immediately this will-cause despon-

μίαν, ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα, ὀρῶσι
tendency (in the men), when drawn-up in line, they-see

ταύτην διεσπασμένην. Ἔπειτα, ἣν μὲν προσάγωμεν
this (line) broken. Then, if indeed we-advance

τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ πολλοὺς, οἱ πολέμιοι περιττεύουσιν
drawn-up many-deep, the enemy will-reach-beyond

ἡμῶν, καὶ χρήσονται τοῖς περιττοῖς,
us (on the wings), and will-use the superfluous

τι ὃ ἂν βούλωνται. Δὲ ἂν
(men), (in) any (manner) which 'they may 'desire. And if

ἴωμεν τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ ὀλίγων, ἂν εἴη οὐδὲν
we-go (forward) drawn-up few-deep, it-would be nothing

θαυμαστόν, εἰ ἡ φάλαγξ ἡμῶν διακοπείη
wonderful, | if the line of-us [if our line] be-cut-through

ὑπὸ καὶ ἀδρόων βελῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἀνδράπων
by both collected missiles and many men

ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δὲ πῇ τοῦτο ἔσται, ἔσται
falling-upon (it); if indeed 'by-any-means this should-be, it-will-be

κακὸν τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι,
bad for-the whole line. But it-seems to-me, (that)

ποιησαμένους τοὺς λόχους ὀρδίους, κατασχεῖν
having-formed the companies (in) columns, to-separate

τοῖς λόχοις διαλιπόντας τοσοῦτον χωρίον,
the companies, being-distant (from one another), so-much space,

ἵσον τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι
as-that the extreme companies (on the right and left) will-be

ἐξω κεράτων τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ οὕτως ο
beyond (the) wings of-the enemy. And thus 'we. th

ἔσχατοι λόχοι ἐσόμεθα τε ἔξω τῆς φάλαγγος
 extreme companies, 'will-be not-only beyond the line

τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἄγοντες ὀρδίους οἱ
 of-the enemy, but-also leading (forward) in-column the

κράτιστοι ἡμῶν προσίασι πρῶτον, τε
 bravest of-us advance first, and (in the place) in-which

ἂν ἡ εὐοδὸν ταύτῃ ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος
 there may 'be (a) good-road, in-that — each company

ἄξει. Καὶ οὐ τε ἔσται ῥάδιον τοῖς πολεμίοις
 will-lead. And it-'will not indeed 'be easy for-the enemy

εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὸ διαλεῖπον
 to-penetrate into the (space) left (vacant between the com-

όντων λόχων ἔνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν, τε
 panies in column) there-being companies here and there, and-indeed

οὐ ἔσται ῥάδιον διακόψαι λόχον ὀρδιον
 it-'will not 'be easy to-break-through (a) company in-column

προσιόντα. Τε εἰάν τις τῶν λόχων πιέζηται
 advancing-forward. And if any of-the companies be-hard-pressed

ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. Τε ἢν πῃ εἰς τῶν
 the nearest will-give-assistance. And if by-any-means one of-the-

λόχων δυνηθῇ ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον οὐδεὶς τῶν
 companies may-be-able to-ascend on the height none of-the

πολεμίων μηκέτι μείνῃ. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε καὶ
 enemy after-this may-remain. This seemed-good, and

ἐποίουν τοὺς λόχους ὀρδίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
 they-formed the companies (in) columns. And Xenophon

ἀπιὼν ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον
 departing from the right (wing of the enemy) to the left

ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Οὗτοι εἰσιν, οὓς ὁράτε,
 said to-the soldiers: These are, whom you-see, (the)

μόνοι ἄνδρες ἔτι ἐμποδὼν ἡμῖν τὸ μὴ ἤδη
 only men yet in-the-way (to prevent) us — not soon

εἶναι, ἔνθα πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν·
 to-be, there (where) we-'have long 'desired-and-hastened (to be):

τοῦτους, ἣν πως δυνώμεθα, δεῖ καὶ κατα
these, if in-any-way we-can, it-becomes (us) even | to

φαγεῖν ὥμους.

eat-up raw [to exterminate].

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο ἐν ταῖς χώραις,
When indeed each had-got in — (their) places,

καὶ τοὺς λόχους ἐποίησαντο ὀρδῖους, ἐγένοντο
and the companies were-formed (in) columns, there-were

μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς
— companies of-the heavy-armed-men (to) about the (number of)

ὀγδοήκοντα, δ' ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος σχεδὸν
eighty, and — each company (amounted) nearly

εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· δ' ἐποίησαντο τοὺς πελ-
to — (a) hundred (men); and they-formed the tar-

ταστάς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ τοῖ,
geteers and the archers | threefold [in three divisions] —

μὲν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου δὲ τοὺς τοῖ
(one) indeed beyond the left-wing and the (other beyond) the

δεξιῶν δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον, ἑκάστους
right-wing and the (third) in (the) centre, each (divi-

σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ
sion being) nearly six-hundred (men). After this the

στρατηγοὶ παρηγγύησαν εὐχεσθαι.
generals ordered (the soldiers) to-'make (their-

εὐχόμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες
'vows; having-'made (their) 'vows, and also having-sung-the-præan,

ἐπορεύοντο. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν
they-proceeded (forward). And Cheirisophus indeed and Xenophon

καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς, γενόμενοι ἔξω τῆς
and the targeteers with them, being beyond the

φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων ἐπορεύοντο.
line of-the enemy, proceeded (on their march).

Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραθέοντες.
The enemy indeed, as they-saw them, running-against

οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν, δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τὸ
them), — (some) indeed to the right, but — (others) to the

εὐώνυμον, διεσπιάσθησαν, καὶ ἐποίησαν πολὺ
left, were-drawn-asunder, and they-made (a) great

κενὸν ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τῆς φάλαγγος ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ οἱ
void in the middle of-the line of-them. But the

πελτασταί κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικόν,
targeteers in the Arcadian (division in the centre),

ὧν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν ἤρχεν ἰδόντες αὐτοὺς
whom Æschines the Acarnanian commanded seeing them

διαχάζοντας, νομίσαντες φεύγειν, ἔδρον
separating, having-thought (them) to-be-fleeing, ran (forward)

ἵνα κράτος, καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνουνσι
with (all their) might, and these first ascended

ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος· δὲ καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικόν ὀπλιτικόν,
on the mountain; and also the Arcadian heavy-armed (troops),

ὧν Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἤρχε, συνεφείπετο.
whom Cleanor the Orchomenian commanded, followed-together (after).

Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥς ἤρξαντο θεῖν οὐκέτι
But the enemy, as (the Greeks) began to-run no-longer

ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἐτράπετο.
stood, but fled, | other in-other turned [some

Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνα-
going one way and some another]. But the Greeks de-

βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν
ascending (from the mountain) encamped among

πολλαῖς κώμαις ἐχούσαις πολλὰ τὰπιτήδεια.
many villages having much (of) provisions.

Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἦν
| And the indeed other (things) [and as respects other things] there-was

οὐδὲν, ὃ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· δὲ ἦν πολλὰ
nothing, that even they-were-surprised-at; but there-were many

τα σμήνη αὐτόδι, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν
— bee-hives there, and as-many of-the soldiers 'as

ἔφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες τε ἐγίγνοντο ἄφρονες,
ate of-the combs, all not-only became delirious

καὶ ἤμουν, καὶ διεχώρει αὐτοῖς κάτω,
but-also vomited, | and it-passed-through them downwards. [and they

καὶ οὐδεὶς ἠδύνατο ἵστασθαι ὀρθός,
were purged,] and no-one was-able to-stand straight,

ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἔδηδοκότες ὀλίγον σφόδρα ἐώχεσαν
but — (those) indeed having-eaten little very-much resembled

μεθύουσι, δ' οἱ πολὺν
(persons) being-drunk, but — (those having eaten) much (resembled)

μαινομένοις, δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποδνήσκουσι.
those) being-mad, and also (resembled) — (those) dying

Πολλοὶ δὲ ἔκειντο οὕτω, ὥςπερ τροπῆς
Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as-though (a) rout

γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἀδυμία ἦν πολλή. Δὲ τῇ
had-taken-place, and the dejection was great. But on-the

ὑστεραίᾳ οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπέθανε, δ' ἀνεφρόνουν
next-day no-one indeed had-died, but they-'recovered (their)

ἄμφι πού τὴν αὐτὴν ὥραν· δὲ
'senses about perhaps the same hour (they lost them); and

τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὥςπερ ἐκ
'on (the) 'third and fourth (days) they-got-up, as-if from

φαρμακοποσίας.
taking-physic.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταδμούςς,

Hence indeed they-proceeded two days'-march, (making)

ἑπτὰ παρασάγγας, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν
seven parasangs, and came to (the) sea

εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, οἰκουμένην,
at Trapezus, (a) Greek city, populous,

ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν
(and situated) on the Euxine Sea, (being a) colony

Σινωπέων, ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων.
'of (the) 'Sinopians, in the territory 'of (the) 'Colchians.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἄμφι τὰς τριάκοντα ἡμέρας
There they-remained, about — thirty days

ἐν ταῖς κώμας τῶν Κόλχων. Κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώ-
in the villages of-the Colchians. And-hence making-

μενοι ἐληίζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. Δὲ Τραπεζοῦντιοι
incurs — they-blundered — Colchis. And (the) Trapezians

παρεῖχον ἄγοράν τῳ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ τε ἐδέξαντο
provide (a) market for-the camp, and not-only received

τοῖς Ἑλληνας καὶ ἔδοσαν
the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also gave (them)

ζένια βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα
gifts-of-hospitality-and-friendship, (namely) oxen and barley-meal

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ καὶ συνδιεπράττοντο ὑπὲρ
and wine. And also they-negotiated (with them) for

τῶν πλησίων Κόλχων, μάλιστα τῶν
(and in behalf) of-the neighbouring Colchians, especially — (those)

οἰκούντων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· καὶ ζένια καὶ ἥλδον
dwelling in the plain; and gifts-of-hospitality also came

παρ' ἐκείνων βόες. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ παρεσ-
from them (namely) oxen. After this indeed they-pre-

κενάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὗξαντο· δ' ἱκανοί
pared the sacrifice, which they-had-vowed; and sufficient

βόες ἥλδον αὐτοῖς ἀποδῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι,
oxen came to-them to-sacrifice to — Jupiter the Preserver,

καὶ τῷ Ἑρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς
and to — Hercules for-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods

ἃ εὗξαντο. Δὲ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν
(that) which they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic

ἀγῶνα, ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. Δ' εἵλοντο
contest, on the hill, where they-were-encamped. And they-chose

Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην (ὃς ἔφυγε οἰκοδεν
Dracontius (the) Spartan (who became-an-exile from-home

ῶν παῖς, ἄκων κατακτανὼν παῖδα,
being (a) boy, (he) unwillingly killing (a) boy,

πατάξας ξυήλῃ) τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι
having-struck (him) 'with (a) 'dagger) not-only to-take-'care (to pro-

δρόμου, καὶ προστατῆσαι τοῦ ἀγῶνος.
vide) 'for (a) 'race, but-also to-preside-over the contest

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο,
(and games). When indeed the sacrifice was (performed),

παρέδωκαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευον
they-gave the skins to — Dracontius, and they-requested

ἡγεῖσθαι ὅπου πεποιηκῶς εἶναι ἐοῖ
 (him) to-lead (to the place) where he-may-have-made the
 δρόμον. Ὁ δὲ δείξας, ὕπερ
 course. — But (he) having-pointed (to the place), wher
 ἐτύγχανον ἐστηκότες, ἔφη, ὁ οὗτος λόφος
 they-happened (to be) standing, said, — this hill is
 κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου τις ἂν βού
 most-excellent for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may de
 ληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα-
 sire. (But) how then, said-they, will-they-be-able to-
 λαίειν ἐν οὕτως σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ;
 wrestle in (a place) so hard and bushy (and rough)?
 ὁ δ', εἶπε, ὁ καταπεσών, ἀνιάσεται τι
 — but (he), said-he, who having-fallen, will-be-distressed some (what)
 μᾶλλον. Δὲ παῖδες μὲν, οἱ πλείστοι τῶν
 the-more. And boys indeed, the most (of them) —
 αἰχμαλώτων, ἡγωνίζοντο στάδιον,
 (from those) taken-prisoners, contended (in the) stadium
 δὲ δόλιχον πλείους ἢ
 (or short course), and (in the) dolichon (or long course) more than
 ἑξήκοντα Κρήτες ἔδεον, δε ἕτεροι πάλιν
 sixty Cretans ran, and others (contended in) wrestling
 καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον. Καὶ ἐγένετο
 and boxing and (the) pancratium. And it-was (a)
 καλὴ θέα· γὰρ πολλοὶ κατέβησαν,
 fine sight; | for many went-down, [entered the lists,]
 καὶ, ὅτε τῶν ἐταίρων θεωμένων, ἐγίγνετο
 and, as — (their) companions were-looking-on, there-was
 πολλὴ φιλονεικία. Δὲ καὶ ἵπποι ἔδεον· καὶ
 much emulation. And also horses ran; and
 ἔδει αὐτούς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς,
 it-was-necessary for-them, having-galloped along-down the steep,
 ἀναστρέψαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, πάλιν
 (and) having-turned-round in the sea, again
 ἄγειν ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμόν. Καὶ μὲν
 to-lead-back upwards to the altar. And indeed going

κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο· δ
downwards — many (of the horses) rolled (down); bu.

ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρδιον, οἱ
(going) upwards against the exceedingly steep (ground), the

ἵπποι μόλις ἐπορεύοντο βάδην· ἔνθα
horses scarcely proceeded step-by-step (walking); then

ἐγίγνετο πολλή κραυγὴ, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παρακέ-
there-was much shouting, and laughter, and cheer

λευσις αὐτῶν.
as from-them.

BOOK V.

CHAPTER I

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed — the Greeks did in the

ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου, καὶ ὅσα
 march-upwards, in — (that, namely,) with Cyrus, and what (they did)

ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θαλάτταν
 in the journey, — (that, namely,) just to (the) sea

τὴν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ Εὐξείνῳ, καὶ
 | the in the Pontus Euxinus, [namely, the Euxine Sea,] and

ὥς ἀφίκοντο εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν,
 how they-arrived at Trebisond (a) Greek city,

καὶ ὥς ἀπέδυσαν ἃ εὔξαντο θύσειν
 and how they-offered-the-sacrifice which they-had-vowed to-sacrifice 'for

σωτήρια, ἔνθα πρῶτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς φιλίαν
 [their] 'safety, when first they-should-arrive at (a) friendly

γῆν, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
 country, (all this) has-been-declared in the preceding discourse.

Ἐκ τούτο δὲ ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ
 Upon this indeed coming-together they-deliberated concerning

τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· δὲ Ἀντιλέων
 the remaining (part of the) journey; and Antileon (the)

Θούριος ἀνέστη πρῶτος, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἐγὼ μὲν
 Thurian stood-up first, and spoke thus: I indeed

τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἀπείρηκα
 therefore, said-he, O men, have-'become now 'tired

ξυσκευαζόμενος, καὶ βαδίζων, καὶ τρέχων, καὶ
 packing-up, and walking, and running, and

φέρων τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἰὼν ἐν τάξει, καὶ
 carrying — (my) arms, and going (drawn-up) in order, and

φυλάττων φυλακὰς, καὶ μαχόμενος·
 | guarding guard, [standing guard,] and fighting;

ἐπιθυμῶ ἤδη δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἔχομεν θάλατταν,
 I-desire now indeed, since we-have (attained the) sea,

παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, πλεῖν τὸ
 having-rested from-these — (our) toils, to-sail the

λοιπὸν, καὶ ἑκταδεῖς, ὥςπερ Ὀδυσσεύς,
 remainder (of the way), and stretched-out, like Ulysses,

καθεύδων ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Οἱ στρα-
 sleeping to-arrive in — Greece. The sol-

τιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεδорύβησαν
 diers hearing these (things) loudly-applauded (him)

ὧς λέγοι εὖ· καὶ ἄλλος ἔλεγε ταῦτά,
 as (one who) spoke well; and another said these (same

καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες.
 things), and all — (those) being-present (said the same).

Ἐπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε·
 Then indeed Cheirisophus rose-up and spoke thus:

ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ἔστιν φίλος μοι,
 O men, Anaxibius | is (a) friend to-me, [is my friend,]

δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει ναυαρχῶν. Ἦν οὖν πέμπητέ
 and also happened-to-be commanding-a-fleet. If therefore you-will-send

με, οἶομαι ἂν ἔλθειν ἔχων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ
 me, I-think — to-come (back) having both galleys and

πλοῖα τὰ ἄξοντα ἡμᾶς·
 transports | (for) the (hereafter) carrying us; [to transport us home;]

δὲ ὑμεῖς, εἴπερ βούλεσθε πλεῖν, περιμένετε, ἔστ'
 and you, since you-desire to-sail, stay-here, until

ἐγὼ ἂν ἔλθω· ἤξω δὲ ταχέως. Οἱ
 I may come (back); I-will-come indeed speedily. The

στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἡσδυσάν τε
 soldiers hearing these (things) were-delighted —

καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο αὐτὸν πλεῖν ὥς τάχιστα.
 and voted (for) him to-sail as speedily-as-possible.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν
 After this (one) Xenophon stood-up and spoke
 ὧδε· Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ στέλλεται ἐπὶ πλοῖα,
 thus: Cheirisophus indeed — is-sent after ships,
 δὲ ἡμεῖς ἀναμενουῦμεν. Ὅσα οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
 and we will-remain-here. What therefore it-seems to-me to-be
 καιρὸς ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἔρῳ.
 proper to-do in — (our) stay, that I-will-tell (you).
 Πρῶτον μὲν δεῖ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
 First indeed it-is-necessary — (for) provisions to-be-procured
 ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτε ἱκανή
 from the enemy; for there-is neither (a) sufficiently-abundant
 ἀγορά, οὔτε εὐπορία ὠνησόμεθα
 market, nor (have we the) means (with which) we-shall-buy
 οὔτου, εἰ μὴ τισὶν ὀλίγοις· ἡ χώρα δὲ
 anything, unless some few; the country indeed (around us is)
 πολεμία· οὖν κίνδυνος πολλοὺς
 hostile (to us); therefore (there is) danger (that) many
 ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἣν πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
 may-perish, if you-proceed-out for — provisions
 ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι
 carelessly — and unguardedly. But it-seems to-me
 λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια σὺν προνομαῖς,
 (that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties
 δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι ἄλλως, ὥς σώζησθε,
 and not to-wander-about at-random, in-order-that you-may-preserve (your
 δ' ἡμᾶς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τούτων.
 And), and (that) we (your officers) should-regulate these (things).
 Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Ἐπὶ
 It-seemed-well (respecting) these (things, and they were adopted). And-now
 τοίνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. Γὰρ τινες ὑμῶν
 therefore listen also to-this. For-as some of-you
 ἐκπορεύονται ἐπὶ λείαν· οἶμαι οὖν εἶναι
 will-proceed-out to plunder; I-think therefore (it) to-be
 βέλτωτον εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξιέναι,
 best to-tell us (of) the intending to-go-out

δε καὶ φράζειν ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ εἰδῶμεν
and also to-mention where (or in what direction), that even we-may-know

τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων,
the multitude of — (those) going-out and of — (those) remaining,

καὶ ζυμπαρασκευάζωμεν εἴαν τι δέη,
and (that) we-may-prepare-together if anything should-be-required,

καὶ ἢ καιρὸς βοηθῆσαι τισι, εἰδῶμεν
and-if there-be occasion (that we) may-help any, (and) know

ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ εἴαν τις τῶν ἀπει-
where it-will-be-necessary to-help, and if any-one of-the more-

ροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, συμβουλευώ-
inexperienced may-undertake (anything) anywhere, we-may-consult-to-

μεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ'
gether endeavouring to-know the strength (of the enemy) against

οὓς ἂν ἴωσι. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
whom 'they may 'go. And these (things) seemed-good, (and

Δὲ καὶ ἐννοεῖτε τόδε, ἔφη.
were agreed to). And also consider this, said-he. (There is)

Σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις ληίζεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως
leisure to-the enemy to-rob (us), and justly

ἐπιβουλεύουσιν ἡμῖν, γὰρ ἔχομεν τὰ ἐκείνων·
do-they-conspire-against us, | for we-have the (things) of-them;

δ' ὑπερκάδην·
[for we have their property;] and (moreover) they-are-placed-on-heights-

ται ἡμῶν. Δὴ δοκεῖ μοι δεῖν εἶναι φύλακας
above us. Indeed it-seems to-me there-ought to-be sentinels

περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· εἴαν οὖν μερισθέντες κατὰ
round the camp; if therefore being-divided into

μέρος φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἥττον ἂν οἱ
parts we-guard and keep-a-look-out, the-less may — (our)

πολέμιοι δύναιντο θηρᾶν ἡμᾶς. Ἔτι τοίνυν
enemies be-able to-hunt us (down). Moreover therefore

ὁρᾶτε τάδε. Εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμεθα σαφῶς, ὅτι
consider this. If indeed we-knew certainly, that

Χειρίσοφος ἥξει ἄγων ἱκανὰ πλοῖα,
Cheirisonphus will-come (back) bringing (a) sufficient (number of) ships,

ἀν οὐδὲν ἔδει ὦν μέλλω λέγειν· δὲ νῦν
there would 'be no 'need of-what I-am-about to-say; but now

ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πει-
since this (is) uncertain, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-en-

ρᾶσθαι συμπαρασκευάζειν πλοῖα καὶ αὐτόθεν.
deavour to-provide-and-bring-together ships even here.

Γάρ ἢν μὲν ἔλθῃ, ὑπαρχόντων
For if indeed he-should-come (back with ships, vessels) being-provided

ἐνθάδε, πλευσούμεθα ἐν ἁφθονωτέροις.
here, we-shall-sail in (a) greater-abundance (of ships)

Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, χρησόμεθα τοῖς
If indeed he-'should not 'bring (any), we-will-make-use of — (those)

ἐνθάδε. Ἐγὼ δὲ ὁρῶ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέ-
here. I indeed see vessels frequently sailing

οντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων
by; if therefore we-should-be-asking from the-people-of-Trebisond

μακρὰ πλοῖα, κατάγοιμεν
| long ships, [ships of war,] we-might-bring-into-port (those vessels

καὶ φυλάττοιμεν αὐτὰ παραλυόμενοι τὰ
sailing by), and might-guard them | loosening the

πηδάλια, ἕως ἱκανὰ ἂν
rudders, [unshipping the rudders,] until (a) sufficient (number) may

γένηται τὰ ἄξοντα, ἂν ἴσως
be-got (for) the 'carrying (of us) 'hereafter, 'we may probably

οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κοιμιδῆς οἷας δεόμεθα. Καὶ
not 'have-failed 'of (a) 'conveyance such-as we-seek. And

ταῦτα ἔδοξε. Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη,
these (suggestions) were-approved. Think also, said-he,

εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ,
if (it will not be) proper even to-support from the common (stock),

οὓς ἂν κατάγωμεν, ὅσον χρόνον ἂν
those-whom 'we may 'bring-in, so-'long (a) time 'as 'they may

μένωσι ἕνεκεν ἡμῶν, καὶ ξυνδέσθαι
'remain on-account of-us, and to-make-an-agreement (with them

ναῦλον, ὅπως ὠφελοῦντες
about the) passage-money, so-that benefitting (us) they-(may

καὶ ὠφελῶνται. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
also 'benefit (themselves). And these (things) seemed-good

Δοκεῖ μοι ποῖνν, ἔφη, ἢν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα
It-seems to-me therefore, said-he, if perhaps even these (things),

μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται, ὥστε πλοῖα ἀρκεῖν,
do not 'result, so-that vessels be-sufficient (for us),

ἐντείλασθαι ταῖς πόλεσιν οἰκουμέναις παρὰ
(it is) to-be-enjoined to-the cities situated along (the)

θάλατταν ὁδοποιεῖν τὰς ὁδοὺς, ἃς ἀκούομεν εἶναι
sea to-repair the roads, which we-hear to-be

δυσπόρους· γὰρ πείσονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ
difficult-to-pass-through; for they-will-obey, both | through the

φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι
to-fear, [through fear,] and through the to-desire [and through

ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἡμῶν.
the desire] to-get-rid of-us.

Ἐνταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον, ὥς δέοι οὐ
Then indeed they-exclaimed, that there-ought not

ὁδοιορεῖν. Δὲ ὁ ὥς ἔγνω τὴν
to-be-travelling-by-land. But — (Xenophon) as he-perceived the

ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, οὐδέν μὲν ἔπε-
want-of-reason of-them, 'put nothing indeed (respecting roads) 'to-

ψήφισε, δὲ ἔπεισε τὰς πόλεις ὁδοποιεῖν
vote, but he-persuaded the towns to-make-the-roads

ἐκούσας, λέγων ὅτι θάττον ἀπαλλάξον-
of-their-own-free-will, saying that the-more-speedily they-would-be-

ται, ἢν αἱ ὁδοὶ γένωνται εὐποροί.
freed-from (the Greeks), if the roads became passable.

Δέ καὶ ἔλαβον πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπε-
And also they-obtained (a) fifty-oared-galley from the people-of-

ζουντίων, ἣ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα
Trebisond, over-which they-placed Dexippus (a) Lacedæmonian

περίοικον. Οὗτος, ἀμελήσας τοῦ ζυλλέγειν
provincial. This (person), having-neglected (the) to-collect

πλοῖα, ἀποδράς ὥχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων
vessels, having-fled he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having

τῇ ναῦν. Οὗτος μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἔπαθε
the vessel. This (person) indeed therefore afterwards suffered

δίκαια· γὰρ ἐν Θράκῃ παρὰ
just (punishment); for in Thrace at (the court of)

Σεύδῃ, πολυπραγμονῶν τι, ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ
Seuthes, meddling-with something, he-died by (the

Νικάνδροι τοῦ Λάκωνος. Δὲ καὶ
hands of; Nicander the Lacedæmonian. And (the Greeks) also

ἔλαβον τριακόντορον, ἣ Πολυκράτης
received (a) thirty-oared-galley, over-which Polycrates (the)

Ἀθηναῖος ἐπεστάδῃ, ὃς κατήγε πλοῖα ὅποσα
Athenian was-placed, who brought-in (the) vessels as-many-as

λαμβάνοι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
he-could-capture (to the shore) before the camp. And

μὲν ἐξαιρούμενοι τὰ ἀγώγима, εἰ ἦγον τι,
indeed taking-out the cargoes, if they-brought any,

καδίστασαν φύλακας, ὅπως εἴη σῶα,
they-'placed guards 'over (them), so-that they-might-be safe,

δὲ χρήσαιντο τοῖς πλοίοις εἰς παραγωγὴν.
and they-used the vessels for (their) conveyance.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, οἱ Ἕλληνες
During (the time) that — these (things) were, the Greeks

ἐξήεσαν ἐπὶ λείαν· καὶ μὲν οἱ ἐλάμβανον,
went-out after plunder; and indeed — (some) took (plunder),

δὲ καὶ οἱ οὐ. Δὲ Κλεαίνετος ἐξαγαγὼν
but also — (others did) not. But Cleænetus leadin_-out

καὶ τὸν λόχον ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον πρὸς
both the company of-himself and another (one) against (a)

χαλεπὸν χωρίον, τε αὐτός ἀπέθανε καὶ πολλοὶ
difficult place, not-only himself lost-his-life, but-also many

ἄλλοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.
others of — (those) with him-

CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν οὐκέτι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπι-
 WHEN indeed it-was no-longer (possible) to-take — pro-
 τήδεια, ὥστε ἀπαυδημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 visions, so-as to-return-the-same-day to the camp,
 ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν, λαβὼν ἡγεμόνας
 | on this [then] Xenophon, having-taken (as) guides (some)
 τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἐξάγει τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ
 of-the people-of-Trebisond, led-out the half of-the
 στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίλας, δὲ τὸ ἥμισυ
 army against (the) Drilæ, but the (other) half
 κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· γὰρ οἱ
 he-left to-guard the camp; for the
 Κόλχοι ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, ἦσαν
 Colchians as having-been-driven-out from — (their) houses, were
 ἀδρόοι πολλοί, καὶ ὑπερεκάδηντο ἐπὶ
 collected-together (in) great (numbers), and were-posted on
 τῶν ἄκρων. Δὲ οἱ Τραπεζούντιοι οὐκ ἤγον
 the heights. But the people-of-Trebisond 'did not 'lead
 ὁπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτηδεια ἦν ῥάδιον
 (them to places) whence — — provisions were easy
 λαβεῖν· γὰρ ἦσαν φίλοι αὐτοῖς·
 to-take; for (the people inhabiting them) were friends-to-themselves;
 δὲ προδύμως ἤγον εἰς τοὺς Δρίλας, ὑφ' ὧν
 but eagerly led (them) to the Drilæ, | from whom
 ἦπασχον κακῶς, εἰς χωρία τε
 they-suffered evil, [who had injured them,] into (a) country not-only
 ὄρεινὰ, καὶ δύσβατα, καὶ πολεμικωτάτους
 mountainous, but-also difficult-of-access, and (among) the-most-warlike
 ἀνθρώπους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
 people of — (those) on the Pontus (Euxinus).
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἄνω ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ,
 When indeed the Greeks were up in the country,

ὅποια τῶν χωρίων ἐδόκει τοῖς Δρίλαις εἶναι
'such of-the places 'as it-seemed to-the Drilæ to-be

ἁλώσιμα, ἐμπιπράντες ἀπήεσαν· καὶ
easy-to-be-taken, having-set-fire (to such places) they-retreated; and

ἦν οὐδὲν λαμβάνειν, εἰ μὴ ὕς, ἢ βοῦς, ἢ τι
there-was nothing to-take, unless swine, or oxen, or any

ἄλλο κτήνος διαπεφευγός τὸ πῦρ. Δὲ ἦν εἰ
other cattle having-escaped-from the fire. | But there-was one

χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν·
place (the) metropolis of-them; [but there was one place that

εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνεῤῥήκεσαν.
was their metropolis;] to this all flocked-together.

Δὲ περὶ τοῦτο ἦν ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα
And round this (place) there-was (an) exceedingly deep

χαράδρα, καὶ πρόσοδοι πρὸς τὸ χωρίον
ravine, and (the) accesses to the country (were)

χαλεπαί. Οἱ πελτασταὶ δὲ, προδραμόντες τῶν
difficult. The targeteers however, having-run-before the

ὀπλιτῶν πέντε ἢ ἕξ στάδια, διαβάντες τὴν
heavy-armed-men five or six stadia, having-crossed the

χαράδραν, ὁρῶντες πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα
ravine, (and) seeing many sheep and other

χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· δὲ καὶ
things, made-an-attack on the place; and also

πολλοὶ δορυφόροι, οἱ ἐξωρμημένοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπι-
many spear-men, — (those) having-gone-out for — pro-

τήδεια ξυνείποντο· ὥστε οἱ διαβάντες
visions followed-with (them); so-that — (those) crossing (the

ἐγένοντο πλείους ἢ διςχιλίους ἀνθρώπους.
ravine) happened-to-be more than two-thousand men

Δὲ ἐπεὶ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν
But when fighting they-'were not 'able to-take

τὸ χωρίον (γὰρ καὶ ἦν εὐρεῖα τάφρος
the place (for also there-was (a) broad trench, (it)

ἀναβεβλημένη περὶ αὐτό, καὶ ἐπὶ
having-been-thrown-up around this (place), and (there-were) --

τῆς ἀναβολῆς σκόλοπες, καὶ ξύλιναι τύρσεις
the rampart palisades, and (also) wooden towers

πυκταὶ πεποιημέναι), δὴ ἐπε-
close-together having-been-made) (on the mound or rampart), indeed they-

χείρου ἀπιέναι· δὲ οἱ ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς.
attempted to-depart; but the (Drilæ) pressed-upon them.

Δὲ ὥς οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν
But (the Greeks), as they-'were not 'able to-retreat

(γὰρ ἡ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν
(for the passage-down from the place to the ravine

ἦν ἐφ' ἐνός), πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ὃς
was for one) (only), sent to Xenophon, who

ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ὀπλίταις. Δ' ὁ ἐλθὼν
led the heavy-armed-men. And the (messenger) having-gone

λέγει, ὅτι χωρίον ἔστι μεστόν πολλῶν
said, that (the) place is full of-many

χρημάτων· οὔτε δυνάμεδα λαβεῖν τοῦτο·
things; nor were-we-able to-take this (place);

γὰρ ἔστιν ἰσχυρόν· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ῥάδιον· γὰρ
for it-is strong; or to-retreat easily; for

ἐπεξεληλυθότες μάχονται, καὶ ἡ ἄφοδος
(the enemy) having-marched-out fight (us), and the way-from

χαλεπή.
(it is) difficult.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν, προσαγαγὼν
Having-heard these (things) — Xenophon, leading-forward

πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν, ἐκέλευσε μὲν τοὺς
(his men) to the ravine, ordered — the

ὀπλίτας θέσδαι τα ὅπλα· αὐτὸς δὲ,
heavy-armed-men to-stand — (under) arms; he indeed,

διαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς, ἐσκοπεῖτο πότεροι
having-crossed-over with the captains, considered whethe.

εἴη κρεῖττον ἀπάγειν καὶ τοὺς
it-might-be better to-lead-back also — (those) 'having (already)

διαβεβηκότας, ἢ καὶ διαβιβάζειν τοὺς ὀπλίτας,
crossed-over, or even to-lead-over the heavy-armed-men.

ὥς ἂν τοῦ χωρίου ἁλόντος. Γὰρ ἐδόκει μὲν
as — (hoping) the place being-taken. For it-seemed indeed

τὸ ἀπάγειν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν
(the) to-'lead (the men) 'back not to-be (possible) without many

νεκρῶν, δ' ἂν οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ ᾤοντο εἰλεῖν
dead | and — the captains even were-of-opinion to-take

τὸ χωρίον.
the place [and the captains were of the opinion that the place could

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε, πιστεύσας
be taken]. And — Xenophon yielded, having-confided

τοῖς ἱεροῖς· γὰρ οἱ μάντις ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν,
in-the sacrifices; for the augurs had-shown,

ὅτι μὲν ἔσται μάχη, δὲ τὸ τέλος τῆς
that indeed there-would-be (a) battle, and (that) the termination of-the

ἐξόδου καλόν. Καὶ μὲν ἔπεμπε τοὺς
excursion (would be) favourable. And — he-sent the

λοχαγούς· διαβιάσοντας τοὺς
captains | being-about-bringing-over [to bring over] the

ὀπλίτας, δ' αὐτὸς ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας
heavy-armed-men, but he-himself remained having-kept-back all

τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ εἶα οὐδένα ἀκροβο-
the targeteers, and allowed none (of them) to-skir-

λίζεσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ ὀπλίται ἦκον,
mish (with the enemy). When indeed the heavy-armed-men came,

ἐκέλευσε ἕκαστον τῶν λοχαγῶν ποιῆσαι τὸν
he-ordered each of-the captains to-form — (his)

λόχον ὥς ἂν οἴηται κράτιστα ἀγωνεῖσθαι·
company as 'he might 'think the-best to-fight (with);

γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἦσαν πλησίον ἀλλήλων, οἱ
for the captains were near to-one-another, who

πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ
at-all — times contended with-one-another about

ἀνδραγαδίας. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐποίουν ταῦτα·
deeds-of-valor. And — (they) indeed did these (things);

δ' ὁ παρήγγειλε πᾶσι τοῖς πελτασταῖς ἵέναι
and — he-ordered all the targeteers to-go

διηγκυλωμένους, ὥς δεῆσον ἀκοντίζειν.
holding-their-javelins-by-the-thong, as it-would-be-necessary to-hurl

ὅποτεν σημήνη, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβε-
whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the archers to-have.

βλῆσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὥς δεῆσον
placed (the arrows) on the string, as it-would-be-necessary

τοξεύειν ὅποτεν σημήνη, καὶ τοὺς γυμνήτας,
to-shoot whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the light-armed

ἔχειν τὰς διφθέρας μεστὰς λίθων.
(slingers) to-have — (their) bags-made-of-skins full of-stones;

καὶ ἔπεμψε τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους τούτων
and he-sent — (those) fit to-'have these (things)

ἐπιμεληθῆναι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο,
'taken-care-of. When indeed all had-been-prepared,

καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολοχαγοί, καὶ οἱ
and the captains and the lieutenants, and — (those)

ἄξιοντες μὴ εἶναι χείρους τούτων, πάντες
esteeming (themselves) not to-be inferior (to) these, all

παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων
were-drawn-up-in-order, and indeed truly they-beheld

ἀλλήλους· (γὰρ ἡ τάξις διὰ
one-another; (for the order (in which they were drawn up), from

τὸ χωρίον ἦν μηνοειδής). Ἐπεὶ δ'
(the nature of) the place, was (a) crescent). When indeed

ἐπαιάνισαν, καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγγετο,
they-had-sung-the-pæan, and the trumpet had-sounded,

ἅμα τε ἠλάλαξαν τῷ Ἐνναλίῳ, καὶ
at-the-same-time also they-raised-the-war-cry to — Enyalios, and

οἱ ὀπλίται ἔδρον δρόμῳ· καὶ τὰ
the heavy-armed-men ran, (as) 'in (a) 'race, (fast); and the

βέλη ἐφέρετο ὁμοῦ λόγχοι, τοξεύματα
missiles were-thrown together, (namely,) lances, arrows,

σφενδόνας, δὲ πλείστοι λίθοι ἐκ τῶν
balls-and-stones-from-slings, and many stones from the

χειρῶν· δὲ ἦσαν οἱ καὶ προσέφερον πῦρ.
hands; and there-were (some) who even threw fire

Ὑπὸ δὲ πλέθους τῶν βελῶν
 (at the place). On-account therefore 'of (the) 'multitude of-the missiles
 οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλιπον τε τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς
 the enemy deserted not-only the palisades but-also the
 τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καὶ Φι-
 towers; so-that Agasias (the) Stymphalian and Phi-
 λόξενος Πελληνεύς, καταδέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα
 loxenus (the) Pellenian, having-put-down — (their) arms,
 ἀνεβήσαν ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον, καὶ ἄλλος
 mounted (the rampart) in (their) tunics only, and one
 εἴλκε ἄλλον, καὶ ἄλλος ἀναβεβήκει, καί, ὥς
 drew-up another, and another climbed-up, and, as
 ἐδόκει, τὸ χωρίον ἠλώκει. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ
 it-appears the place was-taken. And — the targeteers
 καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ εἰςδραλόντες ἥρπαζον ὃ τι ἕκαστος
 and the light-armed-men running-in took whatever each-one
 ἐδύνατο· ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ στάς κατὰ τὰς πύλας
 could; — Xenophon indeed standing at the gates
 κατεκώλυε ἔξω ὅπόσους ἐδύνατο τῶν ὀπλιτῶν·
 detained without as-many-as he-could of-the heavy-armed-men;
 γὰρ ἄλλοι πολέμιοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπὶ τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς
 for other enemies appeared on some strong
 ἄκροις. Μεταξὺ δὲ οὐ πολλοῖ χρόνου
 heights. In-the-mean-while, indeed no long time
 γενομένου ἐγίγνετο τε κραυγὴ ἔνδον, καὶ οἱ
 having-occurred, there-was — (a) noise within, and the
 ἔφειγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἃ ἔλαβον,
 (men) fled, — (some) indeed even having what they-had-taken,
 τάχα δὲ τις καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ ἦν πολὺς
 presently also some even wounded; and there-was much
 ὠδισμός ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. Καὶ οἱ
 crowding-and-pressing about the gates. And — (these)
 ἐκπύπτοντες ἐρωτώμενοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἄκρα τέ
 rushing-out being-questioned said, that (a) citadel indeed

ἔστιν ἔνδον, καὶ πολλοὶ οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ἐκδεδρα-
 is within, and many (of) the enemy, who sallying-
 μηκότες, παίουσι τοὺς ἀνδρώπους ἔνδον.
 forth, fell-on the men within.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν κήρικα
 Then (Xenophon) ordered Tolmides the crier

ἀντιπεῖν τὸν βουλούμενόν λαμβάνειν τι
 to-proclaim (that) — (those) desiring to-take anything

ἰέναι εἰσω. Καὶ πολλοὶ ἵεντο εἰσω, καὶ οἱ
 might-go within. And many rushed within, and — (those)

ὠδούμενοι εἰσω νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας,
 pushing (to get) within overcome — (those) pressing-out,

καὶ πάλιν κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς
 and 'they again 'shut-up the enemy in

τὴν ἄκραν. Καὶ μὲν πάντα ἔξω τῆς ἄκρας
 the citadel. And indeed all (things) without the citadel.

διηρπάσθη, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξεκομίσαντο·
 were-seized, and the Greeks 'carried (them) 'out,

δὲ οἱ ὀπλίται ἔδεντο τὰ ὄπλα, οἱ μὲν
 and the heavy-armed-men stood — (under) arms, — (some) indeed

περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
 about the palisades, and — (others) along the road

τὴν φέρουσαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν. Ὁ Ξενο-
 — (that, namely,) leading to the citadel. — Xeno-

φῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν, εἰ εἴη
 phon indeed and the captains began-to-consider, if it-might-be

οἶόν τε λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκραν· γὰρ ἦν οὕτω
 possible to-take the citadel; for (if) it-were so

σωτηρία ἀσπαλῆς· ἄλλως δὲ ἐδόκει
 (their) safety (would be) sure; otherwise indeed it-seemed

εἶναι πάννυχον χαλεπὸν ἀπελθεῖν· δὲ τὸ χωρίον
 to-be extremely difficult to-retire; and the place

ἔδοξε αὐτοῖς σκοποῦμένοις εἶναι παντάπασιν
 seemed to-them (after) having-explored (it) to-be altogether

ἀνάλωτον. Ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν
 impregnable. Then they-began-to-prepare (for) the

ἄφροδον, καὶ ἕκαστοι μὲν διήρουν τὸν
 retreat, and each (of the men) indeed pulled-up the

σταυροὺς τοὺς καδ' αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἐξεπέμ-
 palisades — (those namely) near themselves, and they-sent-

ποιτο τοὺς ἀχρεῖους καὶ ἔχοντας
 out (of the place) the useless (persons) and (those) having

φορτία, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὀπλιτῶν· δὲ οἱ
 burdens, also the multitude of-the heavy-armed-men; but the

λοχαγοὶ κατέλιπον οἷς ἕκαστος
 captains left (remaining those) in-whom each

ἐπίστευεν.
 confided.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, πολλοὶ
 After indeed they-commenced to-retreat, many (of the enemy)

ἐπεξέδεον ἐνδοθεν, ἔχοντες γέρρα
 sallied-forth from-within (the citadel), having (Persian) shields

καὶ λόγχας, καὶ κνημίδας καὶ Παφλαγονικά κράνη·
 and lances, and greaves and Paphlagonian helmets;

καὶ ἄλλοι ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας τὰς
 and others went-up on the houses — (namely those)

ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ φερούσης εἰς
 on-this-side and (those) on-that-side of-the way leading to

τὴν ἄκραν. Ὡστε ἦν οὐδὲ ἀσφαλὲς διώκειν
 the citadel. So-that it-was not-even safe to-pursue (them)

κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς φερούσας εἰς τὴν
 to the gates — (those namely) leading to the

ἄκραν. Καὶ γὰρ ἐπερῖπτουν ἄνωθεν μεγάλα
 citadel. And indeed they-threw-on (them) from-above large

ξύλα, ὥστε ἦν καὶ χαλεπὸν μένειν καὶ
 (logs of) wood, so-that it-was both dangerous to-remain and

ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νύξ ἐπιούσα ἦν φοβερά. Δὲ
 to-retreat; and the night coming-on it-was dreadful But

αὐτῶν μαχομένων καὶ ἀπορουμένων τις θεῶν
 they fighting and perplexed some-one 'of (the) 'gods

δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ ἐξαπίνης
 gave them (the) means of-safety. For suddenly

οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀνέλαμψεν, οὗτου
 (a) house of — (those) on (the) right having-burst-out-in-flames, whoever
 δὴ ἐνάψαντος. Ὡς δ' αὕτη ξυνέ-
 truly (it may be) having-set-fire-to (it). As indeed this (house) fell-

πιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν
 in, (the enemy) fled, — (those namely) from the houses
 ἐν δεξιᾷ. Ὡς δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔμαθε τοῦτο
 on (the) right. As indeed — Xenophon learned this

παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐκέλευε καὶ ἐνάπτειν τὰς
 from — fortune, he-ordered (them) also to-set-fire (to) the
 οἰκίας ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, αἱ ἦσαν ξύλιναι,
 houses on (the) left, which (as) they-were wooden, 'were

ὥστε καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. Οἱ ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ
 also even immediately 'on-fire. — They-fled therefore even

ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκιῶν. Οἱ δὲ μόνοι
 from these — (same) houses. — (Those) indeed alone

κατὰ τὸ στόμα δὴ ἔτι ἐλύπουν,
 along the front (or direction of the army) truly any-more annoyed
 καὶ ἦσαν δῆλοι ὅτι ἐπικείσονται ἐν τῇ
 (them), and it-was evident that they-would-fall-on (them) on -

ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει.
 (their) departure and also (on their) descent (from the plain).

Ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα,
 Then 'he (Xenophon) 'ordered (them) to-bring wood,

ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἔξω
 (namely) 'such (men) 'as happened being without (the reach)

τῶν βελῶν, εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν
 of-the missiles, into the middle (between) themselves and the

πολεμίων. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἤδη ἱκανὰ
 enemy. And when there-was now (a) sufficient (quantity)

ἐνῆψαν. δὲ καὶ ἐνήπτον τὰς οἰκίας,
 they-'set (it) 'on-fire; and also they-set-fire-to the houses

παρὰ τὸ αὐτὸ χάραγμα ὅπως οἱ πολέμοιοι ἔχοιεν
 along the very palisading, so-that the enemy might-have

ἀμφὶ ταῦτα. Οὕτω μόλις
 (their mind occupied) about these (things). Thus with-difficult

ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, ποιησάμενοι πῦρ
 they-departed from the place, having-made (a) fire
 ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ
 in (the) middle (between) themselves and the enemy. And
 πᾶσα ἡ πόλις κατεκαύθη, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι, καὶ αἱ
 all the town was-burnt, and the houses, and the
 τύρσεις, καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, καὶ πάντα
 towers, and the palisading, and all (things)
 τᾶλλα, πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.
 else, except the citadel.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπήεσαν, ἔχοντες
 And on-the next-day the Greeks departed, having
 τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν κατάβασιν
 — provisions. But as they-feared the descent
 τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, (γὰρ ἦν πραινὴς
 — (namely that) to Trebisond, (for it-was steep
 καὶ στενή,) ἐποίησαντο ψευδενέδραν. Καὶ
 and narrow,) they-made (a) false-ambuscade. And (a)
 ἄνθρωπος Μυσὸς τὸ γένος, καὶ ἔχων τοῦτο τοῦνομα,
 man (a) Mysian — by-birth, and having this same-name
 λαβὼν δέκα Κρητῶν, ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ
 (Mysus), taking ten Cretans, he-remained in (a) bushy
 χωρίῳ, καὶ προσεποιεῖτο πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν
 place, and did-as-if to-attempt to-conceal
 τοὺς πολεμίους· δ' αἱ πέλται αὐτῶν,
 (himself from) the enemy; and the shields of-them,
 οὖσαι χαλκαῖ, διεφαίνοντο
 being brass, 'appeared (glittering) 'through (the bushes)
 ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε. Οὖν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι
 from-time — to-time. Therefore indeed the enemy
 διορῶντες ταῦτα ἐφοβοῦτο ὥς οὖσαν
 perceiving these (things) feared (it) as being (a real,
 ἐνέδραν· δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινεν
 ambuscade; and the army during this (time) descended.
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει τῷ Μυσῷ
 When indeed it-seemed to - - Mysus (that the Greeks) now

ὑπεληλυθεναι ἱκανόν, ἐσήμηνε φεύγειν ἀνα
 nad-advanced sufficiently (far), he-gave-the-signal to-flee with
 κράτος· καὶ ὃς ἐξαναστὰς φεύγει, καὶ
 'all (their) 'might; and who getting-up flees, as-also
 οὐ σὺν αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι Κρητες,
 — (those) with him. And indeed the other Cretans,
 ἐκπесόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ (γὰρ ἔφασαν
 departing from the road (for they-said (that they)
 ἀλίτκεσθαι τῷ δρόμῳ) ἐσώθησαν κυλιν-
 were-getting-caught in-the race) saved (themselves) roll-
 δούμενοι εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας. Δὲ
 ing-down into (the) woods among the bushy-hollows. But
 ὁ Μυσὸς φεύγων κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ἐβόα
 Mysus fleeing along the road, he-called-out (for them)
 βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ αἰέλαβοι
 to-help (him); and they-helped him, and 'took
 τετρωμένον. Καὶ οἱ αὐτοὶ βοηθήσαντες
 (him) 'off wounded. And — those having-helped (him)
 ἀνεχώρουν ἐπὶ πόδα βαλλόμενοι,
 | retreated on foot [retreated slowly step by step] being-thrown-at
 καὶ τινες τῶν Κρητῶν ἀντιτοξεύοντες.
 (by the enemy), and some of-the Cretans 'shot
 Οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
 (their) 'arrows-in-return. Thus they-arrived at the camp
 πάντες ὄντες σῶοι
 all being safe.

CHAPTER III.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Χειρίσοφος οὔτε ἦκεν, οὔτε ἦν
 WHEN indeed — Chairisophus neither came, nor were-there
 ἱκανὰ πλοῖα, οὔτε ἦν ἔτι λαμβά-
 sufficient vessels, nor was-there any-more (any place where) to-pro-
 νειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπιτέον. Καὶ
 cure the provisions, it-seemed to-be necessary-to-depart. And
 μὲν ἐνεβίβασαν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα τε τοὺς
 indeed they-'placed on 'board the vessels not-only — (those)
 ἀσθενοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα
 being-infirm, but-also — (those) above forty
 ἔτη, καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας, καὶ
 (years of) age, and (the) children and women, and
 τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα ἦν μὴ ἀνάγκη ἔχειν.
 of-the baggage such-as it-was not necessary to-have (with them),
 καὶ Φιλήσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους
 and Philesius and Sophænetus the oldest
 τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες, ἐπέλεον ἐπι-
 of-the generals going-on-board, they-ordered (them) to-
 μελεῖσθαι τούτων· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ
 take-charge of-them; but the others marched-forth; the
 ὁδὸς δὲ ὥδοπεποιημένη ἦν. Καὶ πορευόμενοι
 road indeed having-been-made. And proceeding-forth
 ἀφικνοῦνται τριταῖοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα
 they-arrived (in) three-days at Cerasus, (a) Grecian
 πόλιν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, ἄποιον Σινωπέων,
 city on (the) sea (coast), (a) colony 'of (the) 'Sinopians,
 ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν δέκα
 in the Colchian country. Here they-remained ten
 ἡμέρας· καὶ ἐγίγνετο ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς
 days; and there-was (a) review (of those) under —
 ὅπλοις καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι
 arms and-also (an) enumeration, and there-were eight-thousand

καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. Οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν ἐκ τῶν
 and six-hundred. These were-saved out-of — (those at first)
 ἀμφὶ τοὺς μυρίους· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπώλονται τε
 about — ten-thousand; and the others had-been-destroyed not-only
 ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ χιόνος, καὶ εἴ τις
 by the enemy, but-also (by the) snow, and if any
 νόσῳ.
 by-sickness.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀργύριον
 And here they-distribute the money
 γεγόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων. Καὶ τὴν
 got from (the sale) of-the prisoners. And the
 δεκάτην, ἣν ἐξεῖλον Ἀπόλλωνι
 tenth (part), which they-took-out (and set apart) for-Apollo
 καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, οἱ στρατηγοὶ διέλα-
 and the Ephesian Diana, the generals took-among-them-
 βον, ἕκαστος τὸ μέρος, φυλάττειν τοῖς
 selves, each-one — (his) part, to-keep (it) for — (these)
 θεοῖς· δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσινᾶιος ἔλαβε ἀντὶ
 gods; and Neon the Asinæian took (the part) in-place
 Χειρισόφου. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ποιησάμενος
 of-Cheirisophus. Xenophon therefore having-made (and set aside
 ἀνάδημα τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος,
 out of his part an) offering — (that) indeed for — Apollo,
 ἀνκτίδωσιν εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων
 deposits (it) in the treasury of-the Athenians
 ἐν Δελφοῖς, καὶ ἐπέγραψε τὸ τε ὄνομα αὐτοῦ
 in Delphis, and he-inscribed (on it) the — name of-himself
 καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὃς ἀπέθανε σὺν Κλεάρχῳ·
 and — (that) of-Proxenus, who died with Clearchus;
 γὰρ ἦν ξένος αὐτοῦ. Δὲ τὸ
 for (Proxenus) was (the) guest-friend of-himself. But the (part)
 τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτε ἀπῆει συν
 of — Diana of — Ephesus, when he-departed with
 Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν Βοιωτοῦς,
 Agesilaus from — Asia into the road (to) Bœotia

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ νεωκόρῳ τῆς
he-left with Megabyzus the warden of-the (temple

Ἀρτέμιδος, ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐδόκει ἰέναι κινδυνεύων,
of-Diana, as he seemed to-go about-incurring-danger,

καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἣν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῆ, ἀπο-
and enjoined-on (him), if indeed he should-be-saved, to

δοῦναι αὐτῷ· δὲ ἣν πάδῃ τι
return (the money) to-himself; | but if he-suffered any-thing [but

ἀναδεῖναι, ποιησάμενοι
if he lost his life] to-dedicate (it), having-made (and set it apart)

τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι, ὅ τι οἰοίτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ
for — Diana, whatever he-might-think to-be-agreeable to-the

θεῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔφευγε αὐτοῦ
goddess. But when — Xenophon was-in-banishment (and) he

ἤδη κατοικοῦντος ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι, οἰκισθέντος παρὰ
now dwelling in Scillus, having-been-settled near

τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, Μεγάβυζος
— Olympia by the Lacedæmonians, Megabyzus

ἄφικνεῖται εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων,
came to Olympia | about-seeing-the-public-games, [for the

καὶ ἀποδίδωσι
purpose of being present at the Olympian games,] and he-returned

τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν
the deposit to-him. And Xenophon taking (it,

ὠνεῖται χωρίον τῇ θεῷ, ὅπου ὁ θεός
buys (a) piece-of-land for-the goddess, where the god

ἄνειλε. Δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς
had-'directed (him) 'by-a-response. And (the) river Selinus

ἔτυχε ῥέων διὰ μέσου τοῦ χωρίου.
[happened running [ran] through (the) middle of — (this) piece-of-land,

Καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς παραρρεῖ
And in Ephesus also (a) river Selinus runs-by

παρὰ τὸν νεῶν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος, καὶ δὲ ἐν ἀμφοτέροι
along the temple of — Diana, and also in both

ἐνεῖσι ἰχθύες καὶ κόγχοι· ἐν δὲ τῷ χωρίῳ
there-are fish and shell-fish; in indeed — (this) piece-of-land

ἐν Σκιλλοῦτι καὶ θῆραι πάντων,
 in Scillus (there are) also hunts of-all (kind., espe-
 cially of) such-as are hunted wild-beasts. And also
ἐποίησε βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου,
 he-made (an) altar and (a) temple with the sacred money,
καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ αἰεὶ δεκατεύων τὰ
 and (for) the rest (of time) also always taking-the-tenth (of) the
ὥραια ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐποίει θυσίαν τῇ θεῷ.
 season's (produce) from the land he-made (a) sacrifice to-the goddess;
καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες
 and all the citizens and the neighbouring men
καὶ γυναῖκες μετεῖχον τῆς ἑορτῆς.
 and women participated (in) the festival (following the sacri-
 fice). And the goddess supplied — (those who) might-be-encamped
ἄλφιστα, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ
 (with) barley-meal, bread, wine, sweatmeats, and (a)
λάχος τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς, καὶ
 share of-the victims from the sacred pastures, and
τῶν θερευομένων δὲ. Γὰρ καὶ τε οἱ παῖδες
 of — (those) hunted also. For also not-only the sons
Ξενοφῶντος ἐποιοῦντο θήραν εἰς τὴν ἑορτήν,
 of-Xenophon made (a) hunt for the festival,
καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν· οἱ ἄνδρες
 but-also — (those) of-the other citizens; — (those) men
δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ξυνεδήρων· καὶ ἡλίσ-
 namely desiring (it) also hunted-with (them); and there
κετο τὰ μὲν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ
 were-caught — (partly) indeed from this the (same) sacred
χώρου, δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, σύες καὶ
 place, and also — (partly) from — Pholoë, boars and
δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. Δὲ ἡ χώρα
 antelopes and deer. And — (this sacred) piece-of-land
ἔστιν ἣ πορεύονται ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος εἰς
 is (on the road) by-which they-go from Lacedæmon to

Ὀλυμπίαν, ὥς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ Διὸς
Olympia, about thirty stadia from the temple of Jupiter

ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ. Ἐνὶ δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ
in Olympia. There are within also in — (this) sacred place

καὶ λειμῶν καὶ ἄλση καὶ ὄρη μεστά δένδρων,
also meadows and groves and hills full of trees,

ἱκανὰ τρέφειν καὶ σῦς καὶ αἰγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ
adapted to-breeding as-well swine as goats and oxen and

ἵππους, ὥς τε καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, τῶν ἰόντων
horses, so-that also the cattle, — (of those) going

εἰς τὴν ἑορτήν, εὖ χεῖσθαι. Δε περὶ τὸν
to the festival, are well-supplied-with-food. And round the

ναὸν αὐτὸν ἐφυτεύθη ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων,
temple itself is-planted (a) grove of-cultivated trees,

ὅσα ἐστὶ τρωκτὰ ὥραϊα. Δ' ὁ
(bearing) 'such (fruits) 'as are eatable in-different-seasons. And the

ναὸς εἴκασται τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ ὥς μικρὸς
temple is-like to — (that) in Ephesus (in) as (far as a) small

μεγάλῳ, καὶ τὸ ξόανον
(one may be compared) 'with (a) 'large (one), and the statue

ἔοικεν τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ, ὥς κυπα-
is-like to — (that) in Ephesus, (in) as (much as) 'one (being) 'of-

ρίττινον ὄντι χρυσῷ. Καὶ στήλη
cypress (is like to one) being of-gold. And (a) pillar

ἔστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναὸν ἔχουσα γράμματα.
stood near the temple having (this) inscription:

Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΙΕΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.
— (This) ground (is) sacred — (to) Diana.

ΔΕ ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΙΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ
And — (he) possessing (it) and 'gathering

ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ
(the) 'fruit (thereof) is-to-offer-in-sacrifice each year

ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ. ΔΕ ΕΚ
the — tenth (part of this produce). And from

ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΥΑΖΕΙΝ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ.
the residue to-keep-in-repair the temple

ΑΝ ΤΙΣ ΔΕ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ
 If any-one indeed 'should not 'perform these
 ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ ΘΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ.
 (conditions) it-will-be-a-care to-the goddess (to remember it).

CHAPTER IV.

Ἐκ Κερασούντος δὲ οἱ καὶ πρόσθεν
 FROM Cerasus — those-who (had) even before
 ἐκομίζοντο μὲν κατὰ θάλατταν,
 (been on board) 'were (again) 'carried — by sea,
 δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ γῆν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦσαν
 but the rest proceeded by land. But when they-were
 ἐπὶ τοῖς ὀρίοις Μοσσυνοίκων, πέμπουσιν εἰς
 on the confines 'of (the) 'Mossynœci, they-send to
 αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον, ὄντα
 them Timesitheus the Trapezian, being (the)
 πρόξενον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες
 public-friend-and-entertainer of-the Mossynœci, inquiring
 πότερον πορεύονται τῆς χώρας ὡς διὰ
 whether they-might-proceed-through — (their) country as through
 φιλίας, ἢ ὡς διὰ πολεμίας Δὲ οἱ
 (a) friendly (one), or as through (an) inimical (one). And —
 εἶπον ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν, γὰρ
 they-said that they-'would not 'allow (them) 'to-pass-through, for
 ἐπίστευον τοῖς χωρίοις. Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Τιμη-
 they-trusted to — (their) strong-places. Then — Time-
 σίδεος λέγει, ὅτι οἱ ἐκ τοῖ
 sitheus says, that — (those of the Mossynœci) from —
 ἐπέκεινα εἰσιν πολέμοι αὐτοῖς. Καὶ ἐδόκει
 beyond (them) were enemies to-them. And it-seemed-best
 καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλονται ποιήσασθαι
 'x-call-on them (to know), if they-might-wish to-make

ξυμμαχίαν· καὶ ὁ Τιμησίδης πεμφθεὶς
(an) alliance (with the Greeks); and — Timesitheus having-been-sent

ἦκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. Ἐπεὶ
(to them) came bringing — (their) rulers (or chiefs). When

δὲ ἀφίκοντο, τε οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,
indeed they-arrived, not-only the chiefs of-the Mossynœoi,

καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, συνῆλθον·
but-also the generals of-the Greeks, came-together;

καὶ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἐλέξε, δὲ Τιμησίδης ἡρμήνευε·
and indeed Xenophon spoke, and Timesitheus interpreted:

ὦ Μοσσύνοικοι ἄνδρες, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα δια-
O Mossynœan men, we desire | to-

σωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ·
'save (ourselves) 'through into the Greece on-foot,

γὰρ ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα· δὲ
[to go safely into Greece on foot;] for we-have no ships; and

οὗτοι καλῶνσι ἡμᾶς, οὓς ἀκούμεν εἶναι
those (people) oppose us, whom we-hear to-be

πολεμίους ὑμῖν. Εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν
enemies to-you. If therefore you-wish, it-is-allowed you

λαβεῖν ἡμᾶς ξυμμάχους, καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι,
to-take us (as) allies, and to-avenge-yourselfs,

εἴ ποτε οὗτοι ἡδίκηκασιν ὑμᾶς τι, καὶ
if at-any-time these (people) may-have-injured you (in) any-thing, and

τούτους εἶναι ὑπηκόους ὑμῶν
(you may have) these (people) (so as) to-be subject (to) you

τὸ λοιπὸν. Δὲ εἰ ἀφήσετε ἡμᾶς, σκέψασθε
(for) the rest (of time). But if you-will-reject us, consider

πόθεν ἂν αὐδὶς λάβοιτε τοσαύτην δύναμιν
whence 'you may again 'procure such (a) force

ξύμμαχον. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ ἄρχων
(as an) ally. To this the ruler (or head chief)

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι καὶ βούλονται
of-the Mossynœoi replied, that 'they both 'desired

ταῦτα, καὶ δέχονται τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. Ἄγετε
this, and accepted the alliance. | Bring

δή, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τί δεήσεσθε χρή-
then, [well then,] said — Xenophon, in-what do-you-want to-

σασθαι ἡμῶν, ἂν γεγώμεθα ξύμμαχοι ἡμῶν;
make-use of-us, if we-become allies of-you?

καὶ τί ἔσεσθε οἰοί τε ὑμεῖς συμπαῖξαι ἡμῖν
and in-what will-it-be possible for-you to-assist us

περὶ τῆς διόδου. Δὲ οἱ εἶπον ὅτι
as-respects the journey-through (the country)? And — they-said that

ἐσμεν ἱκανοὶ εἰσβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ
we-are sufficient (and able) to-make-an-irruption | from the (side) on

θάτερα εἰς τὴν χώραν τὴν
side [from the farther side] into the country — (namely that)

τῶν πολεμίων ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν, καὶ πέμψαι
of-the enemies of-you as also of-us, and to-send

δεῦρο ὑμῖν ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες συμ-
hither for-you ships as also men, who are-to-

μαχοῦνται ὑμῖν, τε καὶ ἡγήσονται τῇ
be-auxiliaries for-you, as also they-will-guide (you) on-the

ὁδόν.
road.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις δόντες καὶ λαβόντες πιστὰ
Upon these (things) giving and taking pledges-of-good-faith

ῥχοντο. Καὶ ἦκον τῇ ὀστεραῖᾳ ἄγοντες τρια-
they-departed. And they-came on-the next-day bringing three-

κόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα, καὶ τρεῖς ἄνδρας
hundred boats (made out of) one-piece-of-wood, and three men

ἐν ἐκάστῳ, ὧν οἱ δύο μὲν,
(being) in each, of-whom — two indeed (from each boat),

ἐκβάντες, ἔθεντο εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ
having-disembarked, placed-themselves in line under-arms, and

ὁ εἷς ἔμενε. Καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες
the one (in each boat) remained. And — (these last) indeed taking

τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν. δὲ οἱ μένοντες
— (their) boats sailed-away; but — those remaining

ἔξετάζαντο ὧδε. Ἔστησαν ἀνὰ μάλιστα
were drawn-up thus. They-stood — very (nearly)

ἑκατὸν, ὥσπερ χοροί, ἀντιστοιχοῦντες
(a) hundred (in each line), like troops-of-dancers, drawn-up-opposite

ἀλλήλοις, πάντες ἔχοντες γέρρα λευκῶν
one-another. all having shields (made of) white (hides)

βοῶν δασέα, εἰκασμένα πετάλω
of-oxen (and the) hair-on, (the shield) being-like 'to (a) 'leaf

κιττοῦ, δὲ ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὥς ἑξάπηχη
of-ivy, and on the right (hand was a) javelin about six-cubit-long

ἔχον μὲν ἔμπροσθεν λόγχην, δὲ ὀπισθεν
having indeed 'at (the) 'top (a) spear, but 'at (the) 'lower

σφαιροειδές τοῦ ξύλου αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἐνεδε-
(end a) ball-like-form (made) of-the wood . itself. And they-

δύκεσαν χιτωνίσκους ὑπὲρ γονάτων,
were-dressed (in) tunics (reaching) to (the) knees,

πάχος ὥς λινοῦ
(and the) thickness (of these tunics was the same) as (that) 'of (a) 'linen

στρωματοδέσμον, δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ σκύτινα
bed-sack, and (they having) on the head leathern

κράνη, οἷα περ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, ἔχοντα
helmets, such-as the Paphlagonian (helmet), having (a)

κρώβυλον κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύττα τιανο-
couch-of-hair along (the) middle (of the helmet), very-nearly tiara-

ειδῆ· δὲ καὶ εἶχον σιδηρᾶς σαγάρεις. Ἐντεῦθεν
shaped; and also they-had iron battle-axes. Then

μὲν εἰς αὐτῶν ἐξῆρχε, δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύ-
indeed one of-them went-out, and all the others proceeded

οντο ᾄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῳ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ
forth singing in rhythmic-modulation, and passing through

τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὀπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
the lines and through the heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,

ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπὶ
they-proceeded directly towards the enemy, on (a)

χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐπιμαχώτατον. Δὲ
fortified-place which seemed to-be most-assailable. And

τοῦτο ὧκειτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως καλουμένης
this (place) was-situated before the city called

αὐτοῖς τῆς μητροπόλεως, καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον
by-them the metropolis, and having the highest-situation

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. Καὶ ὁ
(of any place in the country) of-the Mossynœci. And the

πόλεμος ἦν περὶ τούτου· γὰρ οἱ
war was about this-same (place); for — (those who)

ἄει ἔχοντες τοῦτ' ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐγκρατεῖς
at-any-time having this (place) seemed to-be the-most-powerful

καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους
even of-all (the) Mossynœci, and they-say (that) these

οὐ ἔχειν τοῦτο δικαίως,
(their opponents) 'had not 'obtained this (place) justly,

ἀλλὰ καταλαβόντας, ὃν κοινὸν
but having-seized (it), (it) being common (property, that thus)

πλεονεκτεῖν.

they-got-the-ascendency.

Δ' τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἶποντο αὐτοῖς,
And some of-the — Greeks even followed them,

οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ
not having-been-ordered by the generals, but

ἐνεκεν ἀρπαγῆς. Δ' οἱ πολέμοι, προσίοντων,
for-the-sake of-plunder. But the enemy, (they) advancing,

τέως μὲν, ἡσύχαζον· δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο
so-long-as (they did) indeed, kept-quiet; but when they-got

ἐγγὺς τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες αὐτοὺς τρέ-
near the place, sallying-out 'put them 'to-

πονται, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνοὺς τῶν βαρβάρων,
flight, and they-killed many of-the barbarians,

καὶ τινὰς τῶν ξυναβάντων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ
and some of-the accompanying Greeks, and

ἔδίωκον μέχρι οὗ εἶδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας βοή-
they-pursued just-to where they-saw the Greeks coming-

δοῦντας. Δὲ εἶτα ἀποτραπόμενοι ὤχοντο,
to-help (the defeated). And then having-turned-back they-fled,

καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν,
and cutting-off the heads of-the dead

ἐπεδείκνυσαν τε τοῖς Ἑλλησι καὶ τοῖς
they-exhibited (them) not-only to-the Greeks but-also to-the

πολεμίοις ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον ᾄδοντες
enemies of-themselves, and at-the-same-time they-danced singing

τινὶ νόμῳ. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλα ἤχδοντο
to-some tune. And the Greeks 'were very-much 'disturbed

ὅτι ἐπεποιήκεσαν τε τοὺς πολεμίους θρασύτερους,
'that they-had-made not-only the enemy more-bold-and-daring,

καὶ ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξελδόντες σὺν αὐτοῖς
but-also that ~~καὶ~~ Greeks having-gone-out with them

ἐπεφύγεσαν, ὄντες μάλα συχνοί· ὃ οὐπω
fled, (they) being very numerous; which 'had never

ἐπεποιήκεσαν πρόσθεν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Δὲ
'been-done before during the expedition. But

Ξενοφῶν, ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἕλληνας, εἶπεν·
Xenophon, calling-together the Greeks, said :

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀδυμήσητε ἔνεκα
Men soldiers, 'do not 'be-cast-down on-account

τῶν γεγενημένων· γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι καὶ
of-the (things) having-happened (thus); for know that even (a)

ἀγαθὸν οὐ μείον τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. Γὰρ
good not less (than) the evil has-occurred. For

πρῶτον μὲν ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες
first indeed know, that — (those) being-about

ἡγεῖσθαι ἡμῖν εἰσιν πολέμοι τῷ ὄντι
to-conduct us are enemies to — (those) being (really

οἷςπερ καὶ ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς·
enemies to themselves) to-whom also it-is-necessary for-us (also to be

καὶ ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀφρον-
enemies); and next indeed — (those) of-the Greeks ne-

τιστήσαντες τῆς τάξεως ξὺν ἡμῖν, καὶ
glecting the order-and-discipline (prevalent) with us, and

ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ἱκανοὶ πράττειν ξὺν
thinking (themselves) to-be able to-perform with

τοῖς βαρβάροις ταῦτά, ἅπερ ξὺν ἡμῖν,
the barbarians the-same, which (they do) with us.

δεδώκασιν δίκην· ὥστε αὖτις
 I have-given justice; [have suffered justly]; so-that hereafter (it will be

ἥττον ἀπολείπονται ἡμετέρας
 considered) worse 'should (the men) 'desert our

τάξεως. Ἀλλ' δεῖ ὑμᾶς παρασκευάζεσθαι,
 ranks. But it-is-proper (that) you prepare yourselves

ὅπως καὶ τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων
 so-that both [(to)-the] friends being of-the barbarians [to the

δόξητε εἶναι κρείττους αὐτῶν,
 barbarians your allies] you-may-appear to-be better (than) they

καὶ δηλώσητε τοῖς πολυίοις, ὅτι
 (in courage), and show — (your) encampments, that they-'d

οὐ μαχοῦνται ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε
 not 'fight 'with (the) 'same men now as when

ἐμάχοντο τοῖς ἀτάκτοις.
 they-fought with-the undisciplined.

Οὕτως μὲν ἔμειναν οὖν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν
 So indeed they-remained therefore that — day

Δ' τῇ ὑστεραία θύσαντες, ἐπεὶ ἔκαλλιερή
 But on-the next-day having-sacrificed, when they-had obtained-favour

σαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ποιησάμενοι τοὺς λόχους
 able-omens, they-breakfasted, having-formed the companies

ὀρθίους, καὶ ταξάμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους
 [straight, [in columns,] and drawing-up the barbarians

ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταῦτά, ἐπορεύοντο,
 on the left according (to) the-same (way) they-marched-forth,

ἔχοντες τοὺς τοξότας μεταξύ τῶν λόχων, ὑπολει-
 having the archers between the companies, having-

πομένους δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν
 left indeed (a) little (space from) the front of-the

ὀπλιτῶν. Γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ εὐζῶνοι τῶν
 heavy-armed-men. For there-were the active (men) of-the

πολεμίων, κατατρέχοντες ἔβαλλον τοῖς λίθοις·
 enemy, (who) running-down threw — stones;

οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταὶ ἀνέστελλον τούτους
 the archers and targeteers kept-back these

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο βάδεν.
 But the others (of the Greeks) proceeded (slowly) step-by-step.
 πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ' οὗ οἱ βάρβαροι
 first indeed against the (strong) place at which the barbarian
 ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς
 (allies of the Greeks) were-repulsed and the (Greeks) with them.
 γὰρ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι.
 for there the enemy were drawn-up-against (them).
 Οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν οὖν ἐδέξαντο πελταστάς,
 The barbarians indeed therefore received (the) targeteers,
 καὶ εὐάχοντο· δὲ ἐπειδὴ οἱ ὀπλίται
 and fought (with them); but when the heavy-armed-men
 ἦσαν ἐγγὺς ἐτράποντο. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ
 were near they-took-to-flight. And indeed the targeteers
 εὐδὺς εἶποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν μητρό-
 directly followed driving (them) upwards towards the metro-
 πολιν, οἱ ὀπλίται δὲ εἶποντο ἐν τάξει.
 polis, the heavy-armed-men indeed followed in order
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἄνω πρὸς ταῖς οἰκίαις τῆς μετρο-
 When indeed they-were above by the houses of-the metro-
 πόλεως, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ
 polis, here indeed the enemy 'having —
 πάντες γενόμενοι ὁμοῦ ἐμάχοντο, καὶ
 all 'got together fought (with them), and
 ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς· καὶ ἔχοντες ἄλλα
 they-hurled — (their) darts; and having other
 παχέα δόρατα, μακρὰ, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν μόλις
 thick spears, large, so-that (a) man could scarcely
 φέροι, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμυνεσθαι
 carry (them), with-these they-endeavoured to-defend-themselves
 ἐκ χειρός. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐχ ὑφίεντο
 hand-to-hand. But when the Greeks 'did not 'give-way,
 ἀλλ' ἐχώρουν ὁμόσε, οἱ
 | but went to-the-same-place, [but engaged in close combat,] the
 βάρβαροι ἔφευγον, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἅπαντες ἔλιπον
 barbarians fled. and thereupon 'they altogether 'left

τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν
the place. But the king of-them — (he living) in

τῷ μόσσυνι τῷ ὠκοδομημένῳ ἐπ' ἄκροι,
the wooden-tower — (that namely) having-been-built on (the) height,

ἔν ᾧ μένοντα αὐτοῦ πάντες τρέφουσι καὶ
whom remaining these all supported and

φυλάττουσιν κοινῇ, οὐκ ἔδελεν ἐξελθεῖν,
guarded (him) in-common, 'did not 'wish to-leave (it),

οὐδὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ πρότερον αἶρεδεντι,
nor — (those) in the strong-place first taken,

ἀλλ' κατεκαύθησαν αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοις.
but were-burnt these with the wooden-towers

Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία, εὗρισκον
But the Greeks, ransacking the place, found

ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις θησαυροὺς ἄρτων νενημένων
in the houses stores of-bread heaped-together

πατρίους, ὥς οἱ Μοσσύνιοι
accor ding-to-the-custom-of-their-forefathers, as the Mossynœoi

ἔφαισαν, δὲ τὸν νέον σίτον ἀποκείμενον ξὺν τῇ
say, also the new corn put-up (with) (in) the

καλάμῃ· δ' αἱ πλεῖσται ἦσαν ξειαῖ. Καὶ
straw; and the most was spelter. And

τεταριχευμένα τεμάχη δελφίνων εὗρισκετο ἐν
pick'ed slices of-dolphins were-found in

ἄμφορεῦσι, καὶ στέαρ τῶν δελφίνων ἐν τεύχεσι,
jars, and (the) fat of — dolphins in vessels,

ὧς οἱ Μοσσύνιοι ἐχρῶντο, καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες
which the Mossynœoi used, as the Greeks

τῷ ἐλαίῳ. Δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνωγαίων ἦν
(do) — oil. And in the upper-parts-of-the-houses there-were

πολλὰ κάρυα τὰ πλατέα, οὐχ ἔχοντα
many nuts (chestnuts) the broad-ones, not having

οὐδεμίαν διαφυήν. Τούτῳ καὶ ἐχρῶντο
(no) (any) fissure. This 'they even used

πλείστῳ σίτῳ, ἔψοντες καὶ ὀπτῶντες ἄρτους
most for-food, boiling (them) and baking bread

Δὲ οἶνος εὗρίσκετο, ὃς μὲν ἄκρατος
 (of them). Also wine was-found, which indeed (when) pure
 ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὀξύς ὑπὸ τῆς αἰσθηρότητος.
 seemed to-be sour from — (its) very-great-roughness,
 δὲ κερασδεῖς εὐώδης τε καὶ
 but being-mixed (with water) (it becomes) fragrant and also
 ἡδύς.
 pleasant.

Οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν δὴ, ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα,
 The Greeks indeed —, having-breakfasted there,
 ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες
 proceeded on — (their) forward (march), giving-up
 τὸ χωρίον τοῖς συμμαχήσασιν τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων.
 the place to — (their) allies of-the Mossynœci.
 Δὲ καὶ ὅποσα ἄλλα χωρία παρήεσαν, τῶν
 And also as-many other places 'as they-arrived-at, — (those)
 ὄντων ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις, τὰ εὐπροσο-
 being with the enemy, — (some of the places) being-most-
 δώντατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, δὲ οἱ
 accessible the (barbarians) indeed deserted (them), but the (inhabit-
 ἀντὶς τῶν χωρίων) ἐκόντες προσεχώρουν. Δὲ τὰ πλεῖστα
 ants of other places) willingly surrendered. And the most
 τῶν χωρίων ἦν τοιάδε. Αἱ πόλεις ἀπείχον
 of-the places were (situated) thus. The towns were-distant
 ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ὀγδοήκοντα στάδια, αἱ δὲ
 from one-another (about) eighty stadia, — (some) indeed
 πλείων, αἱ δὲ μείον· δὲ ἀναβοώντων
 more, — (others) indeed less; and calling-aloud (to)
 ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον ἐκ τῆς ἐτέρας πόλεως
 one-another they-heard-each-other from the (other) (one) city
 εἰς τὴν ἑτέραν· ἡ χώρα ἦν οὕτως ὑψηλή
 to the other; (for) the country was so elevated
 τε καὶ κοίλη. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἦσαν
 and so hollow. When indeed having-proceeded-forwards they-were
 ἐν τοῖς φίλοις, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς παῖδας
 among — friends, they-showed them boys (the sons of)

τῶν εὐδαιμόνων, ἀπαλοὺς καὶ σφόδρα λευκοὺς,
of-the rich, soft and exceedingly white,

σιτευτοὺς, τετραμμένους ἐφδοῖς καρύοις, καὶ οὐ
being-made-fat, having-been-fed with-boiled chestnuts, and not

δέοντας πολλοῦ εἶναι ἴσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ
wanting much to-be equal — (in) length and -- (in)

πλάτος, δὲ ποικίλους τὰ νῶτα, καὶ πάντα
breadth, and painted-with-various-colours on-the back, and on-al'

τὰ ἐμπροσθεν ἐστιγμένους ἀνδέρμιον. Δὲ
the forepart pricked (in the form of) flowers. And

καὶ ἐζήτουν ξυγγίγνεσθαι ἐμφανῶς ταῖς ἐταίραις
also they-desired to-have-intercourse publicly with-the mistresses

αἷς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἤγον, γὰρ οὗτος νόμος
which the Greeks brought (with them), for this custom

ἦν σφίσι. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες
was to-them. And all the men and the women

λευκοί. Οἱ στρατευσάμενοι
were very) white. — (Those) having-'served-in (this) 'expedition

ἔλεγον διελθεῖν βαρβαρωτάτους,
| said (that) they-passed-through the-most-barbarous, [that these were

καὶ πλεῖστον
the most barbarous people they had passed through,] and the-most

κεχωρισμένους τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων. Γὰρ
removed from-the Grecian manners (and customs). For

τε εἰποῖουν ὄντες ἐν ὄχλῳ ἅπερ ἄνθρωποι ἂν
indeed they-do being in (a) crowd what men would

ποιήσειαν ἐν ἐρημίᾳ, ἄλλως δὲ ἂν οἷ
(only) do in private, otherwise indeed might not

τολμῶεν· τε ὄντες μόνοι ἔπραττον
dare (to do); and being alone they-did-those-things

ἅπερ ἂν ὅμοια ὄντες
which (they) might (do) (the) same (as if) being (in company,

μετ' ἄλλων· διελέγοντό τε ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐγέλω
with others; talked — to-themselves, and laughed

ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐφιστάμενοι ὦρχοῦντο ὅπου
to themselves, and stopping they-danced wherever

τύχοιεν, ὥςπερ ἐπιδεικνύμενοι ἄλλοις.
they-might-happen (to be), as-if exhibiting-themselves to-others

CHAPTER V.

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας, τε διὰ τῆς
THROUGH these — countries, — (namely) through — (those)
πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπο-
inimical and — (those) friendly, the Greeks pro-
ρεύθησαν ὀκτὼ σταδμούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς
ceeded eight days'-march, and arrived among (the)
Χάλυβας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ὀλίγοι καὶ
Chalybes. These (people) were few (in number) and (were)
ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος τοῖς
subjects of-the Mossynœci, and — (their) living for-the
πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπο σιδηρείας. Ἐντεῦθεν
most of-them (was obtained) from iron-works. Thence
ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνοῦς. Ἡ χώρα δὲ
they-arrived among (the) Tibareni. The country —
τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν ἦν πολὺ πεδινωτέρα, καὶ εἶχει
of-the Tibareni was much more-level, and they-had
χωρία ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἥττον ἐρυμνα. Καὶ
stations on (the) sea (coast) but-weakly fortified. And
οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐχρηζον προσβάλλειν πρὸς τὰ χωρία,
the generals wanted to-make-an-attack on the places,
καὶ ἀνηθῆναί τ τὴν στρατιὰν κα.
and to-have-'conferred some 'benefit on-the army and
οὐκ ἐδέχοντο τὰ ζένια ἃ ἦκε παρὰ
they-'did not receive the gifts-of-hospital' ty which came from
Τιβαρηνῶν, ἀλλ' κελεύσαντες ἐπιμεῖναι
(the) Tibareni, but having-ordered (the messengers) to—

ἔστε βουλευσάντων, ἐθύοντο. Καὶ πολλὰ
 till they-might-deliberate, they-sacrificed. And many (victims
 καταθυσάντων, τέλος πάντες οἱ μάντεις ἀπε
 having-been-sacrificed, at-last all the augurs of
 δείξαντο γνώμην, ὅτι οἱ θεοὶ οὐδαμῇ προσίοιεν
 fered (their) opinion, that the gods in-no-wise approved-of
 τὸν πόλεμον. Ἐντευθεν δὴ ἐδέξαντο τὰ ξέ-
 the war. Then indeed they-accepted the gifts-of-
 νια, καὶ πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας, ὡς
 hospitality, and proceeding-on (their march) two days, as
 διὰ φιλίας, ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα
 through (a) friendly (country), they-arrived at Cotyora (a)
 Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικίαν Σινωπέων, δ' ὄντας
 Greek city, (a) colony from-Sinope, and being
 ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Τιβαρηνῶν.
 in the country 'of (the) 'Tibareni.

Ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπέξυσσε μέχρι ἐνταῦθα. Πληθος
 The army proceeded-by-land just-to here. (The) length
 τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ
 of-the descent (down the country along) the road from
 τῆς μάχης ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα
 the battle (ground) in Babylon just to Cotyora (was)
 ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο σταδμοὶ, ἑξακόσιοι
 a-hundred (and) twenty two stations, (making) six-hundred
 καὶ εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι, μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι
 and twenty parasangs, (or) ten-thousand and eight-thousand
 καὶ ἑξακόσιοι στάδιοι· πληθος χρόνοι
 and six-hundred (18,600) stadia; the-amount of-time (was)
 ὀκτὼ μῆνες. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τετταράκοντα
 eight months. There they-remained forty
 πέντε ἡμέρας. Ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον
 five days. During — these (days) 'they first
 μὲν ἔθυσαν τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἐποίησαν πομπὰς
 indeed 'sacrificed to-the gods, and they-made processions
 ἕκαστοι κατὰ ἔθνος τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
 each according-to (the) nation (or tribe) of-the Greeks

καὶ γυμνικούς ἀγῶνας. Δὲ τα
 (to which he belonged), and gymnastic games. And — (the
 ἐπιτήδεια ἐλαμβάνον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλα
 provisions they-took — (partly) indeed from — Paphla
 γονίας, δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν.
 gonia, and — (partly) from the lands of-the Cotyorites;
 γὰρ οὐ παρέχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' ἐδέχοντο
 for they-'did not 'provide (a) market, nor did-they-receive
 τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας εἰς τὸ τεῖχος.
 the feeble-and-sick within the walls.
 Ἐν τούτῳ πρέσβεις ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης,
 During this ambassadors come from Sinope,
 φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τε τῆς
 they-being-in-fear about the Cotyores namely (those) of-the
 πόλεως, (γὰρ ἦν ἐκείνων, καὶ
 city, (for it-was of-them, [for it was theirs,] and (the in-
 ἔφερον φόρους ἐκείνοις,) καὶ
 habitants) brought tribute to-them,) and (they were also in fear)
 περὶ τῆς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηου-
 about the territories, as they-had-heard (that they were) being-
 μένην. Καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἔλεγον
 ravaged. And going to the camp, they-said
 (δὲ Ἑκατώνυμος προηγόρει, νομιζόμενος εἶναι δεινὸς
 (and Hecatonymus spoke-for-them, he-being-considered to-be able
 λέγειν). Ἡ πόλις τῶν Σινωπέων ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς,
 to-speak): The city of-the Sinopians has-sent us,
 ὧς ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς, ὅτι
 O men soldiers, about-praising indeed you, that
 ὄντες Ἕλληνες νικᾶτε βαρβάρους, δὲ καὶ
 being Greeks you-have-conquered (the) barbarians, and also
 ἔπειτα ζυνησομένους, ὅτι πάρεστε
 then congratulating (you), that you-are-present (here)
 σεσωσμένοι, ὥς ἡμεῖς ἀκούμεν, διὰ πολλῶν τε
 having-been-saved, as we hear, through many and
 καὶ δεινῶν πραγμάτων. Δὲ ἀξιοῦμεν, ὄντες καὶ
 also grievous things. But we-think-it-right, being also

αὐτοὶ Ἕλληνες, μέν πάσχειν τι
ourselves Greeks, (that we ought) indeed to-suffer something

ἀγαθόν, δὲ μηδὲν κακὸν ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ὄντων Ἑλλήνων.
good, but nothing evil from you, being Greeks;

γὰρ οὐδὲ πώποτε ὑπῆρξάμεν ποιῶντες οὐδὲν
for neither 'have-we ever 'commenced doing (no) (any)

κακῶς ὑμᾶς. Οὗτοι Κοτυωρίται δὲ εἰσὶ μέν
evil to-you. These Cotyoritans — are indeed

ἡμέτεροι ἀποικοί, καὶ ἡμεῖς παραδεδώκαμεν αὐτοῖς
our colonists, and we have-given them

ταύτην τὴν χώραν, ἀφελόμενοι βαρ-
this — (same) land, having-taken (it) 'from (the) 'bar-

βάρους· καὶ διὸ οὗτοι φέρουσιν ἡμῖν
barians; and therefore these (people) bring us (an)

τεταγμένον δασμόν, καὶ ὡσαύτως Κερασούντιοι καὶ
appointed tribute, and likewise (the) Cerasuntians and

Τραπεζούντιοι· ὥστε ὅ τι κακὸν ἂν ποιήσητε
Trapezuntians; so-that whatever evil 'you may 'do

τούτους, ἡ πόλις Σινωπέων νομίζει
them, the city 'of (the) 'Sinopians considers (itself)

πάσχειν. Δὲ νῦν ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς τε
to-suffer (from it). But now we-hear (that) you not-only

παρεληλυδόντας εἰς τὴν πόλιν βία, ἐνίους
having-entered into the town by-force, some (of you)

σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις, καὶ λαμβάνειν
lodge in the houses, but-also (that you) take

βία, ἐκ τῶν χωρίων ὧν ἂν δέησδε,
by-force, from the (neighbouring) places what 'you may 'want

οὐ πείδοντας. Οὖν οὐκ ἀξιοῦμεν
(the owners) not consenting. Therefore we-'do not 'approve

ταῦτα· δὲ εἰ ποιήσετε ταῦτα
these (things); and if you-will-do these (things) there-'will-

ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν ποιῆσθαι φίλον καὶ Κορύλαν
be (a) 'necessity for-us to-make friends both (of) Coryllas

καὶ Παφλαγόνας, καὶ ἄλλον, ὅντινα
 and (of the) Paphlagonians, and (any) other, whomsoever
 ἂν δυνώμεδα.
 may 'be-able.

Πρὸς ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπεν
 In-respect to-these (things) Xenophon rising-up spoke
 ἱπὲρ τῷ στρατιωτῶν. Ἡμεῖς δὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες
 for the army: We indeed, O men (of)
 Σινωπεῖς, ἥκομεν ἀγαπῶντες, ὅτι διεσωσάμεδα
 Sinope, have-come being-content, that we-have-saved
 τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ ἦν οὐ
 — (our) bodies and — (our) arms; for it-was not
 δυνατόν ἅμα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν χρήματα,
 possible at-the-same-time to-drive and bring (away) things,
 καὶ μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ
 and to-fight the enemy. And now when
 ἦλθομεν εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις, μὲν ἐν
 we-have-come to — Greek cities, (as) indeed among (the)
 Τραπεζοῦντι (γὰρ παρείχον ἡμῖν ἀγοράν) ὠνού-
 Trebisondians (for they-provided us (a) market) buy-
 μενοι εἶχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνδ' ὧν
 ing we-had — (our) provisions, and in-return for-what
 ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς, καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν
 they-honoured us, and (the) gifts-of-hospitality (which) they-gave
 τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ
 to-the army we-'honoured them 'in-return, and if
 τις τῶν βαρβάρων ἦν φίλος αὐτοῖς, ἀπει-
 any-one of-the barbarians was (a) friend to-them, we-ab-
 χόμεδα τούτων· δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους
 stained (from injuring) them; but (to) the enemies
 αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὓς αὐτοὶ ἠγοῖντο ἐποιοῦμεν κακῶς
 of-them against whom they may-have-led (us) we-did evil
 ὅσον ἐδυνάμεδα. Δὲ ἐρωτᾶτε αὐτούς ὁποίων
 as-much-as we-could. But ask them what-sort
 τινῶν ἔτυχον ἡμῶν· γὰρ πάρεισι ἐνθάδε,
 of-persons they-may-have-found us; for they-are-present here.

οὓς ἡ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν ἡμῖν ἡγεμόνας διὰ
whom the city sent-with us (as) guides through

φιλίαν. Δ' ὅποι ἂν ἐλθόντες μὴ ἔχωμεν
friendship. But wherever 'we may 'have-been-coming (and) not having

ἀγορὰν, ἂν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν τε
(a) market, (it) may (be) as-well to (a) barbarian country as (it)

ἂν Ἑλληνίδα, λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
may (be) 'to (a) 'Grecian, we-take — provisions

οὐχ ὕβρει, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκῃ. Καὶ
not (through) insolence, but (through) necessity. And

ἐκτῆσάμεθα πολεμίους Καρδούχους καὶ
we-made enemies (of the) Carduchi and (of the)

Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους, καίπερ οὐχ ὄντας
Taochi and (of the) Chaldæans, although not being

ὑπηκόους βασιλέως, καὶ ὁμως ὄντας μάλα
subjects 'of (the) 'king, and yet being very

φοβεροὺς, διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἀνάγκην
formidable, | through the to-be [from being] (in) necessity

λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ οὐ παρεῖχον
to-take — provisions, when they-'did not 'furnish (us)

ἀγορὰν. Δὲ Μάκρωνας, καίπερ ὄντας βαρ-
(a) market. 'But (the) Macrones, although being bar-

βάρους, ἐπεὶ παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν, οἷαν ἐδύναντο,
barians, when they-provided (us a) market, as-much-as they-could,

ἐνομιζόμεν τε εἶναι φίλους, καὶ ἐλαμβάνομεν
we-considered indeed to-be friends, and we-took

οὐδὲν τῶν ἐκείνων βίᾳ. Δὲ Κοτυωρίτας,
nothing of-the (things) of-them by-force. But (the) Cotyorites

οὓς φατὲ εἶναι ὑμετέρους, εἰ εἰλήψαμεν τι
whom you-say to-be yours, if we-have-taken any-thing

αὐτῶν, αὐτοὶ εἰσιν αἱτιοί· γὰρ
from-them, they-themselves are (the) authors (thereof); for

οὐ προσεφέροντο ὥς φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ
they-'did not 'carry-themselves as friends of-us, but

κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας, οὐτε ἐδέχοντο
having-closed — (their) gates, 'would neither 'receive (us)

εἶσω, οὔτε ἔπεμπον ἀγορὰν ἔξω·
 within (the walls), nor did-they-send (us a) market without (the walls),
 δε ἡτιῶντο τὸν ἄρμοσθῆν παρ' ὑμῶν εἶναι.
 and they-alleged (that) the governor (sent) by you was
 αἴτιον τούτων. Ὅ δὲ λέγεις
 the-author of-these (things). (As to) what indeed you-say (that)
 παρελθόντας βία σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἥξιούμεν,
 entering by-force we-quartered (in the place), we requested,
 δέξασθαι τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς
 (that) they-would-receive — (those) being-sick — (under) — (their)
 στέγας· δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἀνέωγον τὰς πύλας,
 roofs; but when they-'would not 'open the gates,
 ἣ τὸ χωρίον αὐτὸ ἐδέχετο ἡμᾶς
 [in-which (way) the place itself received us [where the
 ταύτῃ εἰσελθόντες,
 nature of the place admitted our entrance] in-the-same (place) entering,
 ἄλλο ἐποιήσαμεν μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον· δ' οἱ
 (but) we-committed indeed no violent (act); but — (those)
 κάμνοντες σκηνοῦσι ἐν ταῖς στέγαις, δαπανῶντες
 being-sick they-quarter — (under) the roofs, | consuming
 τὰ ἐαυτῶν· καὶ φρου-
 the (things) of-themselves; [living on their own means]; and we-
 ροῦμεν τὰς πύλας, ὅπως οἱ ἡμῶν κάμνοντες
 guard the gates, so-that — (those) of-us being-sick
 μὴ ᾧσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ ἄρμοστῃ,
 'may not 'be in the (power of) your governor,
 ἀλλ' κομίσασθαι ἢ ἐφ' ἡμῖν,
 | but to-remove (them) may-be to us, [but that it may
 ὅταν βουλώμεθα. Δὲ οἱ
 be in. our power to remove them,] when we-wish. But the
 ἄλλοι, ὥς ὁρᾶτε, σκηνοῦμεν ὑπαίθριοι,
 rest (of us) as you-see, we-are-encamped (in the) open-air
 ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἂν τις
 in — (proper) order, prepared, (that) should any-one
 μὲν ποιῇ εὖ, ἀντενποιεῖν, δὲ αἱ
 indeed act well (to us), to-act-well-in-return (to them). but (if he) should

κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. Δὲ — ἃ
 act) ill, to-defend (ourselves). And (as respects) what
 ἠπειλησας, ὥς, ἣν δοκῇ ὑμῖν, ποιήσεσθε
 you-have-threatened, that, if it-seemed-proper to-you, you-would-make
 Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ἐφ'
 Corylas and (the) Paphlagonians (your) allies against
 ἡμᾶς, δὲ ἡμεῖς, ἣν μὲν ἢ ἀνάγκη,
 is, but we (on our part), if indeed it-may-be necessary.
 πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· (γὰρ ἤδη καὶ ἐπολε-
 will-fight even with-you-both; (for already even we-have
 μήσαμεν ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν·) δὲ
 fought with-others more-numerous (than) you;) and (if) 'it
 ἂν δοκῇ, ποιήσομεν τὸν Παφλαγόνα
 may seem-proper (to us), we-will-make the Paphlagonian (a)
 φίλον ἡμῖν. Δὲ ἀκούομεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν
 friend to-us. And we-have-heard (that) he even covets
 τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ τῶν ἐπιδαλαττίων χωρίων.
 — your city and the maritime places
 Οὖν πειρασόμεθα, συμπράττοντες ὧν
 We-'shall therefore 'try, helping (him in) what
 ἐπιθυμεῖ γίνεσθαι φίλοι.
 he-desires to-become (his) friends.
 Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις ἦσαν μὲν μάλα
 After this (speech) the joint-ambassadors were indeed very
 δῆλοι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Ἑκατωνύμῳ τοῖς
 evident being-much-displeased at — Hecatonymus in — (what
 εἰρημένοις· δ' ἄλλος αὐτῶν παρελθὼν εἶπεν,
 he-had-been-saying; but others of-them coming-forward said,
 ὅτι οὐ ἤκοιεν ποιησόμενοι πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ
 that they-'did not 'come making war, but
 ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι εἰσὶ φίλοι. Ἦν μὲν ἔλ-
 showing-and-declaring that they-were friends. If indeed you-should-
 δητε πρὸς τὴν πόλιν Σινωπέων, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα
 come to the city of-the-Sinopeans, there we-will-receive (you)
 καὶ ζενίοις, δὲ νῦν κελεύσομεν τοὺς
 even with-gifts-of-hospitality, and now we-will-order — (those)

ἐνθάδε δίδοναι ἃ δύνανται· γὰρ ὁρῶμεν πάντα
 here to-give what they-can; for we-perceive all
 ὄντα ἀληθῆ ἃ λέγετε. Ἐκ τούτου τε οἱ Κοτυω-
 being true that you-say. After this indeed the Coto-
 ρῖται ἐπεμπον ξένηα, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 ritans sent gifts-of-hospitality, and the generals
 τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς πρέσβεις τῶν Σινοπέων,
 of-the Greeks entertained the ambassadors of-the Sinopeans,
 καὶ διελέγοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους τε πολλά
 and they-conversed with one-another not-only (about) many (things)
 καὶ φιλικὰ, τὰ
 but-also (about) friendly (things, that concerned one another), among-the
 ἄλλα τε ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ περὶ τῆς
 other (things) indeed they-inquired and (in particular) about the
 λοιπῆς πορείας, ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.
 remaining route, what each (party) desired (to know).

CHAPTER VI.

Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
 SUCH was the end indeed to-that — day.
 Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ξυνέλεξαν τοὺς
 But on-the next-day the generals assembled the
 στρατιώτας, καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς
 soldiers, and it-seemed (best) to-them as-respects the
 λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινοπέας
 remaining route (that) having-called-in the Sinopeans
 βουλεύεσθαι. Γὰρ εἴτε δέοι πορεύ-
 to-consult (with them). For if it-might-be-necessary to-
 εσθαι πεζῇ, οἱ Σινοπεῖς ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι χρήσιμοι·
 proceed by-land, the Sinopeans would seem to-be useful;
 γὰρ ἦσαν ἔμπειροι τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε
 for they-were well-acquainted (with) — Paphlagonia; if

συμβουλὴ ἣ λεγομένη εἶναι ἱερὰ δοκεῖ μιν
 counsel which is-said to-be sacred seems to-*us*

παρεῖναι· γὰρ νῦν μὲν δὴ, ἂν μὲν φανῶ
 to-be-present; for now indeed —, if indeed I-shall-appear (*us*)

συμβουλευσας εὖ, ἔσσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπαι-
 having-advised (you) well, you-will-be many — *ap-*

νοῦντές με· δὲ ἂν κακῶς, ἔσσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ κατα-
 plauding me; but if ill, you-will-be many — *exe*

ρώμενοι. Οὖν μὲν οἶδ' ὅτι ἔξομεν πολὺ
 crating (me). Therefore indeed I-know that we-shall-have much

πλείω πράγματα, ἐὰν κομίζησθε κατὰ θάλατταν·
 more trouble, if you-are-conveyed by *sea*·

γὰρ δεήσει ἡμᾶς πορίζειν τὰ πλοῖα·
 for it-will-be-necessary (that) we furnish the ships;

δὲ ἢν στέλλησθε κατὰ γῆν, δεῆσαι ὑμᾶς
 but if you-are-sent by land, it-will-be-necessary (that) you

εἶναι τοὺς μαχομένους. Ὅμως δὲ
 be — (those) fighting. However indeed (the things)

ἃ γινώσκω λεκτέα· γὰρ εἰμι ἔμπειρος καὶ
 which I-know are-to-be-spoken; for I-am well-acquainted both

τῆς χώρας τῶν Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως.
 with-the country of-the Paphlagonians and — (their) power.

Γὰρ ἔχει ἀμφοτέρω, καὶ κάλλιστα πεδία καὶ
 For it-has both, as-well most-beautiful plains *as*

ἱψηλότατα ὄρη. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εἰδὺς
 most-high mountains. For first indeed I-know exactly

τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἣ ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι·
 the entrance by-which (it will be a) necessity (for you) to-make

γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ ἄλλη ἢ ἣ
 (your entrance); for there-is not by-another than (that) by which

τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους καθ' ἑκάτερα τῆς ὁδοῦ
 the peaks of-the mountain on each (side) of-the road

ἐστὶν ἱψηλά, κατέχοντες ἃ καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι
 are high, possessing which even (a) very few

ἂν δύναιντο κρατεῖν· δὲ κατεχομένων τούτων,
 might be-able to-be-superior (to you); but having-pre-occupied *this*

οὐδέ πάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἂν δύναιντ'
not-even all the men (in the world) might be-able

ἂν διελθεῖν· δὲ καὶ ἂν δείξαιμι ταῦτα.
(that they) might pass-through; and also 'I could 'show this,

εἰ βούλοισδε ξυμπέμψαι μοί τινα. Ἐπειτα δὲ
if you-desire to-send-with me any-one. Then indeed

οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα, καὶ ἵππειαν, ἣν οἱ βάρ-
I-know even (of) plains being, and cavalry, which the bar-

βαροι αὐτοὶ νομίζουσι εἶναι κρείττω ἀπάσης τῆς
barians themselves consider to-be superior (to) all the

ἵππειας βασιλέως. Καὶ νῦν οὗτοι
cavalry 'of (the) 'king. And now (lately) these (Paphla-

οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ κα-
gonians) 'did not 'present (themselves) 'to (the) 'king call-

λοῦντι, ἀλλὰ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν φρονεῖ μεῖζον.
ing-on (others), but the ruler of-them thinks greater

Δὲ εἰ καὶ δυνηθεῖτε τε κλέψαι
(of himself, than to obey). And if also you-were-able indeed to-steal

τὰ ὄρη, ἣ λαβόντες φθάσαι,
(over) the mountains, or having-taken-possession to-have-anticipated (the

καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μαχόμενοι κρατῆσαι τε
enemy), and in the plain fighting to-have-conquered —

τούς ἵππεῖς τούτων καὶ πλεῖον ἢ δώδεκα
the cavalry of-these (people) and more than twelve

μυριάδες πεζῶν ἥξετε ἐπὶ τοὺς
ten-thousands [120,000] of-infantry, you-will-come to the

ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμῶδοντα, εὖρος
rivers, first indeed to-the Thermodon, (the) breadth

τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν οἶμαι χαλεπὸν
(being) three plethra, [300 feet,] which I-think difficult

διαβαίνειν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὄντων μὲν πολλῶν
to-cross, especially — also there-being indeed (a) numerous

πολεμίων ἔμπροσθεν, δὲ πολλῶν ἐπομένῳ
enemy before (you), and many following

ὀπισθεν· δεύτερον δ' Ἴριν, ὡσαύτως τρί-
behind; second — (the) Iris, likewise three-

πλέθρον· δὲ τρίτον Ὁ Ἁλυν, οὐ μείον
 plethra; [300 feet;] and third (the) Halys, not less (than)
 δυοῖν σταδίων, ὃν ἂν οὐ δύναισθε διαβῆναι
 two stadia, which 'you may not 'be-able to-pass
 ἄνευ πλοίων· δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων πλοῖα;
 without boats; but what-one will-there-be — providing boats!
 ὥς δ' αὐτως καὶ ὁ Παρθέnius ἄβατος, ἐφ' ὃν
 as indeed likewise even the Parthenius (is) impassable, at which
 ἂν ἔλθοιτε, εἰ διαβαίητε τὸν Ὁ Ἁλυν. Ἐγὼ
 'you may 'arrive, if you-cross-over the Halys. I
 οὖν μὲν νομίζω τὴν πορείαν εἶναι οὐ χαλεπὴν
 therefore indeed consider the route to-be not difficult
 ὑμῖν, ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἐδύνατον. Δὲ ἂν
 (only) for-you, but altogether impassable. But if
 πλέητε, ἔστιν ἐνδένδε μὲν παραπλευῖσαι
 you-sail, it-is (in your power) from-hence indeed to-coast-along
 εἰς Σινώπην, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ
 to Sinope, from Sinope indeed to Heracleia; from
 Ἡρακλείας δὲ ἀπορία οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε
 Heracleia indeed (the) passage (may be) either by-land or
 κατὰ θάλατταν· γὰρ ἔστιν καὶ πολλὰ πλοῖα ἐν
 by sea; for there-are even many vessels in
 Ἡρακλείᾳ.
 Heracleia.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔλεξε ταῦτα, οἱ ὑπώπτευν
 When indeed he-had-said this, — (some) suspected (that)
 λέγειν ἔνεκα φιλίας τῆς Κορύλα, (γὰρ ἦν
 he-said (it) by-reason of-friendship for — Corylas, (for he-was
 καὶ πρόξενος αὐτῷ,) δὲ καὶ οἱ
 even (the) public-guest-friend to-him,) and also — (others) (suspected
 ὥς ληψόμενον δῶρα διὰ ταύτην τὴν ζυμβου-
 him) as about-to-receive (a) reward on-account-of this — coun-
 λην· δὲ οἱ καὶ ὑπώπτευν λέγειν ἔνεκα
 sel; and — (others) again suspected (that) he-said (so) by-reason
 τούτου, ὥς μὴ ἰόντες πεζῇ ἐργάζονται τι κακὸν
 of-things, that lest going on-foot they-might-do some evil

τὴν χώραν Σινωπέων. Δ' οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες
to-the country of (the) Sinopeans. But — the Greeks

ἔψησαντο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν κατὰ θάλατταν.
voted to-make the journey by sea.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· ὦ Σινωπεῖς,
After these (things) Xenophon said: O Sinopeans,

οἱ ἄνδρες μὲν ἤρηνται πορείαν, ἣν ὑμεῖς ζυμβου-
the men indeed have-chosen (the) route, which you ad-

λεύετε· δὲ ἔχει οὕτω·
vise; | and it-has (itself) thus; [and we will sail on these con-

εἰ μὲν μέλλει ἔσσεσθαι πλοῖα ἱκανὰ
ditions;] if indeed it-is-intended (that) there-will-be ships sufficient

ἰριδμῶ, ὥς μὴ ἓνα καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε,
in-number, so-as (that) not one be-left here,

ἡμεῖς ἂν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ
we may sail; if indeed we-intend (that) — (some)

μὲν καταλείψεσθαι, δὲ οἱ πλεύσεσθαι, ἂν
indeed are-to-be-left, but — (others) to-sail, 'we may

οὐκ ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. Γὰρ γινώσκομεν,
not 'embark on (board) the ships. For we-know,

ὅτι, ὅπου μὲν ἂν κρατῶμεν ἂν δυναίμεθα
that, where indeed 'we may 'be-the-strongest 'we may 'be-able

καὶ σῶζεσθαι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
both to-save (ourselves), and to-have — provisions;

δὲ εἴ που ληφθησόμεθα ἥττους
but if any-where | we-shall-be-taken worse [shall be found weaker]

τῶν πολεμίων, εὐδηλον δὴ, ὅτι
(than) — (our) enemies, (it is) very-evident indeed, that

ἔσόμεθα ἐν χώρα ἀνδραπόδων. Οἱ πρέσβεις
we-will-be in (the) place of-slaves. The ambassadors

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκέλευον πέμπειν
hearing these (things) requested (them) to-send

πρέσβεις. Καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον
ambassadors (to Sinope). And they-sent Callimachus (the)

Ἀρχάδα, καὶ Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Σαμό-
 Arcadian, and Ariston (the) Athenian, and Samo-
 λαν Ἀχαιοόν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ὤχοντο.
 as (the) Achæan. And — (they) indeed departed.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι,
 During indeed this (same) — time (it seemed) to-Xenophon,

ὁρῶντι μὲν πολλοὺς ὀπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
 seeing indeed (the) many heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,

δὲ καὶ ὁρῶντι πολλοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ τοξότας
 and also seeing many targeteers, and archers

καὶ σφενδονήτας, καὶ ἱππέας δὲ, καὶ μάλα ἱκανοὺς
 and slingers, and cavalry also, and very efficient

ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ,
 now through — exercise, being indeed in — Pontus,

ἐνθα τοσαύτῃ δύναμις ἂν οὐκ παρεσκευάσθη ἀπ'
 where such (a) force could not have-been-prepared from

ὀλίγων χρημάτων, ἐδόκει εἶναι καλὸν
 small things-and-means, 'it (therefore) 'seemed to-be good

αὐτῷ προσκτήσασθαι καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ
 to-him to-have-added-yet-more both territory and power to —

Ἑλλάδι, κατοικήσαντας πόλιν. Καὶ ἐδόκει
 Greece, having-provided (a) city (there). And it-seemed

αὐτῷ ἂν γενέσθαι μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ
 to-him (that it) might become great, considering

τε τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν, καὶ τοὺς περιου-
 not-only the multitude of-themselves, but-also — (those) inhabiting-

κοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις
 around the Pontus (unskilled in war). And about this

ἐθύετο, πρὶν εἰπεῖν τινι τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
 he-sacrificed, (and) before he-spoke to-any of-the soldiers,

καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην, τὸν
 having-called-in Silanus the Ambracian, — (who)

γενόμενον τὸν μάντιν Κύρου. Ὁ δὲ Σιλανός,
 was the augur of-Cyrus. — But Silanus

δεδιώξας μὴ ταῦτα γένηται, καὶ ἡ στρατιά
 having-feared lest this might-happen, and the army

καταμείνῃ που, ἐκφέρει λόγον εἰς τὸ
might-remain some-where (here), he-brings word to the
στράτευμα, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τὴν στρατιὰν
army that Xenophon desired the army.
καταμείναι, καὶ οἰκίσαι πόλιν, καὶ περι-
to-remain, and to-build (a) city, and (thereby) ac-
ποιήσασθαι ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν ἑαυτῷ. Δ' ὁ
quire (a) name and power for-himself. But —
Σιλανὸς αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
Silanus himself desired to-arrive in — Greece
ὅτι τάχιστα· γὰρ διεσεσώκει τρις-
'as quick 'as-possible; for he-had-saved (the) three-
χιλίουσ δαρεικούς, οὓς ἔλαβε παρὰ Κύρου, ὅτε
thousand darics, which he-received from Cyrus, when
θυόμενος ἡγήθευσε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας
sacrificing he-'told (the) 'truth (respecting) the ten days
Κύρῳ. Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν,
to-Cyrus. But (as respects) the soldiers, when they-heard
ἐδόκει μὲν τοῖς εἶναι βέλτιστον καταμείναι,
(this), it-seemed indeed to — (some) to-be the-best to-remain,
δὲ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὐ. Δὲ Τιμασίῳ
but — (others) the-most (numerous) not (to remain). But Timasius
ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιωτίας λέγουσι
the Dardanean and Thorax the Boeotian told
τινὰς ἐμπόρους παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν
some merchants being-present-there of-the Heracleans
καὶ Σινωπέων, ὅτι, εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι
and 'of (the) 'Sinopeans, that, if they-'do not procure
μισθὸν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
pay for-the army, so-as to-have — provisions (while,
ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι τοσαύτη δύναμις κιν-
sailing-out (on their voyage), | that so-large (a) force will-be
δυνεύσει μέναι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
in-danger to-remain in — Pontus [there will be danger of ac-
Γὰρ Ξενοφῶν βσι-
large a force remaining in Pontus]. For (said they) Xenophon is

λεύεται, καὶ παρακαλεῖ ἡμᾶς, ἐπειδὴν τὰ πλοῖα
 planning (thus), and requests us, when the vessels
 ἔλθῃ, εἰπεῖν τότε ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ· Ἄνδρες,
 may-come, to-say then suddenly to-the army; Men,

νῦν μὲν ὁρῶμεν ὑμᾶς ὄντας ἀπόρους καὶ
 'we now indeed 'perceive you being at-a-loss (how) even
 ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ὥς
 in the voyage-homeward to-have — provisions, and how

ἀπελθόντας οἴκαδε ὀνῆσαι τι τοῦς οἶκοι·
 having-departed home to-have-benefitted any (of) — (those) at-home;

εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε ἐκλεξάμενοι τῆς οἰκουμένης
 if indeed you-desire (it), having-selected — (an) inhabited

χώρας, κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν Πόντον ὅπῃ ἂν
 place, 'in (a) 'circle round the Pontus whenever 'you may

βούλεσθε, κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐδέλοντα,
 'wish, to-take-possession-of (it), and — (those) indeed wishing

ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, δὲ τὸν ἐδέλοντα μένειν
 (it), to-depart home, but — (those) wishing (it) to-remain

αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δὲ πάρεσιν ὑμῖν, ὥστε, ὅπῃ
 here, ships indeed are-ready (here) for-you, so-that, when 'you

ἂν βούλησθε, ἂν ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπέσοιτε.
 may 'wish, 'you may suddenly 'fall-on (such place).

Οἱ ἔμποροι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπήγγελλον
 The merchants hearing these (things), announced

ταῖς πόλεσι· δὲ Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς
 (them) to-the cities; and Timasion the Dardanean

ξυνέπεμψε αὐτοῖς Εὐρύμαχόν τε τὸν Δαρδανέα
 sent-with him Eurymachus also — (a) Dardanean

καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον, ἐροῦντας τὰ αὐτὰ
 and Thorax the Boeotian, saying the self

ταῦτο Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται,
 same (things). (The) Sinopeans and also (the) Heracleans,

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμα-
 having-heard these (things), sent to — Timas-

σίῳ καὶ κελεύουσι, λαβόντα χρήματα,
 sion and requested (him), having-received money,

προστατεῦσαι, ὅπως ἡ στρατιά
to-place-himself-at-the-head (of bringing it about), that the army
ἐκπλεύσῃ. Ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος ἀκούσας,
would-sail-out (of the Euxine). — (He) indeed willingly listening

ἐν ξυλλόγῳ, ὄντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
(to this), | (and) in (an) assembly, being the soldiers,

λέγει τὰδε· Δεῖ
[and in an assembly of the soldiers,] spoke thus: It-becomes (us)

οὐ, ὦ ἄνδρες, προσέχειν τῇ μονῇ, οὐδὲ
not, O men, to-bend (our minds) on — remaining, nor

ποιεῖσθαι οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος τῆς
to-make (no) (any) (country) of more-value (than) —

Ἑλλάδος. Ἀκούω δὲ τινὰς θύεσθαι ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
Greece. I-hear indeed (that) some are-sacrificing about this

οὐδὲ λέγοντας ὑμῖν. Δὲ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν.
(and) not-even mentioning (it) to-you. And I-promise you,

ἂν ἐκπλέητε, παρέξειν ἑκάστῳ κυζικηνὸν
if you-set-sail, to-furnish-hereafter to-each-of-you (a) cyzicene

μισθοφορὰν τοῦ μηνός, ἀπὸ
(about five dollars) as-pay — (per) month, (counting) from

νουμηνίας· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν
(the) beginning-of-the-month; and I-will-lead you to —

Τρωάδα, ἐνθεν καὶ εἰμι φυγάς, καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ
Troas, whence even I-am (an) exile, and — my

πόλις ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν· γὰρ ἐκόντες
city will-aid you; for 'they (my countrymen) 'will willingly

δέξονται με. Δὲ ἐγὼ αὐτὸς ἡγήσομαι,
'receive me. And I myself will-conduct (you to places),

ἐνθεν λήψεσθε πολλὰ χρήματα. Εἰμι δὲ ἔμ-
where you-will-get much riches. I-am indeed well-

πειρος τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας, καὶ τῆς
acquainted-with — Æolia and — Phrygia, and —

Τρωάδος, καὶ πάσης τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Φαρ-
Troas, and all the government [satrapy] (of) — Phar-

ναβάζοι, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐκεῖθεν,
nabazus, | the indeed through the to-be hence, [partly as be-

δὲ τὰ διὰ τὸ ξυνεστρα-
 ing a native of that place], and — (partly) through | the to-make-cam-
 τεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ
 paigns-with [having served with] in that (place) with Clearchus
 τε καὶ Δερκυλλίδα.
 and also Dercyllidas.

Ἀὖτις δὲ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος, ὃς ἀεὶ ἐμάχετο
 Afterwards indeed Thorax the Bœotian, who always contended
 Ξενοφῶντι περὶ στρατηγίας, ἀναστὰς, ἔφη,
 with-Xenophon about (the) command-of-the-army, having-stood-up, said,
 εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, Χερρόνησον
 if they-should-depart from the Pontus, (that the) Chersonese
 ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς, χώραν καλὴν καὶ
 will-be (the place) for-them, (for that the) country (is) fine and
 εὐδαίμονα, ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ
 rich, so-that (it will be) to — (him) wishing-it (in his power)
 ἐνοικεῖν, δὲ τῷ μὴ βουλομένῳ
 to-dwell-therein, but to — (him) not wishing-it (it will be in his
 ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. Δὲ εἶναι γελοῖον, οὔσης
 power) to-depart home. And (that) it-was ridiculous, there-being
 ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου χώρας,
 in — Greece much and excellent land,
 μαστεύειν ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων. Δ' ἔστε, ἔφη,
 to-seek-for-it in the (country) of-barbarians. But until, said-he
 ἂν γένησθε ἐκεῖ, καὶ γὰρ, καδάπερ Τιμασίῳν,
 'you may 'get there, both-I, as-well-as Timasion
 ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφορίαν. Δὲ ἔλεγε
 promise you — pay. And he-said
 ταῦτα, εἰδὼς Τιμασίῳνι ἃ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ
 this, having-heard from-Timasion what the Heracleans and
 οἱ Σινοπεῖς ὑπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ
 the Sinopeans had-promised (it) provided (that) they-set-sail. But —
 Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. Δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ
 Xenophon during this was-silent. But Philesius and
 Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀναστὰς ἔλεγον, ὥς εἴη δεινὸν
 Lyeo- the Achæans having-stood-up sa'd, that it-was insufferable

μὲν Ξενοφῶντα ἰδίᾳ τὴν πείθειν
 indeed that Xenophon in-private 'should not-only 'persuade (people)

καταμένειν, καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς, μὴ
to-remain, but-also to-sacrifice about — (their) stay, not

κοινοῦμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, δὲ εἰς τὸ κοινόν
having-communicated to-the army, and in the public

ἀγορεύειν μεδὲν περὶ τούτων. Ὡς τε ὁ Ξενο-
to-declare nothing about these (things). So-that — Xeno.

φων ἤναγκάσθη ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε·
phon was-obliged to-stand-up and to-speak thus:

Ἐγώ, ὁ ἄνδρες, θύομαι, ὡς μὲν ὁρᾶτε, ὅποσα
I, O men, sacrifice, as indeed you-see, as-well-as

δύναμαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἑμαυτοῦ, ὅπως
I-can, both for you and for myself, | in-order-that

τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πράττων
I-happen both speaking and thinking and doing [in order]

ταῦτα ὅποια μέλ-
that I may speak, and think and do] those (things) such-as it-may-be

λει ἔσεσθαι κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα τε ὑμῖν καὶ
about to-be the-most-honourable and best not-only for-you but-also

ἐμοί. Καὶ νῦν ἐδυνόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου,
for-me. And now I-was-sacrificing about this same (thing).

εἰ εἴη ἄμεινον ἄρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς
(namely) whether it-would-be better to-begin to-speak to

ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων, ἢ παντάπασιν
you and to-act respecting these (things), or altogether

μηδὲ ἅπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ
not to-touch the affair. And Silanus the

μάντις ἀπεκρίνατο μοὶ τὸ μέγιστον
 augur determined for-me — (what was of the) greater

μεν, τὰ ἱερὰ εἶναι καλὰ· (γὰρ
(importance) indeed, (that) the victims were favourable; (for

ἤδει καὶ ἐμὲ ὄντα οὐκ ἄπειρον
he-knew also (that) I was not unskilled (in such things)

διὰ τὸ αἰεὶ παρῆναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς·) δὲ
 by-reason of — (my) always being-present at-the sacrifices;) and

ἔλεξε ὅτι φαίνοιτο ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς τις δόλος
said that there-appeared in the victims (as if) some fraud

καὶ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐμοί, ὥς ἄρα γιγνώσκων,
and plotting (was agitating) against-me, as in-truth knowing,

ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς.
that he was-plotting to-calumniate me to you.

Γαρ ἐξήνεγκε τὸν λόγον, ὥς ἐγὼ ἤδη διανοοίμεν
For he-brought-out the report, that I already intended

πράττειν ταῦτα, οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς.
to-do these (things), not having-persuaded you (to give

Δὲ ἐγὼ, εἰ μὲν ἑώρων ὑμᾶς ἀποροῦντας,
your consent). And I, if indeed I-saw you destitute

τουτ' ἂν ἐσχόπουν ἀφ' οὗ
(and in perplexity), for-that 'I would 'have-looked-out from which 'it

ἂν γένοιτο, ὥστε ὑμᾶς λαβόντας πόλιν, τὸν
might 'happen, that you having-taken (a) city, — (those)

μὲν βουλόμενον, ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν
indeed desiring (it), (might) set-sail now, — (those)

δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτή-
indeed not desiring (it), (might do so) when they-might-have-

σαιτο ἱκανὰ, ὥστε ὠφελῆσαι τι τοὺς οἰκείους
acquired sufficient, so-as to-assist somewhat the families

ἑαυτοῦ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ὁρῶ Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινω-
of-themselves. But when I-see (the) Heracleans and (the) Sino-

πεῖς πέμποντας τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ὑμῖν, ὥστε
peans sending — vessels even to-you, so-as (that)

ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ ἄνδρας ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν μισθὸν
you-may-set-sail, and men promising you pay

ἀπὸ νομηνίας, δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι καλὸν
from (the) beginning-of-the-month, it-seems to-me to-be (an) excellent

σωζομένους ἔνθα βουλόμεθα λαμβάνειν
(thing that) we-being-saved to-where we-wish (to be) to-receive

μισθὸν τῆς πορείας· καὶ τε αὐτὸς παύ-
pay 'for (making) 'the journey; and not-only myself do-

ρμαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὅποσοι προς-
desist from-this — (same) intention, but-also such-as have

ἦσαν πρὸς ἐμὲ, λέγοντες, ὥς χρὴ πράττειν
come-forward to me, saying, that it-is-necessary to-do

ταῦτα, φημι χρῆναι ἀνα-
these (things), I-say (to them also) (that) it-is-necessary to-

παύσασθαι. Γὰρ οὕτω γινώσκω· ὄντες
desist (from them). For thus I-know: being

πολλοὶ ὁμοῦ, ὥςπερ νυνί, ἂν δοκεῖτε μοι καὶ
many together, as now, 'you may seem to-me even

εἶναι ἔντιμοι, καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· (γὰρ ἐστὶν
to-be honoured, and to-have — provisions; | (for it-is

ἐν τῷ κρατεῖν καὶ τὸ
in the to-have-power [for it belongs to those having power] even —

λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων·) δ' ἂν διασπασ-
to-take the (things) of-the weaker;) but — being-torn-

θέντες, καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως γενομένης
into-pieces, and — (your) force having-become (divided into)

κατὰ μικρά, ἂν οὔτε δύνασθε λαμβάνειν
— small (parties), 'you might neither 'be-able to-procure

τροφὴν, οὐτ' ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε χαίροντες. Δοκεῖ
subsistence, nor might you-depart rejoicing. It-seems

οὖν μοι ὅπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπο-
therefore to-me (good) which (is good) for-you, (that) 'we (ought) 'to-

ρεῦεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· καὶ ἐάν τις μείνῃ
depart for — Greece; and if any-one remains

ἢ ληφθῇ ἀπολιπὼν τινα, πρὶν τὸ πᾶν
or be-caught 'leaving any-one 'behind, before (that) the whole

στράτευμα εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλει αὐτὸν κρίνεσθαι
army is in safety (that) he is-to-be-judged

ὥς ἀδικοῦντα. Καὶ ὅτῳ, ἔφη ταῦτα δοκεῖ
as committing-a-crime. And to-whom, said-he these (things) seem

ἀράτῳ τὴν χεῖρα ἅπαντες
(good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All

ἀνέτειναν.

held-up (their hands).

Ὁ Σιλανὸς δὲ ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν,
— Silanus indeed cried-out, and attempted to-speak

ὥς εἶη δίκαιον τὸν βουλόμενοι
(in order to show), that it-might-be lawful for — (those) desiring

ἀπιέναι. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ οὐκ ἠνείχοντο.
(it) to-depart. The soldiers however 'did not 'tolerate

ἀλλ' ἠπείλουν αὐτῷ, ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδι
(it) but threatened him, that if they-caught (him) running-

δράσκοντα, ἐπιδήσοιεν τὴν δίκην.
away, | they-would-'put the law 'on (him), [they would

ἔντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἔγνωσαν,
punish him]. Thereupon, when the Heracleans knew,

ὅτι δεδογμένον εἶη ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ Ξενοφῶν
that it-had-been-determined to-set-sail, and (that) Xenophon

αὐτὸς ἐπεψηφικῶς εἶη, πέμπουσι μὲν τὰ πλοῖα,
himself had-put-it-to-vote, sent indeed the ships,

δὲ τὰ χρήματα ἃ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίῳ
but (as respects) the money which they-promised to-Timasion

καὶ Θώρακι τῆς μισθοφορίας ἐψευσμέ-
and Thorax (as) the pay (of the soldiers) they-had-

νοι ἦσαν. Ἐνταῦθα δὲ οἱ ὑπεσχημένοι
falsified (their word). Then indeed — (those) having-promised

τῆς μισθοφορίαν ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ
the pay were-astounded and

ἔδεδοίκεσαν τὴν στρατιάν. Οὗτοι οὖν παραλα-
feared the army. These therefore taking-with

βόντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, οἷς ἀνεκοι-
(them) also the other generals, to-whom they-com-

νοῦντο, ἃ πρόσθεν ἐπραττον, (δὲ
municated, what 'they before (this) 'attempted-to-bring-about, and

ἦσαν πάντες, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου,
they-were all (of them), except Neon the Asinian,

ὃς ὑπεστρατήγει Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ Χειρίσοφος οὐτι
who commanded-under Cheirisophus, but Cheirisophus 'was not-ye

παρῆν,) ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν
'present,) they-went to Xenophon, and said

ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοῖη
that it-repented them (for what had been done), and it-might-seem

εἶναι κράτιστον πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ ἔστι
to-be the-best to-sail to (the) Phasis, when there-were

πλοῖα, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν χώραν Φασιανῶν
vessels, and to-have-taken the country 'of (the) 'Phasians

(δὲ υἱοῦς Αἰήτου ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν).
'for (a) grandson of-Æetes happened to-be-reigning-over them).

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἂν εἴποι οὐδὲν
But Xenophon replied, that 'he would 'say nothing

τούτων εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· δὲ ὑμεῖς ξυλλέξαντες,
of-this to the army; but you assembling

ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.
'(them), said-he, if you-wish, tell (them about the affair)

Ἐνταῦθα Τιμασίῳ ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἀποδείκνυται
Then Timasion the Dardanian offered (the)

γνώμην, οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν, ἀλλὰ
opinion, (that) they-'ought not 'to-call-a-council (of all), but

πρῶτον τοὺς λοχαγοὺς πειρᾶσθαι πείδειν
first the captains (ought) to-endeavour to-persuade

ἕκαστον αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἀπελδόντες
| each (of the men) of-himself [his own men]. And departing

ἐποίουν ταῦτα.
they-did these (things).

CHAPTER VII.

Οἱ στρατιῶται οὖν ἀνεπύδοντο ταῦτα
THE soldiers therefore heard (that) these (things)

πραττόμενα. Καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει, ὥς Ξενοφῶν
were-doing. And — Neon tells (them), that Xenophon,

ἀναπεπεικὼς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς, διανοεῖται,
having-persuaded the other generals, was-deliberating,

ἐξαπατήσας, ἄγειν πάλιν τοὺς στρατιώτας
deceiving (them), to-lead back-again the soldiers

εἰς Φᾶσιν. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
to (the) Phasis. But the soldiers hearing (this,

χαλεπῶς ἔφερον· καὶ ἐγίγνοντο ξύλλογοι,
'were greatly 'excited. and there-were assemblages,

καὶ κύκλοι ξυνίσταντο, καὶ ἦσαν μάλα φοβεροί,
and circles were-formed, and they-were much to-be-feared,

μὴ ποιήσειαν, οἷα καὶ ἐποίησαν τοὺς κήρυκας
est they-might-do, as 'they even 'had-done to-the heralds

Κόλχων καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· γὰρ
'of (the) 'Colchians and the superintendents-of-the-markets; for

ὅσοι μὴ κατέφυγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, κατε-
as-many-as 'did not 'take-refuge in the sea, were-

λείσθησαν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ᾗσθάνετο,
destroyed. When however Xenophon perceived (these

ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὥς τάχιστα ξυνα-
things), it-seemed (best) to-him 'as speedily 'as-possible to-call-

γαγεῖν ἀγοράν αὐτῶν, καὶ μὴ ἑᾷσι
together (an) assembly of-them (the soldiers), and not to-have-permitted

ξυλλεγεῖν αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν
(them) to-assemble of-their-own-accord; and he-ordered the

κήρυκα ξυλλέγειν ἀγοράν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ
nerald to-collect-together (a) meeting. But — (they) when

ἤκουσαν τοῦ κήρυκος, ξυνέδραμον καὶ
they-heard (the proclamation) of-the herald, ran-together even

μάλα ἐτοίμως. Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν οὐ μὲν
very speedily. Then Xenophon 'did not indeed

κατηγορεῖ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν,
'accuse the generals, that they-came to him,

δὲ λέγει ὧδε·
but speaks thus:

Ἄκούω, ὦ ἄνδρες, τινὰ διαβάλλειν ἐμὲ ὥς
I-hear, O men, (that) some-one accuses me that

ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς
I namely deceiving you intend to-lead (you) to (the)

Φᾶσιν. Ἀκούσατε μου οὖν πρὸς θεῶν·
Phasis. Hear me therefore for (the sake) of-the-gods.

καὶ εἰάν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνομαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρῆ
and if indeed I may-appear to-do-wrong, it-'is not 'proper

με ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδένδε, πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην·
(that) I should-depart hence, | before 'I may 'give justice;

δ' οἱ διαβάλλοντες ἐμὲ
[before I suffer punishment;] but (if) — (those) calumniating me

ἂν φαίνονται ὑμῖν ἀδικεῖν, χρῆσθε αὐτοῖς οὕτως
may appear to-you to-do-wrong, treat them so

ὥςπερ ἄξιον. Ὑμεῖς δὲ δήπου ἴστε, ἔφη, ὅθεν
as is-fitting. You indeed certainly know, said-he, whence

ἥλιος ἀνίσχει, καὶ ὅπου δύεται, καὶ ὅτι,
(the) sun rises, and where it-sets, and to-whom,

εἰάν μὲν μέλλῃ ἰέναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, δεῖ
if indeed he-intends to-go to — Greece, (to him) it-is-necessary

πορεύεσθαι πρὸς ἑσπέραν· ἣν δέ τις βούληται
to-proceed to (the) west; if indeed any-one might-wish

εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοῦμπαλιν πρὸς
(to go) to the barbarians, (on) the-contrary (he must go) to (the)

ἑω. Ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις ἂν δύναιτο ἐξαπα-
east. Is-there therefore any-one (that) might be-able so-to-

τῆσαι ὑμᾶς τοῦτο, ὥς ἥλιος,
deceive you in-this, as (to make you believe that the) sun,

ἐνδεν μὲν ἀνέσχει, δὲ δύεται ἐνταῦθα, δὲ
there-where indeed it-was, 'it also 'sets there, and

ἐνθα δύεται, δ' ἀνίσχει ἐντεῦθεν; Ἀλλὰ μὲν
where it-sets, 'it also 'rises there? But indeed

καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι βορέας μὲν
even this at-least know, that (the) north-wind 'will indeed

φέρει ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
carry (us) out-of the Pontus (Euxinus) towards — Greece,

δὲ νότος εἴσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγετε,
su. (the) south-wind inwards towards (the) Phasis, and you-say,

ἵταν βορρᾶς πνέῃ, ὥς εἰσιν καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰς
when (the) north-wind may-blow, that it-is fair sailing for

τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτο οὖν ὅπως ἔστιν, τις
— Greece. In-this therefore how is-it (possible), any-one

ἂν ἐξαπατήσαι ὑμᾶς, ὥστε ἐμβαίνειν, ὁπότεν
could deceive you, so-as to-embark, when (the,

νότος πνέη; Ἀλλὰ γάρ ἐμβιβῶ
south-wind may-blow? But perhaps (you will say that) I-shall-'put

ὁπότεν ἢ γαλήνη. Ἐγὼ
(you) 'on-board when there-may-be (a) calm. Will I

οὐκοῦν μὲν πλεύσομαι ἐν ἐνὶ πλοίῳ, δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐν
not-therefore indeed 'sail in one ship, but you in

ἑκατόν τοῦλάχιστον; Πῶς οὖν ἂν ἐγὼ ἢ
(a) hundred (at) the-least? How therefore could I either

βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς πλεῖν ξὺν ἐμοί, μὴ βουλο-
force you to-sail with me, (you) not being.

μένους, ἢ ἐξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι. Δὲ ποιῶ
willing, or deceiving lead (you away). But | I-make

ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατηθέντας καὶ κατα-
[I will suppose] (that) you having-been-deceived and having-

γονητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἦκειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ
been-tricked by me to-come to (the) Phasis; and

δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν·
indeed (that) we-descend (from the vessels) to the land

δήπου γνώσεσθε, ὅτι ἐστέ οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι.
you-'will certainly 'know, that you-are not in — Greece.

Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁ ἐξηπατηκῶς ἔσομαι εἷς, δὲ
And I indeed who have-been-deceiving (you) will-be (but) one, but

ἱμεῖς οἱ ἐξηπατημένοι ἔχοντες ἐγγὺς μυρίων
you — (who) have-been-deceived having near ten-thousand

ὄπλα. Πῶς οὖν ἂν εἷς ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον
(men under) arms. | How therefore could one man more

δοίη δίκην,
given justice, [how could one man more effectually have brought punish-

ἢ βουλευόμενος οὕτω τε περὶ
ment on himself,] than (for) planning thus not-only about

ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ὑμῶν; Ἀλλ' οὗτοι εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι
himself but-also (about) you? But these are the words

ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἡλιθίων καὶ μοι φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγὼ
of-men even foolish 'and envying 'me have...

τιμῶμαι ὑφ' ὑμῶν. Καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἂν
am-honoured by you. Although not justly at-least —

φθονοῖεν μοι· γὰρ ἐγὼ ἢ κωλύω τίνα λέγειν.
do-they-annoy me; for 'do I either 'prevent any-one to-speak,

εἰ τις δύναται τι ἀγαθὸν ἐν ὑμῖν,
if any-one is-able (to say) any-thing good (or advantageous) for you,

ἢ μάχεσθαι, εἰ τις ἐθέλει, τε ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ
or to-fight, if any-one wishes, not-only for you but-also

ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐγρηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας
(for) himself, or to-watch for — your

ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελόμενον; Γὰρ τί, ὑμῶν
safety (if) caring (to do so)? For (in) what, you

αἵρουμένων ἄρχοντας, εἰμι ἐγὼ ἐμποδὼν τινι;
choosing officers, am I (a) hindrance to-any-one?

παρίημι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον φαινέσθω
I-yield (to him), 'let (him) 'command; alone 'let (him) 'appear

ποιῶν τι ἀγαθὸν ὑμᾶς. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
doing something good (and advantageous) for-you. But however

μὲν τὰ εἰρημένα περὶ τούτων ἀρκεῖ ἐμοί·
indeed the (things) said about this are-sufficient for-me;

εἰ δὲ τις ὑμῶν οἶεται ἢ αὐτὸς ἂν ἐξαπατη-
if indeed any-one of-you thinks that he-himself could have-been-

δῆναι ταῦτα, ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπα-
deceived (as respects) these (things), or (that) another (could) have

τῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδα-
deceived (him) (as respects) these (things), speaking 'let (him) 'in-

σκέτω. Δὲ ὅταν ἔχητε ἅλεις τούτων,
form (us). But when you-may-have enough of-these (things),

μὴ ἀπέλδητε, πρὶν ἀκούσητε οἷον πρᾶγμα
'do not 'depart, before you-may-have-heard what thing

ὁρῶ ἀρχόμενον ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ· ὃ εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ
I-see reigning in the army; which if it-go-on and

ἔσται, οἷον ὑποδείκνυσιν, ὧρα ἡμῖν
will-be, as it-'shows (itself) 'gradually, (it is) time for-us

βουλευέσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, μὴ ἀποφαινόμεθα
to-deliberate about us ourselves, lest we-appea-

τε κάκιστοι καὶ αἰσχιστοι ἄνδρες, καὶ πρὸς
not-only the-worst but-also the-most-infamous men, both before

θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ
(the) gods and before men (and) both (before) friends and

πολεμίων.
foes.

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἑδαύ-
The soldiers indeed hearing these (things) won-

μασάν τε ὅ τι εἶη, καὶ ἐκέλευον λέγειν
dered not-only what it-might-be, but-also requested (him) to-say

Ἐκ τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· Ἐπίστασθέ
(what it was). On this he-begins again: You-know

που, ὅτι ἦν χωρία ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι
perhaps, that there-are places in the mountains (belonging to the)

βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασουντίοις, ὅθεν τινὲς
barbarians, friendly to-the Cerasuntians, whence some

κατιόντες ἐπῶλουν ἡμῖν καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ ἄλλα
coming-down sold us both (cattle for) victims and other

ὧν εἶχον, δέ καὶ τινες ὑμῶν δοκοῦσι μοι
(things) which they-had, and also some of-you seem to-me

ἐλθόντες ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων,
having-gone to-the-nearest places of-these (people), (and)

ἀγοράσαντές τι, ἀπελθεῖν πάλιν. Κλεάρετος
having-purchased something, to-have-gone-away again. Clearetus

ὁ λοχαγός, καταμαδὼν τοῦτο, ὅτι εἶη
the captain, having-learned this, that (this place) was

καὶ μικρὸν καὶ ἀφύλακτον, διὰ τὸ φίλιον
both small and unguarded, on-account-of the friendship

νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
(that they) supposed to-be (between us), went against them

τῆς νυκτὸς ὡς πορδήσων, εἰπὼν οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν.
at — night as about-plundering, telling none of-us.

Διενενόητο δέ, εἰ λάβοι τὸ χωρίον τόδε,
He-had-proposed however, if he-should-take — (this) place here,

μηκέτι μὲν ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα, δὲ εἰςβάς
never-more indeed to-go to the army, but embarking

ἰς πλοῖον, ἐν ᾧ οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ ἐτύγ-
 a (board a) vessel, in which the companions of-himself hap-
 χανον παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνδέμενος
 pened-to-be sailing-along (the coast), and putting-on (board)
 εἰ τι λάβοι ἀποπλέων οἷχεσθαι
 |if any [whatever] he-might-take, (and then) sailing-away to-depart
 ἐξω τοῦ Πόντου. Καὶ ξυνωμολόγησαν ταῦτα
 out-of the Pontus. And they-concerted these (things)
 αὐτῷ οἱ σύσκηνοι ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου, ὥς
 with-him, (namely) — (those his) companions from the vessel, as
 ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομαι. Οὖν παρακαλέσας, ὅπόσους
 I now perceive. Therefore having-called-together, as-many-as
 ἔπειθεν, ἤγεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. Δ' ἡμέρα
 he-had-persuaded, he-led (them) against the place. But day
 γενομένη φθάνει αὐτὸν πορευόμενον,
 have-become overtakes him proceeding (on his march),
 καὶ οἱ ἄνδρωποι ξυστάντες βάλλοντες
 and the men (of the place) having-come-together hurling
 καὶ παίοντες ἀπο ἰσχυρῶν τόπων, ἀποκτείνουσι
 and striking from (the) strong places, they-kill
 τε τὸν Κλεάρετον καὶ συχνοὺς τῶν ἄλλων.
 not-only — Clearetus but-also many of-the other (men);
 δ' οἱ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποχωροῦσι εἰς Κερασοῦντα.
 but — some of-them also go-away to Cerasus.
 Ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἣ ἡμεῖς
 These (things) indeed were on the day on-which we
 ἐξωρμῶμεν δεῦρο πεζῇ. τινὲς δὲ τῶν
 set-out hither on-foot; (while) some indeed of — (those who
 πλεόντων ἦσαν ἔτι ἐν Κερασοῦντι, οὕτω
 were) sailing were still in Cerasus, 'having not-yet
 ἀνηγμένοι. Μετὰ τοῦτο, ὥς οἱ Κερασούντιοι
 'brought-up (the anchors). After this, as the Cerasuntians
 λέγουσιν, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου
 say, there-arrived of-the (people) from the place
 τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων, χρήζοντες ἐλθεῖν
 three men of-the older-class, desiring to &c.

πρὸς τὸ κοινόν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐ
 to the public-council (of officers). But when they-'did not
 κατέλαβον ἡμᾶς, ἔλεγον πρὸς τοὺς Κερασουντίους,
 'find us, they-told to the Cerasuntians,
 ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί δόξειεν ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ'
 that they-wondered why it-seemed to-us (proper) to-go against
 αὐτούς. Ἔφασαν ἐπεὶ μέντοι
 them. 'They (the Cerasuntians) 'said (that) when however
 σφεῖς λέγειν, ὅτι τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ γένοιτο ἀπὸ
 they told (them), that the thing 'did not 'happen from
 κοινού, αὐτοὺς τε ἡδεσθαι
 common (or public authority), (that) they 'were not-only 'delighted
 καὶ μέλλειν πλεῖν ἐνθάδε, ὥς λέξαι τὰ
 but-also (that they) were-about 'o-sail hither, so-as to-relate the
 γενόμενα ἡμῖν, καὶ κελεύειν τοὺς
 (things) having-happened to-us, and (that) they-requested — (those)
 δεομένους τούτου λαβόντας τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν
 desiring this (that) taking the dead to-bury
 αὐτούς. Δὲ τινὲς Ἑλλήνων, τῶν
 them. But some (of the) Greeks, — (those namely)
 ἀποφυγόντων, ἔτυχον ἔτι ὄντες ἐν Κερασούντι.
 having-fled-away, happened still (being) (to be) in Cerasus;
 δ' αἰσδόμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους, ὅποι ἴοιεν,
 and having-perceived the barbarians, (and) whither they-were-going,
 αὐτοὶ τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις, καὶ
 they not-only dared to-throw — stones, but-also
 παρεκελεύοντο τοῖς ἄλλοις. Καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
 encouraged — others (to do so). And the men
 ἀποθνήσκουσι, ὄντες οἱ τρεῖς πρέσβεις, καταλευσ-
 die, being the three ambassadors, stoned-to-
 δέντες. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, οἱ Κερασούντιοι
 death. When indeed this happened, the Cerasuntians
 ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς, καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ
 come to us, and relate the affair; and
 ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἡχδόμεδά
 we the generals hearing (it) were-greatly-excited-against

τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις, καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα ξὺν
 not-only the (things) having-happened, but-also we-consulted with
 τοῖς Κερασούντιοις, ὅπως οἱ νεκροὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 the Cerasuntians, how the dead of-the Greeks
 ἂν ταφείησαν. Δὲ συγκαθήμενοι ἔξωθεν τῶν
 might be-buried. And sitting-together outside of-the
 ὀπλων, ἐξαίφνης ἀκούομεν πολλοῦ θορύβου,
 place-of-arms, suddenly we-hear much noise-and-outcry,
 Παῖε, παῖε, βάλλε, βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὀρώμεν
 Strike, strike, throw, throw, and immediately indeed saw
 πολλοὺς προςδέοντας ἔχοντας λίδους ἐν ταῖς
 many (men) running-together having stones in —
 χερσί, δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους. Καὶ μὲν
 (their) hands, and also 'picking (them) 'up. And indeed
 οἱ Κερασούντιοι ὥς ἂν καὶ ἑωρακότες τὸ
 the Cerasuntians as (they) may even have-perceived the
 πρᾶγμα παρ' ἑαυτοῖς, δέισαντες ἀπο-
 affair (*hat happened) among themselves, fearing re-
 χωροῦσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. Ἦσαν δὲ, νῆ Δία,
 treat to — (their) vessels. There-was indeed, by Jupiter,
 καὶ οἱ ἡμῶν ἔδεισαν. Ἐγώ γε μὴν ἦλθον
 even — (some) of-us (who) feared. I-at-least indeed went
 πρὸς αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἠρώτων, ὅ τι τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐστὶ.
 to them, and inquired, what the affair is.
 Δὲ ἦσαν τῶν μὲν οἱ ἤδεσαν οὐδέν, δὲ
 And there-were (some) of — (them) indeed who knew nothing, and
 ὁμως εἶχον λίδους ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 yet had stones in — (their) hands. When indeed
 ἐπέτυχον τινὶ εἰδότει, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ ἀγορα-
 I-found s(me-one knowing (it), he-tells me that the superintendents-
 νόμοι ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα δεινότατα. Ἐν
 of-the-market treat the army most-shamefully. At
 τούτῳ τις ὄρα τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζή-
 this (time) some-one saw the superintendent-of-markets Ze-
 λάρχον ἀποχωροῦντα πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ
 larchus retreating to the sea, and

ἀνέκραγε· δὲ οἱ ὥς ἤκουσαν Ἱενται ἐπ' αὐτὸν οἱ
called-out; and — (those) that heard (it) rushed towards him

ὥςπερ ἢ ἀγρίου σὺς ἢ ἐλάφου φανέναι οὐς.
as-if either (a) wild boar or (a) stag were-appearing

Δ' οἱ Κερασούντιοι αὖ, ὥς εἶδον ὀρμῶντας κατὰ
But the Cerasuntians also, as they-saw (them) hurrying towards

αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἴεσθαι ἐπὶ
them, evidently thinking (that they were) about-to-rush against

ἑαυτοὺς, φεύγουσι δρόμῳ, καὶ ἐμπίπτουσιν
themselves, flee in-haste, and throw (themselves)

εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. Δὲ καὶ τινες ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
into the sea. And also some of-us ourselves

ζυνοεισέπεσον, καὶ ὅστις ἐτύγχανε
'threw (themselves) 'together-in (the sea), and whoever happened

μὴ ἐπιστάμενος νεῖν ἐπνίγετο. Καὶ τί δοκεῖτε
not being-skilled to-swim was-drowned. And what do-you-think

τούτους; Μὲν οὐδέν ἡδίκου,
of-these (persons fleeing thus)? They-'did indeed no 'wrong,

δὲ ἔδεισαν μὴ τις λύττα ὥςπερ κυσὶν ἐμ-
but they-feared lest some madness like (that of) dogs might

πεπτῶκοι ἡμῖν. Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ἔσται τοιαῦτα,
have-fallen-on us. If then these (things) are-to-be even-thus,

θεάσασθε, οἷα ἡ κατάστασις τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔσται
see, what the constitution of-the army will-be

ἡμῖν. Ὑμεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε
to-us. You indeed the whole (army) 'will not 'be

κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι πόλεμον ᾧ ἂν
masters either to-undertake (any) war which 'you may

βούλησθε, οὔτε καταλῦσαι, δὲ ἰδίᾳ
'wish, or to-'put-an-end-to (it) 'by-making-peace, but in-private

ὁ βουλόμενος ἄξει στρατεύμα ἐφ' ὃ τι
— (he) desiring (it) will-lead (an) army against what 'they

ἂν θέλῃ. Καὶ τινες πρέσβεις ἴωσι ὑμᾶς, ἢ
may 'wish. And (if) any ambassadors might-come to-you, either

δεόμενοι εἰρήνης ἢ τινός ἄλλου, οἱ βουλόμενοι,
asking for-peace or anything else, — (those) wishing (it)

κατακτείναντες τούτους ποιήσουσιν
 having-killed these (ambassadors) will-make (that)
 ὑμᾶς μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν λόγων τῶν ἰόντων
 you 'will not 'hear the words of — (those) coming
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Ἔπειτα δέ, οὓς μὲν ὑμεῖς ἅπαντες
 to you. Then also, (those) whom indeed you all
 ἂν ἐλησδε ἄρχοντας, ἔσονται ἐν οὐδεμιά ἡ χώρα·
 may have-chosen rulers, | will-be in no place;
 ὃ ὅστις ἂν ἐληται ἑαυτὸν
 [will be wth no authority;] but whoever may take-upon himself
 στρατηγόν, καὶ ἐδέλῃ λέγειν, Βάλλε,
 (the office of) general, and wishes to-say, Strike,
 Βάλλε, οὗτος ἔσται ἱκανὸς κατακατεῖν, καὶ
 strike, this (person) will-be able to-kill, both
 ἄρχοντα καὶ ἰδιώτην, ὃν ὑμῶν ἂν ἐδέλῃ,
 commander, and private, whom of-us 'he may 'wish,
 ἄκριτον ἢν ᾧσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὥσπερ
 without-trial, if there-may-be — (those) obeying them, as
 καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. Δέ σκεψασθε οἷα καὶ
 even now has-happened. Also consider what-sort-of (things) even
 οἱ οὗτοι αὐθαίρετοι στρατηγοὶ διαπεπράχασιν
 — these (same) self-chosen generals effected
 ὑμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν Ζήλαρχος ὁ ἀγορανόμος,
 for-you. For indeed Zelarchus the superintendent-of-the-market,
 εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, ἀποπλέων οἴχεται, οὐ
 if indeed he-has-'done you 'wrong, sailing-away he-has-departed, not
 δοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δέ μὴ ἀδικεῖ,
 rendering you justice; if indeed he-'has not 'done (you) 'wrong,
 φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δέισας μὴ ἀποδάνῃ
 he-flees from the camp, fearing lest he-may-die
 ἀδίκως ἄκριτος. Οἱ δέ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς
 unjustly without-trial. — (Those) indeed having-stoned the
 πρέσβεις, διεπράξαντο ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν
 ambassadors, have-effected for-you alone indeed of-the
 Ἑλλήνων μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι εἰς Κερασοῦντα,
 Greeks (that it is) not safe to-be in Cerasus

μὴ ἂν ἀφικνεῖσθαι σὺν ἰσχύϊ· δὲ
 unless 'it may 'have-been-gone-there with (a) strong-force; but (as respects)
 τοῖς νεκροῖς, οὓς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ κατακαίνοντες
 the dead, whom previously those — having-killed
 ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, διεπράξαντο μὴδὲ εἶναι
 (them) requested (you) to-bury, they-have-rendered (it) not-even to-be
 ἀσφαλὲς ἔτι ἀνελεῖσθαι τούτους ξὺν
 safe now (for you) to-'carry these (dead) 'off (even) with
 κηρυκίῳ. Γὰρ τίς ἐδελήσει ἰέναι κῆρυξ,
 (the) herald's-staff. For who will-desire to-go (as a) herald,
 ἀπεκτονὼς κήρυκας; Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς ἐδεήθημεν
 having-killed heralds? But we requested (the)
 Κερασούντιον δάψαι αὐτοὺς. Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα
 Cerasuntians to-bury them. | If indeed therefore these
 ἔχει καλῶς,
 (things) have handsomely, [if these proceedings be right,] 'let (them)
 δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα, ὥς
 'appear (good) to-you (and be sanctioned by you), in-order-that, as
 τοιούτων ἐσομένων, τις καὶ ποιήσῃ φυλακὴν
 these-same (things) are-about-to-be, one 'may both 'set (a) guard
 ἰδία, καὶ πειρᾶται σκηνοῦν ἔχων τὰ ἐρυμνά
 in-private, and endeavour to-lodge, having the strong-places
 ὑπερδέξια. Εἰ μέντοι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα δοκεῖ
 'over (his) 'right. If however — these-same deeds seem
 ὑμῖν εἶναι θηρίων, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνδρώπων,
 to-you to-be (those) of-wild-beasts, but not (those) of-men,
 σκοπεῖτε τινα παῦλαν αὐτῶν· εἰ δὲ μὴ, πρὸς
 look-for some cessation of-them; if indeed not, —
 Διός, πῶς ἢ θύσομεν θεοῖς
 (in the name of) Jupiter, how either shall-we-sacrifice 'to (the) 'gods
 ἡδέως, ποιοῦντες ἀσεβῆ ἔργα, ἢ πῶς μαχοῦμεθα
 cheerfully, (while) performing impious deeds, or how shall-we-fight
 πολεμίους, ἣν κατακαίνωμεν ἀλλήλους; Δέ
 'our, enemies, if we-kill one-another? And
 τίς φιλία πόλις δέξεται ἡμᾶς, ἥτις ἂν ὀρᾷ
 what friendly city will-receive us, which may see

τοσαύτη ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν· δὲ τίς θαρρῶν
such lawlessness among us? and what-one confiding

ἄξει ἀγορὰν, ἣν φαινόμεθα ἐξαμαρ-
will-bring (provisions for a) market, if we-appear offend

τάνοντες περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μέγιστα; δὲ
ing as-respects — these the-greatest (of things)? and

ὁῦ οὐ οἴομεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου πάντων,
truly (there) where we-think to-find (the) praise of-all,

τίς ἂν ἐπαινέσειεν ἡμᾶς ὄντας τοιούτους; γὰρ
what-one might praise us being such? for

μὲν ἡμεῖς, ὅτι οἶδ', ἂν φαίημεν τοὺς εἶναι
indeed we, as they, would pronounce — (those) to-be

πονηροὺς ποιοῦντας τὰ τοιαῦτα.
bad (men) doing — these-same (things).

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι ἔλεγον τοὺς
On this all rising-up said (that) —

μὲν ἄρξαντας τούτων δοῦναι
(those) indeed having-been-leaders of-these (things) | (ought) to-give

δίκην, δὲ τοῦ λοιποῦ μη-
justice, [ought to be punished,] and (for) the future (it should) no-

κέτι ἐξεῖνα ἄρξαι ἀνομίας· εἰ δὲ
more be-allowed to-begin (any) lawlessness (of the kind); if indeed

τις ἄρχῃ, αὐτοὺς ἄγεσθαι
any-one should-command (these things), (that) they were-to-be-led

ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καταστῆσαι
to death, and (that) the generals should-'put

πάντας εἰς δίκας· δὲ εἶναι δίκας, καὶ εἰ
all on trial; and there were) to-be trials, even if

τις ἡδίκητο τι ἄλλο ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος
any-one had-done-wrong (in) any-thing else since Cyrus

ἀπέθανε· δὲ ἐποίησαντο τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
died; and they-made the captains (the)

δικαστὰς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶντος παραινούντος, καὶ τῷ
judges. And Xenophon recommending, and the

μάντων συμβουλευόντων, καὶ ἔδοξε καθῆρα
 augurs agreeing-thereto. 'it even 'seemed (good) to-purify

τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ καθαρμός ἐγένετο.
 the army. And (the) purification took-place.

CHAPTER VIII.

Δὲ καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὑποσχεῖν
 AND also it-seemed (good that) the generals should-undergo

δίκην τοῦ χρόνον παρεληλυδότης.
 'a) trial (for their conduct) during-the time having-gone-by.

Καὶ δίδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν ὄφλε
 And giving (it) Philesius indeed was-condemned (to pay)

καὶ Ξανδικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαν
 and-also Xanthicles (for) the (careless) guarding of-the merchant-

λικῶν τὸ μείωνα χρημάτων εἴκοσι μνᾶς.
 vessels the deficiency of-things (of their cargoes) twenty minæ.

Δὲ Σοφαίνετος δέκα μνᾶς, ὅτι αἵρεθεὶς
 And Sophænetus (was fined) ten minæ, because having-been-chosen

ἄρχων κατημέλει. Δὲ τινες κατηγόρησαν
 commander he-neglected (his duty). And some accused

Ξενοφῶντος, φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ,
 Xenophon, saying (that) they-were-struck by him,

καὶ ἐποιοῦντο τὴν κατηγορίαν ὥς ὑβρί
 and they-made the accusation (against him) as being-

ζοντος. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς ἐκέ-
 insolent (and overbearing). And — Xenophon standing-up re-

λευσε τὸν λέξαντα πρῶτον εἰπεῖν, ποῦ καὶ
 requested the (one) having-spoken first to-say, where also

ἐπλήγη. Δὲ ὁ ἀποκρίνεται· Ὅπου καὶ
 he-might-have-been-beaten. And — he-replied: Where even

ἀπωλλύμεθα τῷ ρίγει, καὶ ἦν πλείστη
 we-were-perishing with-the cold, and (where) there-was the-most

χιωι. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ χειμῶνος
now. And — (Xenophon) said: But indeed even (the) cold

ὄντος γε οἷου λέγεις, δὲ σίτου ἐπιλελοιπότης,
being at-least as-great-as you-say, and provisions had-become-deficient,

δὲ παρόν οἶνου μῆδ' ὀσφραίνεσθαι, δὲ
and there-was-present of-wine not-even (enough) to-smell-to, and

πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων ὑπὸ πόνων, δὲ
many (of us) being-exhausted with fatigue, and (the)

πολεμίων ἐπομένῳ, εἰ ὕβριζον
enemy following, if (then) I-acted-insolently (and overbear-

ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ, ὁμολογῶ εἶναι καὶ
ingly) on such (an) occasion, I-acknowledge (myself) to-be even

ὑβριστότερος τῶν ὄνων, οἷς φασίν, ὑπὸ
more-spiteful (than) — asses, which it-is-said, (that) from

τῆς ὕβρεως, κόπον οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. Δὲ καὶ
— spite, fatigue 'is not 'engendered. And also

ὁμῶς λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. Πότερον
likewise tell (us), said-he, for what you-were-beaten. Whether

ἤτουν σέ τι, καὶ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδίδως
did-I-ask you for-any-thing, and, when you-'did not 'give (it)

μοὶ ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπῆτουν; ἀλλὰ
to-me I-struck (you)? but did-I-'demand (anything) 'back? or

μαχόμενος περὶ παιδικῶν, ἀλλὰ μεθύων ἔτα-
was-fighting about (a) beloved (object), or being-in-liquor, did-

ρῶνησα; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφησεν
I-act-turbulently-like-a-drunken-man (to you)? When indeed he-said

οὐδὲν τούτων, ἐπῆρετο αὐτόν,
(that it was) nothing of-these (things), (Xenophon) asked him,

εἰ ὀπλιτεύοι; Οὐκ, ἔφη. Πάλιν, εἰ
if he-served-as-a-heavy-armed-soldier? No, said-he. Again, if

πελτάζοι. Οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ἔφη, ἀλλ' ταχθεὶς ὑπὸ
as-a-targeteer. Not-even this, said-he, but having-been-appointed by

τῶν συσκήνων ἐλαύνειν ἡμίονον ὦν
— (his) comrades to-drive (a) mule (he himself) being

ἐλεύθερος. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀναγινώσκει αὐτόν,
(a) freeman Then indeed he-recognised him,

καὶ ἤρετο· Ἡ εἶ σὺ ὁ ἀπαγαγών
and asked (him): Whether — (are) you the (man) carrying-away

τὸν κάμνοντα; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη· γὰρ σὺ
the (person) being-sick? Yes — by-Jupiter, said-he; for you

ἠνάγκαζες· δὲ διέρριψας τὰ σκεύη τῶν
compelled (me to do so); and you-threw-about the baggage of —

ἐμῶν συσκήνων. Ἀλλ' ἡ διάρριψις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
my comrades. But the throwing-about, said — Xeno-

φῶν, ἐγένετο τις τοιαύτη. Διέδωκα ἄλλοις
phen, happened something like-this. I-distributed (it) to-others

ἄγειν, καὶ ἐκέλευσα ἀπαγαγεῖν
to-carry, and ordered (them) to-'carry (such baggage) 'away

πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν ἅπαντα σῶα, ἀπέδωκά
for me, and having-received all safe, I-delivered (it)

σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα ἐμοί.
to-you, when also you produced the man to-me.

Ἀκούσατε, ἔφη, οἷον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο·
Hear, said-he, how indeed the thing happened;

γὰρ καὶ ἄξιον.
for (it is) even worth (your while).

Ἀνὴρ κατελείπετο, διὰ τὸ μηκέτι
(A) man was-left-behind, on-account (that) — he-'was no-longer

δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἐγίγνωσκον
able to-proceed. And I indeed knew

τὸν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἷη εἰς ἡμῶν· δὲ
the man so-much (only) (as) that he-was one of-us; and

ἠνάγκασα σὲ ἄγειν τοῦτον, ὥς μὴ
I-obliged you to-carry this (man), that he-'might not

ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γὰρ, ὥς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμιοι
'perish; and also, as I think, (the) enemy

ἐφείποντο ἡμῖν. Ὁ ἄνθρωπος συνέφη τοῦτο
were-pursuing us. The man acknowledged this.

Οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ προὔπεμψά σε,
Therefore, said — Xenophon, after I-had-'sent you 'before

προσιὼν σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι οὐκ αἰδῖς
coming-up with the rear-guard did-'I not likewise

καταλαμβάνω ὀρύττοντα βόδρον, ὡς κατο-
'overtake (you) digging (a) pit, as about

ρύζοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον· καὶ ἐπιστάς ἐπῆνουν
burying the man; and stopping did-'I (not) 'praise

σε; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμῶν παρεστηκότων, ὁ ἀνὴρ
you? When indeed we having-stood-by, the man

συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος, οἱ παρόντες ἀνέκραγον,
drew-together — (his) legs, — (those) present exclaimed,

ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ζῇ· σὺ δ' εἶπας· Ὅποσα
that the man was-alive; you indeed said: (He may live) as-'much

γε βούλεται· ὡς ἔγωγε οὐκ ἔξω αὐτόν.
at-least 'as he-pleases; as I-at-least 'will not 'carry him.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔπαισά σε· λέγεις ἀληθῆ· γὰρ
Then I-struck you; you-speak (the) truth; for

ἔδοξας μοι εἰκέναι εἰδότει, ὅτι ἔζη.
you-seemed to-me to-have-been-like (one) knowing, that he-was-alive.

Τί οὖν· ἔφη, τι ἦττον ἀπέδανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ
What then? said-he, did-'he any the-less 'die, after I

ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν σοι; Καὶ γὰρ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
showed him to-you? Certainly, not for, said — Xeno-

φῶν, ἡμεῖς πάντες ἀποδανούμεθα· οὖν ἔνεκα
phon, we all shall-die; therefore-on-account

τούτου δεῖ ἡμᾶς κατορυχθῆναι ζῶντας;
of-this is-it-necessary (that) we are-to-be-buried alive?

Πάντες μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς παΐσειεν τοῦτον
All indeed cried-out that he-had-struck this (man two)

ὀλίγας· δ' ἐκέλευε ἄλλους λέγειν,
few (blows); and 'he (then) 'called-up (the) others to-say,

διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη. Δέ ἐπει
for what each (of them) had-been-struck. But when they-'did

οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες,
not 'stand-forward, he said: I, O men,

δὴ ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι ἄνδρας ἔνεκεν
indeed acknowledge to-have-beaten men by-reason of-undisciplined-

ἀταξίας· ὅσοις μὲν
and-disorderly-conduct-in-'leaving (their) 'ranks; to-as-'many indeed as

ἤρκει σώζεσθαι δι' ἡμᾶς, τε ἰόντων ἐν τάξει
 were-content to-be-saved by us, not-only marching in ranks
 καὶ μαχομένων, ὅπου δέοι· δὲ αὐτοὶ
 but-also fighting, where it-might-be-necessary; but those
 λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις, προδέοντες, ἤθελον ἀρπάζειν,
 leaving the ranks, hurrying-on-before, they-desired to-plunder,
 καὶ πλεονεκτεῖν ἡμῶν. Εἰ δὲ πάντες ἐποι-
 and to-have-an-advantage-over us. If indeed 'we all 'had-
 οῦμεν τοῦτο, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. Δὲ καὶ
 acted so, 'we all might 'have-perished. And also
 ἤδη τινα μαλακίζομενον καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα
 already some giving-way-to-slothful-feelings, and not willing
 ἀνίστασθαι, ἀλλὰ προίεμενον αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις,
 to-stand-up, but abandoning themselves to-the enemy,
 καὶ ἔπαισα, καὶ ἐβιασάμεν πορεύεσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν
 I also 'struck, and forced to-proceed. For in
 τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτὸς ποτε ἀναμένων
 the vehement cold even myself once waiting
 τινὰς συσκευαζομένους, καθεζόμενος
 for-some having-packed-up (their baggage), (and) having-sat-down
 συχνὸν χρόνον, κατέμαδον ἀναστὰς μόλις
 'for (a) 'considerable time, I-found standing-up difficult
 καὶ ἐκτείνας τὰ σκέλη. Οὖν λαβὼν
 and-also stretching-out the legs. 'Having therefore taken
 πείραν ἐν ἑμαυτῷ, ἐκ τούτου καὶ ὁπότε ἴδοιμι
 experience in myself, after this also when I-saw (one)
 καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα ἤλαυνον· γὰρ
 sitting-down and indulging-in-sloth I-'drove (him) 'on; for
 τὸ κινεῖσθαι καὶ ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρῆχε τινὰ
 — to-be-moved (about) and to-act-manfully produce (a) certain
 θερμασίαν καὶ ὑγρότητα· δὲ τὸ καθῆσθαι καὶ
 warmth and suppleness; but — to-sit-down and
 ἔχειν ἡσυχίαν ἐώρων ὃν ἵπουργόν τῷ
 (to-have) idleness I-perceive (as) being the-assisting-means by-which
 τε τὸ αἷμα ἀποπῆγνυσθαι, καὶ τοὺς
 not-only (that) the blood is-congealed, but-also (that) the

δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσήμεσθαι· καὶ ἅπερ
fingers of-the feet are-mortified; and (with) which

ὑμεῖς ἴστε πολλοὺς παδόντας. Ἄλλον δὲ γε
you know many are-suffering. Another indeed at-least

ἴσως ὑπολειπόμενον πού, διὰ ῥαστώνην, καὶ
likewise being-left-behind somewhere, through insolence, and

κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς
hindering both you (in) the front and us (in)

τοὺς ὀπισθεν πορεύεσθαι ἐπαῖσα πύξ, ὅπως
the rear to-proceed-forward I-struck 'with (the) 'fist, so-that

μὴ παίοιτο λόγχῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίῳ.
he-'might not 'be-struck 'with (the) 'spear by the enemy.

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἐξεστὶν αὐτοῖς σωθεῖσιν, εἰ
For indeed therefore now it-is-allowed to-those having-been-saved, if

ἐπαδόν τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον,
they-have-suffered any-thing by me contrary-to — justice,

λαβεῖν δίκην. Δ' εἰ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῖς
to-obtain justice. but if they-had-got into (the power of) the

πολεμίοις, τί οὕτω μέγα ἂν ἔπαδον,
enemy, what (evil) however great 'they may 'have-suffered, (for)

οὗτου ἂν ἤξιουν λαμβάνειν δίκην; ὁ λόγος
which 'they might 'claim to-obtain justice? the case (15)

ἄπλοῦς, ἔφη, μοι. Εἰ μὲν ἐκόλασά τινα ἐπ'
plain, said-he, to-me. If indeed I-have-punished any-one for

ἀγαθῷ, ἀξιῶ ὑπερχειν δίκην, οἷαν
(his) good, I-claim to-undergo justice (and punishment), such-as

καὶ γονεῖς υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισὶ.
even parents (receive for) sons and teachers (for) boys.

Καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἰατροὶ καίουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ.
And also the surgeons cauterize and cut for good.

Δὲ εἰ νομίζετε με πράττειν ταῦτα
But if you-think me 'to (have) 'acted thus (through)

ὑβρεῖ, ἐνδυμήδητε, ὅτι νῦν σὺν
insolence and tyranny consider, that now with (the assistance

τοῖς θεοῖς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον θαρσῶ ἢ τότε, καὶ
if) the gods I 'have much-more spirit than then, and

εἰμι θρασύτερος νῦν ἢ τότε, καὶ πίνω πλείω οἶνον
 III bolder now than then, and I-drink more wine;

ἀλλ' ὁμως παίω οὐδένα· γὰρ ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς ἐν
 but yet-however I-strike no-one; for I-see you (now) in (a)

εἰδία. Δὲ ὅταν χειμῶν ἦ, καὶ μεγάλη
 calm. But when (a) storm may-be, and (a) great

θάλαττα ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁρᾶτε,
 sea may-be-'bearing (itself) 'onward, do-'you not 'see,

ὅτι πρῶρεὺς χαλεπαίνει μὲν τοῖς ἐν
 that the-commander-in-the-prow becomes-angry indeed with — (those) in

πρώρα καὶ ἔνεκα νεύματος μόνου, δὲ καὶ
 (the) prow even by-reason-of (a) nod only, and also (the)

κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ; γὰρ ἐν τῷ
 steersman with — (those) in (the) stern? for in —

τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἀμαρτηθέντα ἱκανὰ
 such (circumstances) even small mistakes (are) sufficien

συνεπιτρίψαι πάντα. Ὅτι δὲ ἔπαιον αὐτοῦς
 to-ruin all. That indeed I-struck this (man)

δικαίως, καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες
 justly, even you have-'given (your) 'judgment; having

ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστητε, καὶ ἐξῆν ὑμῖν
 swords, not voting-pebbles, you-stood-by, and it-was-allowed you

ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλὰ, μὰ Δία,
 to-assist them, if you-wished; but, by Jupiter,

οὔτε ἐπεκουρεῖτε τούτοις, οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ
 'you neither 'assisted these (men), nor with me

ἐπαίετε τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν ἐποιήσατε
 struck the disorderly. Therefore | you-have-made

ἐξουσίαν τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν, ἔδωκτες
 licence [you gave licence] to-the bad (ones) of-them, permitting

αὐτοῦς ὑβρίζειν· γὰρ οἶμαι, εἰ ἐδέλετε
 them to-be-violent (and audacious); for I-think, if you-wish

σκοπεῖν, εὕρήσετε τοὺς αὐτοὺς καὶ
 to-examine, you-will-find (that) — (those) same (who) even

τότε κακίστους, καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους.
 then (were) the-worst, (are) even now the-most-audacious.

Γοῦν Βοῖσκος, ὁ Θετταλὸς πύκτης, τότε μὲν
Also Boiscus, the Thessalian boxer, then indeed

διεμάχετο, μὴ φέρειν ἀσπίδα, ὡς
fought-hard, (that he might) not carry (his) shield, as

κάμνων, νῦν δ' ὡς ἀκούω, ἤδη ἀποδέδυκε
being-sick, now indeed as I-hear, 'has already 'despoiled

πολλοὺς Κοτυωριτῶν. Ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε,
many 'of (the) Cotyorians. If therefore you-are-wise,

ποιήσετε τούτῳ τὰναντία, ἣ ποιοῦσι τοὺς
you-will-do to-this (one) the-reverse, to (what) they-do (to) the

κύνας· γὰρ μὲν διδέασι κύνας τοὺς χαλεποὺς,
dogs; for indeed they-have-tied-up dogs the cross-ones,

τὰς ἡμέρας μὲν, δὲ τὰς νύκτας
(namely) during-the day indeed, but by — night have-'let (them)

ἀφιαῖσι· δὲ τοῦτον ἦν σωφρονῆτε δῆσετε μὲν τὴν
'loose; but this-one if you-are-wise you-will-tie indeed by —

νύκτα, δὲ ἀφήσετε τὴν ἡμέραν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ,
night, but let-loose by — day. But also,

ἔφη, θαυμάζω, ὅτι, εἰ μὲν ἀπηχθόμεν τινι
said-he, I-am-surprised, that, | if indeed I-become-hateful to-any-one

ὑμῶν, μέμνησθε,
of-you, [if I did anything to incur your displeasure,] you-remember (it),

καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δὲ ἐπεκούρησα τῷ
and 'did not 'remain-silent, if indeed I-assisted — (any-one)

ἢ χειμῶνα, ἢ ἀπῆρυξα πολέμιον,
(or) 'against (a) 'storm, or repelled (the) enemy (from him),

ἢ συνεξέπορισά τι ἄσθενουντι ἢ ὑποροῦντι,
or aided-in-procuring any-thing 'for (one) 'being-sick or being-destitute,

οὐδεὶς μέμνηται τούτων, οὐδ' εἰ ἐπῆνεσα
no-one remembers these (things), nor if I-have-praised

τινα ποιοῦντα τι καλῶς, οὐδ' εἰ ἐτίμησα,
any-one doing something good, or if I-have-honoured,

ὥς ἐδυνάμην, τιν' ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθόν,
as (much as) I-could, any man being brave,

οὐδὲ μέμνησθε τούτων. Ἀλλὰ μὴν τε
neither do-you-remember these (things). But indeed (it is) not-only

καλόν, καὶ δίκαιον, καὶ ὅσιον καὶ ἡδίων μεμνησθα.
 beautiful, but-also just, and pious and pleasing to-remember

τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν.
 — good rather than — evil.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνιμνήσκον.
 On this indeed truly they-rose-up and recollected

Καὶ περιεγένετο ὥστε ἔχειν κα-
 (past events). And it-remained so-as to-have hand

λῶς.

comely [and in the end everything turned out well].

BOOK VI.

CHAPTER I

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ
 FROM this (time) (some of) the (Greeks) indeed during — (their)
 διατριβῇ ἔζων ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς,
 stay lived (on what they procured) from the market,
 δὲ καὶ οἱ ληϊζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας.
 and also — (others by) plundering (from) the Paphlagonians.
 Δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἐκλώπευον μάλα εὖ τοὺς
 And also the Paphlagonians stole-away very adroitly —
 ἀποσκεδαννυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπειρῶντο
 (those) scattered-about, and at — night attempted
 κακουργεῖν τοὺς σκηνοῦντας πρόσω· καὶ ἐκ
 to-injure-and-annoy — (those) quartering far-off; and from
 τούτων εἶχον πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους.
 these (things) they-had the-greatest-hostility to one-another.
 Ὁ δὲ Κορύλας ὃς τότε ἐτύγχανε ἄρχων
 — But Corylas who then happened (to be) ruler
 Παφλαγονίας, πέμπει πρέσβεις, ἔχοντας
 of-Paphlagonia, sends ambassadors, having (as presents)
 ἵππους καὶ καλὰς στολὰς, παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας,
 horses and beautiful robes, to the Greeks,
 λέγοντας, ὅτι Κορύλας εἴη ἕτοιμος μήτε ἀδικεῖν
 saying, that Corylas was ready neither to-injure
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
 the Greeks nor to-be-injured (by them). The generals
 δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι βουλεύσονται σὺν τῇ
 however replied, that they-would-consult with the

στρατιᾷ περὶ μὲν τούτων, ἐδέχοντο αὐτοὺς δε
 army about indeed these (things), they-received them however

ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ· δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσαν τῶν ἄλλων
 at (a) hospitable (table); and also they-invited the other

ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν εἶναι δικαιοτάτους. Δέ
 men whom they-considered to-be the-most-worthy. And

θύσαντες βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ
 having-sacrificed oxen — (those namely) captured and

ἄλλα ἰερεῖα ἀρκοῦσαν εὐωχίαν
 other cattle-killed-for-sacrifice-and-for-eating (an) abundant feast

παρεῖχον, δὲ κατακείμενοι ἐν σκίμποις ἐδείπνουν.
 was-provided, and reclining on couches they-supped,

καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίναν ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐντύγχανοι
 and they-drank out-of horn cups, which they-found

ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
 in the country.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε σπονδαὶ ἐγένοντο καὶ
 When however not-only (the) libations had-taken-place, but-also

ἐπαιάνισαν, πρῶτον μὲν Θρᾶκες ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
 they-had-sung-the-pæan, at-first indeed Thracians stood-up, and

ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις πρὸς
 danced with — (their) arms to (the sound of the)

αὐλόν, καὶ ἤλλοντο ὑψηλά τε καὶ κούφως, καὶ
 pipe, and they-jumped high and also with-agility, and

ἐχρῶντο ταῖς μαχαίραις· δὲ τέλος ὁ ἕτερος
 they-made-use of — (their) swords; and at-length the one

παίει τὸν ἕτερον, ὥς ἐδόκει πᾶσι πεπληγέναι
 struck the other, so-that it-seemed to-all to-have-wounded

τὸν ἄνδρα· δ' ὁ ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πως. Καὶ οἱ
 the man; and — he-fell artfully in-some-way. And the

Παφλαγόνες ἀνέκραγον. Καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας
 Paphlagonians cried-out. And — 'he indeed 'having-despoiled

τοῦ ἑτέρου τὰ ὅπλα, ἐξῆι ἄδων τὸν
 the other (one) of — (his) arms, departed singing the (song)

Σιτάλκαν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρακῶν ἐξέφερον τὸν
 Sitalcas; others indeed of-the Thracians carried-off the

ἕτερον ὥς τε θνητότα· ἦν δὲ
 other (one) as-if having-been-dead; he-was however (in the state of)
 πεπονθώς οὐδέν. Μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες
 having-suffered no (injury). After this (some) Ænians
 καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἱ ὥρχοῦντο τὴν
 and Magnesians stood-up, who danced the (dance)
 καλουμένην καρπαίαν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Ὁ τρόπος
 called carpæan in — arms. The nature
 δὲ τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν ὅδε· ὁ μὲν, παρα-
 indeed of-the dance was thus: — (one of them) indeed, having-
 θέμενος τὰ ὅπλα, σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ,
 laid-aside — (his) arms, sows and drives-a-yoke-of-oxen,
 πυκνὰ μεταστρεφόμενος, ὥς φοβούμενος·
 often turning-around, as-if fearing (something);
 ληστής δὲ προσέρχεται· δ' ἐπειδὰν ὁ προιδήται,
 (a) robber indeed approaches; but when — he-perceives
 ἀρπάσας τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ
 (him), snatching-up — (his) arms, 'he even 'fights for the
 ζεύγους· (καὶ οὗτοι ἐποιοῦν ταῦτ'
 yoke (of oxen); (and these (men) performed these (things)
 ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν·)
 | in rhythm to the pipe;) [keeping time to the pipe;]
 καὶ τέλος ὁ ληστής δῆσας τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπάγει
 and at-last the robber having-tied the man 'leads (him) 'off
 καὶ τὸ ζεῦγος· δὲ καὶ ἐνίοτε ὁ ζευγηλάτης
 and-also the yoke (of oxen); but also sometimes the driver-of-the-oxen
 τὸν ληστήν· εἶτα ζεύξας παρὰ τοὺς
 (overcomes) the robber; then having-fastened (him) to the
 βοῦς ἐλαύνει δεδεμένον τὴν χεῖρα ὀπίσω.
 oxen he-'drives (him) 'off bound with — (his) hands behind.
 Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων πέλτην ἐν
 After this (a) Mysian entered having (a) light-shield in
 ἑκατέρα τῇ χειρὶ· καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὥρχετο μιμούμενος
 each — hand; and at-one-time he-danced mimicking
 ὥς δύο ἀντιταπτομένων, δὲ τοτὲ ἐχρήτα
 as (if) two were-attacking (him), but at-another-time he-used

ταῖς πέλταις ὥς πρὸς ἓνα, δὲ το
the shields as (if engaged) with one (only), and-also another

τὲ ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστα, ἔχων τὰς πέλτας,
time he-whirled-about and threw-summer-sets, having the shields

ὥστε καλὴν ὄψιν φαίνεσθαι. Δέ
at the same time), so-that (a) fine sight appeared And

τέλος ὥρχειτο τὸ Περσικόν, κρούων τὰς
at last he-danced the Persian (dance), striking the

πέλτας· καὶ ὤκλαζε, καὶ ἐξανίστατο·
shields (together); and he-'sank-on (his) 'knees, and rose-up-again;

καὶ ἐποίει πάντα ταῦτα ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν
and he-performed all this in rhythm to the

αὐλόν. Δὲ ἐπὶ τούτῳ οἱ Μαν-
(sound of the) pipe. And after this (one) — (some) Man-

τινεῖς ἐπιόντες, καὶ τινὲς ἄλλοι τῶν Ἀρχάδων
tineans coming-forward, and some others of-the Arcadians

ἀναστάντες, ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο,
standing-up, armed as handsomely (as) they-could

ἦσαν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ, αἰλούμενοι
| went — in rhythm, [marched in time,] playing-on-the-pipe (tuned,

πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ῥυθμόν, καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν
for the armed-war rhythm (or movement), and they-sang-the-pæan

καὶ ὥρχήσαντο, ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς προσόδοις πρὸς
and danced, as in the procession to

τοὺς θεοὺς. Δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ὁρῶντες
the gods. And the Paphlagonians seeing (these things)

ἐποιοῦντο δεινὰ πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις
made (a) great-thing-of-it (that) all the dances

εἶναι ἐν ὅπλοις. Ὁ Μυσὸς ἐπὶ ὅρων τούτοις
were in arms. The Mysian after seeing these (things)

αὐτοὺς ἐκπεπληγμένους, πείσας
(that) they were-struck (with surprise), (and) having-persuaded

τινά τῶν Ἀρχάδων, πεπαμένον ὀρχηστρίδα,
a-certain-one of-the Arcadians, having-in-possession (a) female-dancer

εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο
he-'brings (her) 'in having-equipped (her) as handsomely (as) he-could

καὶ δοὺς αὐτῇ κούφην ἀσπίδα. Δὲ ἡ ὤρχησατο
and giving her (a) light shield. And — she-danced

πυρρίχην ἐλαφρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν
(the) Pyrric (dance) with-great-agility. Then there-was

πολύς κρότος· καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἤροντο,
much applause-and-clapping; and the Paphlagonians asked,

εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμαχόντο αὐτοῖς. Οἱ δ'
if also women fought-together with-them. — (They) —

ἔλεγον, ὅτι εἶεν καὶ αὗται αἱ τρεψάμεναι
said, that it-was even these (women) — (that) had-been-driving

βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Οὖν μὲν τοῦτο
(the) king from the camp. Therefore indeed such

ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος τῇ ταύτῃ νυκτὶ.
was the end (of) — that night.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραία προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς
And on-the next-day they-led them [the ambassadors] to

τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις
the army, | and it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers

μήτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μήτε
[and the soldiers resolved] neither to-injure (the) Paphlagonians nor

ἀδικεῖσθαι. Μετὰ τοῦτο μὲν οἱ πρέσβεις
to-be-injured (by them). After this indeed the ambassadors

ᾤχοντο· οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ, ἐπειδὴ ἱκανὰ
departed; the Greeks also, as (a) sufficient (number of,

πλοῖα ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἐπλεον
ships seemed to-be-present, going-on-board they-sailed (that)

ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα, πνεύματι καλῶ, ἔχοντες
day and night, (the) wind (being) fair, having

τὴν Παφλαγονίαν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Δὲ τῇ ἄλλῃ
— Paphlagonia on (the) left. And on-the next

ἀφικνοῦντα εἰς Σινώπην, καὶ ὠρμίσαντο εἰς
(day) they-arrived at Sinope, and anchored at

Ἀρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ
Harmene (the harbour) of — Sinope. (The) Sinopeans —

μὲν οἰκοῦσι ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, δὲ εἰσιν
indeed dwell in — Paphlagonian (territory), and they-are

ἀποικοὶ Μιλησίων. Οὗτοι δὲ πέμπου
 (a) colony of-the-Milesians. These (Sinopeans) indeed sent
 ξένια τοῖς Ἑλλήσι μὲν τριςχιλίου
 gifts-of-hospitality to-the Greeks (namely) — three-thousand
 μεδίμνους ἀλφίτων, δὲ
 medimni [each medimni being about twelve gallons] of-flour, also
 χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια κεράμια
 a-thousand and five-hundred ceramia [the ceramia being about
 οἶνου. Καὶ ἔνταῦθα Χειρίσοφος ἦλθε
 six gallons] of-wine. And then Cheirisophus came
 ἔχων τριήρη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται προσεδόκων
 having galleys. And indeed the soldiers expected
 ἦκειν ἄγοντά τί σφισι· δ' ὁ ἦγε μὲν
 (that) he-came bringing something for-them; but — he-brought indeed
 οὐδέν, δὲ ἀπήγγελλε, ὅτι καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύ-
 nothing, however he-announced, that both Anaxibius the naval-
 αρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπαινοίη αὐτοῦς, καὶ ὅτι
 commander and the others praised them, and that
 Ἀναξίβιος ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ ἀφικνοῖντο ἔξω
 Anaxibius promised, if they-would-come-to (him) out-of
 τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσεσθαι μισθοφορίαν αὐτοῖς.
 the Pontus, (that) there-would-be pay to-them.
 Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας ἐν
 And the soldiers remained five days in
 ταύτῃ τῇ Ἀρμύνῃ. Ὡς δὲ ἐδόκουν γίγ-
 this — Harmene. As indeed they-considered (that) they-
 νεσθαι ἐγγὺς τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ
 were-getting near — Greece 'it now more than
 πρόσθεν εἰσῆει αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἀφίκωνται
 before 'occurred to-them how 'they might even 'arrive
 οἴκαδε ἔχοντές τι. Οὖν ἠγήσαντο εἰ
 at-home having something. Therefore they-thought (that) if
 ἔλουντο ἓνα ἄρχοντα, ἂν μᾶλλον ἢ
 they-should-choose one commander, (it) would (be) better than
 οὔσης πολυαρχίας, τὸν ἓνα δύνασθαι
 there being many-commanders, (that) the one (commander) would-be-able

χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νύκτός καὶ ἡμέρας,
to-use the army both by-night and by-day

καὶ εἰ δέοι λανθάνειν τι ἂν
and if it-should-be-necessary to-conceal any-thing (that it) would (be)

μᾶλλον κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἰ δέοι αὖ φθάνειν
much-better concealed, and if it-were-necessary again to-anticipate

τι ἂν ἥττον ὑστερίζειν· γὰρ
any-thing (there) would (be) less coming-late (and delay); for

ἂν οὐ δεῖν λόγων πρὸς ἀλλήλους,
(that) 'there would 'be no 'need of-conferences with one-another,

ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἐνὶ
| but (that) the to-seem (good) to-the one [but that the determination

ἂν περαίνεσθαι· δὲ τὸν χρόνον
of the one commander] would be-carried-out; but (in) the time

ἔμπροσθεν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔπραττον πάντα ἐκ
heretofore the generals did every (thing) from

τῆς νικώσης. Ὡς δὲ διανοοῦντο ταῦτα
the prevailing (opinion). As indeed they-were-'revolving these (things)

ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ
'in (their) 'minds, they-turned-themselves to — Xenophon; and

οἱ λοχαγοὶ προσιόντες αὐτῷ, ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ
the captains going to-him, said, that the army

γινώσκει οὕτω· καὶ ἕκαστος ἐνδεικνύμενος
think-and-determine thus; and each showing (his)

εὖνοιαν ἐπειδεν αὐτὸν ὑποστῆναι τὴν ἀρχήν.
good-will persuaded him to-undertake the command.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν πῇ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα,
— And Xenophon in-some-measure indeed desired this,

νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν γίγνεσθαι αὐτῷ
acknowledging (that) even the honour would-become thus

μεῖζω ἑαυτῷ πρὸς τοὺς φίλους, καὶ τοῦνομα
greater to-himself before — (his) friends, and the-name

αὐτοῦ ἀφίξεσθαι μεῖζον εἰς τὴν πόλιν, τυχόν·
of-himself would-become greater in — (his own) city, perhaps

δὲ καὶ ἂν γενέσθαι τινος αἴτιος ἀγαθοῦ
likewise also (that) 'he might 'become some cause of-good

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Μὲν δὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐνδυμήματα
 so-the army. Indeed truly — these-same considerations
 ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιδυμῆν γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα αὐτο-
 impelled him to-desire to-become | commander with-full
 κράτορα. Δ' ὁπότε αὖ ἐνδυμοῖτο,
 power [commander-in-chief]. But as again he-reflected,
 ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ, ὅπη τὸ
 that (it was) uncertain indeed to-every man, | how the
 μέλλον ἔξει, δὲ καὶ διὰ
 future will-hold, [what the future will produce,] and also through
 τοῦτο εἴη καὶ κίνδυνος ἀποβαλεῖν τὴν
 this (that) there-might-be even danger to-lose — (his)
 προειργασμένην δόξαν, ἥπορεῖτο. Δὲ αὐτῷ διαπο-
 previously-earned reputation, he-was-perplexed. And he hesi-
 ρουμένῳ διακρίναι ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον ἀνακοι-
 tating to-decide it-seemed to-be the-best to-con-
 νῶσαι τοῖς θεοῖς· καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο
 sult the gods; and having-placed-by (the altar) two
 ἱερεῖα, ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσπερ ἦν
 victims, he-sacrifices to — Jupiter the king, who was
 μαντευτὸς ἐκ Δελφῶν αὐτῷ· καὶ δὴ ἐνό-
 pointed-out-by-the-oracle at Delphos to-him; and indeed he-ac-
 μιζεν ἑωρακέναι τὸ ὄναρ ὑπὸ τούτου
 knowledged | to-have-seen [to have had] the dream from the-same
 τοῦ θεοῦ, ὃ εἶδεν, ὅτε ἤρχετο καδίστασθαι τὸ
 — god, which he-had, when he-began to-set-himself —
 συνεπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς. Καὶ ὅτε ὠρμαῖτο
 to-take-charge-with-others of-the army. And when he-departed
 ἐξ Ἐφέσου, συσταδησόμενος Κύρῳ, ἀνεμιμνήσκετο
 from Ephesus, about-meeting Cyrus, he-recalled-to-mind
 αὐτὸν φθεγγόμενον δεξιὸν ἑαυτῷ,
 (an) eagle crying-out 'on (the) 'right (hand of) himself,
 μέντοι καθήμενον, ὥσπερ ὁ μάντις ὁ προ-
 however sitting, (which) as the augur — ac-
 πέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἴη μὲν μέγας οἶωνός,
 accompanying him said, that it-was indeed (a) great omen

καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος μέντοι
and not belonging-to-a-private-individual, and honourable however

ἐπίπονος· γὰρ τὰ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίδεδου τῷ
wilsome; for the birds most-of-all attack the

αετῷ καθήμενῳ· μέντοι τὸν σίῳνον εἶναι οὐ
eagle sitting; however (that) the omen is not

κρηματιστικόν, γὰρ τὸν αἶτον μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν
indicative-of-gain, for (that) the eagle rather took

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πετόμενον. Οὕτω δὴ αὐτῷ
— (his) provisions flying-about. As indeed he

θυομένῳ ὁ θεὸς διαφανῶς σημαίνει μήτε προς-
was-sacrificing the god evidently signified neither to-

δεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς, μήτε, εἰ αἰροῖντο, ἀπο-
desire the command, nor, if he-should-be-chosen, to-

δέχεσθαι. Τοῦτο δὴ μὲν ἐγένετο οὕτως. Ἡ
accept (it). This truly indeed happened thus. The

στρατιὰ δὲ συνῆλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἓνα
army indeed assembled, and all said (that) one

αἰρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε,
(commander) was-to-be-chosen; | and when this seemed (good),

προεβάλλοντο αὐτόν.

[and when this was resolved on by the army,] they-proposed him

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι δῆλον, ὅτι
[Xenophon]. When indeed it-seemed to-be evident, that

αἰρήσονται αὐτόν, εἰ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι,
they-would-choose him, if any-one should-'put (it) 'to-the-vote,

ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε·
he-rose-up and spoke thus:

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, μὲν ἡδομαι ὑπὸ τιμώμενος
I, O men, 'am indeed 'delighted at being-honoured

ὑμῶν, εἵπερ εἰμι ἄνθρωπος, καὶ ἔχω χάριν,
by-you, as-indeed I-am (a) man, and have gratitude

καὶ εὐχομαι τοὺς θεοὺς δοῦναί μοι
(for what you intend), and I-pray the gods to-grant me

γενέσθαι αἰτίον τινος ἀγαθοῦ ὑμῖν· μέντοι το
to-become (the) author of-some good to-you; | however the

προκριθῆναι ἐμὲ ὑπὸ ὑμῶν
 io-have-preferred me [but the preferring me] by you (as you),
 ἄρχοντα, Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος, δοκεῖ
 commander, (a) Lacedæmonian man being-present, it-seems
 μοι οὔτε εἶναι συμφέρον ὑμῖν, ἀλλ', εἴ
 to-me (would) neither be (an) advantage to-you, but, if
 δέοισδε τι παρ' αὐτῶν, ἃν ἦττον
 you-should-desire any-thing from them, (that you) would the-less
 διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, τε νομίζω τοῦτο
 on-account-of this obtain (it), and I-think (that) this
 αἶ οὐ πάνυ τι εἶναι ἀσφαλές ἐμοί.
 again (would) not at-all in-any-manner be safe for-me.
 Γὰρ ὁρῶ ὅτι καὶ πρόσθεν οὐ
 For I-see that even 'they [the Lacedæmonians] heretofore 'did not
 ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες τῇ πατρίδι μου,
 'cease making-war against-the | country of-me, [my country,]
 πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν
 before they-had-made (the) whole — state to-acknowledge (the)
 Λακεδαιμονίους εἶναι καὶ ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ
 Lacedæmonians to-be even masters of-them. When
 δὲ ὡμολόγησαν τοῦτο, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο
 indeed they-acknowledged this, 'they directly 'ceased
 πολεμοῦντες, καὶ οἵκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρχησαν τὴν
 making-war, and no-longer more did-they-besiege the
 πόλιν. Εἰ οὖν, ὁρῶν ταῦτα, ἐγὼ δοκοίην
 city. If therefore, seeing these (things), I should-seem
 ἐνταῦθ' ὅπου δυναίμην ποιεῖν ἄκυρον τὸ
 (to be) there where I-might-be-able to-make null the
 ἀξίωμα ἐκείνων, ἐννοῶ ἐκεῖνο μὴ ἂν λίαν ταχὺ
 authority of-them, I-consider this lest 'I might very speedily
 σωφρονισθεῖν. Ὅ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι
 'be-taught-discretion. What indeed you consider-in-your-minds, that
 ἑνὸς ἀρχόντος ἂν εἴη ἦττον στάσις
 (there being) one commander 'there would 'be less faction
 ἢ πολλῶν, ἵστε εὖ, ὅτι ἐλόμενοι μὲν
 than (there being) many, you-know well, that having-chosen indeed

ἄλλον οὐχ εὕρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα. γὰρ
another you-'will not 'find me exciting-faction; for

νομίζω ὅστις ὢν ἐν πολέμῳ στασιάζει πρὸς
I-acknowledge (that) he-who being in war excites-faction against

ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον στασιάζειν πρὸς τὴν
(his) commander, (that) this (one) contends against the

σωτηρίαν ἑαυτοῦ· δὲ εἰάν ἔλῃσδε ἐμὲ ἂν οὐκ
safety of-himself; but if you-should-choose me 'I would not

θαυμάσαιμι εἰ εὕροιτε τινα ἀχδόμενον καὶ ὑμῖν
wonder if you-found some discontented both with-you

καὶ ἐμοί.
and myself.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπε ταῦτα, πολὺ πλείονες
When indeed he-had-said these (things), many more

ἐξάνίσταντο, λέγοντες, ὥς αὐτὸν δέοι ἄρχειν.
stood-up, saying, that he ought to-command.

Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι εἴη
Agasias indeed (the) Stymphalian said that it-would-be

γελοῖον, εἰ ἔχοι οὕτως·
ridiculous, | if it-have (itself) thus; [if things be in such a state;]

ὥς Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὀργιοῦνται, καὶ εἰάν
(since) that (the) Lacedæmonians might-be-enraged, even if (a party)

συνελθόντες σύνδειπνοι μὴ αἰρῶνται Λακε-
having-met to-sup-together (and) 'do not 'choose (a) Lacedæ-

δαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον. Εἰ ἐπεὶ οὕτω γε
dæmonian (as) president-of-the-banquet. | If when thus at-least

τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδέ
it has (itself), [if such be the case,] said-he, it-'would neither

ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν λοχαγεῖν, ὥς ἔοικεν, ὅτι
'be-proper for-us to-lead-companies (as captains), as it-seems, that

ἐσμέν Ἀρκάδες. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀνεδορύθησαν ὥς
we-are Arcadians. Then truly they-murmured as

τοῦ Ἀγασίου εἰπόντος εὖ. Καὶ ὁ Ξενο-
(signifying) — Agasias having-spoken well. And — Xeno

φῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα ἐνδέον πλείονος,
phon when he-saw (that) there-was-need of-more (speaking)

παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ὥς
coming-forward he-said: But, O men, said-he, that you-'may

πάνν εἰδῆτε, ὁμνῶ ὑμῖν πάντα θεοὺς καὶ
fully 'know, I-swear to-you by-all (the) gods and

πάσας, ἧ μὲν ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ ᾗσανόμην
by-all (the goddesses), (that) truly indeed when I perceived

ὑμετέραν γνώμην, ἐδύομεν, εἰ εἴη
your intention, I-sacrificed, (to ascertain) if it-might-be

βέλτιον ὑμῖν τε ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν
better for-you not-only to-have-confided this — (same)

ἀρχὴν ἐμοί, καὶ ἐμοί ὑποστῆναι· καὶ οἱ θεοὶ
command to-me, but-also for-me to-have-undertaken (it); and the gods

οὕτως ἐσήμηναν ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ὥστε καὶ ἰδιώτην
so signified in the sacrifices that even (a) private-person

ἂν γινῶναι, ὅτι δεῖ με ἀπέχεσθαι
[not an augur] might know, that it-was-proper | (that) I should-hold-off

τῆς μοναρχίας.

from-the single-rule [that I should not accept the sole command].

Οὕτω δὲ αἰροῦνται Χειρίσοφον. Δὲ Χει-
Thus indeed 'they (then) 'chose Cheirisophus. And Chei-

ρίσοφος ἐπεὶ ἡρέθη παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἄλλ',
risophus when he-was-elected coming-forward said: But,

ὦ ἄνδρες, ἴστε μὲν τοῦτο, ὅτι ἔγωγε ἂν ἐστασίαζον
O men, know indeed this, that I-at-least would have-'excited

οὐδ', εἰ εἴλεσθε ἄλλον· μέντοι, ἔφη,
no 'factions, if you-had-elected another; however, said-he,

ὠνήσατε Ξενοφῶντα οὐχ ἐλόμενοι· ὥς
you-have-done-a-service-to Xenophon (by) not having-elected (him); as

καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς
even now Dexippus 'has already 'accused him before

Ἀναξίβιον, ὅτι ἐδύνατο, καὶ ἐμοῦ μάλα
Anaxibius, as-much-as he-could, even I (trying) much

σιγάλλοντος αὐτὸν. Ὁ δ' ἔφη
to-silence him. — (Dexippus) also said (that he)

νομίζειν, αὐτὸν ἐδελῆσαι μᾶλλον
thought, (that) he (Xenophon) desired rather

συναρχεῖν Τιμασίῳ, ὄντι Δαρδανεῖ
 to-be-joined-in-command-with Timasion, (he) being (a) Dardanian
 στρατεύματος τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ἢ ἑαυτῷ
 'of (the) 'army of — Clearchus, than with-himself
 ὄντι Λάκωνι. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,
 (Cheirisophus) being (a) Lacedæmonian. Since however, said-he,
 εἴλεσθε ἐμὲ, ἐγὼ καὶ πειράσομαι ποιεῖν
 (as) you-have-elected me, I 'will even 'endeavour to-do
 ἱμᾶς ἀγαθόν, ὅ τι ἂν δύνωμαι. Καὶ οὕτω
 you (all the) good, as-much-as 'I may 'be-able. And thus
 παρασκευάζεσθε, ὥς αὔριον ὑμεῖς ἀναξόμενοι,
 prepare-yourselves, as to-morrow you will-be-ordered (to depart),
 ἐὰν ἢ πλοῦς· δὲ δὲ
 if there-may-be (a) sailing (permitted by the weather); and the
 πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· οὖν δεῖ
 sailing will-be to Heraclea; therefore it-is-proper (that)
 ἅπαντας πειράσδει κατασχεῖν ἐκεῖσε· δὲ τὰ
 all endeavour to-arrive there; and (about) —
 ἄλλα βουλευσόμεθα, ἐπειδὴν ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε.
 other (things) we-will-consult, when we-arrive there

CHAPTER II.

Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι, ἔπλεον
 HENCE on-the next-day lifting (the anchors), they-sailed
 καλῷ πνεύματι δύο ἡμέρας παρα γῆν.
 with (a) 'fair wind two days along (the) land.
 Καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐδεώρουν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτὴν,
 And sailing-along they-saw not-only (the) Jasonian beach,
 ἔνθα ἢ Ἀργὼ λέγεται ὀρμίσασθαι, καὶ τὰ
 where the Argo is-said to-have-been-moored, but-also the
 στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμῶ
 mouths of-the rivers, first indeed of-the Thermo-

δοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἴριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἀλυος,
don, afterwards also of-the Iris, afterwards also the Halyus,

μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· δὲ παραπλεύ-
after indeed that of-the Parthenius; and having-sailed-

σαντες τοῦτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν,
by this (last river) they-arrived at Heraclea, (a)

Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικον Μεγαρέων, δ'
Greek city, (a) colony 'of (the) 'Megarians, and

οὔσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Μαρνανδυνῶν. Καὶ
being in the territory 'of (the) 'Mariandryrians. And

ᾠρμίσαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιᾷδε Χερρόνῃσῳ, ἔνθα
they-anchored near the Acherusian Peninsula, where

ὁ Ἡρακλῆς λέγεται καταβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν κύνα
— Hercules is-said to-have-descended for the dog

Κέρβερον ἣ νῦν δεικνῦσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς
Cerberus, where (indeed) now they-show the marks of —

καταβάσεως, τὸ βάθος ἐπὶ πλεόν ἢ δύο
(his) descent, to — (a) depth for more than two

στάδια. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται πέμπουσι
stadia. There the Heracleans send

ξένια τρισχιλίους μεδίμνους
gifts-of-hospitality (namely) three-thousand medimni [the medimni

ἀλφίτων, καὶ διςχίλια κεράμια
being about twelve gallons] of-barley-meal, and two-thousand ceramia

οἴνου, καὶ εἴκοσι βοῦς,
[the ceramia being about six gallons] of-wine, and twenty oxen,

καὶ ἑκατόν οἷς. Ἐνταῦθα ποταμός, Λύκος
and (a) hundred sheep. Here (a) river, Lycus (by)

ὄνομα, ῥεῖ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, εὖρος ὥς
name, flows through the plain, (the) breadth (thereof being) about

δύο πλέθρων.

two plethra (or about two hundred feet).

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ συλλεγέντες ἐβουλεύοντο
The soldiers indeed assembling deliberated

τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν, πότερον χρῆ
(about) the rest 'of (the) 'road, whether it-might-be-best

πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ἀτὰ
 for them) to-have-proceeded from the Pontus (Euxinus) by
 γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν. Δὲ Λύκων Ἀχαιοὺς
 land or by sea. But Lycon (an) Achæan
 ἀναστὰς, εἶπε· Θανμάζω μὲν, ὧ ἄνδρες, τῶν
 rising-up, said: I-wonder indeed, O men, (at) the
 στρατηγῶν, ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἐκπορίζειν
 generals, that they-'do not 'endeavour to-procure
 σιτηρέσιον ἡμῖν· γὰρ μὲν τὰ ξένια οὐ μὴ
 money-for-provisions for-us; for indeed the presents 'will not —
 γένηται σῖτα τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν·
 'be (sufficient) food for-the army for-three days:
 δ' ἔστιν οὐκ, ἔφη, ἐπισιτισά-
 and there-is no (place), said-he, having-provided-ourselves-with-pro-
 μωνι, ὁπόθεν πορευσόμεθα. Οὖν δοκεῖ
 visions, whence we-will-set-forth (on our journey). Therefore it-seems
 ἐμοὶ αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ
 to-me (that we ought) to-ask the Heracleans (for) not
 ἔλαττον ἢ τριςχιλίους κυζικηνοὺς.
 less than three-thousand cyzices [about 15,000 dollars].
 Δ' ἄλλος εἶπε μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίου· καὶ
 But another said not less than ten-thousand; and
 πρέσβεις ἐλομένους, πέμπειν μάλα ἀντίκα
 deputies being-chosen, to-send (them) (more) immediately
 πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, ἡμῶν καθημένων, καὶ εἰδέναι ὃ τι
 to the city, we being-in-session, even to-know what
 ἂν ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ βουλευέσθαι πρὸς
 report-'they might 'bring, and to-deliberate about
 ταῦτα. Ἐντεῦθεν προὔβαλλοντο πρέσβεις,
 these (things). Then they-proposed (for) deputies,
 πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι ἦρητο ἄρχων·
 first indeed Cheirisophus, because he-had-been-chosen commander;
 δ' ἔστι καὶ οἱ Ξενοφῶντα. Δὲ
 and it-is also (that) — (others proposed) Xenophon. But
 οἱ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· γὰρ ταῦτα
 — 'they vehemently 'set-themselves-against (it); for this

ἔδόκει ἀμφοῖν μὴ ἀναγκάζειν
 seemed to-both (of them), (that) 'they (ought) not 'to-compel

Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν καὶ φιλίαν διδοῖεν
 (a) Greek city and (one) friendly (to them) to-give

ὃ τι αὐτοὶ μὴ ἐδέλοντες. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
 what they 'were not 'willing (to give). When indeed these

ἔδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσι Λύκωνα
 showed (themselves) no-ways-inclined to-go, they-send Lycon

Ἀχαιόν, καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρρῆσιον, καὶ
 (the) Achæan, and Callimachus (the) Parrhasian, an

Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. Οὗτοι ἐλδόντες
 Agasias (the) Stymphalian. These going (to the town)

ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα. Ἐφασαν δὲ
 informed (them of) the resolutions. They-said indeed (that)

τὸν Λύκωνα καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν
 — Lycon even threatened, if they-'did not 'do

ταῦτα. Δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἀκούσαντες
 these (things). And the Heracleans hearing (this)

ἔφασαν βουλεύσεσθαι· καὶ εὐδὺς συνῆγον
 said (that) they-would-consult-about-it; and immediately they-collected

τε τὰ χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν, καὶ ἀνεσκέυ-
 not-only — (their) property from the fields, but-also packed-

ασαν εἰσω τὴν
 up (and carried) within (the city) the (things exposed for sale in the

ἀγορὰν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο, καὶ ὅπλα
 market, and the gates were-closed, and armed (men,

ἐφαίνετο ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν.
 appeared on the walls.

Ἐκ τούτο οἱ παράξαντες ταῦτα ἠτιῶντο
 Upon this — (those) having-promoted these (things) accused

τοὺς στρατηγούς διαφθείρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν.
 the generals (that they) spoiled the affair.

Καὶ οἱ Ἀρχάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ συνίσταντο· δὲ
 And the Arcadians and the Achæans joined-together; and

τε Καλλίμαχος ὁ Παρρῆσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ
 not-only Callimachus the Parrhasian, but-also Lycon the

Ἀχαιοὶς προειστήκει μάλιστα αὐτῶν.
Achæan | 'stood most 'over them [were the

Δὲ οἱ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς,
head leaders]. | And the words were to-them, [and the con-

ὥς εἶη αἰσχρον Ἄθη-
versation among them was,] that it-was disgraceful (that an) Athe-

ναῖον ἄρχειν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμο-
nian (should) rule Peloponnesians and Lacedæmo-

νίων, παρεχόμενον μηδεμίαν δύναμιν εἰς τὴν
nians, (and he) contributing no force to the

στρατιάν, καὶ σφᾶς ἔχειν τοὺς πόνους
army, and (that) they-themselves had the trouble

μὲν, δὲ ἄλλους τὰ κέρδη, καὶ ταῦτα
indeed, but others the profits, and these (things taking place)

σφῶν κατειργασμένων τὴν σωτηρίαν.
they-themselves having-effected the safety (of all),

γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους εἶναι Ἀρκάδας
for (that) — (those) accomplishing (this) were Arcadians

καὶ Ἀχαιούς, δὲ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα εἶναι
and Achæans, and (that) the rest (of the) army was (as)

οὐδέν· (καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἡμισυ
nothing; (and there-was indeed in — truth above half

τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ
of-the whole army (who were) Arcadians and

Ἀχαιοί). Οὖν εἰ σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ
Achæans). Therefore if they-were-wise, these (the Achæans

συστάντες, καὶ ἐλόμενοι στρατηγοὺς
and Arcadians) having-united, and choosing commanders

ἑαυτῶν, ἂν ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν καθ'
of-themselves, 'they might 'make the journey by

ἑαυτοὺς, καὶ πειρῶντο λαμβάνειν τι ἀγαθόν.
themselves, and endeavour to-procure something good

Ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ
(for themselves). This seemed (good and was adopted); and (the)

Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον, εἰ
Arcadians or Achæans leaving Cheirisophus, if

τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα, συνέστησαν·
any were with him, as-also Xenophon, joined-together

καὶ αἰροῦνται δέκα στρατηγούς ἐαυτῶν·
(with the rest); and choose ten commanders of-themselves;

δὲ τούτους ἐφηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης
and (that) these (when) they-had-decided by the majority

ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὅ τι δοκοίη. Οὖν μὲν ἰ
were-to-do that whatever might-be-decided-on. Therefore indeed the

ἀρχὴ παντός τοῦ Χειρισόφω ἐνταῦθα
command of-all the (army) by-Cheirisophus 'was then

κατελύθη ἕκτη ἢ ἐβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφ' ἧς
'dissolved 'on (the) 'sixth or seventh day after which

ἠρέθη.

he-was-chosen.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν
Xenophon however wished to-make the journey

κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν, νομίζων οὕτως εἶναι
in-common with them, thinking (that) thus 'it (would) 'be

ἀσφαλεστέραν, ἢ ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι
safer, than (that) each (should) go

ἰδίᾳ· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἐπειδεν αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι
his-own (way); but Neon persuaded him to-proceed

καδ' αὐτὸν, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου, ὅτι Κλέανδρος
by himself, having-heard from — Cheirisophus, that Cleander

ὁ ἄρμοστής ἐν Βυζαντιῷ φαίη ἥξειν εἰς
the governor in Byzantium said (that he would) come to

λιμένα Κάλπης ἔχων τριήρεις. Οὖν συνεβού
(the) harbour of-Calpe having galleys. Therefore he-ad-

λευσε διὰ ταῦτα ὅπως μηδεὶς μετὰσχοι
vised (him) for this (purpose) that no-one might-participate

ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται
to be) on the galleys, but they and the soldiers

αὐτῶν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἅμα ἀδυν
of-themselves. And Cheirisophus 'being indeed at-the-same-time 'dis-

μῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, δὲ ἅμα μι
heartened with-the (things) having-happened, and 'being also 'dis-

σῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα,
gusto: on-account of-these (things) (with) the army,

ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὃ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν
he-permits him to-do what he-wishes. Xenophon

δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεῖς
also moreover indeed (for some time) attempted (after) having-left

τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι· δὲ αὐτῷ θυομένῳ
the army to-sail-away; and he sacrificing (to)

Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ ἡγεμόνι, καὶ κοινουμένῳ πότερα
Hercules the conductor, and consulting (with him) whether

εἶη λῶον καὶ ἄμεινον στρατεύεσθαι, ἔχοντι
it-would-be better and more-desirable to-march, having

τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
— (those) remaining (with him) of-the soldiers,

ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ὃ θεὸς ἐσήμηνε τοῖς ἱεροῖς
or to-take-leave-of (them), the god signified by-the victims

συστρατεύεσθαι. Οὕτω τὸ στράτευμα
(that he ought) to-march-with (them). Thus the army

γίγνεται τριχῇ· Ἀρκάδες καὶ μὲν
became (divided into) three-parts; (the) Arcadians and indeed (the)

Ἀχαιοί, πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, πάντες ὀπλῖται·
Achæans, more than four-thousand, all heavy-armed-men;

δὲ Χειρισόφῳ μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους
but with-Cheirisophus (there were) indeed in (number) four-hundred

καὶ χιλίους ὀπλῖται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς
and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number)

ἐπτακοσίους, οἱ Θρᾷκες Κλεάρχου· δὲ Ξενο-
seven-hundred, (being) the Thracians of-Clearchus; and with-Xeno-

φῶντι μὲν εἰς ἐπτακοσίους καὶ
phon indeed (there were) in (number) seven-hundred and

χιλίους ὀπλῖται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς τρια-
a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number) three-

κοσίους· δὲ αὐτός μόνος εἶχεν ἵππικόν ἀμφι
hundred; and he alone had cavalry about

τετταράκοντα ἵππείας.
forty horsemen.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἀρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ
 And indeed the Arcadians having-procured ships from
 τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν, πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως, ἐξαίφνης
 the Heracleans, first set-sail, that-is, suddenly
 ἐπιπесόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, λάβοιεν
 making-an-irruption-against the Bithynians, (that) they-might-take
 ὅ τι πλεῖστα· καὶ ἀπο-
 [what most (they could); [as much as they could;] and de-
 βαίνουσιν εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης,
 scending (from their vessels) at (the) harbour of-Calpe,
 πῶς κατὰ μέσον τῆς Θράκης. Δὲ Χειρίσοφος
 somewhere about (the) middle — of-Thrace. And Cheirisophus
 εὐθὺς ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως
 'having immediately 'commenced (the journey) from the city
 τῶν Ἡρακλεωντῶν ἐπορεύετο πεζῇ διὰ τῆς χώρας·
 of-the Heracleans proceeded-forth on-foot through the territories
 δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀνέβαλε εἰς τὴν Θράκην
 (of the Heracleans); but when he-entered (into) — Thrace
 ἦει παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν· καὶ γὰρ ἡσδένει.
 he-went along the sea; for indeed he-was-sick.
 Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν πλοῖα, ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ
 Xenophon indeed having-taken vessels, disembarks on the
 ὅρια τῆς Θράκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος, καὶ
 confines of — Thrace and — Heraclea, and
 ἐπορεύετο διὰ μεσογαίας.
 proceeded through (the) inland (parts.)

CHAPTER III.

[Ὅν τρόπον μὲν οὖν τε ἡ ἀρχὴ Χειρι-
[IN-WHAT manner indeed therefore not-only the command (cf. Cheiri-
 σόφου τοῦ παντὸς κατελύθη, καὶ τὸ
sophus (over) the entire (army) was-dissolved, but-also (how) the
 στράτευμα τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς
army of-the Greeks was-divided into the (three parts,
 εἴρηται ἐπάνω.] Ἐκαστοὶ δ' αὐτῶν
has-been-related above.] Each indeed of-these (three divisions)
 ἐπραξαν τάδε. Οἱ Ἀρκάδες μὲν, ὥς ἀπέβησαν
fared thus. The Arcadians indeed, as they-had-disembarked
 νυκτὸς εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς
by-night at (the) port of-Calpe, proceeded to the
 πρώτας κώμας ὥς τριάκοντα στάδια
first (or nearest) villages (being) about thirty stadia
 ἀπὸ θαλάττης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο φῶς
from (the) sea. When indeed it-was (day) light
 ἕκαστος στρατηγὸς ἤγεν ἐπὶ κώμην τὸν λόχον
each commander led against (a) village the company
 ἑαυτοῦ· δὲ ὅποια ἐδόκει εἶναι μείζων
of-himself; but whatever (village) seemed to-be greater (than the rest)
 οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἤγον σύνδυο λόχους.
the commanders led 'two companies 'together (against it).
 Δὲ συνεβάλοντο καὶ λόφιν, εἰς ᾧ δέοι
And they-agreed also 'about (a) 'hill, on which it-might-be-
 πάντας ἀλίζεσθαι· καὶ, ᾗτε ἐπιπесόντες
proper for-all to-re-assemble; and, as falling-on
 ἐξαίφνης, ἔλαβον τε πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα,
(these people) suddenly, they-took not-only many slaves,
 καὶ περιεβάλοντο πολλὰ πρόβατα.
but-also surrounded many (flocks of) sheep (and other cattle).
 Δ' οἱ Θράκες οἱ διαφεύγοντες ἡδροί-
But the Thracians — (those namely) fleeing-away collected-

ζοντο· δὲ πολλοὶ διέφευγον, ὄντες πελτασταί,
together; and many escaped, being targeteers,

ὀπίτας ἐξ τῶν χειρῶν αὐτῶν
(from the) heavy-armed-men (even) from the hands of-them

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον
When indeed 'they (the Thracians) 'had-collected-together, 'they first

μὲν ἐπιτίθενται τῷ λόχῳ Σμίκρητος, ἐνὸς τῶν
indeed 'attacked the company of-Smicretes, one of-the

στρατηγῶν Ἀρκάδων, ἥδη ἀπιόντι εἰς τὸ
commanders 'of (the) 'Arcadians, now departing to the

συγκείμενον καὶ ἄγοντι πολλὰ χρήματα.
place-agreed-on and leading (with him) much booty.

Καὶ τέως μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐμάχοντο ἅμα
And for-a-while indeed the Greeks fought while

πορευόμενοι. Δὲ διαβάσει ἐπὶ
marching-forward. But 'they [the Greeks] 'being-about-to-cross over (a)

χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ τε ἀποκτιν-
ravine they-routed them, and 'they not-only 'killed

νύασι τὸν Σμίκρητα αὐτόν, καὶ πάντας τοὺς
— Smicres himself, but-also all the

ἄλλους· ἄλλου λόχου δὲ τῶν δέκα στρα-
others (with him); of-another company indeed of-the ten com-

τηγῶν, τοῦ Ἠγησάνδρου, κατέλιπον
manders, — (that namely) of-Hegesander, they-left

μόνους ὀκτῶ· καὶ Ἠγησάνδρος αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. Καὶ
only eight; and Hegesander himself was-saved. And

δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ συνῆλθον, οἱ μὲν σὺν
also the other captains came-together, —(some) indeed with

πράγμασιν, οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· δὲ οἱ
things, — (others) indeed without things; but the

Θραῖκες, ἐπεὶ εὐτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα,
'Thracians, when they-had-luckily-met (with) this — good-luck,

τε συνεβόων ἀλλήλους, καὶ συνελέγοντο
not-only cried-out (encouragingly) to-one-another, but-also assembled

ἐβρώμενος τῆς νυκτός. Καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα,
'strongly during-the night. And at-the-time (of) day light

καὶ πολλοὶ ἵππεις καὶ πελτασταὶ ἐτάττοντο
 with many horsemen and targeteers arranged-themselves 'in

κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρά-
 (a) 'circle round the hill, where the Greeks were.

τοπεδεύοντο, καὶ αἰεὶ πλείονες
 encamped, and continually more (of these Thracians)

συνέρρον. Καὶ ἀσφαλῶς προσέβαλλον πρὸς
 kept-flocking-together. And 'they safely 'rushed against

τοὺς ὀπλίτας· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶχον
 the heavy-armed-men; for indeed the Greeks had

οὔτε τοξότην, οὔτε ἀκοντιστήν οὔτε ἵππέα.
 neither (an) archer, or (a) javelin-man or (a) horseman.

Δ' οἱ προσδέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες
 And the (Thracians) running-up and riding-forwards

ἵκόντιζον· δὲ ὁπότε
 'threw (their) 'darts (among them); and when 'they [the

ἐπίοιεν αὐτοῖς, ῥαδίως ἀπέφευγον. Ἄλλοι
 [Greeks] advanced-against them, easily fled-away. | Others

δὲ ἐπετίδεντο ἄλλη.
 indeed attacked other (part) [some of the Thracians attacked

Καὶ μὲν τῶν πολλοὶ
 one part, others another part]. And indeed of-the (Greeks) many

ἐτιτρώσκοντο, δὲ τῶν οὐδεῖς· ὥστε
 were-wounded, but of-the (Thracians) none; so-that (the Greeks)

οὐκ ἐδύναντο κινηθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ
 'were not 'able to-move from the place, but

οἱ Θρᾶκες τελευτῶντες καὶ εἰργον αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ
 the Thracians | finishing even prohibited them from

τοῦ ὕδατος. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
 the water [finally even cut them off from water]. But when (the)

ἀπορία ἦν πολλή, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν·
 distress was much, they-began-to-speak about terms;

καὶ μὲν τὰ ἄλλα ὁμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, δὲ οἱ
 and indeed the other (terms) had-been-agreed-on by-them, but the

Θρᾶκες οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν ὁμήρους, τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 Thracians 'would not 'give hostages, the Greeks

αἰτούντων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο·
 requesting (them), but on this (the affair) was-in-check;
 μὲν δὴ τὰ τῶν Ἀρκάδων εἶχε
 indeed truly the (affairs) of-the Arcadians had (themselves)
 οὕτως.
 so.

Δὲ Χειρίσοφος πορευόμενος ἀσφαλῶς παρὰ
 But Cheirisophus proceeding safely along (the)
 θάλατταν, ἀφικνεῖται εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης.
 sea (coast), arrived at (the) harbour of-Calpe.
 Ξενοφῶντι δὲ πορευομένῳ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας,
 Xenophon however proceeding through the interior,
 οἱ ἵππεῖς προκαταδέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι
 — (his) horsemen hastening-on-before fall-in-with (some)
 πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. Καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθη-
 ambassadors proceeding some-where. And when they-had-
 σαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾷ αὐτοὺς εἰ
 conducted (them) to Xenophon, he-asked them if
 που ἦσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος, ὄντος
 any-where they-might-have-seen another army, being
 Ἑλληνικοῦ. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ
 Grecian. And — they-told (him) all the (things)
 γεγενημένα, καὶ ὅτι νῦν πολιορκοῦνται
 having-occurred, and that now 'they [the Greeks] 'were-besieged
 ἐπὶ λόφου, δὲ πάντες οἱ Θρᾷκες εἶεν περι-
 on (a) hill, and (that) all the Thracians were sur-
 κεκυκλωμένοι αὐτούς. Ἐνταῦθα. μὲν ἰσχυρῶς
 rounding them. Then indeed 'he strictly
 ἐφύλαττε τούτους τοὺς ἀνδράπους, ὅπως εἶεν
 'guarded these-same — men, so-that they-might-be
 ἡγεμόνες ὅπου δέοι. δὲ καταστήσας
 guides when it-might-be-required; and having-stationed
 σκοποὺς, συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἐλεξεν·
 scouts, he-assembled the soldiers and said:
 Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, οἱ μὲν τῶν Ἀρκάδων
 Men soldiers, — (some) indeed of-the Arcadians

τεθναῖσιν, δὲ οἱ λοιποὶ πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ τινος
have-died, but — (those) remaining are-besieged on some

λόφου. Δ' ἔγωγε νομίζω, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολοῦνται,
hill. And I-at-least think, if these are-destroyed,

οὐδ' εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν ἡμῖν,
(that there will) neither be any salvation for-us,

πολεμίων ὄντων μὲν οὕτω πολλῶν, δὲ οὕτω
(the) enemy being indeed so numerous, and so

τεθαρρήκοτων. Οὖν κράτιστον ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν
confident-and-daring. (It is) therefore best for-us to-assist

τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ὥς τάχιστα, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι
the men 'as speedily 'as-possible, so-that if as-yet

εἰσὶ σῶοι, μαχώμεθα, καὶ μὴ, λειφθέντες
they-are safe, we-may-fight (together), and not, being-left

μόνοι, καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν μόνοι. Νῦν μὲν οὖν
alone, even encounter-danger alone. Now indeed therefore

στρατοπεδευνώμεθα προελθόντες ὅσον
'let (us) 'encamp (after) having-marched-forward as-much

ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι καιρὸς εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι·
may seem to-be (the) proper (time) to the taking-of-supper;

δ' ἔως ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίῳ ἔχων τοὺς
and while 'we may 'be-marching-forward 'let Timasion having the

ἵππεις προελανέτω ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶς,
cavalry (with him) 'ride-on-before 'keeping us 'in-view,

καὶ σκοπεῖτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὥς μηδὲν
and 'let (him) 'reconnoitre the (country) in-front, that nothing

λάθῃ ἡμᾶς. (Δὲ καὶ παρέπεμψε
may-be-concealed from-us. (And 'he [Xenophon] also 'sent-about

εὐζώνους ἀνδρώπους τῶν γυμνήτων εἰς τὰ
active men of-the light-armed (troops) to the

πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως, εἴ που καθορῶεν
flanks and to the hills, so-that, if any-where they-might-see

τί ποθεν, σημαίνοιεν· ἐκέλευε δὲ
any-thing thence, they-might-signify (it); he-ordered (them) moreover

καίειν ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν καυσίμῳ.) Γὰρ
to-burn every-thing that they-might-meet-with combustible.) For

ἡμεῖς ἂν ἀποδραίημεν ἐνδένδε οὐδαμοῦ· γάρ μεν
 we can flee hence no-where; for indeed

ἔφη, πολλὴ ἀπιέναι πάλιν εἰς
 said-he, | (it is) much [it is a long way] to-go-hence back to

Ἡράκλειαν, δὲ πολλὴ διελθεῖν εἰς Χρυσόπολιν·
 Heraclea, and much to-go to Chrysopolis;

δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησίον· εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης
 and the enemy (being) near; to (the) harbour of-Calpe

δὲ, ἔνθα εἰκάζομεν Χειρίσοφον εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται,
 indeed, where we-suppose Cheirisophus to-be, if he-is-safe,

ὁδὸς ἐλαχίστη. Ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν ἔστιν
 (the) way (is) very-short. But truly there indeed there-are

οὔτε πλοῖα, οἷς ἀποπλευσοῦμεθα, τε μένουσι
 neither ships, in-which we-may-set-sail, but (we) remaining

αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια μιᾶς ἡμέρας.
 there neither is-there — provisions (enough) for-one day.

Δὲ τῶν πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων, σὺν τοῖς
 But — (those) besieged perishing, with the

μόνοις Χειρισόφου ἔστι κάκιον διακινδυνεύει,
 (men) alone of-Cheirisophus it-is worse to-face-danger,

ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων, πάντα ἐλδόντας εἰς
 than — (these) being-saved, all coming to

ταῦτόν· ἔχουσαι κοινῇ τῆς σωτηρίας.
 that (place) to-take-hold in-common of — (our) safety

Ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασαμένους τὴν γνώμην
 But it-is-necessary having-prepared-and-made-up — (our) minds

πορεύεσθαι, ὥς νῦν ἔστιν ἢ τελευτῆσαι
 to-proceed-forward, as (if) now it-is either to-have-ended (our lives)

εὐκλεῶς, ἢ ἐργάσασθαι κάλλιστον ἔργον,
 gloriously, or to-have-performed (a) most-honourable work,

τοσούτους Ἕλληνας σώσαντας. Καὶ ἴσως ὁ
 so-many Greeks being-saved. And perhaps — (some)

θεὸς ἄγει οὕτως, ὃς βούλεται ταπεινῶσαι
 god leads (the affair) thus, who wishes to-humiliate

τούς μεγαληγορήσαντας, ὥς πλεὺν φρονοῦντας,
 · · (those) having-spoken-boastfully, as 'being more 'wise

δὲ καταστῆσαι, ἡμᾶς, τοὺς ἀρχομένους
(than we are), and to-render, us, — beginning

ἀπὸ θεῶν, ἐντιμότερους
(every thing) from (consulting the) gods, more-honoured (than)

ἐκείνων. Ἀλλ' ἤ χρὴ ἔπесθαι, καὶ
they. But it-is-necessary to-follow (your leaders), and

προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὥς ἂν δύνῃσδε ποιεῖν
apply — (your) minds, that 'you may 'be-able to-perform

τὸ παραγγελλόμενον.
the (thing) ordered.

Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἤγειτο. Δὲ οἱ
Having-said this he-led (his men forward). And the

ἵππεις διασπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον εἶχε
cavalry spreading-themselves over as-much (ground) 'as had (itself)

καλῶς, ἔκαιον ἧ ἐβάδιζον, καὶ
safe-and-proper, (and) they-set-fire in-whatever (place) they-went, and

οἱ πελτασταί, ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα,
the targeteers, moving-abreast-of (them) along the heights,

ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα ἐώρων καύσιμα, καὶ δὲ ἡ
burned all what they-saw combustible, and also the

στρατιὰ, εἰ ἐντυγχάνοιεν τινι παρα-
army (did the same), if they-found any-thing

λειπομένῳ· ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ἐδόκει
left (unhurt); so-that all the place seemed

αἰδεσθαι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα εἶναι πολὺ. Ἐπεὶ
to-be-on-fire, and the army to-be large. When

δὲ ἦν ὥρα, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐκβάντες
indeed it-was time, they-encamped having-gone

ἐπὶ λόφον, καὶ ἐώρων τε τὰ πυρὰ τῶν πολεμίων,
on (a) hill, and they-saw also the fires of-the enemy,

(δὲ ἀπεῖχον ὥς τετταράκοντα σταδίου,) καὶ
(for they-were-distant about forty stadia,) and

αὐτοὶ ἔκαιον πλεῖστα ὥς ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ
they [the Greeks] burned as-much as they-could. When

δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλδη κατασβεῖν
however they-had-supped very-speedily. it-was-ordered to-extin-

νύναι πάντα τὰ πυρά. Καὶ μὲν ποιησάμενοι
 guish all the fires. And indeed having-stationed
 φυλακὰς τὴν νύκτα ἐκάδευδον· ἅμα δὲ
 sentinels for-the night they-went-to-sleep; at-the-time indeed
 τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ συν-
 — (of) day (light) having-prayed to-the gods, and putting-
 ταξάμενοι ὥς εἰς μάχην, ἐπορεύοντο τάχιστα ἢ
 themselves-in-order as for battle, they-marched-forth as-speedily as
 ἐδύναντο. Τιμασίῳν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἵππεῖς, ἔχοντες τοὺς
 they-could. Timasion and also the horsemen, having the
 ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες, γενόμενοι ἐλάνθανον
 guides and riding-on-before, having-got concealed
 αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες
 (and unknown to) themselves on the hill, where the Greeks
 ἐπολιοροῦντο. Καὶ ὁρῶσιν οὐχ οὔτε φίλιον
 were-besieged. And see not either (a) friendly
 στράτευμα, οὔτε πολέμιον, (καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι
 army, nor (an) inimical (one), (and they-announce
 ταῦτα πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα,)
 these (things) to — Xenophon and the army,)
 δὲ καὶ γραιδία γερόντια καὶ ὀλίγα πρόβατα
 but only old-women (and) old-men and (a) few sheep
 καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον
 and oxen left-behind. And indeed (at) the first
 ἦν θαῦμα, τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον·
 there-was wonder-and-surprise, what might-be the (thing) having-happened·
 ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο τῶν καταλελειμ-
 afterwards indeed also they-learned from — (those) left
 μένων, ὅτι οἱ Θρᾶκες μὲν εἰδὺς ἀφ' ἐσπέρας
 behind, that the Thracians indeed immediately after night-fall
 ὠχοντο ἀπιόντες· δὲ καὶ ἔφασαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
 departed going-away; and also they-said (that) the Greeks
 οἴχεσθαι ἔωδεν· δὲ ὅπου νῦν
 departed early-in-the-morning; but whither (that they did) now
 εἰδέναι.
 know

Οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
 — (Those) with Xenophon hearing these (things),
 πρὶν ἡρίστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο,
 after they-had-breakfasted, having-packed-up proceeded (on their
 βουλόμενοι ὥς τάχιστα συμμῖξαι τοῖς
 march), desiring as soon-as-possible to-have-joined the
 ἄλλοις εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης. Καὶ πορευόμενοι
 others at (the) harbour of-Calpe. And proceeding
 ἑώραν τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν
 they-perceived the track of-the Arcadians and Achæans
 κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐπὶ Κάλπης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο
 on the road to Calpe. When indeed they-had-arrived
 εἰς τὸ αὐτό, τε ἄσμενοί εἶδον
 at the same (spot), (they were) not-only pleased (when) they-saw
 ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἡσπάζοντο ὥςπερ ἀδελφούς. Καὶ
 one-another, but-also embraced like brothers. And
 οἱ Ἀρκάδες ἐπυνθάνοντο τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα,
 the Arcadians inquired of — (those) with Xenophon,
 τί κατασβέσειαν τὰ πυρὰ· γὰρ μὲν ἡμεῖς, ἔφασαν,
 why they-had-put-out the fires; for indeed we, said-they.
 ὥομεδα μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ οὐχ
 thought indeed at — first (that) you, when we-'did not
 ἑωρῶμεν τὰ πυρὰ, ἥξειν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τοὺς
 'see the fires, were-coming at — night against the
 πολεμίους· (καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὥς γε ἐδόκουν
 enemy; (and the enemy also, as at-least it-appeared
 ἡμῖν, δείσαντες τοῦτο ἀπῆλθον· γὰρ σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ
 to-us, fearing this departed; for nearly about
 τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπῆσαν). Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ
 that — time they-disappeared). But when you-'did not
 ἀφίκεσθε, δὲ ὁ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ὥομεδα ὑμᾶς,
 'arrive, and the time passed-by, we-thought (that) you
 πυνδομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβηθέντας
 hearing the (things) relating to-us, (that) being-alarmed
 οἴχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει
 you-departed fleeing to (the) sea; and it-seemed

ὕβριζεν τοὺς Ἑλληνας δεινὰ. Δέ ὁ λιμὴν
to-insult-and-treat the Greeks dreadfully. But the harbour

Κάλπης κεῖται ἐν μέσῳ μὲν ἐκατέρωθεν
of-Calpe lies in mid (way) indeed from-both-sides (for those)

πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, δὲ ἐν τῇ
sailing from Heraclea and Byzantium, and in the

θαλάττῃ ἐστὶ χωρίον προκείμενον, τὸ
sea there-is a-piece-of-land (there) projecting-forward, the (part)

μὲν αὐτοῦ καθεῖκον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν ἀπορρώξ
indeed of-it reaching-down to the sea (as a) steep

πέτρα, ὕψος ὅπῃ ἐλάχιστον οὐ μείον εἴκοσιν
rock, (the) height where (it is) the-least not less (than) twenty

ὀργυῶν· δὲ ὁ αὐχὴν, ὁ ἀνήκων εἰς τὴν
fathoms; and the neck, — (that namely) extending into the

γῆν τοῦ χωρίου, τὸ εὖρος μάλιστα
land of-the country, the breadth (of this neck is) at-most

τεττάρων πλέθρων· δὲ τὸ χωρίον
four plethra (or about four hundred feet), and the place

ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος ἱκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνθρώποις
within the neck is-sufficient for-ten-thousand men

οἰκῆσαι. Λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ
to-inhabit (or quarter on). (The) harbour indeed (is) under this —

πέτρα ἔχων τὸ αἰγιαλὸν πρὸς ἐσπέραν.
(same) rock having — (its) shore towards (the) west.

Δὲ κρήνη ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἀφθονος ῥέουσα ἐπὶ
And (a) spring of-sweet water and copiously flowing near

τῇ θαλάττῃ αὐτῇ, ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπιχρατείᾳ τοῦ
the sea itself, (is) under the command of — (this)

χωρίου. Δὲ μὲν πολλὰ ξύλα καὶ ἄλλα,
place. And indeed (there is) much wood and (of) different

δὲ πάνυ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα
(kinds), but especially much and fine (wood) fit-for-ship-building

ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. Δὲ τὸ ὄρος, τὸ
on this — (same) sea (coast). And the mountain, —

ἐν τῷ λιμένι, ἀνήκει μὲν εἰς μεσόγαιαν
(that namely) at the harbour, extends indeed to (the) interior

ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο γεῶδες
as-much-as to twenty stadia, and this (part is) earthy

καὶ ἄλιδον· δὲ τὸ παρὰ θάλατταν, πλέον
and clear-of-stones; and the (part) along (the) sea, more

ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντο-
than about twenty stadia, thick with-many and vari-

δαποῖς καὶ μεγάλους ξύλοις. Δὲ ἡ ἄλλη
ous and large trees. And the other (parts of the)

χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή· καὶ εἰσι πολλαὶ
country (were) beautiful and much (in extent); and there-were many

καὶ οἰκουμεναι κώμαι ἐν αὐτῇ· γὰρ ἡ γῆ
and populous villages in this (country); for the land

φέρει καὶ κριθάς, καὶ πυρούς, καὶ πάντα
produces — barley, and wheat, and all (kinds of)

ὄσπρια, καὶ μελίνας, καὶ σήσαμα, καὶ ἀρχοῦτα
legumes, and millet, and sesame, and abundance (of)

σῦκα, καὶ πολλὰς ἀμπέλους καὶ ἡδυοίνους, καὶ
figs, and many vines even producing-sweet-wine, and

πάντα τᾶλλα πλὴν ἐλαιῶν. Τοιαύτη
all else except (trees) of-oil [the olive tree]. Such

μὲν ἦν ἡ χώρα. Ἑσκήνων δὲ
indeed was the country. (The Greeks) 'pitched (their) 'tents indeed

ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· δὲ εἰς τὸ
on the shore by the sea; but into the

πόλισμα ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο
city (that) might have-been they-'did not 'wish

στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ
(to march and) encamp, but it-seemed (that) even

τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα εἶναι ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς,
[the to-go there [going there] was from design, (as if)

τινῶν βουλομένων κατοικίσαι πόλιν. Γὰρ οἱ
some (persons) were-wishing to-build (a) city. For the

πλειστοὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν οὐκ ἐκπεπλευκότες ἦσαν
most of-the soldiers 'had not 'sailed

σπάνει βίου ἐπὶ τούτῃ τὴν
(from home) for-want of-subsistence on this — (same)

μισθοφοράν, ἀλλ' ἀκούοντες τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου,
service, but hearing-of the virtue of-Cyrus,

οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄγοντες ἄνδρας, οἱ καὶ δὲ
— (some) indeed even bringing men. — (others) also indeed

προσανηλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ ἕτεροι τούτων
having-in-addition-spent money, (in the cause), and others of-these

ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μετέρας, δὲ
(soldiers) having-fled-from (their) fathers and mothers, and

καὶ οἱ καταλιπόντες τέκνα, ὥς κτησάμενοι
also — (some) leaving-behind (their) children, that they-might-acquire

χρήματ' αὐτοῖς, ἥζοντες πάλιν, ἀκούοντες καὶ
money for-them, (then) coming back, hearing also

τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πράτ-
(that) — others — (those namely) with Cyrus | were-

τειν πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ.
Joing many and good (things) [were acquiring wealth].

ὄντες τοιοῦτοι ἐπόδουν σώζεσθαι εἰς τὴν
Being such (men) they-desired | to-be-saved to —

Ἑλλάδα.

Greece [to return in safety to Greece].

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ τῆς συνόδοι
When indeed (the) next day of — (their) coming-together

εἰς ταῦτόν ἐγένετο, Ξενοφῶν ἐδύετο ἐπ'
in that (place) was, Xenophon sacrificed about (an)

ἐξόδῳ· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη ἐξάγειν ἐπὶ τὰ
expedition; for it-was necessary to-lead-out (the soldiers) for —

ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ καὶ ἐπενόει θάπτειν τοὺς
provisions; and also he-was-thinking (about) burying the

νεκροὺς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγένετο καὶ
dead. When indeed the victims happened (favourably) also

οἱ Ἀρκαῖδες εἶποντο, καὶ μὲν ἔθαψαν ἐκάστοις
the Arcadians accompanied (him), and indeed they-buried each-of

τοὺς νεκροὺς, τοὺς πλείστους, ἐνθαπερ ἔπεσον·
the dead, the most, where they-had-fallen,

(γὰρ ἤδη ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι, καὶ
'for already | they-were five-days'-ones, [they were five days dead,] and

ἦν ἔτι οὐχ οἶόν τε ἀναιρεῖν) · δε
 't-was now not possible to-'take (them) 'away); and
 συνενεγκόντες ἐνίους τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν,
 having-gathered-together some of — (those) from the road,
 ἔθαψαν ὥς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο ἐκ τῶν
 they-buried (them) as becomingly (as) they-could from — (their)
 ὑπαρχόντων · δὲ οὖς μὴ εὑρισκον
 existing (means); but (those) that they-'did not 'find
 ἐποίησαν μέγα κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐπέδεσαν
 they-made (a) large cenotaph for-them, and placed-on (it)
 στεφάνους. Δὲ ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεχώρησαν
 garlands. And having-performed these (things) they-returned
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ μὲν τότε δειπνήσαντες
 to the camp. And indeed then having-supped
 ἐκοιμήθησαν. Τῇ ὑστεραία δὲ πάντες οἱ στρα-
 they-went-to-sleep. On-the next-day indeed all the sol-
 τιῶται συνῆλθον · (δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε
 diers assembled-together; (but chiefly Agasias indeed (the,
 Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς συνῆγε · καὶ Ἱερώνυμος
 Stymphalian captain assembled (them); and Hieronymus (the)
 Ἡλεῖος λοχαγός, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν
 Elian captain, and — others the oldest of-the
 Ἀρκάδων). Καὶ ἐποίησαντο δόγμα, εἴαν τις
 Arcadians). And they-made (a) decree, if any (one)
 τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῇ ποιεῖν τὸ στράτευμα
 for-the rest (of the time) might-mention to-make the army
 διχα αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι θανάτῳ, καὶ
 divided-into-two (that) he should-be-punished with-death, and (that)
 τὸ στράτευμα ἀπιέναι κατὰ χώραν, ἥπερ
 the army (should) depart to (the) place-and-order which
 εἶχε πρόσθεν, καὶ τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς
 it-had before, and (that) the former generals
 ἄρχειν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη
 (should) command. And Cheirisophus indeed 'had already
 τετελευτήκει πῶν φάρμακον, πυρέττων ·
 died having-drunk (a) medicine, being-in-a-fever

δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσινᾶιος παρέλαβε τὰ ἐκεῖ-
 and Neon the Asinaean | received the (things) of-
 νοῦ
 aim [took his place].

Μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε·
 After this indeed Xenophon standing-up said:

Ὁ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὥς ἔοικε, δῆλον μὲν ὅτι
 O men soldiers, as it-seems, evident indeed that
 τὴν πορείαν ποιητέον πεζῇ· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ πλοῖα·
 the journey is-to-be-performed on-foot; for there-are not ships;

ἀνάγκη ἤδη πορεύεσθαι· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τὰ
 (it is) necessary now to-depart; for there-is not —
 ἐπιτήδεια μένουσι. Οὖν μὲν, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς
 food (for us) remaining. Therefore indeed, said-he, we

θυσόμεθα· δὲ ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι
 will-sacrifice; but you 'it (now) 'becomes to-prepare

ὥς μαχουμένους, εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε·
 as-for fighting, if ever even at-any-other-time (it was

γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀνατεδαρρήκασιν. Ἐκ
 necessary); for the enemy has-recovered-confidence. After

τούτου οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐδύοντο, δὲ Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς
 this the generals sacrificed, and Arexion (the) Arcadian

παρῆν μάντις· δὲ ὁ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης
 was-present (as) a seer; for — Silanus the Ambracian

ἤδη ἀποδεδράκει μισθωσάμενος πλοῖον ἐξ
 'had already 'fled having-hired (a) vessel from

Ἡρακλείας. Δὲ θυομένοις ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ
 Heraclea. And sacrificing about — (their) departure the

ἱερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην
 victims 'did not 'become (favourable). Therefore indeed on-that

τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο.
 — (same) day they-desisted (from their intended departure).

Καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὥς ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
 And some having-been-bold-enough said that — Xenophon,

βουλόμενος οἰκίσαι τὸ χωρίον, πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν
 desiring to-colonise the country, had-persuaded the augur

λέγειν ὡς τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται οὐ ἐπὶ
to-say that the victims were not (favourable) to (a

ἀφόδῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν Ξενοφῶν κηρύξας
departure. Then Xenophon having-made-proclamation (that,

τὸν βουλόμενον παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν
(he) wishing (it) might-be-present at the sacrifice

τῇ αὐρίον, καὶ παραγγείλας εἰ εἴη τις μάντις
on-the next-day, and having-notified if there-were any augurs

παρεῖναι ὡς συνδεασόμενον τὰ ἱερὰ,
(among them) to-be-present as inspecting-with (him) the victims,

ἔδνε· καὶ ἔνταῦθα πολλοί
'he (Xenophon) 'sacrificed; and then many (persons)

παρῆσαν. Δὲ θυομένων πάλιν εἰς τρίς
were-present. And sacrificing again to (the) third (time)

ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγίγνετο οὐκ.
in-respect to-the departure the victims were not (favourable).

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον χαλεπῶς.
[On this the soldiers had (it) uneasily; [the sol-

γὰρ καὶ τὰ ἐπιτή-
diers in consequence of this were distressed;] for even the provi-

δεια, ἃ ἔχοντες ἦλθον,
sions, [which having they-came, [which they had when they came,]

ἐπέλιπεν, καὶ οὐδεμία ἀγορὰ παρῆν.
failed, and no market [was-present [provided for them].

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελδόντων, Ξενοφῶν πάλιν
On this (the soldiers) assembling, Xenophon again

εἶπε· ὦ ἄνδρες, ὥς ὁρᾶτε μὲν, τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται
said: O men, as you-see indeed, the victims are

οὐπω· τῇ πορείᾳ· δ' ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους
not-yet (favourable) for — (our) journey; and I-see you wanting

τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀνάγκη
— provisions; therefore it-seems to-me to-be necessary

θύεσθαι περὶ οὗτοῦ τούτου. Τίς δ'
to-sacrifice respecting this same (thing). Some (one) however

ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται
standing-up said: And with-reason therefore the victims are

οὐ ἡμῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ ἤκουσά τινος
not (favourable) for-us; and as I have-heard from-some (one,

χθές ἀπὸ πλοίου ἡκοντος τοῦ αὐτομάτου,
yesterday (who was) from (a) vessel coming (in) — of-itself

ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἄρμοστής ἐκ Βυζαντίου
(accidentally), that Cleander the governor of Byzantium

μέλλει ἔξειν, ἔχων πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις. Ἐκ τούτοι
is-about coming, having vessels and galleys. On this

δὲ ἐδόκει μὲν πᾶσιν ἀναμένειν· δ' ἦν
(account) then it-seemed indeed to-all (proper) to-remain; but it-was

ἀνάγκη ἐξιέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ
necessary to-go-out for — provisions. And about this

πάλιν ἐδύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ τὰ ἱερά
it-was again 'sacrificed to three (times), however the victims

ἐγίγνετο οὐ. Καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἰόντες
were not (favourable). And now even (the soldiers) going

ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν Ξενοφώντος, ἔλεγον ὅτι ἔχοιεν
to the tent of-Xenophon, said that they-had

οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δ' ὁ ἔφη ἂν οὐκ
no — provisions. And — he-said (that) 'he could not

ἐξαγαγεῖν, τῶν ἱερῶν μὴ γιγνομένων.
'lead (them) 'out, the victims not being (favourable).

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδύετο, καὶ σχεδόν
And again on-the next-day it-was-sacrificed, and nearly

τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν
in-some (manner) all the army on-account-of — it-being-a-solicitude

ἅπασιν, ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· δὲ τὰ
to-every (one), were-crowded-in-a-circle round the victims; but the

θύματα ἐπιλελοίπει. Δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν οὐκ
victims were-deficient. But the generals indeed 'did not

ἐξῆγον, δὲ συνεκάλεσαν Ξενοφῶν
'lead-out (the troops), but 'called (them) 'together. Xenophon

οὖν εἶπεν· Ἴσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσί.
therefore said: Perhaps the enemy have-been-assembled-together.

καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες
and (it is) necessary (that, we-fight; if therefore leaving-behind

τὰ σκεῖνῃ ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὥς ἵοιμεν
— (our) baggage in the strong places so-that we-may-go

παρεσκευασμένοι εἰς μάχην, ἴσως τὰ ἱερὰ αἰ
prepared for battle, perhaps the victims may

προχωροῖν ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
become-favourable to-us. But the soldiers hearing (this)

ἀνέκραγον ὥς δέοι οὐδὲν ἄγειν εἰς τὸ χωρίον,
cried-out | that it-ought not to-lead to the place,

ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι

[that he ought not to lead them to such strong place,] but to-sacrifice

ὥς τάχιστα. Καὶ μὲν ἦν οὐκέτι πρόβατα,
as speedily (as possible). And indeed there-was no-longer sheep,

δὲ πριάμενοι βοῦς ὑπὸ ἀμάξης ἐδύνοντο· καὶ
but buying (an) ox from (a) wagon they-sacrificed; and

Ξενοφῶν ἐδεήθη Κλεάνορος τοῦ Ἀρκάδος προ-
Xenophon besought Cleanor the Arcadian to-be-

δυμεισθαι, εἰ εἴη τι ἐν
prompt-of-mind (to act), if there-might-be any-thing (encouraging) in

τούτῳ. Ἀλλ' ὥς ἐγένετο οὐδὲ.

this (sacrifice). But even-thus there-was neither (anything favourable)

Δὲ Νέων μὲν ἦν στρατηγὸς τὸ μέρος
But Neon indeed was (now) general in-the place

Χειρισόφου· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὥς
of-Cheirisophus; and when he-saw the men, | that

εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ,
they-had (it) grievously in — (their) want, [that the men were suffer-

βουλόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
ing much from want of food,] wishing to-relieve-and-gratify them,

εὗρων τινα ἄνθρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς
(and) having-found (a) certain man (a) Heracleean, who

ἔφη εἰδέναι κώμας ἐγγὺς, ὅθεν εἴη
said (that) he-knew (of) villages near, whence it-might-be (possible)

λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν
to-procure — provisions, he-proclaimed (by a herald that) — (any one)

βουλόμενῳ ἵέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὥς ἡγεμόνος
of-those-wishing to-go for — provisions, that (a) guide

ισομένου.

Ἐξέρχονται δὴ εἰς
would-be (for them). (Then) they-departed indeed to (the number of)

δισχιλίουσιν ἀνδράσιν σὺν δορατίοις, καὶ ἀσχοῖς καὶ
two-thousand men with spears, and leather-bags and

δυλάκοις, καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγεῖοις. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν
sacks, and other receptacles. When indeed they-were

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ διεσπείροντο, ὥς ἐπὶ τὸ
in the villages, and were-dispersed, as for the

λαμβάνειν, οἱ ἵππεῖς Φαρναβάζου
taking (of what they wanted), the cavalry of-Pharnabazus

πρῶτοι ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς (γὰρ ἦσαν βεβοη-
first fell-upon them (for they-were (come) help-

δηκότες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς) βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυ-
ing the Bithynians) desiring with the Bithy-

νοῖς, εἰ δύναιντο, ἀποκωλύσαι τοὺς Ἑλληνας
nians, if they-could, to-prevent the Greeks (that

μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ
they might not enter into — Phrygia; these — (same)

ἵππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι οὐ μείον πεντακοσίους τῶν
cavalry killed not less (than) five-hundred of-the

ἀνδρῶν· οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ ἀνέφυγον ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Ἐκ
men; the rest indeed fled-away to the mountain. Or

τούτου τις τῶν ἀποφυγόντων ἀπαγγέλλει
this some (one) of — (those) having-fled announced

ταῦτα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
these (things) at the camp. And — Xenophon,

ἐπεὶ τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγεγένητο ταύτῃ τῇ
when the victims 'had not 'been (favourable) that —

ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἀμάξης, (γὰρ ἦν οὐκ
day, taking (an) ox from (a) wagon, (for there-were no

ἄλλα ἱερεῖα,) σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει, καὶ οἱ
other cattle,) having-sacrificed he-went-to-give-help, and the

ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες
others — (those namely) just-to thirty years-of-age all

Καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς ἀνδράς
'went with him). And bringing-off — (those) men

λοιπούς, ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
left, they-returned to the camp. And

ἦν ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
it-was now indeed about sun set; and the Greeks

ἔχοντες μάλ' ἀδύμως ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο,
being much dejected were-'taking (their) 'supper, (when)

καὶ ἑξαπίνης τινες τῶν Βιθυνῶν ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς
even suddenly some of-the Bithynians fell-upon the

προφύλαξι διὰ τῶν λασίων, μὲν κατέκτανον
advanced-guards through the thickets, (and) indeed they-killed

τούς, δὲ τούς ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς
— (some of the Greeks), and — (others) they-pursued just to

τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης πάντες
the camp. And (a) great-noise arising all

οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδραμον εἰς τὰ ὄπλα· καὶ διώκειν
the Greeks ran to — arms; and to-pursue

μὲν, καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ
indeed, and to-move the camp at-night 'did not

ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλές· γὰρ τὰ χωρία ἦν δασέα·
'seem to-be safe; for the country was full-of-thickets;

δὲ ἐνυκτέρευνον ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, φυλαττόμενοι
and they-passed-the-night under — arms. guarded

ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι.
by-sufficient sentinels.

CHAPTER V.

Οὕτω μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα. Δὲ ἅμα τη
 Thus indeed they-passed the night. But at-the-time-of --

ἡμέρα οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἤγοῦντο εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν
 day (break) the generals went to the strong

χωρίον, δὲ οἱ εἶποντο, ἀναλαβόντες τὰ
 place, and the (men) followed, bringing-with (them) — (their)

ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. Πρὶν δὲ εἶναι ὥραν
 arms and — (their) baggage. Before indeed it-was time (for)

ἀρίστου ἀπετάφρευσαν εἰς τὸ χωρίον ἧ ἡ
 dinner they-had-completed-a-trench at the place at-which the

εἴσοδος ἦν, καὶ ἅπαν ἀπεσταύ-
 entrance (to it) was, and had-fenced-off (the) whole (place) 'with-pali-

ρωσαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλος. Καὶ πλοῖον
 sades, leaving three gates. And (a) vessel

ἦκεν ἐκ Ἡρακλείας ἄγον ἄλφιτα, καὶ ἱερεῖα,
 came from Heraclea bringing barley-meal, and cattle,

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς πρῶτὶ ἐθύετο
 and wine. And Xenophon having-risen early he-sacrificed

ἐπεξόδια, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ γίνεταί ἐπὶ
 for-a-successful-expedition, and the victims were (favourable) on

τοῦ πρώτου ἱερείου. Καὶ ἤδη ἐχόντων
 the first victim. And already having (made an)

τέλος τῶν ἱερῶν, ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παρρράσιος
 end of-the sacrifices, the augur Arexion (the) Parrhasian

ὄρᾳ αἰσίων ἀετὸν, καὶ κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα
 saw (a) lucky eagle, and requested — Xenophon

ἡγεῖσθαι. Καὶ διαβάντες τὴν τάφρου
 to-lead (forth). And (the men) crossing the trench

τίθενται τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν
 ranged-themselves (under) — arms, and it-was-proclaimed-by-the

τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀριστήσαντας ἐξιέναι.
 heralds (that) the soldiers having-dined would-march-out

σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, δὲ καταλιπεῖν τὸν ὄχλον
with — (their) arms, but to-leave the crowd

καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ.
(of camp-followers) and the slaves there (in the camp)

Μὲν δὴ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξήεσαν, δὲ οὐ Νέων.
indeed truly the others all marched-out, out not Neon:

γὰρ ἐδόκει κάλλιστον καταλιπεῖν τοῦτον
for it-seemed the-best to-leave this-one (namely Neon)

φύλακα τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Ἐπεὶ
(as a) guard of — (what was) in the camp. When

δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλιπον
indeed the captains and the soldiers had-left

αὐτούς, αἰσχυνόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων
them, being-ashamed not to-follow the others

ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ
going-out, 'they (then) 'left there — (those) above

πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν
five and forty years-of-age. And these indeed

ἔμενον, δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. Πρὶν δὲ διεληλυ
remained, but the others proceeded-forth. Before indeed they-had-

δέσναι πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια ἤδη ἐνέτυχον
gone fifteen stadia 'they already 'met-with

νεκροῖς· καὶ ποιησάμενοί τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος
dead-bodies; and having-placed the rear of-the wing

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους νεκροὺς φανέντας, ἔθαπτον
by the first dead-bodies seen, they-buried

πάντας, ὅπόσους τὸ κέρασ ἐπελάμβανε.
(them) all, as-many-as the wing took-in (or covered).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔθαψαν τοὺς πρώτους, προ-
When indeed they-had-buried — (those) first (found), pro-

αγαγόντες, καὶ κῆδεις ποιησάμενοί τὴν οὐρὰν
ceeding-forward, and again having-placed the rear

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων,
along the first of-the unburied (they now met with),

ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὅπόσους ἡ στρατιά
they-buried (in) the same manner. as-many-as the army

ἐπελάμβανεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤκον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν
covered. When indeed they-came to the road

τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα δὲ
— (that namely leading) from the villages, where indeed

ἔκειντο ἄδρόοι, συνενεγκόντες
(the dead) lay close-together, 'carrying (them) 'together

ἔδαψαν αὐτούς.
they-buried them.

Ἦδη δὲ πέρα μεσοῦσης τῆς ἡμέρας
| Now indeed beyond having-been-in-the-middle (of) the day

προαγαγόντες τὸ στράτευμα
[it was now past mid-day] having-led-forward the army

ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν, ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
beyond the villages, (the men) took — provisions,

ὃ τι τις ὀρώη, ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος. Καὶ
whatever any-one saw, within the line. And

ἐξαίφνης ὀρῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας
suddenly they-saw the enemy passing-over (and)

κατὰ τινὰς λόφους ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου,
down some hills from the opposite (side before them),

τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, τε πολλοὺς
drawn-up in line, (there being) not-only many

ἰππέας καὶ πεζοὺς· γὰρ καὶ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ
horsemen but-also foot-soldiers; for also Spithridates and

Ῥαδίνης ἤκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν
Rhathines had-come from Pharnabazus having — (their)

δύναμιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμοι κατεῖδον τοὺς
forces. When indeed the enemy saw the

Ἕλληνας, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντε-
Greeks, they-halted being-distant from-them about fif-

καίδεκα σταδίους. Ἐκ τούτου Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις
teen stadia. On this Arexion the augur

τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐθὺς σφαγιάζεται, καὶ τὰ σφάγια
of-the Greeks immediately sacrificed, and the victims

ἐγένετο καλὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. Ἐνθα δὴ Ξενο-
were favourable from the first. Then indeed Xero-

φῶν λέγει· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὧ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί,
phon said: It-seems to-me, O men commanders, (that,

ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους
we-ought-to-station-behind the (principal) line companies (as)

φύλακας, ἵνα που ἂν δέη, ὥσιν οἱ
guards, that where 'it might 'be-necessary, there-may-be —

ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι.
(those) supporting the line, and the enemy

τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ
thrown-into-disorder may-fall-upon — (those) drawn-up-in-order and

ἀκεραίους. Ταῦτα συνεδόκε παῖσι. Ὑμεῖς μὲν
fresh. This was-approved by-all. You indeed

τοίνυν, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς
therefore, said-he [Xenophon], advance on-the (road) to the

ἐναντίους, ὥς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ
(enemy) in-front (of us), that we-'may not 'stand-still, since

εἶδομεν καὶ ὤφθημεν τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ
we-have-seen and have-been-seen (by) the enemy; I indeed

ἥξω καταχωρίσας τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους,
will-come (after) having-stationed — (those) hindmost companies,

ἢ περ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν.
in-the-manner-which it-seemed (good) to-you.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἥσυχτοι προῆγον· ὁ
On this indeed — (they) quietly advanced; —

δὲ ἀφελὼν

(Xenophon) indeed having-taken-from (and detached from the main body

τὰς τρεῖς τελευταίας τάξεις, ἀνὰ δια-
the three hindmost ranks (or companies), about two

κοσίους ἄνδρας ἐπέτρεψε τὴν μὲν
hundred men (each) ordered the (one of them) indeed

ἐφέπεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιὸν, ἀπολιπόντας ὡς πλέθρον.
to-follow on the right, being-distant about (a) plethrum

Σαμόλας Ἀχαιοὺς ἤρχε τῆς ταύτης
[100 feet]. Samolas (the) Achæan commanded — this

τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐχώρισεν ἔπεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ
division, the (other) indeed he-detached to follow at the

μέσῳ· Πυρρρίας Ἀρχάς ἤρχε ταύτης· δὲ
centre: Pyrrhias (the) Arcadian commanded this (division); and

τὴν μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εἰωνύμῳ· Φρασίας
the (third) one (was stationed) on the left; Phrasias (the)

Ἀθηναῖος ἐφεστῆσει ταύτῃ. Δὲ προΐόντες, ἐπεὶ
Athenian commanded it. But proceeding-forward when

οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ μεγάλῳ
— (those) leading (in advance) got to (a) large

νάπει καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν, ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ
woody-revine and difficult-to-pass, they-halted, not-knowing if

τὸ νάπος εἴη διαβατέον. Καὶ παρεγγυῶσι
the woody-ravine might-be passable. And requested

στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ
(the) generals and captains to-come-forward to the

ἡγούμενον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, θαυμάσας ὃ τι
leading (division). And — Xenophon, having-wondered what

εἴη ἰσχον τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τῇ
it-might-be detaining the progress, and speedily hearing the

παραγγυήν, ἐλαύνει τάχιστα ἢ ἐδύνατο.
announcement, pushes-on (his horse) as-fast as he-could.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον Σοφαίνετος ὢν πρεσβύ-
When indeed they-came-together Sophænetus being the-oldest

τατος τῶν στρατηγῶν λέγει, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἄξιον
of-the generals says, that it-was not worthy

βουλῆς, εἰ ὃν τοιοῦτον τὸ νάπος ἐστὶ
of-consideration, whether being such — (a) woody-ravine it-is

διαβατέον.

necessary-to-pass (it).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν·
And — Xenophon speedily seizing (an opportunity) said.

Ἄλλ' μὲν ἴστε με, ὦ ἄνδρες, πῶ ἐδελοῦσιον
But indeed you-know me, O men, (that) 'I never voluntarily

προξενήσαντα οὐδένα κίνδυνον ὑμῖν· γὰρ ὁρῶ
'brought any danger on-you; for I-see

ὑμᾶς οὐ δεομένους δόξης εἰς ἀνδρείότητα, ἀλλὰ
you not wanting reputation for valour, but

σωτηρίας. Δὲ νῦν ἔχει οὕτως· ἔστιν σι
of-safety. But now it-has (itself) so; it-is not

μὲν ἀπελθεῖν ἐνδένδε ἀμαχί· γὰρ ἦν ἡμεῖς
indeed (for us) to-depart hence without-fighting; for if we

μη ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι, ὁπότεν
do not 'advance against the enemy, these, when

ἀπίωμέν, ἔψονται καὶ ἐπιπесοῦνται ἡμῖν. Ὅρατε
we-retreat, will-follow and attack us. Consider

δὴ πότερον κρεῖττον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνδρας,
indeed whether (it is) better to-go against the men

προβαλλομένους τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ μεταβαλ
'throwing (our) — arms 'before (us), or 'hurl-

λομένους, θεάσασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπι-
ing (them) 'back, to-perceive the enemy fol-

όντας ὀπισθεν ἡμῶν. Ἴστε μέντοι ὅτι μὲν τὸ
lowing behind us. Know however that indeed the

ἀπιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων ἔοικε οὐδενὶ καλῶ, δὲ
fleeing from (an) enemy looks-like nothing honourable, but

τὸ ἐφέπεσθαι ἐμποιεῖ θάρσος καὶ τοῖς
— to-follow 'puts confidence (and courage) even 'into the

καχίοσι. Ἐγὼγ' οὖν ἂν ἥδιον
cowardly. I-at-least therefore would (as a) more-pleasant (thing)

ἐποίμην σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἢ ἀπο-
pursue with half (the number of men) (rather) than re-

χωροῖην σὺν διπλασίοις. Καὶ τούτους
treat with double (the number). And (as respects) these

οἶδ' ὅτι, ἡμῶν μὲν ἐπιόντων, ὑμεῖς οὐδ'
(men) I-know that, we indeed attacking, you 'do not

ἐλπίζετε αὐτοὺς δέξασθαι ἡμᾶς· δὲ ἀπιόντων,
'expect (that) they will-receive us; but retreating,

πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι.
'we all 'believe that they-will-dare to-follow-after

Δὲ ποιήσασθαι χαλεπὸν νάπος τὸ ὀπισθεν
(us). But to-have-placed (a) difficult ravine in — (our) rear

διαβάντας, μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι, ἄρ' οὐχὶ
(after) having-crossed (it), being-about to-fight, is-not-this

καὶ ἄξιον ἄρπάσαι; γὰρ μὲν ἐγὼ
even (an advantage) worth to-have-seized-on? for indeed I,

τοῖς πολεμίοις βουλοίμην πάντα
(as respects) the enemy, wish (that) all (places)

ἂν φαίνεσθαι εὐπορα, ὥστε ἀποχωρεῖν· δέ
may appear easy-to-pass-through, so-that they-may-retreat; but

καὶ δεῖ ἡμᾶς διδάσκεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ
even it-is-proper for-us to-learn from (the nature) of-the

χωρίου, ὅτι ἔστι οὐ σωτηρία μὴ νικῶσι.
place, that there-is no safety unless (our men) conquer.

Δ' ἔγωγε θαυμάζω εἰ τις νομίζει καὶ τὸ τοῦτο
But I-at-least wonder if any-one thinks even — this

νάπος εἶναι μᾶλλον φοβερόν τῶν ἄλλων χωρίων
ravine to-be more formidable (than) the other places

ἧν διαπεπορεύμεθα. Πῶς μὲν γὰρ τὸ πεδίων
which we-have-passed-through. How indeed therefore (is) the plain

διαβατόν, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἱππέας
to-be-passable, if we-'do not 'conquer the cavalry.

Πῶς δὲ ὄρη, ἃ διεληλύδα-
How indeed (will the) mountains (be passable) which we-have-crossed-

μεν, ἣν τοσοῖδε πελτασταὶ ἐφέπωνται;
over, if so-great-a-number-of targeteers pursue (us)?

Δ' ἣν δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν,
But if indeed we-'are even 'saved (so far as) to (the) sea,

πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα οὔτε
how-great a ravine (will) the Pontus (Euxinus be)? where neither

ἔστι πλοῖα τὰ ἀπάξοντα, οὔτε σῖτος ᾧ
are vessels — for-'carrying (us) 'away, nor provisions by-which

θρεψόμεθα μένοντες· δὲ δεήσει, ἣν
we-may-be-nourished (while) remaining; and it-will-be-necessary, if

γενωμέθα ἐκεῖ θᾶπτον, θᾶπτον ἐξί-
we-get there more-speedily, the-more-speedily (will we have) to-go-

ναὶ ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὐκ οὖν κρεῖττον
out for — provisions. (Is it) not therefore better

μάχεσθαι νῦν ἡριστηκότας, ἢ αὔριον ἀναρίστους;
to-fight now having-breakfasted, than to-morrow without-breakfast!

Ἄνδρες, τὰ ἱερὰ τε καλὰ ἡμῖν, οἱ οἶωνοι
Men, the sacrifices indeed (are) favourable to-us, the omens

τε αἰσιοι, τε τὰ σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν
likewise auspicious, and the victims most-favourable; let us-go

ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. Οὐκ ἔτι δεῖ
against the men (our enemies). It-'is not moreover 'proper (that)

τούτους, ἐπεὶ πάντως εἶδον ἡμᾶς,
those, since 'they certainly 'have-seen us, (should be allowed)

δειπνῆσαι ἡδέως, οὐδὲ σκηνῆσαι ὅπου ἂν
to-sup comfortably, or to-encamp where 'they might

θέλωσι.
wish.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι, καὶ
Then the captains requested (him) to-lead-on, and

οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγε. Καὶ ὁς ἡγεῖτο, παραγ-
no-one objected. And — (he) led-on (the troops), having

γείλας διαβαίνειν, ἢ ἕκαστος
ordered (them) to-cross-over, (in the place) in-which each-one

ἐτύγχανε ὦν τοῦ νάπους· γὰρ ἐδόκει
found (himself) being (at) the ravine; for he-thought (that)

τὸ στράτευμα ἂν οὕτω γενέσθαι πέραν ἀδρόον
the army might thus get over together

θᾶπτον, ἢ εἰ ἐξεμηνύοντο κατὰ την γεφυραν,
more-speedily, than if they-defiled over the bridge,

ἣ ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν,
which was on the ravine. When indeed they-had-crossed-over,

παριῶν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες,
going-on along the line he-said: Men,

ἀναμιμνήσκεσθε ὅσας μάχας, σὺν
remember how-many battles, with (the assistance of)

τοῖς θεοῖς, νενικήκατα ἰόντες
the gods, (you have fought and) conquered (by) coming-to

ὁμόσε, καὶ οἷα οἱ φεύγοντες πολεμίους
close-quarters, and what — (those) fleeing (from the) enemy

πάσχουσι· καὶ ἐννοήσατε τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐσμεν ἐπὶ
suffer; and you-will-reflect-on this, that we are

ταῖς θύραις τῆς Ἑλλάδος. Ἄλλ' ἔπεσθε τῷ
the gates of — Greece. But follow —

Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόνι, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε ἀλλήλους
Hercules (your) conductor, and exhort one-another

ὀνοματί. Ἡδὺ τοι νῦν εἰπόντα
by-name. (It is) pleasing indeed (to think, that he) now saying

καὶ ποιήσαντά τι ἀνδρεῖον καὶ καλόν,
and doing any-thing brave and honourable, (that he will)

παρέχειν μνήμην ἑαυτοῦ ἐν οἷς ἐδέλει.
furnish (a) remembrance of-himself among (those) whom he-wishes

ἔλεγε ταῦτα παρελαύνων, καὶ
(to remember him). He-said these (things) riding-along, and

ἴμα ἵφηγειτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ
at-the-same-time he-led-on in line, and (the generals)

ποιησάμενοι τοὺς πελταστὰς ἑκατέρωθεν
having-formed the targeteers on-each (flank)

ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. Παρηγγέλλετο
they-marched-forth against the enemy. He-ordered

δὲ ἔχειν μὲν τὰ δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν
(them) however to-have indeed the spears on the right

ὤμον, ἕως σημαῖνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα
shoulder, until a-signal-should-be-given with-the trumpet; then

δὲ καθέντας εἰς προβολὴν ἔπεσθαι
indeed having-lowered (them) for (a) charge to-follow (their

βάδην καὶ μηδένα διώκειν
leaders in a regular) step and (that) no-one (was) to-advance

δρόμῳ. Ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρήγει ΖΕΥΣ
'in (a) 'run. On this (the) watch-word came JUPITER

ΣΩΤΗΡ, ΗΡΑΚΛΗΣ ΗΓΕΜΩΝ. Οἱ
(THE) PRESERVER, HERCULES (THE) LEADER. The

πολέμιοι δὲ ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες ἔχειν
enemy however remained-in-place, thinking (that) they-had (a)

καλὸν χωρίον. Δ' ἔπει οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπλησίαζον,
fine position. But when the Greeks approached,

πελτασταὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τοὺς
'and their) targeteers having-shouted ran against the

πολεμίους πρὶν ^{τινα} κελεύειν· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
 enemy before (that) any-one ordered (them); but the enemy
 ἀντίοι ὤρμησαν, τε οἱ ἵππεις καὶ τὸ στίφος
 opposite rushed-on, not-only the cavalry but-also the mass
 τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστάς
 of-the Bithynians; and put-to-flight the targeteers
 Ἄλλ' ἐπεὶ ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὀπλιτῶν ὑπηντίαζε
 But when the line of-the heavy-armed-men came-up
 πορευομένη ταχὺ, καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ
 advancing quickly, and at-the-same-time the trumpet
 ἐφθέγγετο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
 sounded and they-sang-the-pæan, and after this
 ἠλάλαζον, καὶ ἅμα καδίεσαν τὰ δόρατα,
 they-shouted, and at-the-same-time they-couched — (their) spears,
 ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο,
 then the enemy 'did no-longer (stand or) 'receive
 ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. Καὶ Τιμασίῳ μὲν ἔχων
 (their attack), but fled. And Timasion indeed having
 τοῦς ἵππεις ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσους
 the cavalry pursued (them), and killed as-many.
 περ ἐδύναντο, ὥς ὄντες ὀλίγοι. Δὲ μὲν
 as he-could, (as) (they) being (but) few. And indeed
 τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν πολεμίων κατ' ὃ οἱ
 the left (wing) of-the enemy against (that) which the
 Ἕλληνες ἵππεις ἦσαν εὐθὺς διεσπάρη,
 Greek cavalry were (opposed to) 'was immediately 'dispersed,
 δὲ τὸ δεξιὸν, ἅτε οὐ διωκόμενον σφόδρα,
 but the right (wing), as not being-followed closely,
 συνέστη ἐπὶ λόφου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον
 stood-collected on (a) hill. When indeed the Greeks saw
 αὐτοὺς ὑπομένοντας, ἐδόκει εἶναι τε
 them making-a-stand, it-seemed (to them) to-be not-only
 ῥᾶστον καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον ἶναι ἐπ' αὐτούς.
 the-easiest but-also the-safest to-go against them.
 Παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπεκείντο· δ'
 Singing the-pæan therefore 'they immediately 'attacked (them); but

οἱ οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. Καὶ ἔνταῦθα οἱ
 -- they-'did not 'sustain (an attack). And then the
 πελτασται ἐδίωκον, μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη·
 targeteers pursued, until the right (wing) was-dispersed;
 δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀπέδανον· γὰρ τὸ ἵππικὸν φόβον παρείχε,
 but few died: for the cavalry fear was-present-to
 τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὃν πολὺ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
 (them), the (cavalry) of-the enemy being numerous. When however
 οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον τε τὸ ἵππικὸν Φαρναβάζου ἔτι
 the Greeks saw not-only the cavalry of-Pharnabazus still
 συνεστηκός, καὶ τοὺς Βιθυννοὺς ἱππέας συναθροίζο-
 standing-together, and the Bithynian cavalry flock-
 μένους πρὸς τοῦτο, καὶ ἀπὸ τινὸς λόφου καταδεω-
 ing to these, and from (a) certain hill looking-
 μένους τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρηκεσαν μὲν,
 down-on the (things) going-on, (though) they-were-tired indeed,
 ὁμῶς δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ εἶναι ἰτέον ἐπὶ
 yet however it-seemed even to-be (best and) necessary — (to attack)
 τούτους οὕτως ὅπως δύναιντο, ὥς
 them in-as-much as they-might-be-able, that after-'they [the enemy]
 ἀναπαύσαιντο μὴ τεδαρρῆκότες.
 had-'rested (they might) not become-confident-and-bold.
 Συνταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται.
 Being-drawn-up-in-close-order 'they [the Greeks] indeed 'advanced.
 Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἱππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ
 Then the hostile cavalry flee down (the hill)
 τοῦ πρανοῦς, ὁμοίως ὥσπερ οἱ διωκόμενοι
 — precipitately, in-the-same-manner as-if — (they) were-being-pursued
 ὑπὸ ἱππέων· γὰρ νάπος ὑπεδέχετο αὐτοὺς, ὃ
 by cavalry; for (a) ravine received them, which
 οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ᾔδεσαν, ἀλλὰ προαπετρά
 the Greeks 'did not 'know (of), as they-had-turned
 ποντο διώκοντες· γὰρ ἦν ὀψέ. Δὲ ἐπανελ-
 back (from) pursuing; for it-was late. But return-
 δόντες ἐνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο,
 ing (to the place) where the first encounter happened.

στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, ἀπήεσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν
 having-erected (a) trophy, they-went-off towards (the) sea
 περὶ ἡλίου δυσμᾶς· δ' ἦσαν ὥς ἐξήκοντα σταδιοὶ
 about sun set; and it-was about sixty stadia
 ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
 to the camp.

CHAPTER VI

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ
 THEN indeed the enemy had (to do) about the
 ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας
 (affairs) of-themselves, and removed both — (their) families
 καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι προσωτάτω ἐδύναντο· οἱ
 and — effects 'as far-off 'as they-could; the
 Ἕλληνες δὲ προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ
 Greeks however 'waited indeed 'for Cleander and
 τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὥς ἥξοντα·
 the galleys and the (transport) vessel that were-about-coming,
 δ' ἐξιόντες ἐκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ἵποζυγίοις
 and going-out each day with the baggage-cattle
 καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυρούς,
 and the slaves they-brought (in) safely wheat,
 κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· γὰρ ἡ χώρα
 barley, wine, legumes, millet, figs; for the country
 εἶχεν ἅπαντα ὕγαθὰ πλὴν ἐλαίου.
 had abundance (of) good (things) except (the olive) oil (tree).
 Καὶ ὁπότε τὸ στράτευμα καταμένοι ἀναπαυόμενον
 And while the army remained resting
 ἐξῆν ἵεναι ἐπὶ λείαν, καὶ ἐξιόντες
 it-was-allowed (the men) to-go after plunder, and going-out
 ἐλάμβανον· δὲ ὁπότε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα
 they-took (what they could); but when the whole army

ἐξίοι, εἴ τις ἀπελθὼν χωρὶς λάβοι τι.
went-out, if any-one going-away aside (alone) might-take any-thing

ἔδοξεν εἶναι δημόσιον. Δὲ ἦν ἤδη ἀφθονία
it-judged (it) to-be public-property. And there-was now abundance

πάντων· γὰρ καὶ ἀφικοῦντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων
of-all (things); for even there-arrived from the Greek

πόλεων παντοθεν ἀγοραί, καὶ οἱ
cities every-where (provisions for) markets, and — (those)

παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι κατῆγον, ἀκούοντες
sailing-by-there-along (the coast) willingly put-in-there, hearing

ὥς πόλις οἰκίζοιτο, καὶ λιμὴν εἶη Δὲ
that (a) city would-be-built, and (a) harbour be (formed). And

καὶ ἤδη οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ὧκουν πλησίον,
also already the enemy, — (those namely) dwelling near,

ἔπεμπον πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος
sent to Xenophon, hearing that he

πολίζει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες, ὃ τι δέοι
is-'forming the place, 'to-a-city, inquiring, what it-was-necessary

ποιοῦντας εἶναι φίλους. Δ' ὁ ἐπεδείκνυνεν
(for them) to-be-doing to-be friends. And — he-introduced

αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.
them to-the soldiers.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται, ἔχων δύο
And on this Cleander arrived, having two

τριήρεις, δ' οὐδέν πλοῖον. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
galleys, but no (transport) vessels. But the army

ἐτύγχανε ὃν ἔξω, ὅτε ἀφίκετο, καὶ τινὲς οἰχόμενοι
happened being out, when he-came, and some were-going

ἐπὶ λείαν ἄλλοι ἄλλη εἰς τὸ
for plunder | others in-another [some one way, some another,] to the

ὄρος, καὶ εἰλήφεσαν πολλὰ πρόβατα· ὀκνοῦντες
mountain, and had-captured many sheep; fearing

δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν, λέγουσι Δεξίππῳ,
nowever lest they-might-be-taken-from (them), they-told Dexippus,

ὃς ἀπέδρα ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος ἔχων τὴν πεντη-
(he) who fled from Trebisonde having the fifty-oared

κόνοπτον, καὶ κελεύουσι τὰ πρόβατα
galley, and they-request (that) the sheep (might be)

διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς, αὐτὸν μὲν λαβεῖν
preserved for-themselves, (and that) he indeed (was) to-take

τὰ, δὲ ἀποδοῦνα τα σφίσιν.
— (a part of them for himself), but to-return the (rest) to-themselves.

Δ' ἐκεῖνος εὐδὺς ἀπελαύνει τοὺς περι-
And he [Dexippus] immediately drives-off — (those) stand-

εστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι εἴη
ing-round of-the soldiers, and saying that it-was

δημόσια, καὶ ἐλθὼν τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει, ὅτι
public-property, and going to Cleander he-says, that

ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἄρπάζειν. Ὁ
they-endeavour to-'seize (them) 'and-take (them) 'away. —

δὲ κελεύει ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸν
(Cleander) however ordered (him) to-bring before him the (one)

ἄρπάζοντα, καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν τινα
seizing (the sheep), and — (he) indeed laying-hold-on some-one

ἦγε· δ' Ἀγασίας περιτυχὼν
was-leading (him away); but Agasias | happening-about [meeting him]

ἀφαιρεται· καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀγόμενος ἦν
takes-away (the man); for-indeed — (he) being-led-away | was (a)

λοχίτης αὐτῷ. Δ' οἱ
member to-him [was a private soldier in his company]. And the

ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπι-
others — (those namely) being-present of-the soldiers at-

χειροῦσι βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες
tempted to-throw (stones at) — Dexippus, vociferating

τον προδότην. Δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τριηριτῶν
the traitor. And also many of-the galley-men

ἔδεισαν καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέ-
got-frightened and fled towards the sea, and Cle-

ανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
ander likewise fled. Xenophon and also the other

στρατηγοὶ τε κατεκώλουν, καὶ ἔλεγον
generals not-only endeavoured-to-stop (their flight), but-also told

τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ὅτι εἷη οὐδέν πρᾶγμα,
 — Cleander | that there-was no thing, [that nothing was
 ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα τοῦ στρατεύματος
 the matter,] but (that) the decree of-the army
 εἷη αἴτιον ταῦτα γενέσθαι. Δὲ ὁ Κλέ-
 was (the) cause (that) these (things) occurred. And — Cle-
 ανδρος τε ἀνερεδιζόμενος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξιππου,
 under 'being not-only 'instigated by — Dexippus,
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθесδεῖς, ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἔφη
 but-also he-himself being-vexed, that he-had-been-put-in-fear, said
 ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι, καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν
 (that) he-would-sail-off, and proclaim (that) no
 πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὥς πολεμίους.
 city should-receive them, as (they were public) enemies.
 Δὲ τότε οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἦρχον πάντων τῶν
 For at-that-time the Lacedæmonians governed all —
 Ἑλλήνων. Ἐνταῦθα τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐδόκει πονηρὸν
 Greece. Then — (this) affair appeared serious
 τοῖς Ἑλλησι, καὶ ἐδέοντο
 (and unfortunate) to-the Greeks, and they-entreated (Cleander)
 μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἂν οὐ
 not to-do these (things). But — he-said, (that it) could not
 γενέσθαι ἄλλως, εἰ μὴ τις ἐκδώσει τὸν
 be otherwise, (if not) (unless) some-one should-give-up the
 ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελό-
 (person) having-commenced to-throw (stones) and the (one) having-
 μενον. Δὲ ὃν ἐξήτει ἦν Ἀγασίας,
 released (him). But (he) whom he-wanted was Agasias, | the
 φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι διὰ τέλους.
 friend (of) — Xenophon through (out) (to the) end; [the com-
 ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὁ Δέξιππος διέβαλεν
 stant friend of Xenophon;] for which even — Dexippus had-accused
 αὐτόν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ ἦν ἀπορία,
 him. And then after (this) there-was perplexity
 οἱ ἄρχοντες συνήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα.
 (therefore) the commanders assembled the army

καὶ ἔτιοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐποιοῦντο παρ' ὀλίγον
and some indeed of-them made — little

τὸν Κλέανδρον, δὲ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι
(of the threats of) — Cleander, but to — Xenophon

τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐκ ἐδόκει εἶναι φαῦλον, ἀλλ'
the affair 'did not 'appear to-be trifling, but

ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν·
rising-up he-said :

Ἦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ δέ
O men soldiers, the affair 'does not indeed

δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ εἶναι φαῦλον, εἰ Κλέανδρος ἔχων τήν
'seem to-me to-be trifling, if Cleander having — (his)

γνώμην οὕτως ἡμῖν ἄπεισιν ὥςπερ λέγει.
mind thus (disposed) to-us he-goes-away as he-says.

Γὰρ μὲν αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις εἰσὶ ἐγγύς·
For indeed the Greek cities are near; (the)

Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ προεστήκασιν τῆς Ἑλλάδος· δέ
Lacedæmonians indeed at-the-head of — Greece; and

εἰσι ἱκανοὶ καὶ ἕκαστος εἰς Λακεδαιμονίων
it-is competent even (for a) single one 'of (the) 'Lacedæmonians

διαπράττεσθαι ὃ τι βούλονται ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν.
to-accomplish whatever (he) wished in (those) cities.

Εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἀποκλείσει ἡμᾶς
If therefore this (Cleander) first indeed — us

Βυζαντίου, δ' ἔπειτα παραγγελεῖ τοῖς ἄλλοις
'out-of Byzantium, and then should-announce to-the other

ἄρμοσταῖς μὴ δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰς πόλεις, ὥς ὄντας
governors not to-receive (us) into the cities, as being

ἄπιστοῦντας Λακεδαιμονίοις, καὶ ὄντας ἀνόμους,
disobeying 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians, and being lawless,

δ' ἔτι οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἥξει πρὸς
and moreover-if this — report about us come to

Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον, ἔσται χαλεπὸν
Anaxibius the commander-of-the-fleet, it-will-be difficult (for us)

καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γὰρ τὸν νῦν
both to-remain and to-sail-away; for indeed (at) — (this) present

χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ
 time (the) Lacedæmonians rule both by — land
 καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ. Οὖν οὐκ δεῖ οὔτε
 and by — sea. Therefore it-is not 'proper, (that) either
 ἕνεκα ἐνὸς ἀνδρὸς οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς
 for-the-sake-of one mal or of-two (that) we the
 ἄλλους ἀπέχεσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἀλλὰ πειστέ-
 rest be-held-back from — Greece, but it-is-necessary-to-
 ον ὃ τι ἂν κελεύωσι· καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις
 obey-to whatever 'they may 'command; for indeed the cities
 ἡμῶν, ὅθεν ἐσμέν, πείδονται αὐτοῖς. Ἐγὼ μὲν
 of-us, whence we-are, obey them. I indeed
 οὖν (καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς
 therefore (for indeed I-hear (that) Dexippus said to
 Κλέανδρον, ὡς Ἀγασίας ἂν οὐκ ἐποίησε ταῦτα,
 Cleander, that Agasias would not have-done these (things),
 εἰ ἐγὼ μὴ ἐκέλευσα αὐτόν), ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν
 if I 'had not 'requested him), I indeed therefore (say)
 ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας, καὶ Ἀγασίαν,
 I-clear both you of-the blame, and (also) Agasias,
 ἂν Ἀγασίας αὐτὸς φήσῃ ἐμέ εἶναι τι αἴτιον
 should Agasias himself say (that) I was any cause
 τούτων, καὶ καταδικάζω ἑμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ
 of-these (things), and I-will-condemn myself, if I
 ἐξάρχω πετροβολίας ἢ τινὸς ἄλλου βιαίου,
 am-the-beginner of-stone-throwing or any other violence,
 εἶναι ἄξιος τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης, καὶ ὑφέξω
 (that I) am worthy of — extreme punishment, and I-will-submit
 τὴν δίκην. Δὲ φημὶ καί, εἰ αἰτιᾶται τινα
 to-the punishment. And I-say also, if (Dexippus) accuses any
 ἄλλον, ἑαυτὸν χρῆναι παρασχεῖν
 other (person), (that) he ought to-surrender (himself)
 Κλεάνδρῳ κρῖναι· γὰρ οὕτω ὑμεῖς ἂν εἴητε
 to-Cleander to-try (him); for thus you may be
 ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας. Ὡς δὲ νῦν
 released from — censure. As indeed (the affair) now

ἔχει χαλεπὸν εἰ οἰόμενοι καὶ ἐπαίνου
has (itself), (it is) hard if thinking (that) both applause

καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι,
and honour would-be-prepared (for us) in — Greece, (that)

ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων, οὐδ' ἐσόμεθα ὅμοιοι τοῖς
in-place indeed of-these, we-'will not 'be equal to-the

ἄλλοις, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων
other (Greeks), but will-be-excluded from the Grecian

πόλεων.
cities.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ,
After this Agasias rising-up said: I,

ὦ ἄνδρες, ὀμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεάς ἧ μὴν
O men, swear (by all the) gods and goddesses that truly

μήτε Ξενοφῶντα κελεῦσαι με ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα,
neither Xenophon requested me to-rescue the man,

μήτε μηδένα ἄλλον ὑμῶν· δὲ μοι ἰδόντι ἀγα-
(nor) (or) no-one else of-you; but I seeing (a) good-

δὸν ἄνδρα τῶν ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ἀγόμενον ὑπὸ
and-brave man of — my company led-off by

Δεξιπίππου, ὃν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε προδόντα,
Dexippus, whom you know (as) betraying (you),

ἔδοξεν εἶναι δεινὸν· καὶ ὁμολογῶ ἀφειλόμην.
it-seemed (to me) to-be intolerable; and I-confess (that) I-'took

Καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με, δὲ ἐγὼ
'(him) 'away. And you indeed 'do not 'deliver me 'up, for I

ἑμαυτόν, ὥςπερ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, παρασχῆσω
myself, as Xenophon recommends, will-surrender (myself)

Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναντι, ἂν ποιῆσαι ὃ τι
to-Cleander (that) having-tried (me), 'he may 'do (with me) whatever

βούληται· ἔνεκα τούτου μήτε πολεμεῖτε
he may-please; on-account of-this 'do not 'contend 'with (the)

Λακεδαιμονίοις, σῶζοισδέ τε ἀσφαλῶς,
Lacedæmonians, may-you-unharmed indeed (return) safely (to)

ὅποι ἕκαστος θέλει. Μέντοι ἐλόμενοι αὐτῶν
wherever each-one wishes. 'Having indeed 'chosen those

ἑμῶν συμπέμψατε μοι πρὸς Κλέανδρον,
of-yourself 'send (them) 'with me to Cleander,

οἵτινες, ἂν ἐγὼ παραλείπω τι, καὶ λέξουσιν
who, if I should-omit any-thing, (might) both speak

καὶ πράξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ. Ἐκ τούτου ἡ στρατιὰ
and act for me. On this the army

ἔδωκεν, προσελόμενον οὓςτινας βούλοιτο ἵεναι.
allowed (him), having-chosen whomsoever he-might-wish to-go

Ὁ δὲ προσεῖλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς.
(with him). — 'He indeed 'chose the generals.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοί, καὶ ὁ
After this Agasias and the generals, and the

ἀνὴρ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ὑπὸ Ἀγασίου, ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς
man taken-away by Agasias, proceeded to

Κλέανδρον. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔλεγον·
Cleander. And the generals said :

Ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπέμψεν ἡμᾶς πρὸς σε, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
The army has-sent us to you, O Cleander,

καὶ ἐκέλευσέ σε, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ πάντα, σεαυτὸν
and request you, if you-accuse all, you-yourself

κρίναντα χρῆσθαι ὃ τι
having-tried (all) (are) to-treat (them) (in) whatever (manner) 'you

ἂν βούλῃ, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ τινὰ ἓνα, ἢ δύο, ἢ καὶ
may 'wish, if you-accuse some one, or two, or even

πλείους, ἄξιουσι τούτους παρασχεῖν
more, they-'think (it) 'right (that) these 'deliver

ἑαυτοὺς σοι εἰς κρίσιν. Εἴτε οὖν αἰτιᾷ τινα
themselves 'up to-you for judgment. If therefore you-accuse any-one

ἡμῶν, ἡμεῖς πάρεσμέν σοι· εἴτε καὶ τινὰ ἄλλον,
of-us, we are-present (before) you; if even any other,

φράσον· γὰρ οὐδεὶς ἀπέσται ὅστις
say (so); for no-one shall-be-distant-from (obeying you) who

ἂν ἐθέλῃ πείδεσθαι ἡμῖν. Μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ
may wish to-obey us. After these (things) —

Ἀγασίας παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰμ
Agasias having-come-forward said : I, O Cleander, am

ὁ ἀφελόμενος τὸν ἄνδρα Δέξιππον ἄγοντος
(he) who having-taken-away the man from-Dexippus leading

τοῦτον, καὶ κελεύσας παίειν Δέξιπ-
him (away), and (also) having-exhorted (the men) to-strike Dexip-

πον. Γὰρ μὲν οἶδα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθόν·
pus. For indeed I-know (the) man (as) being good-and-brave

δὲ οἶδα Δέξιππον αἰρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς
and I-know (that) Dexippus having-been-chosen by the army

ἄρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου, ἧς ἡτησάμεθα παρὰ
to-command the fifty-oar-galley, which we-begged from

Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ᾧτε συλλέγειν πλοῖα
(the) Trebisondians | on which to-collect vessels [for the

ὥς σωζόμεθα, καὶ Δέξιππον
purpose of collecting vessels] that we-might-be-saved, and Dexippus

ἀποδράντα καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας, μεθ'
running-away and betraying the soldiers, with

ὧν ἐσώθη. Καὶ τε ἀπεστερήκαμεν Τραπε-
whom he-had-been-saved. And not-only we-have-deprived (the) people-of-

ζουντίους τὴν πεντηκόντορον, καὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι
Trebisond (of) the fifty-oared-galley, but-also we-seem to-be

κακοὶ διὰ τοῦτον· αὐτοὶ τε ἀπολώλαμεν
dishonest through this (man); 'we ourselves indeed 'were-ruined

τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ. Γὰρ ἤκουε,
[the on this [as far as depended on this man]. For he-had-heard,

ὥςπερ ἡμεῖς, ὥς εἴη ἀπορον ἀπιόντας πεζῇ
as-well-as we, that it-would-be impracticable having-departed on-foot

τε διαβῆναι τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ σωθῆναι
not-only to-cross the rivers, but-also | to-be-saved [to get

εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτον οὖν ὄντα
safe] to — Greece. (From) this (one) therefore being

τοιούτου ἀφειλόμην. Εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες,
such (a person) I-rescued (the man). If indeed you were-leading

ἢ τις ἄλλος τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ
(him away), or any-one else of — (those) with you, and not (one)

τῶν ἀποδράντων παρ' ἡμῶν, ἴσθι εὖ ὅτι ἂν
of — (those) deserting from us, know well that 'I would

ἐποίησα οὐδέν τούτων. Νόμιζε δ', εἰάν νῦν
'have-done nothing of-these (things). Consider then, if 'you now

ἀποκτείνης ἐμέ, ἀποκτείνων ἀγαθόν
'kill me, (you) are-putting-to-death (a) brave-and-honourable

ἄνδρα δι' ἄνδρα τε δειλόν καὶ πονηρόν.
man for (a) man not-only (a) coward but-also (a) villain.

Ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν ὅτι μὲν
— Cleander having-heard this said that indeed

οὐκ ἐπαινοίη Δέξιππον, εἴη
he-'could not 'approve (of the conduct of) Dexippus, if (he)

πεποιηκώς ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη, νομίζεις,
has-been-doing these (things); | not indeed, said-he, to-consider,

εἰ Δέξιππος ἦν παμπόνηρος
[but consider, said he,] (that) if Dexippus were (the) worst-of-villains

οὐδὲ χρῆναι αὐτόν πάσχειν βίαν, ἀλλὰ
(that) neither ought he to-suffer violence, but

κριθέντα, (ὥς περ καὶ νῦν ὑμεῖς ἀξιοῦτε,) τυχεῖν
having-been-tried, (as even now you require,) to-have-met-with

τῆς δίκης. Νῦν οὖν μὲν ἄπιτε, καταλιπόντες
— justice. Now therefore indeed retire, leaving-behind

τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω,
this — man (Agasias); when indeed I shall-call (you),

πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. Οὐτε δὲ αἰτιῶμαι
be-present at the trial. 'I neither indeed 'accuse

τὴν στρατιάν, οὐτε οὐδένα ἄλλον ἔτι, ἐπεὶ
the army, nor (no-one) (any one) else besides, since

αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. Δέ
he himself confesses to-have-released the man. But

ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
— (the man) having-been-taken-away said: I, O Cleander,

εἰ καὶ οἶει με ἄγεσθαι τι
if even you-suppose (that) I was-led-away (for) 'doing something

ἀδικοῦντα, οὐτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα, οὐτε
'wrong, (I indeed) neither struck (no-one) (any one), nor

ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι τὰ πρόβατα εἴη
threw (stones), but said that the sheep were

δημόσια· γὰρ ἦν δόγμα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, εἰ
public-property; for it-was (a) decree of-the army, if

τις, ὅποτε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίει, ἰδίᾳ λήξοι
any-one, when the army went-out, 'should privately 'make-any-

το, τὰ λήφθέντα εἶναι δημόσια. Ταῦτα
capture the (things sc) captured to-be public-property. These

εἶπον· καὶ ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν με οὗτος
(things) I-said; and on this seizing me this

ἤγεν, ἵνα μηδεὶς μὴ
(Dexippus) was-leading (me away), in-order-that no-one 'might —

φδέγγοιτο, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος
'utter (any thing), but he taking — (a) part

διασώσειε τὰ χρήματα τοῖς λησταῖς παρὰ τὴν
might-preserve the things for-the plunderers contrary-to the

ρήτραν. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ
agreement. To this — Cleander said: Since

τοίνυν εἰ τοιοῦτος, κατάμενε, ἵνα καὶ βουλευσώ-
therefore you-are such-a-person, remain-here, that even I-may-delibe-

μεθα περὶ σοῦ.
rate about you.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἤριστων
After this — (those) indeed about Cleander went-to-supper;

δὲ Ξενοφῶν συνήγαγε τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ συνεβού-
and Xenophon assembled the army, and coun-

λευσε πέμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παραιτη-
sented (them) to-send men to Cleander inter-

σομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν
ceding for the men. On this it-seemed (good)

αὐτοῖς, πέμψαντας στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς καὶ
to-them, having-sent (the) generals and captains, and

Δραλόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
Dracontius the Spartan, and (those) of-the others

οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτήδαιοι, δεῖσθαι
who seemed to-be fit (for the occasion), to-entreat

Κλέανδρον κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφείναι τὸν ἄνδρα.
Cleander by all means to-set-free the-two men

Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἐλθὼν λέγει· Ἔχεις μὲν, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
 Xenophon therefore going says: You-have indeed, O Cleander,
 τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιά ἵφειτο σοι ποιῆσαι ὃ τι
 the men, and the army allowed you to-do what
 ἐβούλου, καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ πάντων
 you-wished, both (as) respects these and (as) respects all
 ἑαυτῶν· νῦν δὲ αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται σε
 (of) themselves; now indeed they-entreat and request you
 δοῦναί σφισι τῷ ἄνδρῃ, καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν·
 to-give to-themselves the-two men, and not 'put (them) 'to-death;
 γὰρ ἐμοχθησάτην πολλὰ ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ ἔμπροσθεν
 for they-laboured much in the time past
 περὶ τὴν στρατιάν. Δὲ τυχόντες
 as-respects (being of service to) the army. And having-obtained
 ταῦτα σου, ὑπισχνοῦνταί σοι ἀντὶ τούτων,
 this from-you, they-promise you in-return-for these (things),
 ἣν βούλῃ ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ ᾧσιν
 if you-wish to-lead them, and if the gods may-be
 ἴλεω, ἐπιδείξειν σοι, καὶ ὥς κόσμιοι
 propitious, (that they) will-show you, both how orderly-and-well-dis-
 εἰσι καὶ ὥς ἱκανοὶ παιδόμενοι.
 ciplined they-are and how competent (they are when) obeying
 τῷ ἄρχοντι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ
 — (their) commanders, (and) with (the assistance of) the gods not
 φοβεῖσθαι τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ καὶ δέονται σου
 to-fear the enemy. And also they-entreat of-you
 καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα
 even this, (that) having-come and having-taken-command
 ἑαυτῶν, λαβεῖν πείραν καὶ
 of-them, (and that) | to-have-taken experience [to make trial of] both
 Δεξιππου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σφῶν, οἷος ἕκαστος ἐστὶ,
 Dexippus and of-the rest of-them, what each is,
 καὶ νεῖμαι ἑκάστοις τὴν ἀξίαν.
 and to-distribute to-each-one — (his) merit [and give each one his
 'Ο Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα, ἔφρ·
 deserts]. — Cleander having-heard these (things) said

Ἀλλὰ ναὶ τὼ σιῶ, ταχύ τοι ἀποκρινοῦμα.
 But by the twin-gods, I-'will speedily — 'answer
 ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὲ δίδωμι τῷ ἀνδρὲ ὑμῖν, καὶ
 /ou. And not-only I-give the-two men to-you, but-also
 αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἣν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσιν,
 I-myself will-come (to you); and if the gods grant,
 ἐξηγήσομαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Καὶ οἱ οὗτοι
 I-will-lead (you) to — Greece. And — those
 λόγοι εἰσὶν πολὺ ἀντίοι, ἥ
 words (of yours) are much opposed, than [are very different from
 οὓς ἐγὼ ἤκουον περὶ ἐνίων ὑμῶν, ὧς
 those] which I heard about some of-you, (namely) that
 ἀφίστατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.
 you-were-alienating the army from (the) Lacedæmonians.
 Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπῆλδον
 On this indeed — they-applauding (him) departed
 ἔχοντες τὼ ἀνδρὲ. Δὲ Κλέανδρος ἐδύετο ἐπὶ
 having the-two men. And Cleander sacrificed about
 τῇ πορείᾳ, καὶ ξυνῆν φιλικῶς Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ
 the journey, and he-associated friendly with-Xenophon, and
 ξυνεβάλλοντο ξενίαν. Δὲ καὶ ἐπεὶ
 they-joined (intimately in the) bonds-of-hospitality. And also when
 ἑώρα αὐτοὺς ποιοῦντας εὐτάκτως τὸ παραγγελ-
 he-saw them doing in-good-order the (things) com-
 λόμενον, καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι
 manded, and yet more he-desired to-become (the)
 ἡγεμῶν αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι αὐτῷ θυομένῳ ἐπὶ
 leader of-them. When however he sacrificing for
 τρεῖς ἡμέρας, τὰ ἱερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο,
 three days, the victims 'did not 'become (favourable),
 συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς εἶπε· Τὰ ἱερά
 calling-together the generals he-said: The victims 'were
 οὐκ ἐτελέσθαι ἐξάγειν·
 not 'brought-to-an-end (so as to be favourable for me) to-'lead (you) 'away,
 μὴ ἀδυμεῖτε μέντοι ἔνεκα τούτου· γὰρ ὑμῖν,
 be not 'you-discouraged however on-account of-this; for you

ὥς ἔοικε, δέδοται ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἀνδρας·
as it-is-proper, it-is-given to-lead-out the men (home);

ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε· ἡμεῖς δὲ, ἐπειδὴν ἤκητε ἐκεῖσε,
but proceed; we indeed, when you-arrive there

δεξόμεθα ὑμᾶς ὥς κάλλιστα ἂν
(at Byzantium), will-receive you 'as handsomely 'as 'we may

δυνώμεθα.

be-able.

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι
On this it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers to-give

αὐτῷ τὰ πρόβατα δημόσια· ὁ δὲ
aim the sheep (being) public-property; — (he) indeed

δεξάμενος, πάλιν ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς. Καὶ
having-received (them), again returns (the sheep) to-them. And

οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ διαδέμενοι
he indeed set-sail. The soldiers however having-sold

τὸν σῖτον, ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισμένοι, καὶ τᾶλλα
he corn, which they-had-collected, and the-other

ἃ εἰλήφεσαν, ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βι-
(things) which they-had-captured, departed through — Bi-

δυνῶν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδὸν ἐνέ-
thynia. But when pursuing the straight road they-

τυχον οὐδενί, ὥστε ἔχοντες τι ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν
met-with nothing, so-that having something to-go to — (a)

φιλίαν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ὑποστρέψαντες
friendly (country), it-seemed (good) to-them having-marched

τοῦμπαλιν ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. Δε
back-again to-go one day and night. And

ποιήσαντες τοῦτο, ἔλαβον καὶ πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα
doing this, they-took both many slaves

καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἑκταῖοι εἰς
and sheep (or cattle); and arrived (in) six (days) at

Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν
Chrysopolis of-the Calchedonians, and there they-remained

ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας λαφυροπωλοῦντες.

seven days selling-booty.

BOOK VII.

CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπραξαν ἐν τῇ
 WHAT indeed truly the Greeks did in the
 ἀναβάσει μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
 march-up (the country) with Cyrus until the battle,
 καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐπεὶ Κῦρος
 and what (they did and experienced) in the journey after Cyrus
 ἐτελεύτησε μέχρι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν Πόντον, καὶ
 died until they-arrived at the Euxine-Sea, and
 ὅσα ἐποίουν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἐξιώντες πεζῇ, καὶ
 what they-did from the Euxine, departing on-foot, and
 ἐκπλέοντες, μέχρι ἐγένοντο ἔξω τοῦ στόματος
 sailing-off, until they-got beyond the mouth (thereof)
 ἐν Χρυσόπολει τῆς Ἀσίας, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ
 at Chrysopolis — (in) Asia, has-been-related in the
 πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβού-
 preceding discourse. On this indeed Pharnabazus fear-
 μενος τὸ στράτευμα, μὴ στρατεύηται ἐπὶ
 ing the (Grecian) army, lest it-might-invade —
 τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν
 the country of-himself, having-sent to Anaxibius the
 ναύαρχον, (ὃ δ' ἔτυχεν ὦν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ,)
 (Spartan) admiral, (who indeed happened being in Byzantium,)
 εἰδεῖτο τὸ στράτευμα διαβιβάσαι ἐκ
 he-requested (him) to-'have the army 'transported from
 τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο ποιήσεν αὐτῷ πάντα,
 - Asia, and promised to-do for-him all

δσα δέοι. Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς
what he-might-require. And Anaxibius sent-for the

στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς
generals and captains of-the soldiers (to come) to

Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν,
Byzantium, and promised, if they-should-come-over (to him),

ἔσεσθαι μισθοφορίαν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Οἱ
(that) there-would-be pay for-the soldiers. The

ἄλλοι μὲν δὴ ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι
rest (of the officers) indeed truly said (that) after-having-consulted

ἀπαγγελεῖν Δὲ Ξενο-
(together) they-would-announce (to him their determination). But Xeno-

φῶν εἶπεν αὐτῷ, ὅτι, ἤδη ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἀπὸ τῆς
phon said to-him, that, already about-to-depart from the

στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιτο ἀποπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξί-
army, 'he even 'wished to-set-sail. But — Anaxi-

βιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν, ἔπειτα συνδιαβάντα
bius requested him, (that) after having-crossed-over-with

οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Οὖν ἔφη
(the others) then to-depart. 'He therefore 'said (that he)

ποιήσειν ταῦτα.
would-do these (things).

Δὲ Σεύθης ὁ Θραξ πέμπει Μηνδοσάδην, καὶ
But Seuthes the Thracian sends Mendosades, and

κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροδυμῆσθαι ὅπως τὸ
requests Xenophon to-join-in-the-effort-with (him) that the

στράτευμα διαβῇ, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ συμπροδυμη-
army might-cross-over, and he-said to-him actively-taking-part-

θέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. Δ' ὁ
in-the-effort that he-'would not 'repent (it). And — (Xenophon)

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσεται·
said: But indeed the army will-cross-over;

ἐνεκα τούτου τελείτω μηδὲν μήτε ἐμοί, μήτε μηδενί
oy-reason of-this let-him-pay no-one neither me, nor (no-one)

ἄλλῳ· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαβῇ, ἐγὼ μὲν
(any one) else; when indeed it-may-have-crossed-over, I indeed

ἀπαλλάξομι, προσφερέσθω πρὸς τοὺς δε
shall-leave (h.) let-him-address-himself to — (those) indeed

διαμένοντας, καὶ ὄντας ἐπικαιρίους, ὥς ἂν δοκῇ
having-remained, and being opportune, (so) as may seem

αὐτῷ ἀσφαλές.

to-him safe (and not calculated to fail).

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται διαβαίνουσι
After this all the soldiers cross-over

εἰς τὸ Βυζαντιον. Καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μὲν οὐκ
to — Byzantium. And — Anaxibius indeed 'did not

εἰδίδου μισθόν, δὲ ἐκήρυξε τοὺς στρα-
'give (them) pay, but made-proclamation (that) the sol-

τιώτας λαβόντας τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη
diers taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage

ἐξίέναι, ὥς τε ἀποπέμψων
(should) go-out (of the city), as (if) not-only 'sending (them) 'away

καὶ ἅμα ποιήσων ἀριθ-
(home), but-also at-the-same-time (as if) (making) (taking) (their) num-

μὸν. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἤχθοντο, ὅτι
ber. Then the soldiers were-distressed, (because) that

εἶχον οὐκ ἀργύριον ἐπισιτιζέσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν,
they-had no money to-get-provisions on the journey,

καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. Καὶ ὁ
and 'they reluctantly 'packed-up (their) 'baggage. And —

Ξενοφῶν, γεγενημένος ξένος Κλεάνδρῳ τε
Xenophon, having-become (the) guest-friend to-Cleander the

ἄρμοστῃ, προσελθὼν ἡσπάζετο αὐτὸν
governor, going-to (him) he-kindly-'saluted him 'taking-leave

ὥς ἤδη ἀποπλευσούμενος. Ὁ δὲ λέγει
as now about-sailing-away. — (Cleander) indeed said

αὐτῷ· Μὴ ποιήσης ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή,
to-him: 'Do not 'do this: | if indeed not, [for otherwise]

εἶπεν, ἔξεις αἰτίαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινες
said-he, you-will-have (the) blame, since even now some

ἤδη αἰτιῶνται σέ ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα οὐ ταχὺ
already blame you that the army 'does not quickly

ἐξέρπει. Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' ἔγωγε εἰμὶ
 creep-out. And — (Xenophon) said: But I-at-least am
 οὐ μὲν αἴτιος τούτου, δ' οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοί
 not indeed (the) cause of-this, but the soldiers themselves
 δεόμενοι ἐπισιτισμοῦ, διὰ τοῦτο ἀδυμοῦσι πρὸς
 wanting provisions, through this they-are-troubled about
 τὴν ἐξοδον. Ἀλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη, ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω
 the departure. But however, said-he, I advise
 σοι μὲν ἐξελθεῖν ὥς πορευσόμενον,
 you indeed to-go-out (with them) as (if) about-accompanying (them).
 δ' ἐπειδὰν τὸ στράτευμα γένηται ἔξω, τότε
 and when the army has-got without (the city), then
 ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Τοῖνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
 to-leave (it). (We) therefore, said — Xenophon,
 ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξώμεθα ταῦτα.
 going to Anaxibius will-settle these (things).
 Οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. Δὲ ὁ
 Thus going (to him) they-told (him) these (things). And — (he)
 ἐκέλευσε ποιεῖν οὕτω, καὶ συνεσκευ-
 requested (them) to-do so, and (that the soldiers) having-
 ασμένους ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην,
 'packed-up (their) 'baggage should-go-out in-the quickest (time),
 καὶ προσανειπεῖν, ὅς ἂν μὴ παρῇ
 and moreover-to-declare-publicly, (that he) who might not be-present
 εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμόν, ὅτι αὐτὸς
 at the review and at the numbering, that he
 αἰτιάσεται αὐτόν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ τε στρατηγοὶ
 (would) blame himself. Then the — generals
 ἐξήεσαν πρῶτοι, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. Καὶ ἄρδην
 went-out first, and the others (after them). And altogether
 πάντες ἦσαν ἔξω πλὴν ὀλίγων, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος
 all were out except (some) few, and Eteoniceus
 εἰστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας, ὥς, ὁπότε πάντες
 stood by the gates, that, when all
 γένοιντο ἔξω συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας, καὶ
 had-got out (ready for) shutting the gates, and

ἐμβαλὼν τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας
throwing-in the bar. And — Anaxibius having-called-together

τοὺς στρατηγούς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἔλεξε·
the generals and the captains said:

Λαμβάνετε, ἔφη, μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῶν Θρακίων
You-may-take, said-he, indeed — provisions from the Thracian

κωμῶν· (δὲ εἰσὶ αὐτόδι πολλαὶ κριδαὶ καὶ πυροί,
villages; (and there-is there much barley and wheat,

καὶ τᾶλλα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·) δὲ λαβόντες
and other — provisions;) and taking (these things)

πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος
proceed to (the) Chersonesus, where indeed Cyniscus

μισθοδοτήσει ὑμῖν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
will-'give you 'pay. But some of-the soldiers

ἢ καὶ τις τῶν λοχαγῶν ἐπακούσαντες ταῦτο,
or even some (one) of-the captains having-overheard these

διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ οἱ
(things), communicated (them) to the army. And the

στρατηγοὶ μὲν ἐπυνδάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύδου,
generals indeed (also) inquired about — Seuthes,

πότῃ εἴη πολέμιος ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότῃ
whether he-might-be inimical or friendly, and whether

ἔοι πορεύεσθαι διὰ τοῦ ἱερῦ ὄρους, ἢ
it-was-necessary to-march over the sacred mountain, or 'in (a)

κύκλῳ διὰ μέσης τῆς Θράκης. Δὲ ἐν
'circuit through (the) middle of — Thrace. But during (the time)

ᾧ διελέγοντο ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται
in-which they-were-conversing-about these (things) the soldiers

ἀναρπάσαντες τὰ ὅπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς
having-snatched-up — (their) arms run in-full-speed to

τὰς πύλας, ὥς πάλιν εἰσιόντες εἰς τὸ
the gates, so-that again (they were about) entering within the

τεῖχος. Δὲ ὁ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,
walls. And — Eteonicus and — (those) with him,

ὥς εἶδον τοὺς ὀπλίτας προσδέοντας συγκλείουσι
as they-saw the heavy-armed-men running-towards (them) shw

τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐμβάλλουσι τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ οἱ
the gates and thrust-in the bar. But the

στρατιῶται ἐκοπτὸν τε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἔλεγον
soldiers knocked indeed at-the gates, and said,

ὅτι πάσχοιεν ἀδικώτατα ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς
that they-suffered most-unjustly, being-thrown-out to the

πολεμίους· καὶ ἔφασαν κατασχίσειν τὰς
enemy; and they-said (that they would) out-down the

πύλας, εἰ μὴ ἐκόντες ἀνοίζουσιν. Ἄλλοι
gates, if they-'did not voluntarily 'open (them). Others

δὲ ἔδεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν, καὶ ὑπερβαίνουνσιν εἰς
indeed ran to (the) sea, and went-over into

τὴν πόλιν παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους· δὲ ἄλλοι
the city along the pier of-the wall; but others

τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἱ ἐτύγχανον ὄντες
of-the soldiers (those namely) who happened being

ἐνδον, ὥς ὀρῶσι τὰ πράγματα ἐπὶ
within (the walls), as they-perceived the things (going on) at

ταῖς πύλαις, διακόπτοντες τὰ κλείδρα ταῖς
the gates, cutting-through the bars with — (their)

ἄξιναις, ἀναπεταννύουσι τὰς πύλας· δ' οἱ
axes, they-opened-wide the gates; and — (they all)

εἰσπιπτουσιν.
rush-in.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὥς εἶδε τὰ γινόμενα
— Xenophon indeed as he-saw the (things) going-on,

δείσας μὴ τὸ στράτευμα τράποιτο ἐφ' ἄρπαγὴν,
having-feared lest the army might-turn to plunder,

καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει, καὶ ἑαυτῷ,
and irreparable evil might-happen to-the city, and to-himself,

καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔδει, καὶ συνεισπίπτει σὺν
and to-the army, ran, and rushes-in-together with

τῷ ὄχλῳ εἰσὼ τῶν πυλῶν. Οἱ Βυζάντιοι δὲ, ὥς
the crowd within the gates. The Byzantians indeed, as

εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα εἰσπύπτον βίᾳ φεύγουσιν ἐκ
they-saw the army rushed-in by-force fled from

τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ
the market, — (some) indeed to the ships, — (some) indeed

οἴκαδε· ὅσοι δὲ ἐτύγγανον ὄντες ἐνδον
home; such indeed (who) happened being within (doors)

ἔδεον ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις,
an out, — (some) indeed hauled-down the galleys (into

ὡς σώζοιντο ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι· δὲ πάντες
the water), that they-might-be-saved in the galleys; but all

ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὥς τῆς πόλεως
thought (themselves) to-have-been-lost, as (believing) the town

ἐαλωκυίας. Δὲ ὁ Ἐτεόνικος ἀποφεύγει εἰς τὴν
having-been-captured. But — Eteonicus flees-away to the

ἄκραν. Ὁ Ἀναξίβιος δὲ καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ
citadel. — Anaxibius indeed running-down to (the)

θάλατταν περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν ἁλιευ-
sea sailed-round to the citadel in (a) fish-

τικῷ πλοίῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ
ing boat, and immediately he-sends-for (men) from (the)

φρουρούς Καλχηδόνης· γὰρ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
garrison of-Calechedon; for — (those) in the citadel

οὐκ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἱκανοὶ σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.
'did not 'appear to-be sufficient to-restrain the men

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ὥς εἶδον τὸν Ξενοφῶντα,
The soldiers however as they-saw — Xenophon,

προσπίπτουσιν αὐτῷ, πολλοί, καὶ λέγουσι·
rushed-up to-him, (they being) many, and said:

Νῦν ἔξεστι σοι, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, γενέσθαι ἄνδρῃ.
Now it-is-allowed you, O Xenophon, to-become (a great) man.

Ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα,
You-have (the) city, you-have galleys, you-have money,

ἔχεις τοσούτους ἄνδρας. Νῦν, εἰ βούλω,
you-have such-a-great-number (of) men. Now, if you-wish

σύ ἂν τε ὀνήσιας ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ποιήσαιμεν
you may not-only profit us, but-also we will-make

σὲ μέγαν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀλλ'
you (a) great (man). And — (Xenophon) replied: But

τε λέγετε εὖ, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ
 'you not-only . 'say well, but-also I-will-do these (things); if

δὲ ἐπιθυμεῖτε τούτων, θέσδε τὰ ὅπλα
 indeed you-desire these (things), place-yourselfs — (under) arms

ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· βουλόμενος
 (and) in order as speedily (as possible); (he) wishing

κατηρεμίσαι αὐτοὺς· καὶ τε αὐτός παρηγγύα
 to-have-tranquillized them; and not-only he-himself ordered

ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς ἄλλους
 these (things), but-also he-requested the other (officers)

παρεγγυᾶν τίδεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα. Δὲ
 to-order (the men) to-place-themselves — (under) arms. And

οἱ αὐτοὶ ταττόμενοι ἑαυτῶν, τε
 — they arranging (themselves) on themselves, not-only 'did

οἱ ὀπλῖται ἐγένοντο εἰς ὀκτὼ ἐν
 the heavy-armed-men become in (number) eight (deep) in (a)

ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ παραδεδραμήκεσαν
 short time, and the targeteers had-ran-on-the-side

ἐπὶ τὸ ἐκάτερον κέρασ. Δὲ τὸ χωρίον ἐστὶ
 to — each wing. And the place, (which) is

οἷον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι καλούμενον
 such (as is) most-beautiful to-draw-up-in-order (an army), is-called

τὸ Θράκιον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. Ἐπεὶ
 the Thracian, clear of-houses and level. When

δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο, καὶ κατηρε-
 indeed the arms lay (in place), and (the men) were-some-

μίσδησαν, Ξενοφῶν συγκαλεῖ τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ
 what-tranquillized, Xenophon assembled the army, and

λέγει τάδε·
 speaks thus:

Ὅτι μὲν ὀργίζεσθε, ὧ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ
 That indeed you-are-angry, O men soldiers, | and

νομίζετε, ἐξαπατώμενοι, πάσχειν δεινὰ,
 think, being-deceived, to-suffer greatly, [and think, that

οὐ θαυμάζω.

you have been badly treated, in being thus deceived,] I-'am not 'surprised

Δὲ ἦν χαρίζομεθα τῷ θυμῷ, καὶ τιμωρῶμεθα
But if we-gratify — (our) anger, and punish

τε Λακεδαιμονίους τοὺς παρόντας,
not-only (the) Lacedæmonians, — (those namely) being-present,

τῆς ἐξαπάτης, καὶ διαρπάσωμεν τὴν πόλιν
(for) the deceit, but-also plunder the city

οὐδὲν τὴν αἰτίαν, ἐνδυμείσδε ἃ ἔσται
| not the cause, [not to blame,] | consider what will-be

ἐντεῦθεν. Ἐσόμεθα
from-this [consider what will be the consequences]. We-will-be

μὲν ἀποδεδειγμένοι πολέμιοι Λακεδαιμονίοις
indeed (the) declared enemies (of the) Lacedæmonians

καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. Οἷος δ' ὁ πόλεμος ἂν
and — (their) allies. What indeed the war may

γένοιτο πάρεστιν δὴ εἰκάζειν, ἑωρακότας καὶ
be it-is-possible indeed to-conjecture, having-seen and

ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν ἤδη γεγενημένα.
remembered ¹ the (things) now recently having-occurred

Γὰρ ἡμεῖς οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι
[the things that have but recently occurred]. For we — Athenians

ἦλθομεν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς τοὺς
went into the war — (that namely) with the

Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἔχοντες
Lacedæmonians and — (their) allies, having

τριήρεις, τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ, δὲ τὰς ἐν
galleys, — (some) indeed at sea, and — (some) in

τοῖς νεωρίοις, οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων,
the docks, (together) not less (than) three-hundred,

ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει,
there-being also much money in the city

καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν τε
[Acropolis], and (the) income being yearly not-only

ἀπὸ τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας
from the home (revenues) but-also from — (our) foreign

οὐ μείον χιλίων ταλάντων, ἄρχοντες
(territories) not less (than) a-thousand talents. ruling

ἔε ἀπασῶν τῶν νήσων, καὶ τε ἔχοντες πολλὰς,
also all the islands, and also having many

πόλεις ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ, καὶ τε πολλὰς ἄλλας ἐν τῇ
towns in — Asia, and also many others in —

Εὐρώπῃ, καὶ ἔχοντες αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον,
Europe, and having this very-same — Byzantium.

ὅπου ἔσμεν νῦν, κατεπολεμήθημεν
where we-are now, (yet) | we-were-warred-against [the war was car-

ὥς ὑμεῖς πάντες ἐπίστασθε. Δὲ νῦν
ried on against us] as you all know. But now

δὴ ἂν οἰόμεθα τί παθεῖν, Λακεδαι-
truly 'we may 'think what (we may have) to-suffer, (the) Lacedæ-

μονίων καὶ μὲν τῶν Ἀχαιῶν ὑπαρχόντων συμ-
monians and indeed the Achæans being ai-

μάχων, δὲ Ἀθηναίων, καὶ ὅσοι ἦσαν τότε
lies, and (the) Athenians, and such (as) were then

σύμμαχοι ἐκείνοις, πάντων προσγεγενημένων.
allies (of) them, all having-become-joined-to (them).

δὲ Τισσαφέρνους καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐπὶ
and Tissaphernes (as) also the other barbarians on (the)

θλάττῃ πάντων ὄντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν, δὲ
sea (coast) all being enemies to-us, but (the)

πολεμιωτάτου αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω.
most-inimical (being) this-same — king up (in the

ὃν ἡλδομεν ἀφαιρησό-
country); whom we-went (against for the purpose of) taking-

μενοι τε τὴν ἀρχήν καὶ ἀποκτε-
away not-only — (his) rule [throne] but-also (of) kill.

νοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα. Πάντων τούτων δὴ
ing (him), if we-could. All these truly

ὄντων ὁμοῦ, ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων, ὅστις
being alike (against us), is-there any-one so foolish, who

οἶεται ἡμᾶς ἂν περιγενέσθαι; Μή, πρὸς
thinks (that) we might get-the-superiority? Let-'us not, —

θεῶν, μαινώμεθα μῆδ' ἀπολώμεθα
(in the name of the) gods, 'act-like-madmen nor perish

αἰσχρῶς, ὄντες πολέμοι καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι, καὶ
disgracefully, being enemies both to — (our) country, and
τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλοις αὐτῶν τε καὶ οἰκείοις.
to — our friends (of-ourselves) and also to (our) relations.

Γὰρ εἰσι πάντες ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς
For they-are all in the cities — (those namely that)

στρατευσομέναις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ μὲν
will-be-marching against us, and justly, if indeed

ἠδελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν οὐδεμίαν βάρβαρον πόλιν,
we-wished to-take-possession-of no barbarian city,

καὶ κρατοῦντες ταῦτα· δὲ πρώτην Ἑλληνίδα
and (we) being-superior-in-force to-these; but (the) first Greek

πόλιν εἰς ἣν ἤλθομεν, ταύτην ἐξαλαπάζομεν.
city to which we-came, that (namely) we-plundered.

Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν εὐχομαι πρὶν ἐπιθεῖν ταῦτα
I indeed therefore pray (that) before I-behold such

γενόμενα ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐμέ γε γενέσθαι
(things) brought-to-pass by you, (that) I at-least (may) be

μυρίας ἀργυρίας κατὰ γῆς. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν,
a-thousand fathoms under ground. And I-advice you,

ὄντας Ἕλληνας, πειδομένους τοῖς προεστη-
being Greeks, (that) yielding-obedience to — (those) standing-at-

κοσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων πειρᾶσθαι τυγχάνειν τῶν
the-head of-the Greeks to-endeavour to-obtain —

δικαίων. Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα,
justice. If indeed you-'are not 'able (to obtain) this,

δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀδικουμένους μὴ γοῦν
it-is-proper (that) you (though) wronged 'should not therefore

στέρεσθαι Ἑλλάδος. Καὶ νῦν δοκεῖ μοι
'deprive-yourselves of-Greece. And now it-seems to-me (that)

πέμπσαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν, ὅτι ἡμεῖς παρεληλύ-
having-sent to-Anaxibius to-say, that we have-en-

δαμεν εἰς τῆς πόλιν ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν βίαιον, ἀλλ'
tered into the city about-committing no violence, but

ἣν μὲν δυνώμεθα εὐρίσκειν τι ἀγαθόν παρ'
if indeed we-could to-obtain something good from

ὑμῶν· δὲ εἰ μὴ, ἀλλὰ δηλώσοντες, ὅτι
 you; but if not, yet (however) showing, that
 ἐξέρχομεθα οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι, ἀλλὰ πεισό-
 we-go-out not (as) being-deceived, but (as) obey-

μενοι.

ing (you).

Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε·

[And these (things) seemed (good); [and these propositions were

καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε Ἡλείον,
 adopted;] and they-sent Hieronymus — (the) Elean,

ἐροῦντα ταῦτα, καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα,
 saying these (things), and-likewise Eurylochus (the) Arcadian,

καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιόν. Οἱ μὲν ὥχοντο
 and Philesius (the) Achæan. — | (They) indeed went

ἐροῦντες ταῦτα.

saying these (things) [they went carrying this message].

Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔτι καθήμενων Κοιρα-
 But the soldiers 'being still 'seated Coera-

τάδης Θηβαῖος προσέρχεται, ὃς οὐ
 tades (a) Theban came-up (to them), who (though) not

φεύγων περιήει τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλὰ στρατη-
 (a) fugitive, went-about — Greece, but wishing-to-be-

γιῶν, καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἰ ἢ
 a-general, |and announced-himself, [and offering his services,] if either

τις πόλις ἢ ἔθνος δέοιτο στρατηγοῦ· καὶ τότε
 any city or nation might-require (a) general; and then

προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἴη ἕτοιμος ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς
 coming-forward he-said, that he-was prepared to-conduct them.

εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα
 to the Delta, (so) called of — Thrace, where

πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ λήψοιντο· δ' ἔστε
 many and good (things) might-be-obtained; and until 'the

ἀν μόλωσιν, ἔφη παρέξειν καὶ σῖτα καὶ
 should 'arrive, he-said (that) he-would-supply both meat and

ποτά εἰς ἀφθονίαν. Οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούουσι
 drink in abundance. The soldiers listen-to

ταῦτα, καὶ ἅμα τὰ ἀπαγγελλόμενα
these (things), and at-the-same-time the (things) announced

παρὰ Ἀναξίβιον· γὰρ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι πειδομένοις
from Anaxibius; for he-replied, that being-obedient

αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλ' ἀπαγ-
to-him it-'would not (be) 'repented, but (that) he-would-

γελεῖ ταῦτα τοῖς τέλεσι τε οἵκοι, καὶ
announce these (things) to-the highest-authorities — (at) home, and

αὐτὸς βουλεύσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν ἀγαθόν,
he-himself would-consult-and-plan about them (all the) good,

ὅ τι δύναιτο. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται
whatever he-might-be-able. On this the soldiers

δέχοντα τε τὸν Κοιρατάδην στρατηγόν, καὶ
receive indeed — Coeratades (as their) general, and

ἀπῆλδον ἔξω τοῦ τείχους. Ὁ Κοιρατάδης δὲ
they-departed without the walls. — Coeratades indeed

συντίθεται αὐτοῖς παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ σπράτευμα
agreeing with-them to-be-present at the army (the)

ὑστεραίαν, ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν, καὶ
next-day, having both victims and (an) augur, and

σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐξῆλδον,
meat and drink for-the army. But when they-had-gone-out,

ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἐκλείσε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἐκήρυξεν
— Anaxibius shut the gates, and made-proclamation

ὅς ἂν ἁλῶ ἔνδον, ὦν τῶν στρα-
(that he) who might be-caught within (the walls), being of-the ar-

τιωτῶν, ὅτι πεπράσεται. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κοι-
my, that he-would-be-sold. But on-the next-day — Co-

ρατάδης μὲν ἦκε, ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν,
ratades indeed came, having the victims and the augur,

καὶ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες εἶποντο αὐτῷ φέροντες ἄλφιτα,
and twenty men followed him carrying barley meal,

καὶ ἄλλοι εἴκοσι οἶνον, καὶ τρεῖς
and another twenty (carrying) wine, and three (carrying loads)

ἐλαιῶν, καὶ εἷς ἀνὴρ μέγιστον φορτίον ὅσον
of-olives, and one man (carrying) the-greatest load that

ἐδύνατο σκορόδων, καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. Δέ
he-could of-garlic, and another of-onions. And

καταδέμενος ταῦτα, ὥς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν,
they-having-laid-down these (things), as (if) for distribution,

ἔδύετο.

he-sacrificed.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν μεταπεμψάμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέ-
But Xenophon having-sent-for Cleander re-

λευεν διαπραῖσαι ὅπως τε εἰσέλδοι
requested (him) to-obtain (permission for him) that — he-might-enter

εἰς τὸ τεῖχος, καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. Ὁ
within the walls, and to-sail-away from Byzantium. —

Κλέανδρος δ' ἐλθὼν, ἔφη· Ὁκω διαπραξάμενος
Cleander indeed having-arrived, said: I-come having-obtained

μάλα μόλις· γὰρ Ἀναξίβιον λέγειν,
(permission with) great difficulty; for (that) Anaxibius says,

ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον τοὺς στρατιώτας μὲν
that it-is not proper (that) the soldiers indeed

εἶναι πλησίον τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ
(should) be near the walls, Xenophon also (being)

ἐνδον· δὲ τοὺς Βυζαντίους στασιάζειν καὶ
within; and (that) the Byzantians were-divided-in-factions and

εἶναι πονηροὺς ἀλλήλους· ὁμως δὲ,
(that) they-were evil-disposed to-one-another; yet-however indeed,

ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν εἰσιέναι, εἰ μέλλοις ἐκπλεῖν σὺν
he-said, he-requests (you) to-enter, if you-intend to-sail-away with

αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ ἀσπασάμενος τοὺς
him. — Xenophon indeed truly | having-embraced the

στρατιώτας ἀπήει εἰσω τοῦ
soldiers [having taken leave of the soldiers] departed within the

τείχους σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. Ὁ Κοιρατάδης δὲ τῇ
walls with Cleander. — Ceratades indeed on-the

μὲν πρώτη ἡμέρα οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει, οὐδὲ διε-
— first day 'had no 'favourable-sacrifice, neither did-

μέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Τῇ
he-distribute (nothing) (any thing) to-the soldiers. On-the

ὕστεραίᾳ δ' εἰστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμόν, καὶ
 next-day indeed he-stood by the altar, and
 Κοιρατάδης, ἑστεφανωμένος, ὥς θύσων· δὲ Τι-
 Coeratades, being-crowned, as about-sacrificing; but Ti-
 μασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ
 masion the Dardanian, and Neon the Asinæan, and
 Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἔλεγον μὴ Κοιρα-
 Cleanor the Orchomenian, said (that it was) not for-Coera-
 τάδῃ θύειν, ὥς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ,
 tades to-sacrifice, as (he was) not to-be-leading the army,
 εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ὁ κελεύει
 unless he-should-give the provisions. And — he-ordered (them)
 διαμετρεῖσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐνέδει αὐτῷ πολλῶν,
 to-be-distributed. When indeed it-was-wanting to-him many
 ὥστε σίτον γενέσθαι ἐκάστῳ τῶν στρα-
 (things), so-that food should-be to-each of-the sol-
 τιωτῶν ἡμέρας, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπήει,
 diers 'for (the) 'day, taking-away the victims he-departed,
 καὶ ἀπειπὼν τὴν στρατηγίαν.
 and renouncing the generalship.

CHAPTER II.

Δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος, καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς,
 BUT Neon the Asinæan, and Phryniscus the Achæan,
 καὶ Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς, καὶ Ξανδικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιὸς,
 and Philesius the Achæan, and Xanthicles the Achæan,
 καὶ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ,
 and Timasion the Dardanian, remained with the army,
 καὶ προελθόντες εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρακῶν, τὰς
 and proceeding to (some) villages of-the Thracians, —
 κατὰ Βυζάντιον, ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. Καὶ
 (those namely) opposite Byzantium, they-encamped. And

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυ-
 the generals formed-parties, Cleanor indeed and Phry-
 νίσκος βουλόμενοι ἄγειν πρὸς Σευθην· (γὰρ
 niscus wishing to-lead (the army) to Seuthes; (for

ἔπειθε αὐτούς, καὶ τῷ
 he-persuaded (and gained) them (over to his interest) and to-the (one)

μὲν ἔδωκε ἵππον, δὲ τῷ γυναικα·) δὲ Νέων
 indeed he-gave (a) horse, but to-the (other a) woman; and Neon

εἰς Χερρόνησον· οἰόμενος, εἰ γένοιτο ὑπὸ
 to (the) Chersonesus; thinking, (that) if they-got under (the)

Λακεδαιμονίους ἂν προεστάναι παντὸς τοῦ
 Lacedæmonians (that) 'he might 'stand-at-the-head of-all the

στρατεύματος δὲ Τιμασίῳ προὔδυμειτο διαβῆναι
 army; but Timasion wanted-much to-cross

πέραν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν, οἰόμενος ἂν
 over again into — Asia, thinking (that) 'he might (thus)

κατελθεῖν οἴκαδε. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐβούλοντο
 'return home. And the soldiers desired

ταῦτα. Δὲ τοῦ χρόνου διατριβομένου, πολλοὶ
 this-same. But the time 'being (thus) 'consumed, many

τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν ἀποδιδόμενοι τὰ
 of-the soldiers, — (some) indeed selling — (their)

ὄπλα κατὰ τοὺς χώρους, ἀπέπλεον ὥς
 arms up-and-down the places, sailed-away as (well as)

ἐδύναντο· δὲ οἱ καὶ κατεμιγνύοντο εἰς
 they-could; but — (others) also mingled-with (the people) in

τὰς πόλεις. Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ἀκούων ταῦτα,
 the towns. Anaxibius however rejoiced hearing these

τὸ στράτευμα διαφθειρόμενον·
 (things), (that) the army (was about) being-broken-up (and)

γὰρ, τούτων γιγνομένων, ᾤετο μάλιστα
 dispersed); for, these (things) happening, he-thought most-of-all

χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ.
 to-gratify Pharnabazus.

Δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ ἄρμοστη
 But Aristarchus (the) successor of-Cleander (the) governo

Βυζαντίου συναντᾷ Ἀναξιβίῳ ἀποπλέοντι ἐκ
of-Byzantium met Anaxibius sailing-away from

Βυζαντίου ἐν Κυζίκῳ· δὲ ἐλέγετο, ὅτι καὶ Πῶλος
Byzantium at Cyzicus; and he-said, that even Polus

ναύαρχος διάδοχος ὅσον οὐ ἤδη
(the) admiral, (the) successor (of Anaxibius), | as-much-as not already

παρεῖν εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον.
was-present in (the) Hellespont [was expected every instant to

Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ἐπιστέλλει μὲν τῷ
enter the Hellespont]. And Anaxibius enjoined-on — —

Ἀριστάρχῳ ἀποδόσθαι ὁπόσους ἂν εὗροι τῶν
Aristarchus to-sell as-many-as 'he might 'find of-the

στρατιωτῶν Κύρου ὑπολελειμένους ἐν Βυζαντίῳ.
army of-Cyrus remaining-behind in Byzantium.

Ὁ Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐπεπράκει οὐδένα, ἀλλὰ καὶ
— Cleander indeed had-sold none, but even

ἐδεράπευε τοὺς κάμνοντας, οἰκτείρων,
nursed-and-took-care-of — (those) being-sick, commiserating (them),

καὶ ἀναγκάζων δέχεσθαι οἰκία.
and obliging (the inhabitants) to-receive (them) 'in (their) 'houses.

Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, ἀπέδοτο οἶκ
But Aristarchus, when he-came speedily, sold not

ἐλάττους τετρακοσίῳ. Ἀναξίβιος δ' παρα-
less (than) four-hundred. Anaxibius indeed sail-

πλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον
ing-along (the coast) to Parium sends to Pharnabazus

κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. Δ' ὁ ἐπεὶ ἤσδετο
according-to — agreement. But — (Pharnabazus) when he-heard

Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἤκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον
(that) Aristarchus — had-come to Byzantium (as)

ἄρμοστήν, καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα,
governor and Anaxibius no-longer commanded-the-fleet,

ἡμέλησε Ἀναξίβιον πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ διεπράττετο
he-neglected Anaxibius for Aristarchus, and practised

τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ στρατεύματος τοῦ Κυρείου
the same (things) about the army of — Cyrus

ἔπερ καὶ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.
which (he had) even (done) with Anaxibius

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα,
On this — Anaxibius, having-called Xenophon

κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι
(to him), requests (him) by-every means and contrivance to-sail

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατεύμα ὥς τάχιστα, καὶ τε
to the army as speedily (as possible), and not-only

συνέχειν αὐτό καὶ συναθροίζειν τῶν διε-
to-keep it together, but-also to-collect of-the dis-

σπαρμένων ὥς πλείστους ἂν δύνηται,
persed (soldiers) as many (as) 'he might 'be-able

καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Πέρινθον δια-
and having-led (them) along to — Perinthus to

βιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα.
'transport (them) across into — Asia as speedily (as

καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον, καὶ
possible); and he-gave to-him (a) thirty-oared-galley, and (a)

ἐπιστολήν, καὶ συμπέμπει ἄνδρα, κελεύοντα τοὺς
letter, and he-sends (a) man, requesting the

Περινθίους προπέμψαι Ξενοφῶντα τοῖς ἵπποις
Perinthians to-send-away Xenophon on — horse (back)

ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ στρατεύμα. Καὶ ὁ
,s speedily (as possible) to the army And —

Ξενοφῶν μὲν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ
Xenophon indeed having-sailed-across arrived at the

στράτευμα· οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἐδέξαντο ἡδέως,
army; the soldiers also received (him) with-pleasure,

καὶ ἄσμενοι εὐδὺς εἶποντο, ὥς διαβησόμενοι
and 'they willingly immediately followed (him), as crossing-over

ἐκ τῆς Θράκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.
from — Thrace into — Asia.

Ὁ Σεύδης δὲ, ἀκούσας ἤκοντα πάλιν,
— Seuthes however, having-heard (of him) coming back, (and)

πέμψας Μηδοσάδην πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν,
having-sent Medosades to him by sea,

ἔδειτο ἄγειν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς ἑαυτόν,
he-begged (him) to-bring the army to him,

ὑπισχνούμενος αὐτῷ, ὅτι ὤφeto λέγων
promising him, whatever he-thought mentioning (it) (he

παίσειν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο,
might be able) to-persuade (him). But — (Xenophon) answered (him),

ὅτι εἴη οἷόν τε οὐδὲν τούτων γενέσθαι.
[that it-was possible for-none of-these (things) to-happen [that

Καὶ ὁ
it was impossible for any thing of the kind to take place]. And — (he)

μὲν ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὤχετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
indeed having-heard these (things) departed. When however the

Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον, Νέων μὲν
Greeks arrived at Perinthus, Neon indeed

ὑποσπάσας, ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο
having-drawn-off (his troops) from (the rest), encamped

χωρὶς, ἔχων ὥς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνδρώπους· δὲ πᾶν
apart, having about eight-hundred men; and all

τὸ ἄλλο στρατεύμα ἦν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
the other (troops of the) army were in the same (place)

παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινθίων.
under the walls — (those namely) of-Perinthus.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων,
After this Xenophon indeed was-bargaining for ships,

ὅπως ὅτι διαβαλεῖν τάχιστα. Ἐν
so that he-might-cross-over (as) speedily (as possible). At

τούτῳ δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος, ὁ ἄρμοστής ἐκ
this (time) however Aristarchus, the governor from

Βυζαντίου, ἀφικόμενος, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισ-
Byzantium, arriving, having two galleys, having-been-

μένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου, ἀπέειπε τε τοῖς ναυκλή-
persuaded by Pharnabazus, he-forbade indeed the masters-of-the-

ροις μὴ διάγειν, ἐλδὼν τε ἐπὶ τὸ
ships — to-carry-over (the Greeks). (and) having-gone also to the

στράτευμα εἶπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιούσθαι
 army he-told the soldiers not to go-across

εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξί-
 into — Asia. But — Xenophon said, that Anaxi-

βιος ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἔπεμψεν ἐμὲ ἐνθάδε πρὸς τοῦτο.
 bius had-ordered (it) and sent me hither about this

Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἔλεξεν. Ἀναξίβιος μὲν
 But Aristarchus again said: Anaxibius indeed

τοῖνυν οἰκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ ἄρμοστής
 therefore no-longer (is) admiral, I indeed (am) governor

τῇδε· δὲ εἰ λήψομαι τινα ὑμῶν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ,
 here; and if I-shall-take any of-you on the sea,

καταδύσω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ὥχετο εἰς τὸ
 I-will-sink (you). Saying these (things) he-departed within the

τεῖχος. Δ' τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ μεταπέμπεται τοὺς
 walls. But on-the next-day he-sent-for the

στρατηγούς καὶ λοχαγούς τοῦ στρατεύματος.
 generals and — captains of-the army

Δὲ ὄντων ἤδη πρὸς τᾷ τείχει, τις ἐξαγγέλλει
 But being already before the walls, some-one informs

Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι, εἰ εἴσῃσι συλληφθήσεται, καὶ ἢ
 Xenophon, that, if he-entered he-would-be-apprehended, and either

πέισεται τι αὐτοῦ, ἢ καὶ παραδοθήσεται
 would-suffer something there, or even be-delivered-up

Φαρναβάζω. Ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα,
 to-Pharnabazus. — (Xenophon) however hearing these (things),

μὲν προπέμπεται τοὺς, δὲ αὐτὸς εἶπεν, ὅτι
 indeed sent-on-before the (rest), but himself said, that

βούλοιτο θῦσαι τι. Καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο,
 he-wished to-sacrifice (about) something. And going-away he-sacrificed,

εἰ οἱ θεοὶ παρείεν αὐτῷ πειρᾶσθαι ἄγειν τὸ
 if the gods permitted him to-attempt to-lead the

στράτευμα πρὸς Σεύδην. Γὰρ ἑώρα οὔτε ὄν
 army to Seuthes. For he-saw (it) neither being

ἄσφαλές διαβαίνειν τοῦ κωλύσοντος
 safe to-cross-over (into Asia), — (he) hindering (them)

ἔχοντος τριήρεις, οὐτ' ἐβούλετο ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ Χερ-
having galleys, nor did-he-wish having-gone to (the) Cher-

ρόνησον κατακλεισθῆναι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα
sonesuv to-be-shut-up (there), and the army

γενέσθαι ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων, ἔνθα μὲν
to-be in great want of-every-thing, where indeed

ἀνάγκη πείδεσθαι τῷ ἁρμοστῇ ἐκεῖ,
(there would be a) necessity to-obey the governor there,

δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔμελλεν ἔξειν οὐδὲν τῶν
and the army would-hereafter have nothing of —

ἐπιτηδείων.
provisions.

Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶχεν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ'·
| And — (he) indeed had (himself) about these (things);

οἱ στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
[while he was thus engaged;] the generals indeed and captains

ἦκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον,
coming (back) from — Aristarchus announced,

ὅτι μὲν κελεύει σφᾶς νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι, δὲ
that 'he indeed 'requests them now indeed to-go-away, but

ἥκειν τῆς δείλης· ἔνθα καὶ ἡ ἐπιβουλή
to-come (in) the evening; whereby even — (his) design-against (them)

ἐδόκει μᾶλλον δήλη. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει
appeared more manifest. Therefore — Xenophon when it-seemed

τὰ ἱερὰ εἶναι καλὰ αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,
(that) the victims were favourable for-him and the army,

ἵεναι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην, παραλαβὼν Πολυ-
to-go safely to Seuthes, taking Poly-

κράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν
erates the Athenian, (a) captain, and from the

στρατηγῶν (πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος) ἄνδρα ἐκάστου,
generals (except from Neon) (a) man of-each,

ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν, ᾧχετο τῆς νυκτὸς
in-whom each-one confided, he-departed (in) the night

ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα Σεύθου ἐξήκοντα στάδια
to the army of-Seuthes (distant) sixty stadia

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς
But when he-was near it, he-falls-in with-watch-fires

ἐρήμοις. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ᾤετο
desitute (of sentinels). And indeed at-the first he-thought (that)

τὸν Σεύδην μετακεχωρηκένα ποι· ἐπεὶ δ'
— Seuthes had-gone-off somewhere; when indeed

ἤσθετο τε θορύβου, καὶ, τῶν περὶ Σεύδην
he-heard not-only (a) noise, but-also, — (those) about Seuthes

σημαινόντων ἀλλήλοις, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τὰ πυρὰ
making-signals to-one-another, he-understood that the fires

κεκαυμένα εἶη τῷ Σεύδῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων
had-been-kindled by — Seuthes before the night-watches

ἐνεκα τούτου, ὅπως οἱ φύλακες μὴ ὀρῶντο,
by-reason of-this, that the sentinels 'might not 'be-seen,

ὄντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, μήτε ὅποσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν,
being in the dark, neither how-many nor where they-might-be,

δὲ οἱ προσιόντες μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ
but — (those) approaching 'might not 'be-concealed, but

εἶεν καταφανεῖς διὰ τὸ φῶς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤσθετο,
might-be conspicuous in the light. When indeed he-perceived

προπέμπει τὸν ἐρμηνέα ὃν ἐτυγχανεν ἔχων,
(this), he-sends the interpreter whom he-happened having

καὶ κελεύει εἰπεῖν Σεύδῃ, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν
(with him), and requests (him) to-tell Seuthes, that Xenophon

πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. Δὲ οἱ
is-present desiring to-have-an-interview with-him. But —

ἤρουντο, εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ
they-inquired, if (it was) the Athenian, the (one) from the

στρατεύματος. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη εἶναι οὗτος,
army. When indeed he-said (that) it-was he-himself

ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον· καὶ ὀλίγον
jumping-on (their horses) they-departed; and (a) little

ὕστερον πελτασταὶ ὅσον διακόσιοι παρῆσαν, καὶ
after targeteers as-many-as two-hundred were-present, and

παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ
having-received Xenophon and -- (those) with him

ἤγον πρὸς Σεύδην. Ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν
they-conducted (them) to Seuthes. — (Seuthes) indeed was in

τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι ἐγκεχαλι-
(a) tower well guarded, and horses having-been-

νωμένοι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλῳ· γὰρ διὰ τὸν
already-bridled (stood) round it 'in (a) 'circle; for through —

φόβον μὲν ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας,
fear 'he indeed 'fed the horses during-indeed-the days,

δὲ τὰς νύκτας ἐφυλάττετο, ἐγκεχαλινωμένων.
but during-the nights he-kept-guard, they-being-bridled,

Γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρόσθεν Τήρης, ὁ πρόγονος
For indeed it-was-said (that) formerly Teres, the ancestor

τούτου, ἔχων πολὺ στρατεύμα ἐν τῇ
of-this (Seuthes), having (a) numerous army in —

ταύτῃ χώρᾳ, παλλοὺς ἀπολέσαι ὑπὸ
this (same) country, 'had many (men) 'destroyed by

τῶν τούτων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ἀφαιρεθῆναι
— these men (of this country), and had-been-deprived-of

τὰ σκευοφόρα· δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Θυνοί,
— (his) baggage; and these were (the) Thynians,

λεγόμενοι εἶναι πολεμικώτατοι πάντων, μάλιστα
said to-be (the) most-warlike of-all, especially

νυκτός.
by-night.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευσε Ξενο-
When indeed they-were near, (Seuthes) requested Xeno-

φῶντα εἰσελθεῖν ἔχοντα δύο οὓς βούλοιτο.
phon to-enter having two (with him) whom he-might-wish.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἔνδον, πρῶτον μὲν ἡσπάζοντο
When indeed they-were within, 'they first indeed 'embraced

ἀλλήλους, καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θράκιον νόμον προὔπι-
one-another, and according-to the Thracian custom they-drank.

νον κέρατα οἴνου· (δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης
to-one-another (in) horns of-wine; (and also Medosades

παρῆν τῷ Σεύδῃ, ὅςπερ ἐπρέσβευε τῷ αὐτῷ
was-present with — Seuthes, who was-the-ambassador for — him

πάτοσε). Ἐπειτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν.
 to-all-places). Afterwards indeed Xenophon began to-speak :

ὦ Σεύδη, ἔπεμψας πρὸς ἐμὲ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα,
 'You, O Seuthes, 'having-sent to me, at Calchedon,

πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενος
 (the) first (time) Medosades this-same-one (here), entreating

μου συμπροδυμηθῆναι τὸ στράτευμα
 me to-co-operate-with (you) (that) the army (might)

διαβῆναι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός μοι,
 be-crossed-over from — Asia, and promising me,

εἰ πράξαιμι ταῦτα, ποιήσῃς
 if I-should-effect these (things), (that) you-would-do (something)

εὖ, ὥς Μηδοσάδης οὕτοσι ἔφη.
 good (for me), as Medosades the-same (here present) said.

Εἰπὼν ταῦτα, ἐπῆρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ
 Saying these (things), he-inquired-of — Medosades if

ταῦτ' εἴη ἀληθῆ. Ὅ δ' ἔφη.
 these (things) were true. — 'He indeed 'said (that they were).

Οὗτος Μηδοσάδης αὖτις ἦλθε ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην
 This Medosades again came (to me) when I went-over

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου, ὑπισχνούμενος,
 back to the army from Parium, promising,

εἰ ἄγοίμι τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς σέ, τἄλλα
 if I-should-lead the army to you, in-other-respects

τέ χρήσεσθαι μοι φίλῳ καὶ
 you-'would not-only 'treat me 'as (a) 'friend but-also (a)

ἀδελφῷ, καὶ τὰ χωρία παρὰ τὰ θαλάττη,
 brother, and (that) the places along the sea,

ὧν σὺ κρατεῖς, ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ μοι.
 of-which you are-master, would-be (a present) from you to-me.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἐπῆρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην,
 About these (things) 'he again 'inquired-of — Medosades,

εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. Ὅ δὲ συνέφη
 if he-said these (things). — 'He indeed agreed (that he said)

καὶ ταῦτα. Ἴδι νῦν, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι
 even these (things). Go-on now, said (Xenophon) to-relate

τούτῳ τί ἀπεκρινάμην πρῶτον ἐν Καλχηδόνι.
to-this (Seuthes) what I-answered first in Calchedon.

Ἀπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάν-
You-answered that the army would-cross-over to Byzan-

τιον, καὶ ἕνεκα τούτου δέοι οὔτε σοὶ
tium, and on-account-of this there-would-be-need neither for-you

οὔτε ἄλλῳ τελεῖν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφησθα ἐπεὶ
or for-another to-pay; yourself indeed said (that) when

διαβαίης, ἀπιέναι· καὶ
you-had-crossed-over, (that) you-would-depart (from the army); and

οὕτως ἐγένετο ὥςπερ σὺ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,
thus it-happened as you have-said. What — (then) did-I-say,

ἔφη, ὅτε ἀφίκου κατὰ Σηλυβρίαν; Ἔφησθα
said-he, when you-came to Selybria? You-said (that)

εἶναι οὐκ οἶόν τε, ἀλλ' ἐλδόντας εἰς
it-was not possible, but (that) (the army) having-gone to

Πέρινδον διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν
Perintus (was) to-cross-over into — Asia. Now

τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυ-
therefore, said — Xenophon, and I and-also this Phry-

νίσκος, εἷς τῶν στρατηγῶν, καὶ οὗτος Πολυκράτες,
niscus, one of-the generals, and this Polycrates,

εἷς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν πιστότατος
one of-the captains, and without are (the) most-confidential (friends)

ἀπὸ ἐκάστῳ τῶν στρατηγῶν, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ
from each of-the generals, except Neon the

Λακωνικοῦ. Εἰ οὖν βούλει τὴν πράξιν εἶναι
Lacedæmonian. If therefore you-wish the business to-be

πιστοτέραν, καὶ κάλεσαι ἐκείνους. Δὲ σὺ,
more-trustworthy, even call them (in . And 'do you,

ὦ Πολύκρατες, ἐλδὼν, εἰπέ ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω
O Polycrates, going, tell (them) that I request (them)

καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ αὐτὸς καταλιπὼν
to-leave-behind — (their) arms; and you-yourself, leaving-behind

ἐκεῖ τὴν μάχαιραν εἰσιδὶ.
there - (your) sword, come-in

Ὁ Σεύδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀπι-
 — Seuthes hearing these (things) said, that he-
 στήσειεν οὐδενὶ Ἀθηναίων· γὰρ καὶ ὅτι
 would-distrust no-one 'of (the) 'Athenians; for truly-indeed that (he)
 εἰδέναι εἶεν συγγενεῖς, καὶ ἔφη νομίζειν
 knew they-were relatives, and said (that) he-considered (them as)
 εἵνους φίλους. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ εἰς-
 kind friends. But after these (things) when (those) en-
 ἦλθον οὓς ἔδει, Ξενοφῶν πρῶτον μὲν ἐπῆρετο
 tered whom he-wanted, Xenophon first indeed inquired-of
 Σεύδην ὅ τι δέοιτο. χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ.
 Seuthes in-what he-might-require to-use the army.
 Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε· Μαισάδες ἦν πατήρ μοι,
 — (Seuthes) indeed spoke thus: Mæsades was father to-me,
 δὲ ἐκείνου ἦν ἀρχη
 |and of-him was (the) government [and under his government were]
 Μελανδίται, καὶ Θυνοὶ, καὶ Τρανίψαι. Ἐπεὶ
 (the) Melanditæ, and Thynians, and Tranipsians. When
 τὰ πράγματα Ὀδρυσῶν ἐνόσησεν, ὁ πατήρ
 the affairs 'of (the) 'Odrysæ had-declined, — (my) father
 ἐκπεσὼν οὖν ἐκ τῆς ταύτης χώρας, αὐτὸς μὲν
 being-driven therefore from — these-same countries, he indeed
 ἀποδνήσκει νόσῳ· δ' ἐγὼ ὀρφανὸς ἐξετράφην
 died 'of (a) disease; and I (an) orphan was-brought-up
 παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγενόμην
 under Medocus the present king. When indeed I-had-become
 νεανίσκος, ἐδυνάμην οὐ ζῆν ἀποβλέπων εἰς
 (a) young-man, I-could not live looking-for (support) to
 ἄλλοτρίαν τράπεζαν· καὶ ἐκοδεζόμεν ἐνδίφριος
 another's table; and I-sat on-the-same-seat
 αὐτῷ ἱκετης, δοῦναί μοι ὅποσους ἄνδρας
 with-him (a) suppliant, to-give me as-many men 'as
 εἴη δυνατὸς, ὅπως ποιοίην κακὸν, εἴ τι
 he-might-be able, in-order-that I-might-do evil, if any
 δυναίμην, καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς, καὶ ζῶην.
 I-could, even on — (those) expelling us, and might-live

μὴ ἀποβλέπων εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν ἐκείνου ὥσπερ
not looking at the table of-him like

κύων. Ἐκ τούτου δίδωσι μοι τοὺς ἀνδρας καὶ
(a) dog. On this he-gave me the men and

τοὺς ἵππους, οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε ἐπειδὰν γένηται
the cavalry, which you will-see after it-becomes

ἡμέρα. Καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ζῶ, ἔχων τούτους,
day. And I now live, having these (under my command)

ληϊζόμενος τὴν πατρίαν χώραν ἐμαυτοῦ.
(by) depredating-on the paternal country of-myself.

Εἰ δὲ ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε μοι, οἶμαι ἂν
If indeed you join me, I-think (that I) may

σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥαδίως ἀπολαβεῖν
with (the assistance of) the gods easily recover

τὴν ἀρχήν. Ταῦτ' ἐστίν ἃ ἐγὼ θέομαι
the government. These are (the things) which I want

ὑμῶν.
of-you.

Τί οὖν ἂν δύναιο, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰ
What therefore might you-be-able, said — Xenophon, if

ἔλθοιμεν, δίδοναι τε τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ τοῖς
we-come, to-give not-only to-the army but-also to-the

λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι
captains and the generals? tell-us, in-order-that these

ἀπαγγέλλωσι. Δ' ὁ ὑπέσχετο μὲν τῷ
(persons) may-announce (it). And — he-promised indeed to-the

στρατιώτῃ Κυζικηνόν, δὲ τῷ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν,
soldier (a) Cyzicene, and to-the captain twice-as-much,

δὲ τῷ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν, ὅπόσῃν
and to-the general four-times-as-much, and land, as-much-as

ἂν βούλωνται, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ χωρίον
'they might' 'desire, and yokes (of oxen), and (a) place

ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δὲ, ἔφη ὁ
near (the) sea having-been-fortified. If indeed, said --

Ξενοφῶν, πειρώμενοι ταῦτα μὴ δια-
Xenophon, attempting these (things) we-'should not 'suc

πράζωμεν, ἀλλὰ ἢ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακε-
 need, but (that) there-may-be some fear about (the) Lacedæ-
 δαιμονίων, εἴαν τις βούληται ἀπιέναι παρὰ σέ,
 daemonians, if any (of us) may-wish to-depart to you,
 δέξῃ εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ; Ὁ δ'
 would-you-receive (them) into — (your) country? — 'He indeed
 εἶπε, Καὶ γε ποιήσομαι ἀδελφούς, καὶ
 said, Even 'I at-least 'will-make (them) brothers, and
 ἐνδιφρίους, καὶ κοινωνοὺς πάντων, ὧν ἂν
 table-companions, and sharers of-all, which 'we may
 δυνάμεθα κτᾶσθαι. Δὲ σοί, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, δώσω
 'be-able to-acquire. And to-you, O Xenophon, I-will-give
 καὶ θυγατέρα, καὶ εἴ ἔστι τις θυγάτηρ σοί
 even (my) daughter, and if there-is any daughter to-you
 ὠνήσομαι Θρακίῳ νόμῳ· καὶ δώσω
 I-will-buy (her according) 'to (the) 'Thracian eustom; and I-will-give
 Βισάνδην οἴκησιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον
 (you) Bisanthe (as a) residence, which is to-me the-most-beautiful
 χωρίον τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ.
 place of — (those) on (the) sea.

CHAPTER III.

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες
 HEARING these (things), and giving and taking
 δεξιὰς ἀπήλαινον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο
 right-hands they-rode-off; and before day (break) they-got
 ἐπὶ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ ἕαστοι ἀπήγγειλαν
 to the camp, and each reported
 τοῖς πέμψασι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα
 to — (those) having-sent (them). And when it-was day (light)
 ὁ Ἀρίσταρχος μὲν πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγούς
 — Aristarchus indeed again called-for the generals

καὶ λοχαγοὺς, ὁ εὐσεβεῖς τοῖς σαυαί μιν ἴην
and captains; but it-seemed (best) to — (them) to-omit indeed the
ὁδὸν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ συγκαλέσαι τὸ
road to Aristarchus, and to-call-together the

στράτευμα. Καὶ πάντες συνῆλθον, πλὴν οἱ
army. And all assembled, except the (soldiers)

Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπείχον ὥς δέκα στάδια
of-Neon; these indeed were-distant about ten stadia.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε
When indeed they-had-assembled, Xenophon rising-up spoke

τάδε· Ἄνδρες, Ἀρίσταρχος ἔχων τριήρεις κωλύει
thus: Men, Aristarchus having galleys prevents (us)

διαπλεῖν ἔνθα μὲν βουλόμεθα· ὥστε οὐκ
to-sail (there) where indeed we-wish; so-that (it is) not

ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν εἰς πλοῖα· δὲ οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς
safe to-embark on vessels; but this — (same) —

κελεύει πορεύεσθαι βία διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους
(man) orders (us) to-proceed by-force over the sacred mountain

εἰς Χερσόνησον· ἣν δὲ, κρατήσαντες τούτου
into (the) Chersonesus; if indeed, having-overcome this

ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε, φησιν οὔτε πωλήσειν
we-should-arrive there, he-says (that) he-'would neither 'sell

ὑμᾶς ἔτι ὥσπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἔτι
you hereafter as (he did) at Byzantium, nor hereafter

ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν,
deceive you, but (that you) shall-receive pay,

οὔτε ἔτι περιόψεσθαι, ὥσπερ νυνί
(nor) (and) hereafter he-will--take-care, that-as now you-'will (not)

δεομένους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Οὗτος μὲν
'be-wanting — provisions. This (Aristarchus) indeed

λέγει ταῦτα. Δὲ Σεύθης φησιν, ἂν ἴητε
says these (things). But Seuthes says, if you-go

πρὸς ἐκεῖνον, ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς εὖ.
to him, | (that) he-will-make you well [that he will bene-

fit you]. Νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε, πότερον μένοντες
Now therefore consider, whether remaining

ἐνθάδε βουλεύσεσθε τοῦτο, ἢ ἐπανελθόντες
here you-will-deliberate (about) this, or (after) having-gone-back

εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὖν μὲν δοκεῖ ἔμοι ἐπεὶ
for provision. Therefore indeed it-seems to-me (that) since

ἐνθάδε ἔχομεν οὔτε ἀργύριον, ὥστε ἀγοράζειν,
here we-have neither money, that (we may) buy-provisions,

οὔτε ἄνευ ἀργυρίου ἔῶσι λαμβάνειν τὰ
nor, without money, will-they-allow (us) to-take —

ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὰς κώμας, ὅθεν οἱ
provisions, having-retained to the villages, where the

ἥττους ἔῶσι λαμβάνειν,
(inhabitants being) weaker (than we) will-permit (us) to-take

ἐκεῖ, ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀκούοντας
(provisions), there, having — provisions, (and) hearing

ὅτι τις δεῖται ὑμῶν, αἰρεῖσθαι ὅτι ἂν δοκῇ
what any-one asks of-you, to-choose what may seem

εἶναι κράτιστον ὑμῖν. Καὶ ἔφη ὅτω ταῦτα
to-be the-best to-you. And he-said to-whomsoever these

δοκεῖ ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. ὅτι πάντες
(things) seem (good) 'let (him) 'hold-up — (his) hand. All

ἀνέτειναν. Ὅτι πάντες τοῖνον, ἔφη, συσκευ-
extended (them) upwards. Going-away therefore, said-he, pack

άζεσθε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν τις παραγγέλλῃ,
'up (your) 'baggage, and when any-one may-announce (it,,

ἔπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.
follow — (your) leader.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγεῖτο, δ'
After these (things) Xenophon indeed led-on, and

οἱ εἶποντο. Δὲ Νέων καὶ ἄλλοι παρ'
the (soldiers) followed. And Neon and others about

Ἀριστάρχου ἐπειδὴν ἀποτρέπεσθαι· δ' οἱ
Aristarchus persuaded (them) to-turn-back; but — (they)

οὐχ ὑπήκουον. Ὅτι δὲ προεληλύθεσαν
'would not 'mind (them). When indeed they-had-advanced

ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους, Σεύδης ἀπαντᾷ.
as-much-as thirty stadia, Seuthes meets (them).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτόν ἐκέλευσε προσελάσαι
And — Xenophon seeing him requested (him) to-ride-up.

ὅπως ὅτι εἴποι αὐτῷ πλείστων
so that he-might-speak to-him (while) the-greatest-number (were)

ἀκουόντων ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν.
listening, (about) what might-seem to-be-'for (their) 'advantage.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθε, Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Ἡμεῖς πορευ-
When indeed he-came-forward, Xenophon said: We are-pro-

όμεθα, ὅπου τὸ στρατεύμα μέλλει ἔξειν τροφήν.
ceeding, where the army will-be-about to-have food;

δ' ἐκεῖ ἀκούοντες καὶ σοῦ καὶ τοῦ
and where hearing both (the propositions) of-you and — (those)

τῶν Λακωνικοῦ, αἰρησόμεθα ἃ ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι
of-the Lacedæmonians, we-shall-determine what may seem to-be

κράτιστα. Ἦν οὖν ἡγήσῃ ἡμῖν, ὅπου
the-best. If therefore you-should-conduct us, where

ἐπιτήδεια ἐστὶν πλείστα, νομιοῦμεν
provisions are most (abundant), we-shall-consider (ourselves)

ξενίζεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ. Καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη·
to-be-hospitably-entertained by you. And — Seuthes said:

Ἀλλὰ οἶδα πολλὰς κώμας ἄδρόας, καὶ
But I-know (of) many villages (being) close-together, and

ἐχούσας πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀπεχούσας
having all (kinds of) — provisions, being-distant

ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν ἀριστώητε
from-us as-much-as having-gone-over (to them) 'you may 'dine

ἡδέως. Ἦγοῦ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. Ἐπεὶ
pleasantly. Conduct (us) therefore, said — Xenophon. When

δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δείλης, οἱ στρα-
indeed they-arrived to them towards-the evening, the sol

τῶνται συνῆλθον, καὶ Σευθῆς εἶπε τοιάδε· Ἐγὼ
liers assembled, and Seuthes spoke thus: I

ὧ ἄνδρες, θέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί,
O men, want you to-serve-as-soldiers with me,

καὶ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις
and I-promise you to-give to-the soldiers 'a'.

κυζικηνόν, δὲ καὶ λοχαγοῖς στρα-
 cyzicene (each month), and also 'to (the) 'captains (and) gene-
 τηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων
 rals — (that) being-right-and-customary; besides indeed these

τιμήσω τὸν ἄξιον. Ἔξετε σῖτα καὶ δὲ
 (things) I-will-honour the deserving. You-shall-have meat and also

ποτά ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν, λαμβάνοντες ἐκ τῆς
 lrink as even now, taking (them) from the

χώρας. Δ' ὅποσα ἂν ἀλίσκηται, αὐτὸς
 eountry. But whatever (spoils) may be-taken, I-myself

ἄξιώσω ἔχειν ἵνα διατιθέμενος ταῦτα
 shall-claim to-have (it) in-order-that having-disposed-of these (things)

πορίζω τὸν μισθὸν ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὰ μὲν
 'I (may) 'provide — pay for-you. And — (those) indeed

φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἐσόμεθα ἱκανοὶ
 fleeing and concealing-themselves we will-be able

διώκειν καὶ μαστεῦειν. Ἄν δέ τις ἀνδιστῇται,
 to-pursue and to-look-out. If indeed any-one resists,

σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 with you we-shall-endeavour to-overcome (him). — Xenophon

ἐπηρετο· Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις
 inquired: How (far) indeed from (the) sea will-you-require

τὸ στράτευμα συνέπεσθαι σοι; ὃ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
 the army to-accompany you? — 'he indeed 'replied,

Οὐδαμῇ πλεῖον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, δὲ πολλαχῇ
 Never more (than) seven days' (march), but often

μείον.
 less.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδото τῷ βου-
 After these (things) (permission) was-given to — (those) wish-

λομένῳ λέγειν· καὶ πολλοὶ ἔλεγον κατὰ
 ing (it) to-speak; and many spoke respecting (and con-

ταῦτά, ὅτι Σεύδης λέγοι παντός
 curring in) these (things), that Seuthes spoke (words) aV

ἄξια· γὰρ εἶη χειμῶν,
 worthy-of-esteem (and advantageous to them); for it-was winter

καὶ οὔτε εἴη δυνατόν τῷ βουλομένῳ τοῦτο
and neither was-it possible for — (those) desiring this

ἀποπλεῖν οἴκαδε, τε εἴη οὐχ οἷόν τε διαγενέσθαι
to-sail-away home, and it-was not possible to-stay

ἐν φιλίᾳ, εἰ δέοι ζῆν ὠνούμενους,
in (a) friendly (country), if it-might-be-necessary to-live buying

δὲ ἀσφαλέστερον διατρίβειν
(their provisions), but (it would be) safest to-remain

καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ μετὰ Σεύδου,
and to-be-nourished in — (a) hostile (country) with Seuthes,

ἢ μόνους, ὄντων τοσούτων ἀγαθῶν· εἰ δὲ
than alone, there-being so-many advantages; if moreover

προσλήψοιντο μισθὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι
they-should-receive in-addition pay it-would-seem to-be (an unexpected)

εὖρημα. Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
good-fortune. | On these (things) Xenophon said: [Xeno-

phon then said:] Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει,
If any-one (have anything) to-say-against (this), 'let

λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφίζετω ταῦτα.
(him) 'speak: if however not, 'let (him) 'vote-for these

ἔπει δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
(things). When indeed no-one 'said (anything) 'against,

ἐπεψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα.
he-'put (it) to-vote, | and it-seemed (that) these (things were good)

Δὲ εὐθὺς εἶπε ταῦτα
[and it was carried]. And (Xenophon) immediately told these (things)

Σεύδῃ, ὅτι συστρατεύσονται αὐτῷ.
to-Seuthes, (and) that they-would-fight-and-join with-him (in the expedition).

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ ἄλλοι μὲν ἐσκήνησαι
After this the other (soldiers) indeed encamped

κατὰ τάξεις, Σεύδης ἔχων
according-to (their) ranks-and-divisions, Seuthes (having) (being in)

πλησίον κώμην, ἐκάλεσε στρατηγούς δὲ καὶ
(a) near village, invited (the) generals and-also

λοχαγούς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐπὶ
(the) captains to supper. And when they-were at (the)

θύραις, ὡς παριόντες ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἣν τις Ηρα-
 doors, as going to supper, there was a-certain Hera-
 κλείδης Μαρωνεΐτης· οὗτος προσίων ἐκάστω
 oclides (a) Maronean; this (person) going-to each
 ἐνὶ, οὓςτινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύδῃ,
 one, whom he-thought to-have any-thing to-give to-Seuthes,
 πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τινὰς Παριανούς, οἱ παρῆσαν
 first indeed to some Parians, — (who) were-present
 διαπραξόμενοι φιλίαν πρὸς Μήδοκον, τὸν βασιλέα
 about-to-obtain friendship with Medocus, the king
 Ὀδρυσῶν, καὶ ἄγοντες δῶρα αὐτῷ τε καὶ
 'of (the) 'Odrysia, and bringing presents to-him and-also
 τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν εἶη ἄνω
 to — (his) wife, he-said, that Medocus indeed was up
 δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπὸ θαλάττης,
 (in the country) twelve days' journey from (the) sea,
 δὲ Σεύδῃς, ἐπεὶ εἴληφε τὸ τοῦτο στράτευμα,
 out Seuthes, since he-has-taken — this army (into his
 ἔσοιτο ἄρχων ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ. Ὡν οὖν
 service), would-be master on (the) sea (coast). Being therefore
 γείτων, ἔσται ἰκανώτατος ποιεῖν ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ
 neighbours, he-will-be most-able to-treat you both well
 καὶ κακῶς. Ἦν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, δώσετε τούτῳ
 and ill. If therefore you-are-wise, give to-this
 ὅ τι ἂν αἰτῇται, καὶ διακείσεται
 (Seuthes to obtain) what 'you may 'ask-for, and it-will-be-disposed-of
 ἄμεινον ὑμῖν, ἢ εἰάν δῶτε Μηδόκῳ τῷ οἰκοῦντι
 better for-you, than if you-give (it) to-Medocus — dwelling
 πρόσω. Οὕτως μὲν ἔπειδε τούτους. Αὐτῷ δὲ
 far-off. Thus indeed he-persuaded them. Afterwards indeed
 προσελθὼν Τιμασίῳ τῷ Δαρδανεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν
 going-to Timasion the Dardanian, since he-had-heard
 εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ
 (that there) were to-him [that he had] both cups and
 βαρβαρικάς ταπίδας, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο
 barbaric (or Persian) carpets, he-said that it-was-customary

ὅποτε Σεύδης καλέσαιτο δεῖπνον τοὺς κλη
 whenever Seuthes invited to-supper (for) — (those) having.

δείπτας δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ. Δ' οὗτος
 been-invited to-give (presents) to-him. And this (Seuthes)

ἢ γένηται μέγας ἐνθάδε, ἔσται ἱκανὸς, καὶ
 if he-becomes great here, will-be able, both

καταγαγεῖν σε οἶκαδε, καὶ ποιῆσαι πλούσιον
 to-have-restored you to-home, and to-make (you) rich

ἐνθάδε. Τοιαῦτα προῦμνατο, προς
 here. (In) such (a manner) he-kept-suing (for Seuthes), go-

ὦν ἐκάστω. Δὲ καὶ προσελθὼν Ξενο-
 ing-to each (of the guests). And also advancing to-Xeno-

φῶντι ἔλεγε· Σὺ εἰ καὶ μεγίστης πόλεως,
 phon he-said: You are also (from a) very-great city,

καὶ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα ἐστὶ μέγιστον παρὰ Σεύδῃ,
 and — your name is very-great with Seuthes,

καὶ ἐν τῇδε χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ λαμ-
 and in this country you-'will perhaps 'claim even to-re-

βάνειν τεῖχῃ, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων
 ceive walled-places, as even others of — your

ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν· οὖν
 (countrymen) have-received, and-likewise land; (it will) therefore (be)

ἄξιον σοι τιμῆσαι Σεύδην καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα.
 proper for-you to-honour Seuthes even most-magnificently

Δὲ παραινῶ σοι ὦν εὖνους· γὰρ εὖ οἶδα,
 And I-advise you being (your) well-wisher; for 'I well 'know

ὅτι ὅσω μείζω ἂν δωρήσῃ τούτῳ
 that how-much the-greater may (be the presents) you-give him

τοσούτῳ μείζω πείσῃ ὑπὸ τούτου·
 so-much the-greater you-may-persuade of this (person)

ἀγαθὰ. Ξενοφῶν ἀκούων ταῦτα
 (to grant you) benefits. Xenophon hearing these (th ng.),

ἠπόρει· γὰρ δὴ διαβεβήκει ἐκ Παρίου οὐ ἔχων,
 was-perplexed; for indeed he-had-come-over from Parium not having

εἰ μὴ παῖδα καὶ ὅσον
(any thing), | if not, [except] (a) servant and as-much-as (enough
money) 'for (the) 'journey.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἡλδον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον

When indeed they-went-in to the supper (the guests consist

τὲ τῶν Θρακῶν, οἱ κράτιστο
ing of) indeed the Thracians, — (those namely being) the-best

τῶν παρόντων, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
(and most considerable) of — (those) present, and the genera.

καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ εἰ τις πρεσβεία
and the captains of-the Greeks, and if any ambassador

παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν
was-present from (a) town, | the supper indeed was (for them)

καθήμενοι κύκλῳ·
sitting 'in (a) 'circle; [they took their supper sitting in a circle;]

ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰσηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν
afterwards indeed tables-with-three-feet were-brought-in for-all,

οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν μεστοὶ κρεῶν νενεμημέ-
these (tables) indeed were full (of pieces of) meat heaped.

των, καὶ μεγάλοι ζυμῖται ἄρτοι ἦσαν προς-
up, and large leavened (loaves of) bread were at-

πεπερονημένοι πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. Δ' αἱ
tached to the (pieces of) meat. And the

τράπεζαι αἰεὶ μάλιστα ἐτίθεντο κατὰ τοὺς
tables 'were always in-preference 'placed near the

ξένους· γὰρ ἦν νόμος. Καὶ Σεύθης πρῶτος
guests; for (this) was (their) custom. And Seuthes first

ἐποίει τοῦτο· ἀνελόμενος τοὺς ἄρτους παρα-
acted thus: taking-up the (loaves of) bread lying-

κειμένους ἑαυτῷ διέκλα κατὰ μικρόν, καὶ
near him he-broke (them) into small (pieces), and

διεῖρρίπτειν, οἷς ἐδόκει αὐτῷ· καὶ τὰ κρέα ὡς-
distributed, to-whom it-pleased him; and the meat in-like

αὕτως καταλιπὼν ἑαυτῷ μόνον ὅσον γεύσασθαι.
manner, leaving for-himself only as-much-as to-taste

Καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δέ, καδ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο,
 And the others indeed, before whom the tables were-placed,
 ἐποίουν κατὰ ταῦτά. Δέ τις Ἀρκὰς
 acted according to-this-same (manner). But a-certain Arcadian,

Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, δεινὸς φαγεῖν, εἶα
 Arystas by-name, | terrible to-eat, [a very great eater,] | permitted

χαίρειν μὲν τὸ διαρρίπτειν,
 (himself to say) good-by [took no care of] indeed the distributing,

δέ λαβὼν εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ἄρτον ὅσον
 but having-taken in — (his) hand (a loaf of) bread (of) as-much-as

τριχοίνικον, καὶ κρέα, θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ
 three-choenix, and-also meat, having-placed (them) on — (his)

γόνατα, ἐδείπνει. Δὲ περιέφερον κέρατα
 knees, he-'ate (his) 'supper. And they-carried-about horns

οἴνου, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο. Δ' ὁ Ἀρύστας,
 of-wine, and all received (some). But — Arystas,

ἐπεὶ ὁ οἶνοχόος ἦκεν παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας,
 when the cup-bearer came to him bearing the horn,

εἶπεν, ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα,
 he-said, seeing — Xenophon no-longer supping,

δός, ἔφη, ἐκείνῳ· γὰρ ἤδη σχολάζει, δὲ ἐγὼ
 give (it), said-he, to-him; for now he-is-at-leisure, but I

οὐδέπω. Σεύδης ἀκούσας τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν
 not-yet. Seuthes nearing the voice asked the

οἶνοχόον τί λέγοι. Δὲ ὁ οἶνοχόος εἶπεν·
 cup-bearer what he-might-say. And the cup-bearer told (him);

γὰρ ἠπίστατο ἐλληνίζειν. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ
 for he-knew (how) to-speak-Greek. Then indeed truly

ἐγένετο γέλιος.
 there-was laughter.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὁ πότος προὔχῳρει, ἀνὴρ, Θράξ,
 When indeed the drinking was-going-on, (a) man, (a) Thracian,

εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων λευκὸν ἵππον· καὶ λαβὼν κέρας
 entered having (a) white horse; and taking (a) horn

μεστὸν εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύδη, καὶ
 full (of wine) said· I-drink to-you, O Seuthes, and

δωροῦμαι τὸν τοῦτον ἵππον, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων
present (you) — this-same horse, on which both following

ὃν ἂν θέλῃς, αἰρήσεις, καὶ ἀποχωρῶν
whom 'you may 'wish you-will-take (him), and retreating you-'will

οὐ μὴ δείσῃς τὸν πολέμιον. Ἄλλος εἰσαγαγὼν
not — 'fear the enemy. Another leading-in (a)

παῖδα, οὕτως προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ
boy, in-like-manner drinking-to (him) presented (the boy), and

ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. Καὶ Τιμασίῳ προ-
another vestments for — (his) wife. And Timasion drink-

πίνων ἐδωρήσατο τε ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην καὶ
ing-to (him) presented not-only (a) silver cup but-also

ταπίδα ἀξίαν δέκα μινῶν. Δὲ Γνήσιππος, τις
(a) carpet worth ten minæ. But Gnesippus, a-certain

Ἀθηναῖος, ἀναστὰς εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀρχαῖος νόμος
Athenian, rising-up said, that (the) ancient custom

εἶη κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ
was most-beautiful for — (those) indeed having to-give to-the

βασιλεῖ ἕνεκα τιμῆς, δὲ τὸν
king | by-reason-of honour, [in order to honour him,] but (that) the

βασιλέα διδόναι τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι, ἵνα καὶ
king should-give to — (those) indeed not having, therefore even

ἐγώ, ἔφη, σοι ἔχω δωρεῖσθαι
I, said-he, (beg of) you (that) I-may-have (s^o-omething) to-present

καὶ τιμᾶν. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἠπορεῖτο
and to-honour (you). — Xenophon indeed was-perplexed (to know)

ὅ τι ποιήσοι· γὰρ καὶ ἐτύγχανεν καθήμενος ὥς
what he-might-do; for even he-happened being-seated as

τιμώμενος ἐν δίφρῳ πλησιστάτῳ Σεύδῃ.
(one) honoured in (the) seat the-nearest to-Seuthæ.

Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης δὲ ἐκέλευεν τὸν οἶνοχόον ὀρέξαι
— Heraclides indeed requests the cup-bearer to-present

τὸ κέρας αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ (γὰρ ἤδη
the cup to-him. — Xenophon however (for already

ἐτύγχανεν ὑποπεπωκώς) ἀνέστη, θάρρα
he-happened being-somewhat-exhilarated-by-wine) stood-up, (and) boldly

λέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας, καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δέ,
taking the horn, 'he also 'said: I indeed,

ὦ Σεύδη, δίδωμι σοι ἑμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς τούτους
O Seuthes, give to-you myself and — these

ἑμούςς ἐταίρους, εἶναι πιστούς φίλους, καὶ οὐδένα
my companions, to-be (your) faithful friends, and none

ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ βου-
being-reluctant, but all more than-even myself de-

λομένους εἶναι φίλους. Καὶ νῦν πάρεισι
siring to-be (your) friends. And now they-are-present

προσαιοῦντες οὐδέν σε, ἀλλὰ καὶ προῖέμενοι
asking-'for nothing 'more of-you, but even 'giving

καὶ ἐδέλοντες πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ
'(themselves) 'up (to you) and desiring to-labour for you

καὶ προκινδυνεύειν· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ
and-also to-incur-danger (for you); with whom, if the gods

θέλωσι, ἀπολήψῃ πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν
will (it), you-will-retake much territory — (that) indeed

οὔσαν πατρώαν, δὲ κτήσῃ τὴν· δὲ
being paternal, but-also you-will-acquire — (other territory); also

κτήσῃ πολλοὺς ἵππους δὲ ἄνδρας, καὶ καλὰς
you-will-acquire many horses and men, and handsome

γυναῖκας, οὓς οὐ δεήσει λήζεσθαι, ἀλλ
women, whom it-'will not be-necessary to-take-by-force, but

αὐτοὶ παρέσονται φέροντες δῶρα πρὸς σε.
they-themselves will-be-present bringing gifts for you.

Ὁ Σεύδης ἀναστὰς συνεξέπιε
Seuthes standing-up drank-out-'of (the same horn) 'with (him)

καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο συγκατεσκεδάσατο
and after this 'with (him) 'poured-out (on himself)

τὸ κέρας. Μετὰ ταῦτα
(the contents of) the horn. After these (things) (persons)

εἰσῆλθον αὐλοῦντες τε κέρασι, οἷσι σημαίνουν
entered playing not-only on-horns, such-as they-make-signals-

τιν, καὶ σάλπιγξιν ὁμοβοῦναις, σαλπίζοντες τε
with, but-also on-trumpets made-of-raw-hides, blowing not-only

ῥυθμοῖς καὶ οἷον μαγάδι. Καὶ Σεύδης αὐτός
regular-tunes but-also as-if 'on (the) 'megadis. And Seuthes himself

ἀναστὰς τε ἀνέκραγε πολεμικόν, καὶ
standing-up not-only shouted (a) warlike (cry), but-also

ἐξήλατο μάλα ἐλαφρῶς, ὥςπερ φυλαττόμενος
leaped-away very nimbly, as-if guarding-against (a)

βέλος. Δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοὶ εἰσῆσαν.
missile. And also buffoons entered.

Ὡς δ' ἥλιος ἦν ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, οἱ Ἕλληνες
As indeed (the) sun was about setting, the Greeks

ἀνέστησαν, καὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ὦρα καθιστάναι
stood-up, and said, that (it was) time to-place (the)

νυκτοφύλακας, καὶ παραδιδόναι σύνθημα. Καὶ
night-sentinels, and to-give-out (the) watch-word. And

ἐκέλευον Σεύδην παραγγεῖλαι, ὅπως μηδεὶς τῶν
they-requested Seuthes to-announce, that no-one of-the

Θρακῶν εἰσεῖσι εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα
Thracians should-enter into the Greek camp.

νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ πολέμοι ὑμῖν Θραῖκες, καὶ
by-night; for not-only the enemies to-you (are) Thracians, but-also

οἱ φίλοι ἡμῖν. Ὡς δ' ἐξῆσαν, ὁ Σεύδης
the friends to-us. As indeed they-went-out, — Seuthes

συνανέστη οὐδὲν ἔτι ἔοικώς μεθύοντι.
stood-up-with (them) not as-yet like (a man) being-intoxicated.

Δ' ἐξελθὼν, ἀποκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγούς αὐτοὺς,
And going-out, having-called-back the generals (by) themselves,

εἶπεν· ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασι
he-said: O men, the enemies of-us 'do not 'know

πῶ τὴν ὑμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἣν οὖν ἔλωμεν
as-yet — (of) our alliance; if therefore we-should-go

ἐπ' αὐτούς, πρὶν φυλάξασθαι, ὥς τε
against them, before (that) they-were-'on (their) 'guard, so-as

μὴ ληφθῆναι, ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὥς τε
not to-be-taken, or prepared (for defence), thus

ἀμύνασθαι ἂν λάβοιμεν μάλιστα καὶ
to-arrange-ourselves (if) 'we may 'have-taken the-most both (of)

ἀνδράποους καὶ χρήματα. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνεπῆνουν
men and things. The generals assented-to

ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι. Δ' ὁ εἶπε·
these (things), and requested (him) to-lead-on. But — said-he:

Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὅποταν
Having-prepared-yourselves wait-for (me); I indeed when

καιρὸς ἢ ἥξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἀναλαβὼν
(the) proper-time may-be will-come to you, and taking

τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἡγησομαι σὺν
the targeteers and you I-will-lead (you) with (the assist-

τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
ance of) the gods. And — Xenophon said: (We ought)

Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἴπερ πορευσόμεθα νυκτὸς, εἰ
to-consider therefore, if-indeed we-are-to-proceed by-night, whether

ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος ἔχει κάλλιον·
the Grecian custom | has (itself) more-beautifully; [is the best;]

γὰρ μὲν ἐν ταῇ πορείᾳ μεθ' ἡμέραν, τοῦ
for indeed on the march during (the) day, (that part) of-the

στρατεύματος, ὅποιον ἂν αἰεὶ συμφέρη πρὸς τὴν
army, whichever may always be-best-suited to the

χώραν, ἡγείται, εἴν τε ὀπλιτικόν, εἰάν τε πελ-
place, leads, it-may-be heavy-armed-men, — (or) tar-

ταστικόν, εἰάν τε ἵππικόν· δὲ νύκτωρ νόμος
geteers, — (or) cavalry; but by-night (the) custom

ἔστι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν τὸ βραδύτατον ἡγεῖσθαι.
is for-the Greeks (for, the) slowest (troops) to-lead-the-way.

Γὰρ οὕτω τὰ στρατιύματα ἥκιστα διασπᾶται,
For thus the army will-'be least 'dispersed,

καὶ ἥκιστα ἀποδιδράσκοντες λανθάνουσιν
and there-will-'be the-least 'straggling unperceived

ἀλλήλους· δὲ οἱ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ
from-one-another; but — (those) having-been-dispersed often both

περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες ποιοῦσι
fall-foul-of one-another, and not-knowing (it) they-do

καὶ πάσχουσι κακῶς. Οὖν Σεύδης εἶπεν· Τε
and suffer ill. Therefore Seuthes said: 'You indeed

λέγετε ὀρθῶς, καὶ ἐγὼ πείσομαι τῷ νόμῳ τῷ
 'say what-is-right, and I will-conform to-the custom —

ὑμετέρῳ. Καὶ δώσω ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας τῶν
 (namely) to-yours. And I-will-give you indeed guides of-the

πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς
 oldest-men — (those namely) best-acquainted with-the

χώρας, δ' αὐτὸς ἐφέψομαι ἔχων τοὺς ἵππους
 country, but I-myself will-follow having the cavalry

τελευταῖος· ἂν δέῃ γὰρ ταχὺ
 last (in the rear); if required I-will-'be however speedily

παρέσομαι πρῶτος. Δ' εἶπον σύνθημα
 'present first (in front). And they-said (the) watch-word

Ἀθηναίαν, κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. Εἰπόντες
 (was) Minerva, on-account-of — (their) relationship. Having-said

ταῦτ' ἀνεπαύοντο.
 these (things) they-went-to-sleep.

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας Σεύδης
 When indeed it-was about mid night Seuthes

παρῆν ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας τεδωρακισμένους, καὶ
 was-present having the cavalry clad-in-corselets, and

τοὺς πελταστάς σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Καὶ ἐπεὶ
 the targeteers with — (their) arms. And when

παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ ὀπλῖται μὲν
 he-had-delivered the guides, the heavy-armed-men indeed

ἡγοῦντο, δ' οἱ πελτασταὶ εἶποντο, δ' οἱ ἱππεῖς
 took-the-lead, and the targeteers followed, and the cavalry

ὠπισθοφυλάκουν. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἡμέρα, ὁ Σευδης
 brought-up-the-rear. When indeed it-was day, — Seuthes

παρήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπῆνεσε τὸν
 rode-up to the front, and praised the

Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον πολλάκις, γὰρ ἔφη αὐτός
 Greek custom much, for he-said he-himself

νύκτωρ, καὶ πορευόμενος σὺν ὀλίγοις,
 at-night, even proceeding with (but) few (men),

ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν.
 to-have-been-separated with the cavalry from the infantry

Δὲ νῦν ὥσπερ δεῖ, πάντες φαινόμεθα ἅμα
But now as it-ought-to-be 'we all 'appear at-the-same-time

τῇ ἡμέρα ἄδρόοι. Ἄλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν
with-the (break of) day collected-in-a-body. But 'do you indeed

περιμένετε αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ
'remain here, and rest-yourselfs, I however

σκεψάμενός τι ἥξω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
having-reconnoitred somewhat will-return. Having-said these (things)

ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους λαβὼν τινα ὁδόν. Δ' ἐπεὶ
he-rode over (a) mountain taking a-certain road. But when

ἄφίκετο εἰς πολλήν χιόνα, ἐσκέψατο εἰ εἴη
he-had-come to much snow, he-examined if there-might-be

ἵχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἡγούμενα πρόσω ἢ
foot-steps of-men (and) whether leading forward or (the)

ἐναντία. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδὸν ἀτριθῇ,
contrary (way.) But when he-perceived the road untrodden,

ταχὺ ἦκε πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, ἔσται
he speedily 'came back and said: Men, it-will-be

καλῶς, ἢν θεὸς θέλῃ· γὰρ λήσομεν ἐπιπесόντες
well, if god (so) wishes; | for we-shall-concealing be-attacking

τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἄλλ'
the men [for we shall fall upon the men unawares]. But

ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως, ἂν ἴδωμεν
I indeed will-lead with-the cavalry, so-that, if we-may-see

τινα μὴ διαφυγὼν σημήνη τοῖς πολεμίοις·
any-one he-'may not fleeing-away 'give-notice to-the enemy;

δ' ὑμεῖς ἑπεσθε· καὶν λειφθῆτε, ἑπεσθε
but 'do you 'follow; and-if you-are-left (behind), follow

τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων. Δὲ ὑπερβάντες τὰ
the tracks of-the horses. And having-crossed-over — (those)

ὄρη ἥξομεν εἰς πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας
mountains we-shall-come to many and also rich

κώμας.
villages.

Δ' ἡνίκα ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, τε ἤδη ἦν ἐπὶ
And when it-was mid day, and already he-was on

τοῖς ἄκροις, καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας, ἤκεν ἐλαύνων
the heights, and seeing the villages, he-came riding

πρὸς τοὺς ὀπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἦδη μὲν
to the heavy-armed-men and said: I-'wil' now indeed

ἀφήσω τοὺς ἱππέας καταδεῖν εἰς τὸ πεδῖον, δέ
'send-off the cavalry to-run-down to the plain, and

τοὺς πελταστας ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. Ἀλλ' ἔπεσδε
the targeteers to the villages. But follow

ὥς τάχιστα δύνησδε, ὅπως ἐάν τις ὑφιστῇται
as speedily (as) you-can, so-that if any-one withstand

ἀλέξησδε. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα
(them) you-may-help (them). — Xenophon having-heard these

κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. Καὶ ὃς
(things) dismounted from — (his) horse. And — (Seuthes)

ἤρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις, ἐπεὶ δεῖ σπεύδειν;
inquired: Why do-you-dismount, when it-is-necessary to-hasten?

Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ δέη ἐμοῦ μόνοῦ.
I-know, said (Xenophon), that you-'do not 'want me alone;

δ' οἱ ὀπλῖται δραμοῦνται θᾶπτον καὶ ἡδιον,
and the heavy-armed-men will-hasten-on more-quickly and agreeably,

ἐάν ἐγὼ καὶ ἡγῶμαι πεζὸς. Μετὰ ταῦτα
if I even lead (them) on-foot. After these (things)

ᾤχετο, καὶ Τιμασίῳ μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ὥς
(Seuthes) departed, and Timasion with him having about

τετταράκοντα ἱππέας τῶν Ἑλλήνων· Ξενοφῶν δέ
forty horsemen of-the Greeks; Xenophon also

παρηγγυησε τοὺς εὐζώνους ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εἰς
ordered the active (men) from the companies about

τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι. Καὶ αὐτὸς
thirty (years of) age to-proceed-forward. And he

ἐπρόχαζε ἔχων τούτους. Δὲ Κλεάνωρ ἡγεῖτο
ran-on having these (men). And Cleanor led

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Ἐπεὶ θ' ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς
the other Greeks. When indeed they-were in the

κώμαις, Σεύθης, ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἱππέας.
villages, Seuthes, having about thirty horsemen

προσελάσας εἶπε· Τάδε δὴ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἃ
having-ridden-up said: The (things) indeed, O Xenophon, which

σὺ ἔλεγες· οἱ ἄνδρες οἱ ἔχονται
you told (us) (are taking place): the men are-held

ἀλλὰ γὰρ οἱ μοι ἵππεις οἵχονται ἔρημοι
captives); but however — my cavalry are-gone-off destitute

διώκων ἄλλος ἄλλη·
(of a leader) pursuing (the enemy) | other in-another; [some one way,

καὶ δέδοικα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι συστάντες
some another;] and I-have-feared lest the enemy assembling

που ἄδρόοι ἐργάσωνται τι κακόν· καὶ
somewhere collected-in-a-body may-do (us) some injury; and

δὲ δεῖ τινᾶς ἡμῶν καταμένειν ἐν ταῖς
also it-is-necessary (that) some of-us should-remain in the

κώμαις· γὰρ εἰσιν μεσταὶ ἀνθρώπων. Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ
villages; for they-are full of-people. But I

μὲν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω
indeed, said — Xenophon, with (those) whom I-have (with me)

καταλήψομαι τὰ ἄκρα· δὲ σὺ κέλευε Κλεάνορα
will-take-possession-of the heights; and 'do you 'order Cleanor

παρατεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ
to-stretch — (his) line through the plain by

τὰς κώμας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα, συνη-
the villages. When indeed they-had-done these (things), there-

λίσθησαν μὲν ὥς χίλια ἀνδράποδα, δὲ δις-
were-collected-together indeed about a-thousand slaves, and two-

χίλιοι βόες, ἄλλα καὶ μύρια πρόβατα. Τότε μὲν
thousand oxen, but also ten-thousand sheep. Then indeed

δὴ ἡλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ.

— they-'quartered there 'for-the-night.

CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Σεύδης παντελῶς κατα-
 But on-the next-day — Seuthes 'having entirely 'burned-
 καύσας τὰς κώμας, καὶ λιπὼν οὐδεμίαν οἰκίαν,
 down the villages, and leaving not (a) house,
 ὅπως ἐνδείη φόβον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις,
 in-order-that he-might-'strike fear 'into even the rest, (when
 οἷα πείσονται ἂν μὴ πείδωνται,
 they saw) what they-would-suffer if they-'did not 'submit,
 ἀπῆει πάλιν. Καὶ ἀπέπεμψε μὲν Ἡρακλείδην
 he-departed back. And he-sent indeed Heraclides
 διατίδεσθαι μὲν τὴν λείαν εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως
 to-sell indeed the booty at Perinthus, that
 μισθὸς ἂν γένηται τοῖς στρατιώταις· δὲ αὐτὸς
 pay might be-got for-the soldiers; but he
 καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον
 and the Greeks encamped — on the plain
 Θυνῶν, οἱ ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς
 'of (the) 'Thynians, — (who) deserting (their houses) fled to
 τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ πολλή χιών, καὶ οὕτως
 the mountains. There-was indeed much snow, and such
 ψυχρός, ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον
 cold, that the water which they-brought-in for supper
 ἐπήγνυτο, καὶ ὁ οἶνος, ὃ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγεῖ-
 was-frozen, and-also the wine, — (that namely) in the ves-
 οῖς, καὶ ῥῖνες καὶ ὦτα πολλῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων
 sels, likewise (the) noses and ears of-many of-the Greeks
 ἀπεκαίουντο. Καὶ τότε ἐγένετο δῆλον
 [were-burnt-off [were frozen off]. And thus it-becomes evident
 οὗ ἕνεκα οἱ Θρᾷκες φοροῦσι τὰς ἀλωπεκίδας
 why the Thracians wear — (their) fox (skin caps)
 ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς καὶ τοῖς ὠσί, καὶ
 on — (their) heads and — (their) ears, and (have)

χιτώνας, οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις, ἀλλὰ
coats (extending) not only about the breasts, but

καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων
also about the thighs, and (why) on — horse (back)

ἔχουσιν ζειράς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν, ἀλλ'
they-have wide-upper-garments (reaching) just-to the feet, but

ὁ χλαμύδας. Ὁ Σεύδης ἀφίεις δὲ τῶν
not (having) cloaks. — Seuthes letting-go indeed (some) of-the

αἰχμαλώτων εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἰ μὴ
captives to the mountains he-said, that unless

καταβήσονται καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ
they-should-come-down and obey, that he-would-burn-down both

τὰς κώμας τούτων, καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται
the villages of-themselves, and the corn, and they-would-perish

τῷ λιμῷ. Ἐκ τούτου καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες
of — hunger. On this both women and children

καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι κατέβαινον. Δὲ οἱ νεώτεροι
and-also the old-men descended. But the younger

ἡλίζοντο ἐν ταῖς κώμαῖς ὑπο τὸ ὄρος.
(persons) quartered in the villages under the mountain.

Καὶ ὁ Σεύδης καταμαδῶν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενο-
And — Seuthes being-informed (of this) requested — Xeno-

φῶντα λαβόντα τοὺς νεωτάτους τῶν ὀπλιτῶν
phon taking the youngest of-the heavy-armed-men

συνεπισπένδαι. Καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτός
to-follow-with (him). And having-risen-up at — night

ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρῆσαν εἰς τὰς κώμας.
together with-the (break of) day they-were-present at the villages

Καὶ μὲν οἱ πλεῖστοι ἐξέφυγον· (γὰρ τὸ ὄρος
And indeed the most (of them) fled-away; (for the mountain

ἦν πλησίον·) δὲ ὅσους Σεύδης ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν
was near;) but as-many-as Seuthes took he-speared

ἀφειδῶς.
without-mercy.

Δ' ἦν τις Ἐπισθένης, Ὀλύδιος, παιδε-
And there-was a-certain Episthines, (an) Olynthian, (a) lover

ραστῆς, ὃς ἰδὼν καλὸν παῖδα ἄρτι ἠβάσκοντα,
of-boys, who seeing (a) handsome youth just arrived-at-the-age-of

ἔχοντα πέλτην, μέλλοντα ἀποδνήσκειν,
puberty, having (a) shield, about-being put-to-death,

προςδραμὼν Ξενοφῶντα ἰκέτευσε βοηθῆσαι
having-run-to Xenophon he-supplanted (him) to-succor (the)

καλῶ παιδί. Καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ,
handsome boy. And who going-up to Seuthes,

δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν παῖδα· καὶ διηγείτα
requests (him) not to-kill the boy; and relates

τὸν τρόπον τοῦ Ἐπισθένης, καὶ ὅτι ποτὲ
the character of — Episthenes, and that once

συνελέξατο λόχον σκοπῶν οὐδὲν
he-collected (a) company (of soldiers) looking-to nothing (else)

ἢ εἰ τινες εἶεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων
(or if) (but that) such might-be handsome, and with these

ἦν ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ. Δὲ ὁ Σεύδης ἤρετο Καὶ ἢ
he-was (a) brave man. But — Seuthes inquired: And —

ἂν θέλοις, ὦ Ἐπίσθενες ἀποδανεῖν ὑπὲρ
would you-be-willing, O Episthenes to-die for

τούτου; Δ' ὁ ἀνατείνας τὸν
this (youth)? But — (Episthenes) having-stretched-out — (his)

τράχηλον εἶπε Παῖε, ἔφη, εἰ ὁ παῖς κελεύει,
neck said: Strike, said-he, if the boy requires (it),

καὶ μέλλει εἰδέναι χάριν. Ὁ Σεύδης ἐπῆρετο
and hereafter-will consider (it as a) favour. — Seuthes inquired-of

τὸν παῖδα, εἰ παΐσειεν αὐτὸν αὐτ' ἐκείνον.
the youth, if he-should-strike him [Episthenes] in-place-of himself.

Ὁ παῖς οὐκ εἶα, ἀλλ' ἰκέτευε κατα-
The youth 'would not 'permit (this), but requested (him) to-

καίνειν μηδέτερον Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης, περι-
kill neither. Then — Episthenes, having-

λαβὼν τὸν παῖδα, εἶπε· ὦρα σοι, ὦ Σεύδῃ,
embraced the youth, said: (It is) time for-you, O Seuthes,

διαμάχεσθαι μοι περὶ τοῦδε· γάρ οἱ
to-fight with-me for this (youth); for I-'will not

μεθήσω τὸν παῖδα. Ὁ Σεύδης δὲ γελῶν, εἶα μὲν
give-up the boy. — Seuthes then laughing, 'let indeed

ταῦτα.

Ἔδοξε

these (things) 'alone (and the boy's life was spared). It-seemed (best)

δὲ αὐτῷ αὐλισθῆναι αὐτοῦ, ἵνα οἱ ἐπὶ
indeed to-him to-encamp there, in-order-that — (those) on

τοῦ ὄρους μὴ τρέφοντο ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν.
the mountain 'might not 'be-nourished from these — villages.

Καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ὑποκαταβάς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
And he indeed having-gone-down-lower in he plain

ἐσκήνον. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους,
encamped. But — Xenophon, having the select-body-of-men,

ἀνωπάτω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος, καὶ
(quartered) higher-up in the village under the mountain, and

οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες κατεσκήνησαν πλησίον ἐν
the other Greeks encamped near-by among

τοῖς καλουμένοις τοῖς ὄρεινοῖς Θραξί.
— (those) called the mountain Thracians.

Ἐκ τούτου οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι διετρίβοντο, καὶ οἱ
After this not many days had-passed, and the

Θράκες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους, καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν
Thracians from the mountain, coming-down to —

Σεύδην, διεπράττοντο περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὀκλήρων.
Seuthes, negotiated about (a) treaty and hostages.

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ ἔλεγε, ὅτι
And — Xenophon going to Seuthes said, that

σκηνῶεν ἐν πονηροῖς τόποις, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
they-were-encamped on dangerous places, and (that) the enemy

εἶεν πλησίον· τ' ἔφη ἂν ἡδίων αὐλίζεσ-
were near; 'he also 'said 'it would 'be-more-agreeable to-en-

δαι ἔξω ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς
camp without in strong places rather than in —

στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολῆσθαι. Δὲ ὁ
covered (places as houses), so-as to-perish. But — (Seuthes)

ἐπέλευε θάρρειν, καὶ ἐδειξεν ὁμήρους πα-
requested (him) to-be-confident, and showed (the) hostages | being.

ρόντας αὐτῷ. Δὲ καὶ τινες τῶν
present with-him [in his possession]. And also some of — (those)

ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους καταβείνοντες ἐδέοντο τοῦ Ξενο-
from the mountain coming-down begged — Xeno-

φῶντος συμπαραῖταί σφισι τὰς σπονδάς.
phon to-assist them (to obtain) — (a) truce.

Ὁ δ' ὁμολόγει, καὶ ἐλέλενε θάρ-
— (Xenophon) indeed consented, and requested (them) to-be-in-

ρεῖν, καὶ ἠγγυᾶτο αὐτοὺς πείσεσθαι μηδὲν
good-spirits, and assured (them that) they should-suffer no

κακὸν πειδομένους Σεύδη. Δὲ οἱ ἄρα ἔλεγον ταῦτ'
evil being-obedient to-Seuthes. But — therefore they-said these

ἕνεκα κατασκοπῆς.
(things) for-the-purpose (of) spying-out (the condition of the Grecians),

Ταῦτα μὲν ἐγένετο τῆς ἡμέρας, δὲ εἰς
These (things) indeed happened during-the day, but on

τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν νύκτα οἱ Θυνοὶ ἐλδόντες ἐκ τοῦ
the following night the Thynians coming from the

ὄρους ἐπιτίθενται. Καὶ ὁ δεσπότης ἐκάστης
mountain attacked (them). And the master of-each

τῆς οἰκίας ἦν μὲν ἡγεμὼν· γὰρ ἦν χα-
— house was indeed (a) leader; for it-would-have-been dif-

λεπὸν ἄλλως ἀνευρίσκειν τὰς οἰκίας ὄντας
cult otherwise to-find-out the houses being (in the)

σκότους ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· γὰρ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι
dark in the villages; for even the houses

περιεσταύρωντο κύκλῳ μεγάλοις σταυροῖς ἕνεκα
were-palisaded 'in (a) 'circle with-large palisades on-account-of

τῶν προβάτων. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο κατὰ θύρας
the cattle. And when they-got near (the) doors

ἐκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰσηκόντιζον,
of-each — dwelling, — (some) indeed threw-spears-in,

οἱ δὲ ἔβαλλον τοῖς σκντάλοις, αἱ
— (others) indeed threw with — (their) clubs, which

ἔφασαν ἔχειν ὥς ἀποκόψοντες τὰς λόγχας
were-said to-have as (for) knocking-off the sharp-iron-heads

τῶν δοράτων, δ' οἱ ἐνεπίμπρασαν,
 of — spears. and — (others) set-fire-to (the buildings)
 καὶ καλοῦντες Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστί ἐκέλευον
 and calling-on Xenophon by-name bade (him)
 ἐξιόντα ἀποδνήσκειν, ἣ ἔφασαν αὐτόν κατα-
 coming-out to-die, or they-said (that) he would-
 καυδήσεσθαι αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἤδη τὲ πῦρ ἐφαίνετο
 be-burnt-up there. And already not-only fire appeared
 διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου, καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα
 through the roofs, but-also — (those) about Xenophon
 ἐντεδωρακισμένοι ἦσαν ἔνδον, ἔχοντες ἀσπίδας καὶ
 having-their-corselets-on were within, having shields and
 μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακέστιος ὦι
 swords and helmets, and Silanus (a) Macestian being
 ἤδη ὥς ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἐτῶν σημαίνει τῇ
 already about eighteen (years) of-age gives-the-signal with-the
 σάλπιγγι· καὶ ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη εὐδὺς
 trumpet; and having-drawn — (their) swords 'they immediately
 ἐκπηδῶσιν, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνῶ-
 'sprang-out, and (also) — (those) from the other quar-
 μάτων. Οἱ Θρᾶκες δὲ φεύγουσι, περιβαλλόμενοι
 ters. The Thracians indeed flee, throwing-over
 τας πέλτας ὀπισθεν, ὥσπερ δὴ
 — (their) shields behind (them on their backs), as indeed
 τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένῳ
 (the) custom was to-them, and they jumping-over
 τοὺς σταυροὺς τινες ἐλήφθησαν κρεμασθέντες,
 the palisades some were-caught having-been-suspended
 τῶν πελτῶν ἐνεχομένων τοῖς σταυροῖς· καὶ οἱ
 the shields holding-fast to-the stakes; and — (others)
 δὲ ἀπέθανον διαμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· δὲ οἱ
 also died missing the outlets; and the
 Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης. Τινὲς τῶν
 Greeks drove (them) out-of the village. Some of-the
 Θυνῶν δὲ ὑποστραφέντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, ἠκόντιζον
 Thynians however coming-back in the dark, 'threw

εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους τους
(their) javelins into the light out-of the dark at — (those)

παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην· καὶ ἔτρωσαν
running-along by (a) house on-fire; and wounded

Ἱερώνυμόν τε καὶ Εὐδοέα, λοχαγόν, καὶ Θεο-
Hieronimus indeed — (the) Euodean, (a) captain, as-also Theo-

γένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγον· δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀπέδανε
genes (the) Locrian captain; but no-one died;

μέντοι καὶ ἐσφῆς καὶ σκεύη τινων κατεκαυθη.
however even (the) clothes and baggage of-some were-burnt.

Δὲ Σεύδης ἦκε βοηθήσων σὺν ἑπτὰ ἵππεῦσι.
But Seuthes came about-helping (them) with seven horsemen,

τοῖς πρώτοις ἔχων τὸν σαλπιγκτὴν τὸν Θρά-
the first (assembled) having the trumpeter the Thra-

κιον. Καὶ ἐπέιπερ ᾗσδετο, ὅσον-
cian (namely). And when he-perceived (the state of affairs), as-

περ χρόνον ἐβοήθει,
'long (a) time 'as he-was-assisting (them by marching to their aid),

τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφδέγγετο αὐτῷ· ὥστε
so-long even the horn sounded for him; so-that

καὶ τοῦτο συμπαρέσχε φόβον τοῖς πολεμίοις.
also this (noise) furnished fear to-the enemy.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν τε ἐδεξιούτο καὶ
When however he-came 'he not-only 'shook-hands (with them) but-also

ἔλεγεν, ὅτι οἶοιτο εὐρήσειν πολλοὺς τεθνεῶτας.
said, that he-thought to-find many dead.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν τε δεῖται τοὺς ὀμήρους
After this — Xenophon not-only asks-for the hostages

παραδοῦναι αὐτῷ, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι, εἰ
to-be-given-up to-him, but-also to-march-with (him), if

βούλεται, ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος· εἰ δὲ μή, ἑᾶσαι αὐτόν.
he-wished, to the mountain; if indeed not, to-allow him (to go)

Τῇ ἰστεραία οὖν ὁ Σεύδης παραδίδωσι τοὺς
On-the next-day therefore — Seuthes gave-up (to him) the

ὀμήρους, ἤδη πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας, τοὺς κρατίστους,
hostages, already old men, the best

ὥς ἔφισαι, τῶν ὄρεινῶν· καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται
 as they-said, of-the mountain (people); and he came
 σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. Δὲ ἤδη ὁ Σεύδης εἶχε καὶ
 with — (his) forces. And already — Seuthes had even

τριπλασῖαι δύναμιν·
 three-times (as large a) force (as he had when the Greeks came);

γὰρ πολλοὶ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ἀκούοντες ἃ ὁ Σεύδης
 for many of-the Odrysians, hearing what — Seuthes

πράττοι, κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. Δὲ οἱ
 might-be-doing, came-down taking-the-field-with (him). But the

Θυνοὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους μὲν πολλοὺς
 Thynians when they-saw from the mountain indeed many

ὀπλίτας, δὲ πολλοὺς πελταστάς, δὲ πολλοὺς
 heavy-armed-men, and many targeteers, and many

ἵππεις, καταβάντες ἰκέτευον σπείσασθαι·
 horsemen, coming-down besought (him) to-make-a-treaty (of peace

καὶ ὁμολόγουν ποιήσιν πάντα,
 with them); and promised to-do all (he might require),

καὶ ἐκέλευον λαμβάνειν τὰ πιστὰ.
 and requested (him) to-take the pledges (of fidelity from them).

Δὲ ὁ Σεύδης, καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεδείκνυνεν
 But — Seuthes, having-called-on — Xenophon, showed

ἃ λέγοιεν, καὶ ἔφη οὐ σπεί-
 what they-may-have-said, and he-said (that he) 'would not 'treat-

σασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιτο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς
 with-them, if Xenophon might-wish to-punish them

τῆς ἐπιδέσεως. Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀλλ'
 (for) — (their) attack. — But (Xenophon) said: But

ἐγώ γε νομίζω ἔχειν καὶ νῦν ἱκανὴν δίκην,
 I-at-least consider (that I) have even now sufficient revenge,

εἰ οὗτοι ἔσονται δοῦλοι ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων.
 if these (people) will-be slaves (having) before (been) free.

Μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ συμβουλεύειν, τὸ λοιπὸν
 Moreover said-he to-him (that I) counsel (you), in-future

λαμβάνειν δμήρους τοὺς δυνατωτάτους ποιεῖν
 'take (as) hostages — (those) the-most-able to-do

τι κακόν, δὲ ἔαν τοὺς γέροντας οἴκοι.
 (you) any harm, but leave the old-men at-home.
 Οὖν μὲν οἱ ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ
 Therefore indeed the (inhabitants) in-this (country) all truly
 προσωμολόγουν.
 submitted (to him).

CHAPTER V.

Δὲ ὑπερβάλλουσι τοὺς Θρᾶκας ὑπὲρ Βυζαντίου
 AND they-cross-over to-the Thracians above Byzantium,
 εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι
 into the Delta so-called; this (country) indeed was not
 ἀρχὴ Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους
 (a part of the) dominion of-Mæsades, but (it belonged to) Teres
 τοῦ Ὀδρύσου, τινὸς ἀρχαίου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
 the (son) of-Odryses, some ancient (king). And here
 ὁ Ἡρακλείδης παρῆν ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας.
 — Heraclides was-present having the price of-the spoils.
 Καὶ Σεύδης ἐξαγαγὼν τρία ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ (γὰρ
 And Seuthes selecting three pair (of) mules (for
 ἦν οὐ πλείω) δὲ τὰ ἄλλα βοϊκά, καλέσας
 there-were no more) and the others oxen, having-called-for
 Ξενοφῶντα, ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, δὲ
 Xenophon, he-requested (him) to-take (the mules for himself), but
 διανεῖμαι τὰ ἄλλα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
 to-distribute the rest (namely the oxen) to-the generals
 καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ μὲν
 and captains. But Xenophon said: For-myself indeed
 τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αὐτίς λαβεῖν· δὲ
 therefore it-is-sufficient even hereafter to-take (something); but
 δωροῦ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς,
 make-a-present (of them) to-the generals and captains,

οἱ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠκολούθησαν. Καὶ Τιμασίῳ
 - (those who) with me have-accompanied (you). And Timasion

ὁ Δαρδανεὺς λαμβάνει μὲν ἐν τῶν ζευγῶν, ἐν δὲ
 the Dardanean took indeed one of-the pair, one also

Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἐν Φρυνίκος ὁ Ἀχαιός·
 Cleonor the Orchomenian, and one Phrynicius the Achæan;

δὲ τὰ ζεύγη βοῖκὰ κατεμερίσθη τοῖς λοχαγῶσι.
 but the yokes (of) oxen were-distributed to-the captains.

Δὲ ἀποδίδωσι τὸν μισθὸν μόνον
 'He [Seuthes] indeed 'paid the wages only (for)

εἴκοσι ἡμερῶν, τοῦ μηνός ἤδη ἐξεληλυθότος·
 twenty days, the month 'having already 'elapsed;

γὰρ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ ἐμπολήσαι
 for — Heraclides said that he-'could not 'sell

πλεῖον. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀχδεσδεῖς ἐπομό-
 more. Therefore — Xenophon being-distressed (at this) having-impre-

σας εἶπε· Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Ἡρακλεῖδη, οὐ κήδεσθαι
 cated said: It-seems to-me, O Heraclides, (that you do) not take-care

Σεύδου ὡς δεῖ· γὰρ εἰ ἐκήδου,
 (of the affairs) of-Seuthes as they-ought-to-be; for if you-had-taken-care

ἦκες ἂν φέρων τὸν πλήρη μισθόν, καὶ
 'you would 'have-come bringing the full pay, even

προςδανεισάμενος, εἰ ἐδύνω μὴ ἄλλως, καὶ ὑπο-
 having-borrowed (it), if you-could not otherwise, and having-

δόμενος τὰ ἱμάτια σαυτοῦ.
 sold the clothes of-yourself.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης τε ἠχδέσθη,
 Then — Heraclides 'was not-only grievously-'exed,

καὶ ἔδεισε, μὴ ἐκβληθεῖν ἐκ τῆς φιλίας τῆς
 but-also feared, lest he-might-be-deprived of the friendship of —

Σεύδου· καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας ὅτι
 Seuthes; and from that — day (in) whatever

ἐδύνατο διέβαλλε Ξενοφῶντα πρὸς Σεύδην. Οἱ
 he-could he-calumniated Xenophon to Seuthes. The

στρατιῶται μὲν δὴ ἐνεκαλοῦν Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι εἶχον
 soldiers indeed truly blamed Xenophon. that they-had

οὐ τὸν μισθόν· δὲ Σεύδης ἤχδετο αὐτῷ,
not — (their) pay; and Seuthes was-much-displeased with-him

ὅτι ἐντόνως ἀπῆτει τὸν μισθὸν τοῖς
(because) that he-¹had strenuously ¹requested the pay for-the

στρατιώταις. Καὶ τέως μὲν αἰεὶ ἐμέμνη-
soldiers. And until-then indeed he-¹had continually ¹men-

το, ὥς ἐπειδὰν ἀπέλθῃ ἐπὶ θάλατταν παρα-
tioned, that when they-should-arrive at (the) sea he-would-

δώσει αὐτῷ Βισάνδην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τεῖχος·
give him Bisanthe and Ganus and Neontichus;

δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνον ἐμέμνητο ἔτι οὐδενός
but from that — time he-mentioned afterwards none

τούτων. Γὰρ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ διεβεβλήκει
of-these (places). For — Heraclides also insinuated

τοῦτο, ὥς εἴη οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς παραδιδόναι τείχῃ
this, that it-was not safe to-give-over fortresses ¹to (a

ἀνδρὶ ἔχοντι δύναμιν.
¹man having (an) army.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἐβουλεύετο
On this (account) — Xenophon indeed counselled-with-himself

τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ στρατεῦσθαι ἔτι
what it-was-necessary to-do | about the to-march-with-the-army yet

ἄνω. Δ' ὁ
(farther) up [about the expedition farther up the country]. But —

Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς
Heraclides was-bringing-forward the other generals

πρὸς Σεύδην, τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτοὺς λέγειν, ὅτι
to Seuthes, also he-requested them to-say, that

ἰφείς ἂν ἀνάγοιεν τὴν στρατιάν οὐδὲν ἥττον
they could lead the army not less

ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τε ὑπισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς τὸν
(effectively) than Xenophon, and promised them (that) the

μισθὸν ἑκπλεων δυοῖν μηνοῖν παρέσεσθαι
pay (in) full (for) two months would-be-present (for them)

ὀλίγων ἡμέρων, καὶ ἐκέλευε συστρατεῦε-
in (a) ¹few days, and he-requested (them) to-continue-in-the-ser-

δαι. Καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μὲν
vice (of Seuthes). And — Timasion said: I indeed

τοίνην οὐδ', ἂν μέλλῃ εἶναι πέντε μηνῶν
therefore not, if there-were-about to-be five months'

μισθός, ἂν στρατευσαίμην ἄνευ Ξενοφώντος. Καὶ
say, would serve-in-the-army without Xenophon. And

ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ
— Phryniscus and — Cleanor agreed-with —

Τιμασίῳ.

Timasion.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Σεύδης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην,
Then — Seuthes reprehended — Heraclides,

ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφόντα. Δ' ἐκ
that he-'had not 'called-in also Xenophon. And on

τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. Δ' ὁ
this they-call-for him alone. But — (Xenophon)

γνοὺς τὴν πανουργίαν τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου, ὅτι
knowing the knavery of — Heraclides, that

βούλοιο διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς
he-wished to-calumniate (and make him unpopular, with the

ἄλλους στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τε
other generals, departed taking (with him) not-only

πάντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς.
all the generals, but-also the captains.

Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσθησαν συνεστρα-
And when all had-been-persuaded (by Seuthes) they-

τεύοντο, καὶ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον
'joined (him) 'in-an-expedition, and having the Euxine-Sea

ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν,
on (their) right they-arrived at — Salmydessus,

διὰ τῶν Θρακῶν καλουμένων Μελινο-
through the (country) 'of (the) 'Thracians called Melino-

φάγων· ἔνθα πολλὰ τῶν νεῶν πλεουσῶν εἰς τὸν
phagi; here many of-the vessels sailing into the

Πόντον ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· γὰρ ἐστὶ
Euxine-Sea strike and (are) cast-away; for there-is (a)

τέναγος πάμπολυ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης.
shoal (there) (stretching) very-far (out) into the sea.

Καὶ οἱ Θραῖκες, οἱ οἰκοῦντες κατὰ ταῦτα,
And the Thracians, — (those namely) dwelling along there,

ὀρίσάμενοι στήλας, ἕκαστοι
having-set-up pillars 'to-mark-the-boundaries, (so that) each

ληΐζονται τὰ ἐκπίπτοντα καδ' αὐτοὺς
plunder the (things) cast (on shore) on these

δὲ ἔλεγον τέως πρὶν
(their own limits); and they-say (that) for-some-time before (that they)

ὀρίσασθαι, ἄρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ἀποδνή-
erected-boundaries, (that while) plundering many died

σκεῖν ὑπ' ἀλλήλων. Ἐνταῦθα εὐρίσκονται
by (the hands) of-one-another. There are-found

μὲν πολλαὶ κλῖναι, δὲ πολλὰ κιβώτια, δὲ πολλαὶ
indeed many couches, also many chests, likewise many

γεγραμμέναι βίβλοι, καὶ πολλὰ τᾶλλα, ὅσα
written books, and many other (things), such-as

ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι. Ἐντεῦθεν
seamen carry in wooden receptacles. Then

καταστρεψάμενοι ταῦτα, ἀπήεσαν πάλιν.
having-subdued these (people), they-departed back.

Ἐνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στρατεύμα ἤδη πλέον
Then truly Seuthes had (an) army already more

τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ. Γὰρ τε πολὺ ἔτ
(numerous than) the Grecian. For not-only many yet

πλείους Ὀδρυσῶν καταβέβηκεσαν, καὶ οἱ
numerous 'of-(the) 'Odryseæ had-come-down (to him), but-also —

αἰεὶ πειδόμενοι συνεστρατεῖ-
(those) successively obeying-and-submitting (to him) 'joined

οντο. Δὲ κατηυλίσθησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
(his) 'army. And they-encamped on the plain

ὑπὲρ Σηλυβρίας, ἀπέχοντες ὅσον τριάκοντα στα-
above Selybria, being-distant about thirty sta-

δίους τῆς θαλάττης. Καὶ οὐδεὶς μισθὸς μὲν
fia (from) the sea. And no pay indeed

πω ἐφαίνετο· τε οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον τὸν Ξενο-
as-yet appeared; and the soldiers | had — Xeno

φῶντα παγχαλέπως,
phon much-aggrieved, [were very much displeased with Xenophon,,

τε ὁ Σεύδης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ
and — Seuthes no-longer 'was familiarly 'disposed (to him), but

ἴποτε ἔλθοι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αἰτῶ,
whenever he-might-go desiring to-have-an-interview-with him.

πολλαὶ ἀσχολίαι ἤδη ἐφαίνοντο.
many occupations 'were now 'pretended.

CHAPTER VI.

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ὄντων ἤδη σχεδὸν δύο
At this — time, being already nearly two

μηνῶν, Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος
months, Charminus indeed the Lacedæmonian and Polynicus

ἀφικοῦνται παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν, ὅτι
arrived from Thibron, and they-said, that

δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ
it-seemed (good) 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians to-take-the-field against

Τισσαφέρην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὥς πολε-
Tissaphernes, and Thibron had-set-sail as about-

μῆσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ
making-war, and (that) he-wanted this — army, and

λέγει, ὅτι δαρεῖκός τοι μῆνός ἐσται μισθός
he-says that (a) daric the month would-be (the) pay

ἐκάστω, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοιρία, δὲ τοῖς
to-each (soldier), and to-the captains twice-as-much, but to-the

στρατηγοῖς τετραμοιρία. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ Λακε-
generals four-times-as-much. When indeed — (these) Lacedæ-

δαιμόνιοι ἦλθον, εἰδὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης. πυθόμενος
læmonians came, immediately — Heraclides, hearing

ὅτι ἤκουσι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, λέγει. τῷ Σεύδῃ,
that they-came for the army, says to — Seuthes,

ὅτι γεγένηται κάλλιστον· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Λακεδαι-
that it-had-happened luckily; for indeed the Lacedæ-

μόνιοι θέονταί τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ σὺ οὐκέτε
monians wanted the army, but you no-longer

δέη· ἀποδιδούς τὸ στράτευμα χαριεῖ αὐτοῖς,
want (it); giving-up the army you-will-gratify them,

δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθόν σε,
and they-'will no-more 'demand — (their) pay of-you,

ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ὁ Σεύδης
but will-depart from the country. — Seuthes

ἀκούσας ταῦτα κελεύει παράγειν·
hearing these (things) requests (him) to-'bring (them) 'to (him);

καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ἤκουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα,
and when they-said, that they-come for the army,

ἔλεγεν, ὅτι ἀποδίδωσι τὸ στράτευμα, τε βούλεται
he-said, that he-would-give-up the army, and desired

εἶναι φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος· τε καλεῖ αὐτοὺς
to-be (their) friend — and ally; and he-invited them

ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ, καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
on terms-of-hospitality, and he-entertained (them) magnificently.

Δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει Ξενοφῶντα οὐδὲ οὐδένα τῶν
But he-'did not 'invite Xenophon nor (none) (any) of-the

ἄλλων στρατηγῶν. Δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων ἔρω-
other generals. But the Lacedæmonians in-

τώντων, τίς ἀνὴρ Ξενοφῶν εἶη, ἀπεκρίνατο,
quired, what (kind of) man Xenophon might-be, he-replied,

ὅτι μὲν τὰ ἄλλα εἶη οὐ κακός, δὲ
that indeed in — other (respects) he-was not (a) bad (man), but

φιλοστρατιώτης· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐστὶν χεῖρον
(was a) friend-of-the-soldiers; and through this it-is worse

αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ εἶπον· Ἀλλ' ἢ ὁ ἀνὴρ δημα-
for-him. And — they-said: But — 'does the man 'make-

γωγεῖ τοὺς ἀνδρας; Καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης
himself popular (with) the men? And — Heraclides

ἔφη, Οὖν μὲν πάννυ. Ἄρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν,
said, Therefore indeed altogether (so). — Therefore, said-they,

μὴ καὶ ἀναντιώσεται ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς ἀπαγωγῆς;
will-'he not even oppose us about the leading-

γῆς; Ἄλλ' ἦν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης,
away (of the army)? But if you, said — Heraclides,

συλλέξαντες αὐτοὺς, ὑποσχῆσθε τὸν μισθόν,
assembling them, promise the pay,

προσσχόντες ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ, ἀποδραμοῦνται
'paying little 'attention to-him, they-will-return

σὺν ὑμῖν. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, ἂν συλλεγεῖεν
with you. How therefore, said-they, may (they) assemble

ἡμῖν; Αὔριον πρῶι, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, ἄξομεν
for-us? To-morrow early, said — Heraclides, we-will-conduct

ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὰν
you to them; and I-know, said-he, that when

ἴδωσιν ὑμᾶς, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται.
they-see you, they-'will willingly 'flock-round (you).

Αὕτη ἡ ἡμέρα μὲν ἔληξε οὕτως.
This — day indeed closed thus.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Σεύδης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης
And on-the next-day Seuthes and also Heraclides

ἄγουσιν τοὺς Λάκωνας ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ
conducted the Lacedæmonians to the army, and

ἡ στρατιὰ συλλέγεται. Δὲ τῷ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην,
the army assembled. And the-two Lacedæmonians said,

ὅτι δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις πολεμεῖν Τισσα-
that it-seemed (good) 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians to-go-to-war with-Tissa-

φέρνει, τῷ ἀδικήσαντι ὑμᾶς· ἦν οὖν ἴητε σὺν
phernes, — (he) having-injured you; if therefore you-go with

ἡμῖν, τε τιμωρήσεσθε τὸν ἐχθρόν, καὶ
us, you-'will not-only 'revenge-yourselves-on the enemy, but-also

ἕκαστος ὑμῶν οἴσει δαρεικὸν τοῦ μηνός, δὲ
each of-you will-receive (a) daric the month, and (a)

λοχαγὸς τὸ διπλοῦν, δὲ στρατηγὸς τὸ τετρα-
captain the double. and (a) general the qua-

πλοῦν. *Kai oi stratētai te āsmevni hēkousan,*
 druple. And the soldiers not-only willingly listened,

καὶ τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων εὐδὺς ἀνίσταται
 but-also some-one of-the Arcadians immediately rising-up

κατηγορήσων ἢ τῷ Ξενοφῶντος. Δὲ καὶ Σεύδης
 denouncing - Xenophon. But also Seuthes

παρῆν, βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραχθήσεται
 was-present, desiring to-know how the-affair-would-be-conducted ;

καὶ εἰστήκει ἐν ἐπηκόῳ, ἔχων ἑρμηνέα.
 and stood in (a place proper for) hearing, having (an) interpreter ;

δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ξυνίει τὰ πλεῖστα ἑλληνιστί.
 and also he-himself understood — most (things) in-Greek.

Ἐνθα δὴ ὁ Ἀρκάς λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν,
 Then indeed the Arcadian speaks: But we indeed,

ὧ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἂν ἤμεν παρ' ὑμῖν,
 O Lacedæmonians, even long-ago would have-been with you,

εἰ Ξενοφῶν πείσας ἡμᾶς μὴ ἀπήγαγεν
 if Xenophon having-persuaded us 'had not 'led (us)

δεῦρο, ἐνθα δὴ ἡμεῖς μὲν στρατευόμενοι τὸν
 hither, where truly we indeed performing-military-duty (through) —

δεινὸν χειμῶνα πεπαύμεθα οὐδὲν καὶ νύκτα
 most-severe cold-weather we-rested neither - night

καὶ ἡμέραν· δὲ ὁ ἔχει τοὺς ἡμετέρους
 — (or) day; but — (he) has (the fruits of) — our

πόνους· καὶ Σεύδης μὲν πεπλούτικεν ἐκείνον ἰδίᾳ,
 labour; and Seuthes indeed has-enriched him personally,

δὲ ἀποστερεῖ ἡμᾶς τὸν μισθόν. Ὡστε ὁ
 but defrauded us (of) — (our) pay. So-that (I) who

γε λέγων πρῶτος ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ ἴδοιμι τοῦτον
 'am at-least 'speaking first I indeed if I-saw this

καταλευσθέντα, καὶ δόντα δίκην
 [Xenophon] stoned-to-death, | and giving justice [and thus

ὦν περιεῖλκε ἡμᾶς,
 be punished] | of-which he-has-'dragged us 'about, [for having so

καὶ ἂν δοκῶ μοι ἔχειν τον
 dragged us about,] and 'I would 'seem to-myself to-have — (my)

μισδόν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἄχθесδαι ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονη
pay, and neither to-be-aggrieved at — (what I) had-under-

μένοις. Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη καὶ
gone. After this (one) another stood-up and

ὁμοίως ἄλλος. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐλεξεν
likewise another. After this indeed Xenophon spoke

ὥδε·
thus :

Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἄρα δεῖ ἄνθρωπον
But indeed therefore | it-is-necessary (that) (a) man

ὄντα προσδοκᾶν πάντα,
being to-expect all, [one must expect all kinds of fate,]

ὅποτε γε καὶ νῦν ἔχω αἰτίας ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐν
since at-least even now I-have accusations from you, in

ὃ δοκῶ συνειδέναι γε ἐμαυτῷ
(the thing) which I-seem to-be-conscious at-least to-myself (of)

παρεσχημένος πλείστην προθυμίαν περὶ ὑμᾶς.
having-shown (the) most zeal for you.

Μὲν γε ἀπετραπόμεν ἤδη ὠρμημένους
I indeed at-least 'turned-back 'having already 'set-out

οἶκαδε, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὔτοι πυνθανόμενος
for-home, no by — Jupiter not-indeed hearing (that)

ὑμᾶς πράττειν εὖ· ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων
you (were) doing well; but rather hearing (that)

εἶναι ἐν ἀπόροις, ὥς ὠφελήσων, εἴ τι
(you) were in difficulties, as being-about-helping (you) if in-any-thing

δυναίμεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, τουτουὶ Σεύδου
I-might-be-able. When indeed I-came, this-here Seuthes

πέμποντος πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ
sending many messengers to me, and

ὑπισχνουμένου πολλὰ μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς
promising many (things) to-me, if I-would-persuade you

ἔλθειν πρὸς αὐτόν, οὐκ μὲν ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν
to-go to him, I-'did not indeed 'attempt to-do

τοῦτο, ὥς ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ ἐπίστασθε· δὲ ἤγον
this, as you yourselves know; but I-led (you to

ὅθεν ὥομεν ἂν τάχιστα διαβῆναι
 a place, whence I-thought (that you) might the-most-speedily cross-over
 εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν Γὰρ ἐνόμιζον ταῦτα εἶναι
 into — Asia For I-thought this to-be
 βέλτιστα ὑμῖν, καὶ ἤδειν ὑμᾶς βουλομένους. Δ'
 the-best for-you, and I-knew you desiring (it). But
 ἐπεὶ Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν, ἐκώλυε
 when Aristarchus, coming with galleys, prohibited
 ἡμᾶς διαπλεῖν, ἐκ τοῦτου, ὅπερ ἦν δῆπου εἰκὸς,
 as to-sail-across, on this, as was certainly proper,
 συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσάμεθα ὃ τι
 I-assembled you, in-order-that we-might-consult-together what
 χρὴ ποιεῖν. Ὑμεῖς οὐκ οὖν, ἀκού-
 it-might-be-necessary to-do. (Did) you not therefore, hear-
 οντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάττοντος ὑμῖν πορεύ-
 ing indeed Aristarchus commanding you to-pro-
 εσθαι εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύδου πεί-
 ceed to (the) Chersonesus, hearing also Seuthes per-
 δοντος ἑαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι, μὲν πάντες
 suading yourselves to-enter-into-his-service, (did you not) indeed all
 ἐλέγετε ἰέναι σὺν Σεύδῃ, δὲ
 say (that you would) go with Seuthes, and (did you not)
 πάντες ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα; Τί οὖν ἐγὼ
 all vote-for these (things)? How therefore 'did I
 ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα, ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἐνθα ἐδόκει
 then 'wrong (you), leading you there-where it-seemed
 ὑμῖν πᾶσιν; Ἐπεὶ γε Σεύδης μὲν ἤρξατο
 (good) for-you all (to go)? Since at-least Seuthes indeed began
 ψεύδισθαι περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ
 to-deceive about the pay, if indeed I-should-praise
 αὐτόν, ἂν δικαίως καὶ αἰτιῶσθε καὶ μισοῖτε.
 him, you would justly both 'accuse and detest (me)
 εἰ δὲ ὢν πρόσθεν μάλιστα πάντων φίλος,
 if however being formerly most of-all (his) friend,
 νῦν πάντῳ εἰμι διαφορώτατός, πῶς
 now of-all (men) I-am the-most-a'-variance (with him), how

ἂν αἰρούμενος ὑμᾶς ἀντὶ Σεύδου, ἔτι δικαίως
can 'I, preferring you before Seuthē, as-yet justly

ἔχοιμι αἰτίαν ὑφ' ὑμῶν περὶ ὧν δια-
'have censure from you about (those things in) which I-am-

φέρομαι πρὸς τοῦτον; Ἄλλ' ἂν εἵποιτε, ὅτι
at-variance with this [Seuthēs]? But 'you may 'say, that

ἔξεσι ἔχοντα ὑμέτερα παρὰ Σεύδου
it-is (possible that) 'I, having your (money) from Seuthēs

τεχνάζειν. Οὐκ οὖν τοῦτό γε δῆλον, ὅτι,
'am-practising-artifice. 'Is not therefore this at-least 'evident, that,

εἵπερ Σεύδης ἐτέλει τι ἐμοί, οὐ δῆπου
if Seuthēs paid any-thing to-me, he-'did not certainly

ἐτέλει οὕτως, ὥς τε στεροίτο ὧν
'pay (it) for-the-purpose, that not-only he-might-be-deprived-of what

δοίη ἐμοί, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀποτίσειεν ὑμῖν; Ἄλλ' οἶμαι,
he-gave me, but also to-repay you? But I-think,

εἰ ἐδίδου, ἂν ἐδίδου ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
if he-gave (me anything) 'he may 'have-given (it) for this (purpose),

ὅπως δούς μείον μὴ ἀποδοίη ὑμῖν
that having-given (a) less (sum) he-'might not 'pay you

τὸ πλεῖον. Εἰ τοίνυν οἴεσθε ἔχειν
the greater (sum). If therefore you-think (the affair) to-have (itself)

οὕτως, ἔξεσιν ὑμῖν μάλα αὐτίκα ποιῆσαι ταύτην
thus, it-is-allowed you very speedily to-make this

τὴν πρᾶξιν ματαίαν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν, εἰὰν πράτ-
transaction useless for-both (of) us, if you-

τητε αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. Γὰρ δῆλον, ὅτι
exact (from) him the money. For (it is) evident, that

Σεύδης, εἰ ἔχω τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσει
Seuthēs, if I-have (received) anything from him, will-'demand

με, καὶ μέντοι ἀπαιτήσαι δικαίως, εἰὰν
(It) 'back (of) me, and moreover will-demand (it) justly, if

μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πρᾶξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ἧ ἔδωρα-
I-'do not 'confirm the transaction to-him for which I-received-

δόκουν. Ἀλλὰ δοκῶ μοι δεῖν πολλοῦ
gifts (from him). But I-seem to-myself to-want much (as

ἔχειν τὰ ὑμέτερα· γὰρ ὀμνύω ὑμῖν ἅπαντας
having — your (money); for I-swear to-you by-all

θεοὺς καὶ πάσας ἔχειν μηδέ
(the) gods and (by) all (the goddesses) (that I) have never-indeed

ἃ Σεύδης ὑπέσχετο ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ·
(received) what Seuthes promised me (as my own) proper (pay);

ἀέ καὶ αὐτός πάρεστι, καὶ ἀκούων σύννοιδέ μοι, εἴ
and also he-himself is-present, and hearing knows with-me, if

ἐπιορκῶ. Ἵνα δέ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε,
I-perjure-myself. That indeed you-may-'be yet-more 'surprised,

συνεπόμενυμι μηδέ εἰληφέναι ἃ οἱ
I-swear (that) I-'have not-indeed 'received what the

ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον, μὴ τοίνυν μηδέ ὅσα
other generals received, no moreover not-indeed as-much-as

ἐνιοὶ τῶν λοχαγῶν. Καὶ τί ἐποίουν ταῦτ';
some of-the captains. And why did-I-do this?

Ὡς ἄνδρες, ὅσω μᾶλλον συμφέρομι
C men, (I thought that) how-much the-more I-endured-with

τούτῳ τότε τὴν πενίαν, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον
this (man) while in — poverty, so-much the-more

ποιήσεσθαι αὐτὸν φίλον ὅποτε δυνασθεῖη. Δέ
I-would-make him (a) friend whenever he-might-be-able. But

ἐγὼ ἅμα τε ὁρῶ αὐτὸν πράττοντα εὖ,
I at-the-present-time not-only see him doing well,

καὶ δὴ γινώσκω τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ. Τίς
out-also truly know the disposition of-him. Some-one

δὴ ἂν εἴποι· οὐκ οὖν αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω
indeed may say: are-'you not therefore 'ashamed (at) 'being thus

μωρῶς ἐξαπατῶμενος; Ναὶ μὰ Δία μέντοι
foolishly 'deceived? Certainly, by Jupiter, I-'would indeed

ἦσχυρόμεν, εἰ ἐξηπατήθην ὑπὸ γε ὄντος
'have-been-ashamed, if I-had-been-deceived by (one) at-least being (an)

πολεμίον· δέ ὄντι φίλῳ δεκεῖ μοι αἰσχίον
enemy; but being (a) friend it-seems to-me more-shameful

ἐξαπατᾶν ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. Ἐπεὶ, εἴ γε
to-deceive than to-be-deceived. Since if at-least the

φυλακή ἐστὶ πρὸς φίλους, οἶδα ὑμᾶς φυλαζαμένους
guard is-to-be against friends, I-know you guarding

πᾶσαν, ὥς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ δικαίαι
all, so-as not to-give to-this [Seuthes] (a) just

πρόφασιν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ὑμῖν ἃ
pretext, (that he might) not pay us what

ὑπέσχετο· γὰρ οὔτε ἠδικήσαμεν τοῦτοι
he-promised; for we-'have neither 'injured this [Seuthes]

οὐδέν, οὔτε κατεβλακεύσαμεν τὰ
— (in any thing), nor neglected the (affairs)

τούτου, οὐδὲ μὲν κατεδειλιάσαμεν οὐδέν
of-this (man), or indeed did-we-cowardly-shrink — (from any

ἐφ' ὃ τι οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν ἡμᾶς. Ἀλλά,
thing) to which he called us. But, 'you

ἂν φαίητε, ἔδει τότε λαβεῖν τὰ
may 'say, it-ought (to be, that I should) then have-taken —

ἐνέχυρα, ὥς εἰ ἐβούλετο μὴδ' ἐδύνατο ἐξα-
pledges, so-that if he-wished he-'could not-indeed 'be-able to-

πατᾶν. Πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσατε, ἃ ἐγὼ
deceive. As-respects these (things) indeed hear, what I

ἂν οὐκ εἶπον ἐναντίον τούτου, εἰ
should 'at no 'time have-mentioned 'before this [Seuthes], if

μὴ ἔδοκεῖτε μοι εἶναι παντάπασιν
you-'had not 'shown (yourselves) to-me to-be altogether

ἀγνώμονες, ἢ λίαν ἀχάριστοι εἰς ἐμὲ. Γὰρ
destitute-of-intelligence, or very ungrateful towards me. | For

ἀναμνήσθητε ἐν ποίοις τισὶ πράγμασιν ἐτυγχάνετε
recollect in what any things you-happened

ῥυττες ἐξ
being [for recollect in what kind of circumstances you were placed] out-of

ὧν ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον ὑμᾶς πρὸς Σεύθην.
which I (extricated you and) 'led you 'up to Seuthes

Οὐκ μὲν Πέρινδον προσήτε εἰς πόλιν,
(Was it) not indeed (at) Perinthus you-went to the) city

δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀποκλείσας τὰς
but Aristarchus the Lacedæmonian having-shut th-

πύλας οὐκ εἶα ὑμᾶς εἰσιέναι; Δ' ἐστρα-
 gates he-'did not 'let you go-in? And did-'you (not) 'en-
 τοπεδεύετε ἔξω ὑπαίθριοι; Ἦν δὲ μέσος
 camp without in-the-open-air? Was-it (not) indeed (the) middle

χειμῶν; Ἐχρῆσθε ἀγορᾷ,
 (of) winter? | Had-'you (not) 'to-make-use-of (a) market, [had you

οὐδὲν ἀγοράζοντες,] οὐδὲν ἀγοράζοντες,] οὐδὲν ἀγοράζοντες,] οὐδὲν ἀγοράζοντες,
 not to buy your provisions,] seeing indeed (a) scarcity (of) — saleable

δ' ἔχοντες σπάνια ὅτων ὠνήσεσθε;
 (things), and having (a) scarcity of-any (things that) you-may-buy

Δὲ ἦν ἀνάγκη μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης.
 (with)? And was-there (not a) necessity to-remain in Thrace;

(γὰρ τριήρεις ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυνον διαπλεῖν).
 (for galleys having-been-anchored hindered (us) to-sail-over:)

εἰ δὲ τις μένοι εἶναι ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
 if indeed any-one stayed (it was) to-be in (a) hostile (country),

ἔνθα μὲν ἦσαν πολλοὶ ἵππεῖς ἐναντίοι, δὲ
 where indeed there-were many horsemen opposed (to you), as-likewise

πολλοὶ πελτασταί; Δὲ μὲν ἦν ὀπλιτικὸν
 many targeteers? And indeed there-was (a) heavy-armed

ἡμῖν, ᾧ, ἰόντες μὲν ἀδρόοι ἐπὶ τὰς
 (corps) for-us, with-which, going indeed 'in (a) 'body to the

κώμας, ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα λαμβάνειν σίτον
 villages, perhaps 'we might 'be-able to-take food

οὐδὲν τι ἄφθονον· δὲ διώκοντες ὅτῳ ἂν
 but) not any abundance; and following whom 'we might

ιατελαμβάνομεν ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα,
 capture neither slaves or cattle, (for the

ἦν οὐχ ἡμῖν. Γὰρ ἐγὼ κατέλαβον οὔτε
 proper troops) were not to-us. For I found neither

ἵππικόν οὔτε πελταστικὸν συνεστηκὸς παρ' ὑμῖν.
 cavalry nor targeteers constituted-in-a-body among you.

Εἰ οὖν, ὑμῶν ὄντων ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ, μηδὲ
 If therefore, you being in this difficulty, not-indeed

προσaiτήσας ὄντιναοῦν μισθόν,
 having-asked-in-addition (for any thing) whatever (as) pay,

προξέλαβον Σεύθην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν, ἔχοντα
I-had-acquired Seuthes (as an) ally for-you, (he) having

καὶ ἱππέας καὶ πελταστὰς, ὧν ὑμεῖς προεδεῖσθε,
both cavalry and targeteers, which you were-in-want-of,

ἢ ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλευσθαι κακῶς;
would I-have-seemed to-you to-have-consulted ill (for you)?

Ἰὰρ δῆπου κοινωνήσαντες τούτων,
For certainly having-shared (in the advantages) of-these

καὶ εὗρίσκετε ἄφδονώτερον σῖτον
(kinds of troops), 'you both 'found more-abundant provisions

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, διὰ τοὺς Θρᾷκες τὸ ἀναγκά-
in the villages, on-account-of the Thracians — being-

ζεσθαι φεύγειν κατὰ μᾶλλον σπουδῇ, καὶ
forced to-flee with greater speed, and you-'had (a)

μᾶλλον μετέσχετε προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων. Καὶ
greater 'share of-cattle and of-slaves. And

έωρῶμεν οὐδένα πολέμιον οὐκέτι, ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἱππικὸν
we-saw no enemy no-more, after the cavalry

προσεγένετο ἡμῖν, δὲ τέως οἱ πολέμιοι θάρραλέως
were-joined to-us, but at-this-time the enemy boldly

ἀφείποντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἱππικῷ καὶ πελταστικῷ,
pursued us both cavalry and targeteers.

κωλύοντες ἡμᾶς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους κατ' ὀλίγους
hindering us (from) being-dispersed in small

μηδαμῇ πορίζεσθαι ἄφδονώτερα τὰ ἐπι-
(parties) every-where to-procure more-abundant — pro

τήδεια.

visions.

Δὲ εἰ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν
But if truly (he) — (who) presenting you this —

ἀσφάλειαν μὴ προσετέλει πάνυ πολὺν
security 'did not 'pay (you) 'in-addition very great

μισθον τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σκέτλιον
wages for-the security, (is) this indeed the shocking

πάθημα; καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἶσθε
suffering (you complain of)? and on-account-of this do-you-think

χρῆναι οὐδαμῇ ἀνεῖναι ἐμὲ ζῶντα;
'that it-is-necessary not to-'send me 'away alive?

Δὲ νῦν δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; Οὐ διαχειμά-
But now truly how do-you-depart? (Is it) not after-having-passed-the-

σαντες ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, δ' ἔχοντες
winter in abundant — provisions, and having

περιττὸν τοῦτο εἴ τι ἐλάβετε παρὰ
moreover-in-addition that, if any, (which) you-received from

Σεύδου; Γὰρ ἐδαπανᾶτε τὰ τῶν πολεμίων.
Seuthes? For you-consumed the (things) of-the enemy.

Καὶ πράττοντες ταῦτα οὔτε
|And performing these (things) [and faring thus] | 'you neither

ἐπίδετε ἄνδρας ὑμῶν ἀποδανόντας αὐτῶν,
'beheld (the) men of-you having-died from-them, [you

οὔτε ἀπεβάλετε ζῶντας.
neither saw any of your men killed,] nor have-you-lost (any) living.

Εἰ δὲ τι καλὸν ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ
If indeed any-thing glorious has-been-performed by-you in — Asia

πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους, καὶ οὐκ ἐκείνο σῶν,
against the barbarians, and have-'you not 'that safe,

καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις προσεῖληφατε νῦν ἄλλην
and to these have-'you (not) 'added now another

εὐκλειαν, καὶ κρατήσαντες τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐν Εὐρώπῃ,
glory, and having-subdued the Thracians in Europe,

ἐφ' οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε; Ἐγὼ μὲν ἂν δικαίως
against whom you-marched? I indeed may justly

φημὶ ὑμᾶς ὧν χαλεπαίνετε ἐμοί,
say (to) you (the things) for-which you-are-angry with-me,

τούτων εἰδέναι χάριν τοῖς θεοῖς ὥς
for-these (we ought) to-consider (as a) favour from-the gods as

ἀγαθῶν. Καὶ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα
for so many) good-things. And indeed truly such (is the state of)

τὰ ὑμέτερα. Ἄγετε δὲ πρὸς
— our (affairs). | Lead indeed [well then] for (the sake)

θεῶν, σκέψασθε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ὥς
'of (the) 'gods, | consider also — my (affairs) as (how they)

ἔχε.. Γὰρ ἐγὼ ὅτε μέν
 have (themselves) [consider my condition]. For I when indeed
 πρότερον ἀπῆα οἴκαδε, ἀπεπορευόμην μὲν
 'I first 'went-away (for) home, I-went-away indeed
 ἔχων πολὺν ἔπαινον πρὸς ὑμῶν, ἔχων δὲ δ' ὑμᾶς
 having much praise from you, having also through you
 καὶ εὐκλειαν ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων.
 aver glory (and renown) with the other Greeks
 Δὲ ἐπιστευόμην ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων· γὰρ
 And I-was-trusted by (the) Lacedæmonians; for 'they
 ἂν οὐ ἔπεμπον με πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Νῦν δὲ
 would not 'have-sent me back to you. Now indeed
 ἀπέρχομαι διαβεβλημένος ὑφ' ὑμῶν μὲν πρὸς
 I-depart calumniated by you indeed to (the)
 Λακεδαιμονίους, δὲ ἀπηχθημένος Σεύδῃ ὑπὲρ
 Lacedæmonians, and having-offended Seuthes by (reason of)
 ὑμῶν, ὃν ἤλπιζον ποιήσας εὖ
 you, whom I-hoped | having-made (it) well [having served him effec-
 μεθ' ὑμῶν, καὶ καταδήσεσθαι καλὴν
 tively] with you, and to-have-procured (with him an) honourable
 ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ παισίν, εἰ γένοιτο.
 retreat both for-myself and (my) children, if there-should-be
 Δ' ὑμεῖς ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐγὼ τε ἀπήχθημαί
 (any to me). But you for whom I not-only have-'incurred
 πλεῖστα, καὶ ταῦτα πολὺν κρείττοσιν
 the-most 'hatred, but-also this (from those) much better
 ἑμαυτοῦ, τε οὐδὲ πῶ νῦν πέπαυμαι πραγμα-
 (than) myself, and neither not-even now do-I-cease labouring-to-
 τευόμενος ὃ τι ἀγαθὸν δύναμαι ὑμῖν, ἔχετε
 effect whatever good I-can for-you, who-have
 τοιαύτην γνώμην περὶ ἐμοῦ. Ἄλλ' μὲν ἔχετε
 such (an) opinion respecting me. But indeed you-have
 με οὔτε λαβόντες φεύγοντα, οὔτε
 me (in your power). neither having-taken (me) fleeing-away, nor
 ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἣν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε, ἵστε,
 about-running-away; if indeed you-will-do what you-say, know

ὅτι ἔσεσθε κατακατόντες ἄνδρα ἀγρυπνήσαντα
that you-will-be killing (a) man having-watched

μὲν δὴ πολλά πρὸ ὑμῶν, δὲ ποιήσαντα καὶ
indeed truly much for you, and having-laboured (much) and

κινδυνεύσαντα πολλά σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἐν τῷ
encountered many 'dangers with you, both in —

μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος, δὲ θεῶν ὄντων
his) share and beyond — (his) share, and (the) gods being

ἰλεων πολλά τρόπαια δὴ βαρβάρων στη-
propitious many trophies truly 'over (the) 'barbarians have-

σάμενον σὺν ὑμῖν· διατεινάμενον πρὸς ὑμᾶς πᾶν
been-erected with you; having-exerted-myself for you (in) all

ὅσον ἐδυνάμην, ὅπως δὲ γένοισθε πολέμιοι
as-much-as I-was-able, that indeed you-might-become inimical

γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Ἰὰρ καὶ οὖν νῦν
at-least to-none of-the Greeks. For even therefore now

ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἀνεπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι, ὅπῃ ἂν
it-is-allowed you blamelessly to-proceed, where 'you may

ἔλῃσθε, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
'have-desired, both by land and by sea.

Δὲ ὑμεῖς, ὅτε πολλὴ εὐπορία φαίνεται ὑμῖν, καὶ
And you, when great abundance shows-itself to-you, and

πλεῖτε ἔνθα δὴ πάλαι ἐπιθυμεῖτε, τε
about-to-sail where indeed heretofore you-have-desired-to-be, and

δέονται ὑμῶν οἱ
those desire you — (those, namely, who are considered as) 'being

μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, δὲ μισθὸς φαίνεται,
the-most 'able (and powerful), | and pay appears

δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἱ
[and pay is offered to you,] and Lacedæmonians, — (those, namely

νομιζόμενοι κράτιστοι ἡγεμόνες ἦκουσι,
who) being-considered the-best leaders come (for you)

νῦν δὴ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν εἶναι καιρὸς κατα-
does it now indeed seem to-you to-be (a) proper (time) to

κατεῖν ἐμὲ ὡς τάχιστα; Οὐ
kill me as speedily (as possible)? (You had) no 'such

μὴν γε ὅτε ἤμεν ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις,
intentions) certainly at-least when we-were in — difficulties.

ὧ μνημονικώτατοι πάντων· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκαλεῖτε
O (men) having-memories of-all; but even you-called

ἐμὲ πατέρα, καὶ ὑπισχνείσθε ἀεὶ μεμνήσθαι ὥς
me father, and you-promised always to-remember (me) as (a)

εὐεργέτου. Μέντοι οὗτοί, οἱ ἵνῃ ἤκοντες
benefactor. However those, — (those namely) now come

ἐφ' ὑμᾶς, εἰσιν οὐ οὐδὲ ἀγνώμονες· ὧστε, ὥς
for you, are not either (so) ignorant; so-that, as

ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ δοκεῖτε βελτίονες τούτοις,
I think, you-'will neither 'seem better to-these

ὄντες τοιοῦτοι περὶ ἐμέ. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
(persons), being such as-respects me. Having-said the'se

ἐπαύσατο.
(things) he-ceased.

Δὲ Χαρμῖνος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν·
And Charminus the Lacedæmonian standing-up said:

Ἄλλ' οὐ τῷ σιώ, μέντοι δοκεῖτε ἐμοί, ὧ ἄνδρες,
Certainly by-the twin-gods, however you-seem to-me, O men,

χαλεπαίνειν τῷ τούτῳ ἀνδρὶ οὐ δικαίως· γὰρ
to-be-displeased with — this man not justly; for

καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχω μαρτυρῆσαι αὐτῷ. Γὰρ Σεύδης
even I-myself have to-bear-witness to-him. For Seuthes

ἔρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ξενοφώντος,
inquiring of-me and Polynicus about Xenophon,

τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη, εἶχε μὲν οὐδὲν
what-kind (of a) man he-might-be, (he said) he-had indeed nothing

ἄλλο μέμψασθαι, δὲ ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι
else to-'accuse (him) of, but he-said (that) he was

φιλοστρατιώτην· διὸ εἶναι χεῖρον αὐτῷ
a) friend-of-the-soldiers; wherefore (that it) was worse for-him

τε πρὸς ἡμῶν τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, καὶ πρὸς
not-only with us the Lacedæmonians, but-also with

αὐτοῦ. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Ληυσιᾶτης
himself. After this-one Eurylochus (the) Lusian (an)

Ἀρχὰς ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι, Λακεδαι-
 Arcadian rising-up said: 'It even 'seems at-least to-me, Lacedæ-
 μόνιοι ἄνδρες, ὑμᾶς στρατηγῆσαι πρῶτον
 monian men, (that) you should-'be (our) 'generals first
 τοῦτο ἀναπρᾶξαι παρὰ Σεύδου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθόν
 in-this to-have-exacted from Seuthes for-us — (our) pay
 ἢ ἐκόντος, ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον
 either willingly, or unwillingly, and not before (this was done)
 ἀπαγαγεῖν ἡμᾶς. Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι
 to-have-'led us 'away. Polycrates indeed (the) Athenian
 ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὑπὲρ Ξενοφῶντος· Γὲ μὴν ὁρῶ,
 rising-up spoke for Xenophon: 'I at-least certainly 'see,
 ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην παρόντα ἐνταῦθα,
 said-he, O men, even Heraclides being-present here,
 ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα, ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐπονήσαμεν,
 who having-received the things, which we laboured
 ἀποδόμενος ταῦτα, ἀπέδωκε τὰ γιγνό-
 (to obtain), having-sold these (things) gave the pro-
 μενα οὔτε Σεύδῃ οὔτε ἡμῖν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας,
 ceeds neither to-Seuthes nor to-us, but he having-stolen
 πέπαται. Ἦν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν
 (them), keeps-possession (of them). If therefore we-are-wise
 ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ, ἔφη, οὗτος δὴ
 we-will-lay-hold of-him. For, said-he, this (person) indeed
 ἐστὶν οὐ γὰρ Θράξ, ἀλλ' ὢν Ἕλλην
 is not at-least (a) Thracian, but being (a) Greek 'treats
 Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖ.
 (the) Greeks 'unjustly.
 Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα μᾶλλον
 — Heraclides hearing these (things), 'was more
 ἐξεπλάγη· καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύδῃ λέγει·
 'alarmed (than before); and proceeding to — Seuthes he-says:
 Ἦν σωφρονῶμεν ἅπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς
 If we-are-wise 'we (will) 'depart hence from the
 ἐπικρατείας τούτων. Καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς
 power of-these (men). And mounting on — (their)

ππους ὥχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδοι
 orses they-departed - riding-off to the camp

ἑαυτῶν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύδης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλμη
 of-themselves. And thence Seuthes sends Abrozelmæ

τὸν ἑρμηνέα ἑαυτοῦ πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ κελεύει
 he interpreter of-himself to Xenophon, and requests

ὑπὸν καταμεῖναι παρ' ἑαυτῷ, ἔχοντα χιλίους
 'in to-remain with himself, having (a) thousand

πλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται ἀποδώσειν αὐτῷ τε
 heavy-armed-men, and promised to-give to-him also

τὰ χωρία τα ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, καὶ
 the places — (those namely) on (the) sea (coast), and

τὰλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. Καὶ ποιησάμενος
 the-other (things), which he-promised. And having-made (the

ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ λέγει, ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πο-
 (communication) in secret he-says, that he-had-heard from-Po-

λυνικοί, ὥς, εἰ ἔσται ὑποχείριος Λακεδαι-
 lynicus, that, if he-should-be in-the-hands 'of (the) 'Lacedæ-

μονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποδανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. Δὲ
 monians, evidently he-would-be-put-to-death by Thibron. And

καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι ἐπέστελλον ταῦτα τῷ Ξενο-
 also many others communicated these (things) to — Xeno-

φῶντι, ὥς, εἴη διαβεβλημένος, καὶ δέοι φυλάττεσθαι.
 phon, that he-was calumniated, and ought to-be-on-his-guard.

Δὲ ὁ ἰκούων ταῦτα, λαβὼν δύο ἱερεῖα,
 But — (he) hearing these (things), having-taken two victims,

ἔδνε τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, πότερά εἴη λῶον
 sacrificed to — 'upiter the king, whether it-would-be more-desirable

καὶ ἄμεινιν μένειν παρὰ Σεύδῃ ἐφ' οἷς
 and better to-remain with Seuthes on (the terms) which

Σεύδης λέγει, ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι.
 Seuthes mentions, or to-remain with the army.

Δ' ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.
 And (Jupiter) signifies to-him to-depart.

CHAPTER VII.

Σεύδης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐντεῦθεν
 SEUTHES indeed 'removed (his) 'camp thence
 προσωτέρω· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας,
 farther-off; and the Greeks quartered in villages,
 ὅθεν ἔμελλον, ἐπισιτισάμενοι πλεῖ-
 whence they-intended, having-supplied-themselves-with-provisions plenti-
 στα, ἥξειν ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Αἱ αὖται κώμαι δὲ
 fully, to-go to (the) sea. — These villages indeed
 ἦσαν δεδομένοι Μηδοσάδῃ ὑπὸ Σεύδου. Οὖν ὁ
 had been-given to-Medosades by Seuthes. Therefore —
 Μηδοσάδης ὁρῶν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς
 Medosades seeing [the (things) of-him [his property] in the
 κώμας δαπανώμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, χαλε-
 villages consumed by the Greeks, he-'was grievous-
 πῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν Ὀδρύσην ἄνδρα δυνα-
 ly 'excited; and taking (an) Odrysian man, (the) most-
 τῶτατον τῶν καταβεβηκότων ἄνωθεν,
 powerful of — (those) having-come-down | from-above, [from the
 καὶ ἱππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα, ἔρχεται
 upper country,] and horsemen as-many-as thirty, he-went
 καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
 and called-out Xenophon from the Grecian
 στρατεύματος. Καὶ ὃς λαβὼν τινὰς τῶν λοχαγῶν
 camp. And who taking some of-the captains
 καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται.
 and others of-the proper (men) went-to-meet (him)
 Ἐνθα δὴ Μηδοσάδης λέγει· Ἀδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν
 Then indeed Medosades said: You-act-unjustly, O Xenophon,
 πορδοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας. Οὖν προλέγομεν
 laying-waste — our villages. Therefore we warn
 ὑμῖν, ἐγὼ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύδου, καὶ ὅδε ὁ ἀνὴρ,
 you. I not-only for Seuthes, but also this — man

ἤκων παρὰ Μηδόκου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω,
coming from Medocus the king | above, [of the upper

ἀπιέναι τῆς χώρας· δὲ εἰ μὴ,
country,] to-leave — (these) places; but if (you do) not,

οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῇτε
we-'shall not 'permit you (to do so), but if you-do

κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ἀλεξόμεθα
harm — our territory, we-shall-defend (ourselves against

ὥς πολεμίους.
you) as enemies.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν·
— Xenophon indeed hearing these (things) said:

Ἀλλὰ μὲν σοὶ λέγοντι τοιαῦτα καὶ ἀποκρί-
But indeed to-you saying such (things) even to-an-

νασδαι χαλεπόν· δ' ἔνεκα τοῦδε τοῦ νεανισκου
swer (is) painful; but on-account-of this — young-man

λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῇ τε οἰοί ὑμεῖς
I-shall-reply, that he-may-know, not-only what-sort (of people) you

ἐστε, καὶ οἰοί ἡμεῖς. Γὰρ ἡμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη,
are, but-also what-sort we (are). For we indeed, said-he,

πρὶν γενέσθαι φίλοι ὑμῖν, ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ
before (that we) became friends to-you, marched through

ταύτης τῆς χώρας, ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, πορδοῦντες
this — country, wherever we-wished, laying-waste

ἣν μὲν ἐδέλοισιν, δὲ καίοντες ἣν ἐδέλοισιν. Καὶ
what indeed we-wished, and burning what we-wished. And

σὺ ὅποτε ἔλδοις ἡμᾶς πρεσβεύων, ἡϋλίζου τότε
you when you-came to-us acting-as-an-ambassador, encamped then

παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβούμενος οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων· δὲ
by us, fearing none of-the enemy; but

ὑμεῖς οὐκ ἤτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἢ, εἰ
you 'did not 'come into this — country. or, If

ποτε ἔλδοιτε ἡϋλίζεσθε τοῖς ἵπποις
at-any-time you-may-have-came you-encamped with — (your) horses

ἱγχεχαλνωμένοις ὥς ἐν χώρα κρειττόνων.
saddy-bridled as in (a) country (of people) better

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένεσθ' ἐφίλοι
 (or more powerful than yourselves). But when you-became friends
 ἡμῖν, καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε
 to-us, and through us with (the assistance of the) gods you-have

τὴνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε
 (possession of) this — country, now truly 'you (would) 'expel

ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆςδε τῆς χώρας, ἣν ἐχόντων παρελάβετε
 us from this — country, which having you-received

παρ' ἡμῶν κατὰ κράτος· γὰρ ὡς αὐτὸς
 from us as (the more) powerful; for as you-yourself

οἶσθα, οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἐξελαύνειν
 know, the enemy were not able to-'drive

ἡμᾶς. Καὶ ἀξιοῖς ἀποπέμψασθαι ἡμᾶς
 us 'out. And you-think-proper to-'send us 'away

ὅπως οὐ δούς δῶρα καὶ ποιήσας εὖ,
 so-as not (only not) having-given presents and having-done well

ἀνδ' ὧν ἔπαδες εὖ, ἀλλ'
 (to us), in-place-of (that) which you-received 'benefits (from us), but

ἀποκορευομένους, ἐπιτρέπεις ἡμᾶς νῦν ἐναυλισθῆναι,
 about-departing, you-would-permit us as-then to-sojourn,

ὅσον δύνασαι. Ἰαὶ λέγων ταῦτα
 (in) as-much-as (that you were) able. And saying these

οὔτε αἰσχύνῃ θεοὺς, οὔτε τόνδε τὸν
 (things), 'you neither reverence (the) gods, nor this —

ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν ὁρᾷ σε πλουυέντα, δὲ πρὶν
 man, who now indeed sees you being-rich, but before

γενέσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν ἔχοντα
 (that you) became (a) friend to-us (he saw you) (having)

τὸν βίον ἀπὸ ληστείας, ὥς αὐτὸς
 (supporting) — (your) life by plunder, as you-yourself

ἔφησθα. Ἀτὰρ τί καὶ λέγεις ταῦτα πρὸς
 have-said. But why even do-you-say these (things) to

ἐμὲ; ἔφη· γὰρ ἐγὼγ' ἔτι ἄρχω, ἰλλὰ
 me? continued-he; for I-at-least no-longer command, but (the)

Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς, ὦ θαυμαστότατοι,
 Lacedæmonians, to-whom you, O most-wonderful (men)

παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν, οὐδὲν
 'gave the army 'up to-have-'led (it) 'away, not
 παρακαλέσαντες, ὅπως, ὥςπερ ἀπηχθάνομην αὐτοῖς,
 having-called-on-me, so-that, as I-was-hated by-them,
 ὅτε ἤγουν πρὸς ὑμᾶς, οὕτω καὶ νῦν χαρισαίμην
 as I-led (the army) to you, so even now I-might-gratify
 ἀποδιδούς.
 (them) having-restored (it).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ὀδρύσης ἤκουσεν ταῦτα, εἶπεν·
 When indeed the Odrysian heard these (things), he-said :
 Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἀκούων ταῦτα
 I indeed, O Medosades, hearing these (things), (feel)
 καταδύομαι κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ αἰσχύνῃς. Καὶ
 myself-sinking beneath the earth from shame. And
 εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμην πρόσθεν, ἂν οὐδ' συνηχο-
 if indeed I-had-known (this) before, 'I would not 'have-accom-
 λούδησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. Γὰρ Μηδόχος ὁ
 panied you; and now I-depart. For Medocus the
 βασιλεὺς ἂν οὐδ' ἐπαινοίη με, εἰ ἐξελαίνομι τοὺς
 king would not approve me, if I-had-expelled — (his)
 εὐεργέτας. Εἰπων ταῦτ', ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν
 benefactors. Having-said these (things), mounting on — (his)
 ἵππον ἀπήλαυσε, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἵππεις,
 horse he-ride-off, and with him the other horsemen
 πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. Δὲ ὁ Μηδοσάδης, (γὰρ
 except four or five. But — Medosades, (for
 ἡ χώρα πορδουμένη ἐλύπει αὐτόν,) ἐκέλευε τὸν
 the country being-laid-waste distressed him,) requested —
 Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τῷ Λακεδαιμονίῳ. Καὶ ὃς
 Xenophon to-call-on the-two Lacedæmonians. And who
 λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους,
 taking — (those) most-suitable (for the purpose with him),
 προσηλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ, καὶ ἐλεξεν,
 he-went-to — Charminus and Polynicus, and said,
 ὅτι Μηδοσάδης καλεῖ αὐτοὺς, προερῶν ἅπερ
 that Medosades calls-on them, warning (them) a.

αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ἄν οὖν
(he had done) himself to-depart from the country. 'I should therefore

οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὅτι ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν
'think, said (Xenophon), that you (would) obtain the

μισθόν ὀφειλόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ εἰποιτε ὅτι
pay due to-the army, if you-were-to-say that

ἡ στρατιὰ δεδέηται ὑμῶν συναναπρᾶξαι τὸν
the army has-entreated of-you together-to-exact — (your)

μισθόν Σεύδου ἢ παρ' ἐκόντος ἢ παρ' ἄκοντος,
pay of-Seuthes either — willing or — unwilling.

καὶ ὅτι φασι τυχόντες τούτων ἂν προδύ-
and that they-say having-obtained these (things) 'they would cheer-

μως συνέπεσδαι ὑμῖν, καὶ ὅτι δοκοῦσι ὑμῖν λέγειν
fully 'follow you, and that they-appear to-you to-say

δίκαια, καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς
(the things that are) just, and that you-had-promised there

τότε ἀπιέναι, ὅταν οἱ στρατιῶται ἔχωσι τὰ
then to-depart, when the soldiers might-have — (their)

δίκαια. Οἱ Λάκωνες ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
just (demands). The Lacedæmonians hearing these (things),

ἔφασαν ἔρεῖν, καὶ ἄλλα
said (that they would) say (so), and (such) other (things)

ὅποια ἂν δύνωνται κράτιστα.
as-that 'they might 'be-able (to urge) to-the-best (advantage),

καὶ εὐδὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς
and immediately they-proceeded having all the

ἐπικαιρίους. Ἐλθὼν δὲ Χαρμῖνός ἔλεξε· Εἰ μὲν,
proper-persons. Having-come indeed Charminus said: If indeed,

ὦ Μηδόσαδης, σύ ἔχεις τι, λέγειν πρὸς ἡμᾶς
O Medosades, you have any-thing, to-say to us

δὲ εἰ μὴ, ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν πρὸς σε.
(say it); but if not, we have (something to say) to you.

Ὁ Μηδοσάδης δὲ μάλα ὑφειμένως ἔφη· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
— Medosades indeed very submissively said: But I

μὲν λέγω, καὶ Σεύδης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιοῦμεν
'ndeed say. and Seuthes (says) the same, that we-consider

τους γεγενημένους φίλους ἡμῖν
 (it right, that) — (those) having-become friends to-us, (ought)
 μὴ πάσχειν κακῶς ὑφ' ὑμῶν· γὰρ ὅ τι ἂν
 not to-suffer evil by you; for whatever you may
 ποιῇτε κακῶς τούτους, ποιεῖτε ἤδη ἡμᾶς·
 do ill (to) them, you-do already (the same to) us;
 γὰρ εἰσιν ἡμέτεροι. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ
 for they-are ours. We therefore, said the
 Λάκωνες, ἂν ἀπίοιμεν, ὅποτε οἱ καταπράξαντες
 Lacedæmonians, may depart, when — (those) having-performed
 ταῦτα ὑμῖν ἔχοιεν τὸν μισθόν· εἰ δὲ μή,
 these (great things) for-you may-have — (their) pay; if indeed not,
 ἐρχόμεδα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες
 we-come indeed even now helping (and taking part with)
 τούτοις, καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἱ ἡδίκη-
 these, and about-taking-vengeance-on (the) men who wronged
 σαν τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δὲ ἦν
 these (soldiers) against — (their) oaths. And if
 δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε τοιοῦτοι, ἐνδένδε
 indeed also you may-have-been (of) such (number), (from-here)
 ἀρξόμεδα λαμβάνειν τὰ δίκαια. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
 (of you) we-will-begin to-take — justice. — Xenophon
 δὲ εἶπεν· Δ' ἐδέλοιτε, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἂν
 (then) indeed said: And would-you-be-willing, O Medosades, —
 ἐπιτρέψαι τούτοις, (ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφατε
 to-leave (it) to-these (people), (since they-say (that they)
 εἶναι φίλους ὑμῖν,) ἐν ᾧ τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν,
 are friends to-you,) in whose — country we-are, (that they)
 ἂν ψηφίσωνται ὁπότερα, εἴδ' προσῆκεν ὑμᾶς ἀπιένα
 might decide-by-vote either, whether it-were fit for-you to-depart
 ἐκ τῆς χώρας, εἴτε ἡμᾶς; Δὲ ὁ ἔφη
 from the country, or us? But — (Medosades) said (I do)
 οὐ μὲν ταῦτα· δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ἐκέλευε αὐτῷ
 not indeed (want) this; but most-of-all indeed he-requested these-two
 τῷ Λάκωνι ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ,
 — Lacedæmonians to-go to Seuthes about the pay,

καὶ οἶεσθαι ἂν πείσαι Σεΐδην· δ'
 and (that he) thought (that they) might persuade Seuthes; but
 εἰ μὴ, πέμπειν Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἵπι-
 if not, to-send Xenophon with himself, and he-
 σχνεῖτο συμπράξειν. Ἐδεῖτο δὲ μὴ καίειν
 promised to-co-operate. He-requested (them) moreover not to-burn
 τὰς κώμας.
 the villages.

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ
 Thereupon they-send Xenophon, and with him
 οἱ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτηδείοτατοι. Ὁ
 (those) who seemed to-be the-most-proper (persons). — (He)
 δὲ ἔλθων λέγει πρὸς Σεΐδην· Πάρεμι,
 indeed having-come speaks (thus) to Seuthes; I-am-here,
 ὦ Σεΐδη, οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ἀλλὰ
 O Seuthes, not about-demanding (any thing of you), but
 διδάξων, ἣν δύνωμαι, ὥς οὐ
 teaching (and convincing you), if I-am-able, that you-'are not
 δικαίως ἡχδέσδης μοι, ὅτι προθύμως ἀπήτουν
 justly 'displeased with-me, because 'I earnestly 'entreated
 σε ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἃ ὑπέσχου
 you about (the pay) of-the soldiers, which you-promised
 αὐτοῖς· γὰρ ἔγωγε ἐνόμιζον οὐκ εἶναι ἥττον
 them; for I-at-least thought (it would) not be less
 συμφέρον σοὶ ἀποδοῦναι, ἢ ἀπολαβεῖν
 advantageous to-you to-pay, than (that it would be) to-receive
 ἐκείνοις. Γὰρ οἶδα μὲν πρῶτον μετὰ τοὺς
 (it) by-them. For I-know indeed (that) first after the
 θεοὺς, τούτους καταστήσαντα σε εἰς τὰ
 gods, these (soldiers) having-placed you in — (a)
 φανερόν, ἐπεὶ γε ἐποίησαν σε βασιλέα
 conspicuous (position), then at-least they-made you king
 πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνδρῶν· ὥστε οὐχ
 of-many places and of-many men; so-that (it is) not
 οἶόν τε λανθάνειν σοι, οὔτε ἦν
 possible | to-conceal yourself, [to escape notice,] whether if

ποιήσης τι καλόν, οὔτε ἦν τί αἰσχρὸν.
you-do any-thing good, or if any-thing shameful. 'To (a,

Ἄνδρὶ δὲ ὄντι τοιούτῳ ἐδόκει μὲν εἶναι
'man indeed being such (in situation) it-seems indeed to-be

μοι μέγα μὴ δοκεῖν ἀποπέμψασ-
to-me (to be a thing of) great (importance) not to-seem to-have-sent-

δαι ἀχαρίστως ἀνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα
away ungratefully men (his) benefactors, (a) great (thing)

δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνδρώπων.
indeed to-be-well-spoken-of by six-thousand men

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον καταστήναι
and the greatest to-be-firmly-established (in the confidence that)

σαντὸν μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον ὃ τι λέγοις.
you (are) in-no-wise unworthy-of-belief (in) what you-may-say

Γὰρ ὁρῶ τοὺς λόγους μὲν ἄπιστων πλανω-
For I-see the words indeed of-those-unworthy-of-belief wander-

μένους ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους· δ'
ing-about in-vain and powerless and dishonoured; but

οἱ λόγοι τούτων, οἱ ἂν ὦσιν φανεροὶ ἀσχοῦντες
the words of-those, who may be openly cultivating

ἀλήθειαν, ἣν δέονονται τι, δύνανται οὐδὲν μείον
truth, if they-want any-thing, are-able not less

ἀνύσασθαι, ἢ ἡ βία ἄλλων· ἣν τε βού-
to-effect (it), than the force of-other (men); if also they-

λωνται σωφρονίζειν τινας, γινώσκω τὰς
wish to-'bring any-one 'to-reason, I-know the

ἀπειλὰς τούτων οὐχ ἥττον σωφρονιζούσας,
threats of-these (men are) not less correcting,

ἢ τὰς ἤδη κολάσεις ἄλλων· ἣν τέ οἱ
than the already (given) punishments of-others; if also —

τοιούτοι ἀνδρες ὑπισχνῶνται τῷ τι δια-
such men promise — (any one) anything they-

πράττονται οὐδὲν μείον, ἢ ἄλλοι διδόντες παρα-
accomplish no less, than others giving at-the-

χρῆμα. Δὲ καὶ ἀναμνήσθητι σύ, τί προτελέσας
instant. And also recollect yourself, what you-accomplished

ἡμῖν ἔλαβες ἡμᾶς συμμάχους. Οἶσθ' ὅτι
to-us having-taken us (as) allies. You-know that (it was)

οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεῖς ἀληθεύσειν, ἃ ἔλαβες,
nothing; | but having-been-trusted to-speak-the-truth, what you-say,

ἐπη̃ρας
[but trusting that you spoke the truth in what you said,] you-induced

τοσούτους ἀνθρώπους τε συστρατεύεσθαι τε καὶ
such-a-number (of) men not-only to-fight-with (you), but-also

συγκατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οἱ μόνον ἀξίαν
to-conquer-with you (a) government not only worth

τριάκοντα ταλάντων, ὅσα οὗτοι οἴονται
thirty talents. which (sum) they think (that they)

δεῖν νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων.
ought now to-receive (from you), but many-times-more.

Οὐκ οὖν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο τὸ πιστεύεσθαι σε,
(Is) not therefore first indeed this | the to-confide in-you,

τὸ καὶ κατεργασάμενον
[the confidence placed in you,] — (that) even (which) secured

σοι τὴν βασιλείαν πιπράσκειται ὑπὸ σου τούτων
for-you the kingdom sold by you (for) this

τῶν χρημάτων. Ἴδι δὴ ἀναμνήσδετι, πῶς μέγα
— money. Well-then truly recollect, how great

τότε ἡγοῦ καταπράξασθαι ἃ
'you then 'considered (it) to-accomplish (those things) which

νῦν ἔχεις καταστρεψάμενος. Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶδ' εὖ,
now you-have having-conquered. I indeed know well

ὅτι εὖξω ἄν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα
that 'you would 'have-prayed (for) the (things) now accomplished

μᾶλλον καταπραχθῆναι σοι, ἢ πολλαπλάσια
rather to-be-effected for-you, than (for) many-times

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. Τοίνυν
that (sum) of — money (might) be. Therefore

ἔμοι δοκεῖ εἶναι μείζον βλάβος καὶ αἰσχιον μὴ
to-me it-seems to-be (a) greater detriment and disgrace not

νῦν κατασχεῖν τὰ ταῦτα, ἢ τότε μὴ
now to-have-retained — these (things), than then not

λαβεῖν, ὅσῳ περ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίοις
to-have-acquired (them), as (it is) more-grievous from (the) rich

γενέσθαι πένητα, ἢ μὴ πλουτῆσαι ἢ
to-become poor, | than not to-have-been-rich if (from the)

ἀρχὴν, καὶ ὅσῳ
beginning, [than not to have been rich at all,] and in as-much-as (it is)

λυπηρότερον φανῆναι ἰδιώτην ἐκ
more-distressing to-appear (a) private (person) from (having been a)

βασιλέως, ἢ μὴ βασιλεῦσαι ἢ ἀρχὴν.
king, than not to-have-reigned | if (from the) beginning [at all].

Οὐκ οὖν μὲν ἐπίστασαι ὅτι οἱ γενομένοι
Do-'you not therefore indeed 'know that — (those) 'having

νῦν ὑπήκοοι σοι ἐπέεισθησαν οὐ τῇ
now 'become subject to-you 'have not 'submitted | (for) —

τῇ φιλίᾳ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἀλλ'
your love [through love of you] to-be-governed by you, but

ἀνάγκῃ, καὶ ὅτι ἂν ἐπιχειροῖεν παλιν
through-necessity, and that 'they would 'endeavour again

γίγνεσθαι ἐλεύθεροι, εἰ μὴ τις φόβος
to-become free, if (there were) not some fear (that)

κατέχοι; Ποτέρως οὖν οἶσι αὐτούς
might-restrain (them)? Whether therefore do-you-think (that) they

ἂν τε μᾶλλον φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ σωφρονεῖν
would also 'be more 'restrained-by-fear, and 'conduct (them-

τὰ πρὸς σέ,
selves more) 'discreetly (and obediently) in-the (affairs) concerning you,

εἰ ὀρῶεν τοὺς στρατιώτας οὕτω διακειμένους σοι,
if they-should-see the soldiers so disposed to-you,

ὥς νῦν τε μένοντας, εἰ σὺ ἂν κελεύεις, τ' αἶ
as now also remaining, if you would request (it), and --

ἔλδοντας αὐθὺς ταχὺ, εἰ δέοι, τε ἄλλους
having-come back speedily, if it-is-required, also (that) others

ἀκούοντας πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ τούτων
hearing much good (concerning you) of-those (soldiers)

περὶ σοῦ, ἂν παραγενέσθαι
who have been in service) with you, would join (you)

ταχὺ ὁπότε βούλοιο· ἢ εἰ κατα-
immediately when you-might-wish (it); or if they-should-form-as-un-

δοξάσειαν ἄλλους ἢ μὴτ' ἐλθεῖν σοι,
favourable-opinion (of you, that) others would not go to-you,

δι' ἀπιστίαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενη-
through distrust (arising) from the (things that) now have-hap-

μένων, τε τούτους εἶναι εὐνουστέρους αὐτοῖς
pened, also (that) these (Greeks) are better-affected to-them

ἢ σοί; Ἀλλὰ μὴν
(namely, your unconquered subjects,) than to-yourself? But certainly

ὑπεῖξάν σοι οὐδέ γε λειψδέντε
(that these people) submitted to-you not at-least (as) deficient

πλήθει ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἀπορία προστατῶν.
in-number (to) us, but (as being) in-want of-leaders.

Οὐκ οὖν καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος, μὴ λάβωσι
(Is there) not therefore even this (as a) danger, lest they take

προστάτας τινὰς αὐτῶν τούτων, οἱ νομίζουσιν
(as) leaders some of-those same, who consider

ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἢ καὶ τοὺς Λακε-
(themselves) wronged by you, or even the Lace-

δαίμονιους κρείττονας τούτων,
dæmonians better (and more powerful than) those,

ἐὰν μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπισχνῶνται συστρατεῖσθαι
if indeed the soldiers promise to-serve-in-the-army

αὐτοῖς προθυμότερον ἂν νῦν ἀναπράξωσι τὰ
with-them more-spiritedly (if) 'they would now 'exact the

παρὰ σοῦ, δὲ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι συναινέσωσιν
(money) from you, and the Lacedæmonians should agree-with

αὐτοῖς ταῦτα διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς
hem (about) these (things) through | the to-want [want] of the

στρατιᾶς; Ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ Θράκες γενόμενοι
army? That at-least certainly the Thracians | having-become

ὑπὸ σοι ἂν πολὺ προθυμότερον ἴοιεν
under you [subjugated by you] would much more-promptly go

ἐπὶ σε ἢ σὺν σοι, οὐκ ἄδηλον· γὰρ μὲν σοὶ
against you than with you, (is) not doubtful; for indeed you

κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάχει αὐτοῖς, δὲ σοῦ κρατον
conquering slavery is for-them, but you being-con-

μείνῃ, ἐλευθερία. Δὲ καὶ εἰ ἤδη δεῖ προνο-
quered, liberty. And also if it-is now 'necessary to-pro

εἶσθαι τι τῆς χώρας, ὡς οὕσης σῆς, ποτέρως
vide something for-the country, as being yours, whether

ἂν οἶε αὐτὴν εἶναι μᾶλλον ἀπαδῇ κακῶν,
you may 'think it to-be more free-from evil,

εἰ αὐτοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες ἃ
if they the soldiers having-received (from you) what

ἐγκαλοῦσιν καταλιπόντες εἰρήνην οἴχονται, ἢ εἰ
they-claim leaving peace should-depart, or if

οὗτοί τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
these (soldiers should) also remain as in (a) hostile (country),

σύ τε πειρῶο ἔχων ἄλλους πλείονας
you also should-endeavour having other (soldiers) more-numerous (than)

τούτων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι, δεομένους τῶν
these to-encamp-over-against (them), wanting —

ἐπιτηδείων; Δὲ ποτέρως πλεῖον ἀργύριον ἂν
provisions? And whether more money might

ἀναλωθεῖν, εἰ τοῦτο τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθεῖν,
be-spent, if that — (which) is-due should-be-paid,

ἢ εἰ τε ταῦτα ὀφείλοιντο, τε δέοι
than if also this (money were left) due, and it-were-necessary

σε μισθοῦσθαι ἄλλους κρείττονας τούτων;
(that) you should-hire other (troops) better (than) these?

Ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδης, ὡς ἐδήλου πρὸς ἐμὲ, τοῦτο
But — Heraclides, as he-declared to me, this

τὸ ἀργύριον δοκεῖ εἶναι πάμπολυ. Ἡ μὲν ἐστὶ
— money seems to-be very-great. — Certainly it-is

γε πολὺ ἐλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ
at-least (a) much smaller (or easier affair) now for-you both

λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι τοῦτο, ἢ, πρὶν
to take this and pay this, than, before (that)

ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σε, δέκατον μέρος
we came to you, (to take or pay the) tenth part

τούτου. Γὰρ ἐστὶν οὐ ἀριθμὸς ὁ ὀρί-
 of-it For it-is not (the) number (or amount) — (that) de-

ζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις
 termines the much and the little, but the power

τε τοῦ ἀποδιδόντος καὶ τοῦ λαμβάνοντος.
 not-only of — paying but-also of — taking (and

Δὲ νῦν ἡ πρόσδοδος σοὶ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν
 receiving). But now the income to-you for (the) year

ἔσται πλείων, ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ πάντα ἃ ἐκέκ-
 will-be more, than before — all which you-had-pos-

τησο. Ἐγὼ μὲν, ὦ Σεύδῃ, προενοοῦμην ταῦτα
 sessed. I indeed, O Seuthes, have-considered these (things)

ὥς ὄντος φίλου σου, ὅπως τε σύ δοκοῖς ἄξιος
 as being (a) friend of-you, so-that also you may-appear worthy

ῶν ἀγαθῶν οἱ θεοὶ ἔδωκαν σοι, ἐγὼ
 of-the good-things — (that the) gods have-given you, | (and) I

τε μὴ διαφθαρείην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ.
 also (that) I-might not 'be-ruined. in the army

Γὰρ ἴσθι ἐν,
 [and that I might not lose all credit in the army]. For know well,

ὅτι ἐγὼ νῦν οὔτ' βουλόμενος ἂν δυνηθεῖην ποιῆσαι
 that I now neither wishing could I-be-able to-do

κακῶς σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ, οὔτ' εἰ ἂν πάλιν
 harm with this — army, nor if 'I might again

βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἂν γενοίμην ἱκανός.
 'desire to-assist (you), might I-be able.

Γὰρ οὕτω ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειτα πρὸς ἐμέ. Καίτι
 For thus the army (is) disposed to me. | And-certainly

ποιοῦμαι αὐτὸν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσιν,
 I-make you yourself to-give-witness with (the) gods knowing,

ὅτι
 [and I call on you and the gods, knowing the truth, to witness,] that 'I

οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ οὐδέν ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις,
 — 'have from you nothing for the seldiers,

οὔτε πώποτε ᾗτησα εἰς τὸ ἴδιον
 nor have-'I ever 'asked (of you) for — (my) private (use)

τὰ ἐκείνων, οὐτε ἀπήτησα ἃ
 the (things belonging to) them, no: have-I-asked-for (that) which
 ὑπέσχου μοι. Ὁμνυμι σοι δὲ ἀποδιδόντος
 you-promised me. I-swear to-you indeed (that) offering
 ἂν μηδὲ δέξασθαι, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρα-
 (pay to me) 'I would not 'have-received (it), unless also the sol-
 τῶται ἔμελλον συναπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἑαν-
 diers were-about to-receive-together-with (me) the (pay) of-them-
 τῶν. Γὰρ ἦν αἰσχρὸν διαπεπρᾶχθαι μὲν
 selves. For it-would-have-been disgraceful to-have-accomplished indeed
 τὰ ἐμὰ, δὲ ἐμὲ περιδεῖν τὰ
 -- my-own (affairs), | but (for) me to-have-neglected the (affairs)
 ἐκείνων ἔχοντα κακῶς,
 of-them having (themselves) ill, [but for me to neglect their
 ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώ-
 affairs when in an unsatisfactory condition,] otherwise also even hon-
 μενον ὑπ' ἐκείνων. Καίτοι Ἡρακλείδῃ γε
 oured by them. Though-indeed to-Heraclides at-least
 πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι λῆρος, πρὸς ἔχειν τὸ
 all seems to-be (a) trifle, — (compared) to-having —
 ἀργύριον ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου. Ἐγὼ δὲ, ὦ Σεύδη,
 money by all means. I indeed, O 'Seuthes,
 νομίζω οὐδὲν κτῆμα εἶναι κάλλιον οὐδὲ λαμ-
 think (that) no possession to-be more-beautiful or more-
 πρότερον ἀνδρί, ἄλλως τε καὶ
 illustrious 'in (a) 'man, | otherwise also even [especially] 'in (a)
 ἄρχοντι, ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναϊό-
 'ruler, (than) virtue and justice and gene-
 τητος. Γὰρ ὁ ἔχων ταῦτα πλουτεῖ μὲν
 rosity. For — (he) having these (things) is-rich indeed
 ὄντων πολλῶν φίλων, δὲ καὶ πλουτεῖ
 (being) (having) many friends, and also rich (in)
 ἄλλων βουλομένῳ γενέσθαι, καὶ μὲν
 others wishing to-become (his friends), and indeed (when)
 πρᾶττων εὖ ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους,
 'at-onc well he-has — (those) rejoicing-with (him),

εἰν δὲ σφαλῇ τι, σπανίζει
 | if indeed he-falls (in) any-thing, [in reverse of fortune,] he-wants
 οὐ τῶν βοηθησόντων. Ἄλλὰ γὰρ
 not — (those) helping (him). But (enough) for
 εἰ μήτε κατέμαδες ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν ἔργων,
 if you-'have neither 'learned from — my actions,
 ὅτι ἦν φίλος σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς, μήτε
 ha. I-was (a) friend to-you from — mind, [at heart,] nor
 δύνασαι γινῶναι τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν
 ;(that you) have-been-able to-have-known this from — my
 λόγων, ἀλλὰ κατανόησον πάντως τοὺς λόγους τῶν
 words, but-yet consider by-all-means the words of-the
 στρατιωτῶν· γὰρ παρῆσθα, καὶ ἤκουες, ἃ
 soldiers; for you-were-present, and you-heard, what
 ἔλεγον οἱ βουλόμενοι ψέγειν ἐμέ. Γὰρ κατη-
 they-said, — (those) wishing to-asperse me. For they-
 γόρουν μου μὲν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὡς ποιόμην
 accused me indeed to (the) Lacedæmonians, that I-made
 πλείονος περὶ σε ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους· δ'
 more — (of) you than (of the) Lacedæmonians; and
 αὐτοὶ ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοὶ, ὥς μᾶλλον μέλοι μοι,
 they charged me, that it-'was more (a) 'care to-me,
 ὅπως τὰ σὰ ἔχοι καλῶς
 | that — your (affairs) might-have (themselves) well [that your
 ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἐαυτῶν· ἔφασαν
 affairs might prosper] or than the (affairs) of-them; they-said
 δὲ με καὶ ἔχειν δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ. Καίτοι
 indeed (that) I even had presents from you. And-yet
 πότερον οἶει αὐτοὺς ἐνιδόντας μοι τινα
 whether do-you-think (that) they having-seen in-me some
 κακόνοιαν πρὸς σέ, αἰτιᾶσθαί με ἔχειν τὰ ταῦτα
 'li-will toward you, accused me of-having — these
 δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ, ἢ κατανοήσαντης πολλῇ
 presents from you, or perceiving (in me) much
 προθυμίαν περὶ σε; Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι ἀνδρώπους
 real for you? I indeed think (that) me

νομίζειν, εὖνοιαν δεῖν ἀποκεῖσθαι τούτω
 consider (that) gratitude ought to-be-laid-up for-those (persons),
 παρ' οὗ τις δωρά ἂν λαμβάνη. Δὲ σὺ πρὶν μὲν
 from whom any gift may be-received. But you before indeed
 ἐμὲ ὑπηρετῆσαι σοι τι, ἐδέξω ἡδέως καὶ
 I had-'done you any 'service, gave favourably —
 ὁμμασι καὶ φωνῇ καὶ ξενίοις, καὶ οὐκ
 looks and words and gifts-of-hospitality, | and 'had not
 ἐνεπίμπλασο ὑπισχνούμενος
 'filled-up [and did not satisfy yourself] promising
 ὅσα ἔσοιτο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας
 how-great would-be (my rewards); when indeed you-had-accomplished
 ἃ ἐβούλου, καὶ γεγένησαι μέγιστος ὅσον
 what you-wished, and (that you) have-become as-great as
 ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην, τολμᾶς περιο-
 I was-able (to assist you to become), can-you-bear to-see-with-
 ρᾶν νῦν με ὄντα οὕτω ἄτιμον ἐν τοῖς στρα-
 indifference now me being thus dishonoured among the sol-
 τιώταις; Ἀλλὰ μὲν, πιστεύω ὅτι καὶ τὸν χρόνον
 diers? But certainly, I-trust that even — time
 διδάξειν σε δόξει σοι ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ σε
 will-teach you (that) it-will-seem (best) to-you to-pay-the-debt, and you
 αὐτόν γε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι ὁρῶντά τοὺς
 yourself at-least 'will not 'bear seeing — (those)
 προεμένους εὐεργεσίαν σοὶ ἐγκαλοῦντας
 freely-bestowing benefits on-you accusing (and reproaching)
 σοι. Οὖν δέομαι σοῦ, ὅταν ἀποδιδῶς, προδυσμεῖσθαι
 you. Therefore I-entreat you, when you-pay, you-will-study
 ποιῆσαι ἐμὲ τοιοῦτον παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις οἷον περ
 to-make me the-same with the soldiers as-altogether
 καὶ παρέλαβες.
 even (when) you-received (me into your service).

Ὁ Σεύδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα κατηράσατο
 — Seuthes hearing these (things) uttered-imprecations-against

τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδῶσθαι τὸν μισθόν
 the author of — not long-since paying the wage

(καὶ πάντες ὑπόπτευσαν τοῦτον εἶναι Ἡρα-
 (and all suspected this (one) to-be Hera-

κλείδην·) γὰρ ἐγώ, ἔφη, οὔτε διενόηδην
 slides;) for I, said-he, [Seuthes,] never intended

πώποτε ἀποστερηῆσαι, τε ἀποδώσω.
 at-any-time to-deprive (the men of their pay), and I-will-pay (it).

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν
 — Xenophon then again said: Since therefore

διανοῇ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγώ δέομαι σου ἀποδιδόναι
 you-are-resolved to-pay, now I entreat you to-pay

δί' ἐμοῦ, καὶ μὴ περιδεῖν με διὰ σέ
 (them) through me, and not to-neglect me through you

ἔχοντα ἀνομοίως νῦν τε ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ
 having (myself) differently now also in the army

καὶ ὅτε ἀφικόμεθα πρὸς σέ. Ὁ δ'
 — (than) when we-came to you. — (Seuthes) indeed

εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' οὐτ' ἔσῃ ἀτιμότερος τοῖς
 said: But you-'will not 'be more-dishonoured among-the

στρατιώταις δι' ἐμέ, ἅν τε μένης παρ' ἐμοί,
 soldiers through me, should also you-remain with me,

ἔχων μόνους χιλίους ὀπλίτας, ἐγὼ τε
 having only thousand heavy-armed-men, I 'will also

ἀποδώσω σοὶ τὰ χωρία, καὶ τᾶλλα ἃ
 'give you — (strong) places, and the-other (things) which

ὑπeschόμεν. Δὲ ὁ πάλιν εἶπε·
 I-promised (you). But — (Xenophon) again said: (That)

Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ
 these (things) indeed (should) have (themselves) so (is) not

οἶόν τε· δὲ ἀπόπεμπε ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μὴν, ἔφη
 possible; but 'send us 'away. And certainly, said

Σεύδης γε οἶδα ὅν καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον σοι
 Seuthes 'I at-least 'know (it is) being even safer for-you

μένειν ἐμοὶ ἢ ἀπιέναι. Ὁ δὲ πάλιν
 to-remain with-me than to-depart. — (Xenophon) indeed again

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ τὴν σὴν πρόνοιαν.
 said: But indeed I-praise — your forethought

Ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἶόν τε. Δ' ὅποι ἐγὼ
For-me indeed to-remain (is) not possible. But wherever I

ἂν ὧ ἐντιμότερος, νόμιζε καὶ τοῦτο ἔσεσθαι
may be more-honoured, know (that) even this will-be (a)

ἀγαθὸν σοὶ. Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύδης λέγει·
good (thing) for-you. Then Seuthes says:

Ἀργύριον μὲν ἔχω οὐκ, ἀλλ' ἢ τι μικρόν,
Money indeed I-have not, but really-only some little,

καὶ τοῦτο δίδωμι σοι, τάλαντιν· δὲ
and this I-will-give you, (namely a) talent; (I have) however

ἑξακοσίους βοῦς, καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια,
six-hundred oxen, and sheep about four-thousand,

καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἰς ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι.
and slaves to (the number of a) hundred and twenty.

Λαβὼν ταῦτα, καὶ τοὺς ὁμήρους τῶν ἀδικη-
Having-taken these, and the hostages of — (those) acting-

σάντων σε, προσλαβὼν, ἄπιδι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
unjustly to-you, (and) having-received (them) depart. — Xenophon

γελάσας εἶπεν· Ἦν οὖν ταῦτα μὴ
having-laughed said: If therefore these (things) 'do not

ἐξικνῆται εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος φήσω
'amount to (a sufficiency) for-the pay, (for) whom shall-I-say

ἔχειν τάλαντον; Οὐκ ἄρ', ἐπειδὴ καὶ
(that I) have (the) talent? (Is it) not therefore, since even

ἐπικίνδυνόν ἐστι μοί, ἄμεινον ἀπιόντά γε φυλάτ-
danger is to-me, better going-away at-least to-guard-

τεσθαι πέτρους; Δὲ ἤκουες τὰς ἀπειλάς.
myself (against) stones? 'You indeed 'heard the threats

Τότε δὴ μὲν ἔμεινε αὐτοῦ.

Then truly indeed he-remained there (that day).

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τε ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς ἃ ὑπέ-
But on-the next-day 'he also 'gave to-them what he-had-

σχετο, καὶ συνέπεμψε τοὺς ἐλάσοντας
promised, and he-sent-with (them) — (those) driving

ταῦτα. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ τέως μὲν
these (cattle). The soldiers however in-the-mean-time indeed

ἔλεγον, ὥς Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὥς Σεύδην οἰκήσων
said, that Xenophon was-gone to Seuthes, dwelling

καὶ ἀποληψόμενος ἃ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ·
(with him) and having-received what he-promised him;

δε ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν ἥκοντα τε ἡσθησαν
du. when they-saw him coming they-'were not-only 'delighted

καὶ προσέδδον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρ-
out-also ran-to (him). But Xenophon when he-saw Char-

μινόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· Ταῦτα, ἔφη, καὶ
minus as also Polynicus: These (things), said-he, 'have even

δί' ὑμᾶς σέσωσται τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ ἐγὼ παρα-
through you 'been-saved for-the army, and I de-

δίδωμι αὐτὰ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαδέμενοι· διά-
liver them to-you; you indeed having-disposed-of (them) dis-

δοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οἱ οὖν μὲν,
tribute (the proceeds) to-the soldiers. — (Those) therefore indeed,

παραλαβόντες καὶ καταστήσαντες λαφυρο-
having-received (the things) and having-appointed booty-

πώλας, ἐπώλουν, καὶ εἶχον πολλήν αἰτίαν.
sellers, sold (the things), and they-had much blame.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν οὐ προσήει, ἀλλὰ ἦν φανερός
Bu. Xenophon 'did not 'go-near (them), but was openly

παρασκευοζόμενος οἴκαδε· γὰρ πῶ ψῆφος
preparing for-home; for as-yet (a) vote (or sentence)

οὐ ἐπῆκτο αὐτῷ Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς.
'was not 'proposed against-him at-Athens respecting banishment.

Δὲ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ προσελθόντες
But — (his) friends in the camp going-to

αὐτῷ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν, πρὶν ἀπα-
him requested (that he would) not depart, before he-might

γάγοι τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ παραδοίη Θίβρωνι.
lead-off the army, and deliver (it) to-Thibron

CHAPTER VI. I

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον· και
 THENCE they-sailed-across to Lampsacus; and

Εὐκλείδης μάντις, Φλιάσιος, ὁ υἱὸς Κλεαγόρου,
 Euclides (the) augur, (a) Phliasian, the son of-Cleagorus,

τοῦ γεγραφότος τὰ ἐνύπνια ἐν Λυκείῳ, ἀπαντᾷ
 the (one) having-written the dreams in (the) Lyceum, came-to-meet

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. Οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι,
 — Xenophon. This (person) congratulated — Xenophon,

ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἠρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον
 that he-had-been-saved, and inquired-of him how-much gold

ἔχει. Ὁ δ' ἐπομόσας αὐτῷ εἶπεν,
 he-has. — (Xenophon) indeed having-taken-an-oath to-him said,

ἢ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μὴδὲ ἱκανὸν ἐφόδιον
 (that) there-was certainly to-be not sufficient travelling-expenses

ἀπιόντι οἴκαδε, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ
 departing for-home, unless he-sold — (his) horse and

ἃ εἶχεν ἀμφ' αὐτόν. Δ' ὁ οὐκ ἐπί-
 what he-had about him. But — (Euclides) 'did not 'be-

στευεν αὐτῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ Λαμψακηνοὶ ἐπεμψαν
 lieve him. But when (the) Lampsaceans had-sent

ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἔδωκε τῷ Ἀπόλ-
 gifts-of-hospitality to — Xenophon, and he-sacrificed to — Apollo,

λωνι, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ὁ Εὐκλείδης
 he-placed-beside (him) — Euclides; — Euclides

δὲ ἰδὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα εἶπεν, ὅτι πεῖδοιτο αὐτῷ
 indeed seeing the victims said, that he-believed him

μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Ἀλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι
 |not to-be [not to have] riches. But I-know, said-he, that

κἂν ποτέ· μέλλῃ ἔσεσθαι τι
 even-if (money) at-any-time should-be-about to-be (yours) some

ἐμπόδιον φαίνεται, εἰ μὴδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ
 impediment shows-itself, if no other, you yourself

Ο Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Ὅ
 — Xenophon assents to-these (things). — (Euclides,
 δὲ εἶπε· Γὰρ ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Μειλίχιος ἐστὶ
 indeed said : — (However) — Jupiter — Meilichius is (a)
 ἐμπόδιον· καὶ ἐπῆρετο, εἰ ποτὲ ἤδη θύσειν,
 hindrance : and inquired, if ever now (that he) sacrificed,
 ὥσπερ οἱκοι, ἔφη, ἐγὼ εἰώδην θύεσθαι καὶ
 the-same-as at-home, said-he, I was-accustomed to-sacrifice and
 ὀλοκαυτεῖν ὑμῖν. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἐξ ὅτου
 offer-holocausts for-you. But — (Xenophon) said, from whatever
 ἀπεδήμησε οὐ τεθυκέναι τῷ τούτῳ
 (time) he-left-home (that he) 'had not 'sacrificed to — this
 θεῷ. Οὖν συνεβούλευσεν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι κατὰ
 god. Therefore he-advised him to-sacrifice as
 εἰώδει, καὶ, ἔφη, συνοίσειν
 as-had-been-accustomed, and, said-he, (I think that) it-will-contribute
 ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν προ-
 for the better. And on-the next-day — Xenophon pro-
 ελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο, καὶ ὠλοκαύτει χοίρους
 ceeding to Ophrynium sacrificed, and burned-up hogs
 τῷ νόμῳ πατρίῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει.
 in-the manner (of his) country, and he-found-the-entrails-favourable.
 Καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Βίτων ἀφικεῖται καὶ
 And on-that — (same) day Biton arrived also
 ἅμα Εὐκλείδης δώσοντες χρήματα τῷ στρατεύ-
 together-with Euclides | having-given money to-the army ;
 ματι· καὶ ξενοῦνται τῷ
 [with pay for the army ;] and they-were-hospitably-entertained by —
 Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ λυσάμενοι ἵππον, ὃν ἀπέδοτο ἐ-
 Xenophon, and having-redeemed (the) horse, which he-sold in
 Λαμψάκῳ πεντήκοντα δαρεικῶν, ὑποπτεύοντες
 Lampsacus for-fifty darics, suspecting (that)
 αὐτὸν πεπραχέναι δι' ἔνδειαν, ὅτι
 he had-sold (it) through want, (because) that
 ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἡδεσθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, ἀπέ-
 they-had-heard (that) he was-fond-of the horse, they-

δοσαν καὶ ἤθελον οὐκ ἀπολαβεῖν τῇ
 restored (it to him) and they-would not receive the
 τιμὴν.
 price (from him).

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρωάδος, καὶ
 Thence they-proceeded through — Troas, and
 ἐπερβάντες τὴν Ἰδὴν ἀφικοῦνται πρῶτον εἰς Ἄν-
 crossing-over — Ida they-arrived first at An-
 τανδρον· εἶτα πορευόμενοι παρὰ θάλατταν
 tandrium; afterwards proceeding along (the) sea (they arrived)
 εἰς πεδῖον Θήβης τῆς Λυδίας. Ἐντεῦθεν
 on (the) plain of-Thebe — (in) Lydia. Thence
 ὁδεύσαντες δι' Ἀτραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ παρ'
 journeying through Atramyttium and Certonium by
 Ἀταρνέα ἐλδόντες εἰς πεδῖον Καΐκου κατα-
 Atarneus having-come to (the) plain of-Caicus they-
 λαμβάνουσι Πέργαμον τῆς Μυσίας.
 reached Pergamus — (in) Mysia.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν ξενοῦται παρ'
 Here indeed Xenophon was-entertained-hospitably by
 Ἑλλάδι, γυναικὶ τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἐρετριέως,
 Hellas, (the) wife of — Gongylus the Eretrian,
 καὶ μητρί Γοργίωνης καὶ Γογγύλου. Αὕτη
 and (the) mother of-Gorgion and Gongylus. This (Hellas)
 δὲ φράζει αὐτῷ, ὅτι ἐστὶν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ Πέρσης
 indeed mentions to-him, that there-was in the plain (a) Persian
 ἀνὴρ Ἀσιδάτης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν,
 man (called) Asidates; this (person) she-said (that) he, [Xenophon,]
 εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι,
 if he-would-go at — night with three-hundred men,
 ἂν λαβεῖν καὶ αὐτόν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ παῖδας,
 might capture — him, and (his) wife, and children
 καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά.
 and — (his) property; (and that this) was indeed much.
 Ἐπεμψε δὲ τε τὸν ἀνεψιὸν αὐτῆς καὶ Δαφνα
 she-ends indeed also the cousin of-herself and Daphna

γόραι, ὃν ἐποιεῖτο πλείστου, καδηγησομένους
 goras, whom she-'made much 'of, acting-as-guides (in)

ταῦτα. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔχων τούτους
 these (things). — Xenophon therefore having these (men)

παρ ἑαυτῷ ἐδύετο. Καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἡλείος,
 with himself sacrific'd. And Basias the Elian, (an)

μάντις παρών, εἶπεν, ὅτι τὰ ἱερὰ εἴη κάλλιστα
 augur being-present, said, that the victims were most-favourable

αὐτῷ, καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ εἴη ἀλώσιμος. Λειπνήσας οὖν
 to-him, and the man might-be easily-captured. Having-supped therefore

ἐπορεύετο τε λαβὼν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς τοὺς
 he-proceeded-forth also taking the captains — (those namely

μάλιστα φίλους, καὶ γεγενημένους πιστοὺς διὰ
 his) greatest friends, and having-been faithful through

παντός, ὅπως ποιῆσαι εὖ αὐτούς. Δὲ καὶ
 all, in-order-that he-might-do good to-them. And also

ἄλλοι συνεξέρχονται αὐτῷ βιασάμενοι
 others joined him having-forced-themselves (on him)

εἰς ἑξακοσίους· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλαινον,
 to (the number of) six-hundred; but the captains 'drove

ἵνα μὴ μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος
 (them) 'back, that they-'might not 'share (in) the part

χρημάτων ὥς δὴ ἐτοίμων.
 of-things as really ready (to be taken).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τα
 When however they-arrived (there) about mid night, the

ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὄντα πέριξ τῆς τύρσιος καὶ τὰ
 slaves indeed being about the castle and the

πλείστα χρήματα ἀπέδρα αὐτοὺς, παραμε
 most (of the) things escaped them, having

λοῦντας, ὥς λάβοιεν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν καὶ
 neglected (them), that they-might-take Asidates himself and

τὰ ἐκείνου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πυργομαχοῦντες
 the (property) of-him. But when assaulting they-'were

οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν, (γὰρ ἦν ὑψηλὴ,
 not 'able to-take the castle, (for it-was high

καὶ μεγάλη, καὶ ἔχουσα προμαχεῶνας καὶ πολλοὺς
and large, and having battlements and many

καὶ μαχίμους ἀνδρας,) ἐπεχειρήσαν διορύττειν
and brave men,) they-endeavoured to-dig-through (the

τὸν πύργον. Ὁ τοῖχος δὲ ἦν ἐπ' ὀκτώ
walls of) the castle. The wall indeed was of eigh.

γῆινων πλίνδων τὸ εὖρος. Ἄμα δὲ
earthen bricks (in) the breadth. At-the-same-time however

τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὥς τὸ πρῶτον
with-the (break of) day it-was-dug-through; and as the first

διεφάνη τις ἐνδοθεν βουπόρῳ ὀβελίσκῳ
(opening) appeared some-one from-within 'with (an) 'ox-piercing spit

ἐπάταξε τοῦ ἐγγυτάτῳ διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρόν· δὲ
struck the nearest entirely-through the thigh; | and

τὸ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν
(for) the rest [and afterwards] shooting-arrows they-made (it)

μηδὲ ἔτι εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς παριέναι. Δὲ αὐτῶν
no longer to-be safe to-approach. But they

κεκραγόντων καὶ πυρσευόντων, Ἰταμβέλεσις μὲν
shouting and giving-signals-by-torches, Itambelesis indeed

ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὀπλίται
having the force of-himself from Comania and heavy-armed

Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ἵππεις, ὥς ὀγδοήκοντα,
(men) Assyrians and Hyrcanian cavalry, about eighty,

καὶ οὗτοι μισθοφόροι βασιλέως, καὶ ἄλλοι
and these mercenaries 'of (the) 'king, and other

πελτασταὶ εἰς ὀκτακοσίους, ἐκβοηδοῦσιν
targeteers to (the number of) eight-hundred, came-'to (their)

δ' ἄλλοι ἐκ Παρθενίου, δ' ἄλλοι
assistance; and (also) others (came) from Parthenium, and others

ἰξ Ἀππολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων,
from Apollonia and from the near places,

καὶ ἵππεις.
likewise cavalry.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν ὥρα σκοπεῖν, πῶς ἢ ἀφ' οὗτος
Now truly it-was time to-consider, how the retreat

ἔσται· καὶ λαβόντες, ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ
 would-be; and taking, as-many-as there-were oxen and
 πρόβατα, ἤλαινον, καὶ ποιησάμενοι
 sheep, they-'drove (them) 'off, and having-placed (the)
 ἀνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου· οὐ οὕτω προσέχοντες
 slaves within (the) square; not so-much as-applying
 τὸν νοῦν τοῖς χρήμασιν, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἄφοδος
 the mind to — (these) things, but (that) the retreat
 μὴ εἶη φυγὴ, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα
 might not 'be (like a) flight, if leaving-behind the things
 ἀπίοιεν, καὶ τε οἱ πολέμιοι εἰεν θρασύτεροί,
 they-should-depart, and also the enemy might-become more-bold,
 καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀδυσμότεροι· δὲ νῦν ἀπήεσαν ὥς
 and the soldiers discouraged; but now they-retreated as
 μαχούμενοι περὶ τῶν χρημάτων. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
 fighting about the things (captured). But when
 Γοργύλος ἑώρα τοὺς Ἑλληνας ὀλίγους μὲν,
 Gorgylus saw the Greeks (to be) few indeed,
 δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους πολλοὺς, καὶ αὐτὸς
 but — (those) pressing-on (them) many, — he
 ἐξέρχεται βία τῆς μητρὸς, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν
 sallied-forth despite — (his) mother, | having the force
 ἑαυτοῦ, βουλόμενος συμ-
 of-himself, [having his own force with him,] wishing to-par-
 μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς συνεβοήθει
 icipate (in) the action: but also Procles came-'to
 ἐξ Ἀλισαρνης καὶ Τευδρανίας,
 (their) 'assistance from Halisarne and (likewise) Teuthranias,
 ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. Οἱ δὲ περὶ
 (he) who (was descended) from Damaratus. The (men) indeed with
 Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ ἤδη πάνυ ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν
 Xenophon when already much oppressed by the
 τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι
 arrows and slings, (while) marching-forward 'in (a)
 κύκλῳ, ὅπως ἔχοιεν τὰ δπλα πρὸ
 'circle, so-that they-might-have — (their) shields (as a defence) against

τῶν τοξευμάτων, μόλις διαβαίνουνσι τὸν ποταμόν
the arrows, 'they with-difficulty 'crossed-over the river

Καῖικον, ἔγγυς οἱ ἡμίσεις τετρωμένοι. Καί
Caicus, near the half (of them) being-wounded. And

ἐνταῦθα Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρω-
here Agasias (the) Stymphalian, (a) captain, was-

σκεται, μαχόμενος τὸν πάντα χρόνον πρὸς τοὺς
wounded, fighting the whole time against the

πολεμίους. Καὶ διασώζονται, ἔχοντες ὡς διακόσια
enemy. And they-were-saved, having about two-hundred

ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.
slaves and cattle as-much-as (was required for the) sacrifices.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θυσάμενος, ἐξάγει
But the next-day — Xenophon having-sacrificed, lead-out

τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα νύκτωρ, ὅπως ὅτι ἔλθοι
the whole army at-night, in-order that he-might-go (a)

μακροτάτην τῆς Λυδίας εἰς τὸ
very-long (way) through — Lydia for the (purpose, that the

μὴ φοβεῖσθαι διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἔγγυς,
Persian) 'might not 'be-alarmed | through the to-be near, [by

ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀσι-
his proximity,] but be-'off (his) 'guard. But — Asi-

δάτης ἀκούσας, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν εἷη τεθυμένος πάλιν
dates hearing, that Xenophon has-been-sacrificing again

ἐπ' αὐτὸν, καὶ ἥξει
(about marching) against him, and (that) he-would-come (back)

παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐξανλίζεται εἰς
with-all the army, 'he [the Persian] 'went-out to

κώμας ἔχουσας ὑπὸ τὸ πόλισμα Παρθέιον.
villages having (themselves) under the town (of) Parthenium.

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσιν
Here — (those) with Xenophon come-upon

αὐτῷ, καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ
him, and captured him, and (his) wife, and

παῖδας, καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ πάντα τὰ
(his) children, and — (his) horses, | and all the

τὰ ὄντα καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερον
— being (his); [and all his property;] and thus the first

ἱερὰ ἀπέβη. Ἐπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται
sacrifices happened (truly). Afterwards 'they again 'arrived

εἰς Πέργαμον. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὐκ
at Pergamus. Here — Xenophon 'could not

ἡπάσατο τὸν θεόν· γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες, καὶ
'complain (of) the god; for also the Lacedæmonians, and

οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί, καὶ οἱ στρα-
the captains and the other generals, and the sol-

τιῶται, συνέπραττον ὥστε λαμβάνειν ἐξαίρετα
diers, agreed that he-should-take select-portions

καὶ ἵππους, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ τᾶλλα· ὥστε
— (namely) horses, and yokes-of-oxen, and other-things; so-that

εἶναι ἤδη ἱκανὸν καὶ ποιεῖν εὖ ἄλλον.
he-was now able even to-do good to-another.

Ἐν τούτου Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ
After this Thibron having-arrived he-received the

στράτευμα καὶ συμμίξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ,
army and having-mixed (it) with-the other Grecian

ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον
(force), he-made-war against Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.

Οἷδε ἄρχοντες δὲ τῆς χώρας βασιλέως,
Those governors indeed of-the territories 'of (the) 'king,

ὅσην ἐπήλθομεν· Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας·
as-much-as we-passed-through (were these): of-Lydia, Artimas;

Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας· Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας
of-Phrygia, Artacamas; of-Lycaonia and Cappadocia.

Μιθριδάτης· Κιλικίας Σύννεσις· Φοινίκης καὶ
Mithridates; of-Cilicia, Suennesis; of-Phoenicia and

Ἀραβίας Δέρνης· Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσος·
Arabia, Dernes; of-Syria and Assyria Belesys;

Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας· Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας· Φασια-
of-Babylon, Rhoparas; of-Media, Arbacas; of-the-Pha-

νῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τιρίβαζος· (δὲ Καρδοῦχοι,
sians and the-Hesperitæ, Tiribazus; (for (the) Cardouchi.

δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες,
and also (the) Chalybes and (the) Chaldæans and (the) Macrones

καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ
and (the) Colchians and (the) Mossynæci and (the) Tibareni

αὐτόνομοι.) Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας.
(were) independent-nations;) of-Paphlagonia, Corylas; 'of (the)

Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος· τῶν Θρακῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ
'Bithynians Pharnabazus; of — (those) Thracians in Europe,

Σεύθης. Ἄριθμός δὲ τῆς συμπάσης ὁδοῦ τῆς
Seuthes. (The) enumeration indeed of-the entire route of-the

ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως διακόσιοι δεκα-
ascent and descent (is) two-hundred (and) fif-

πέντε σταδιοὶ, χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πεντήκοντα
teen days'-march, one-thousand one-hundred (and) five

πέντε παρασάγγαι, τριςμύρια τετρακισχίλια
five parasangs, thirty-thousand (and) four-thousand

ἑξακόσια πεντήκοντα στάδια. Πλῆθος
(and) six-hundred (and) fifty stadia. (The) amount-of

χρόνου τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως
time (spent in) the ascent and descent (being:

ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.
a-year and three months.

